



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

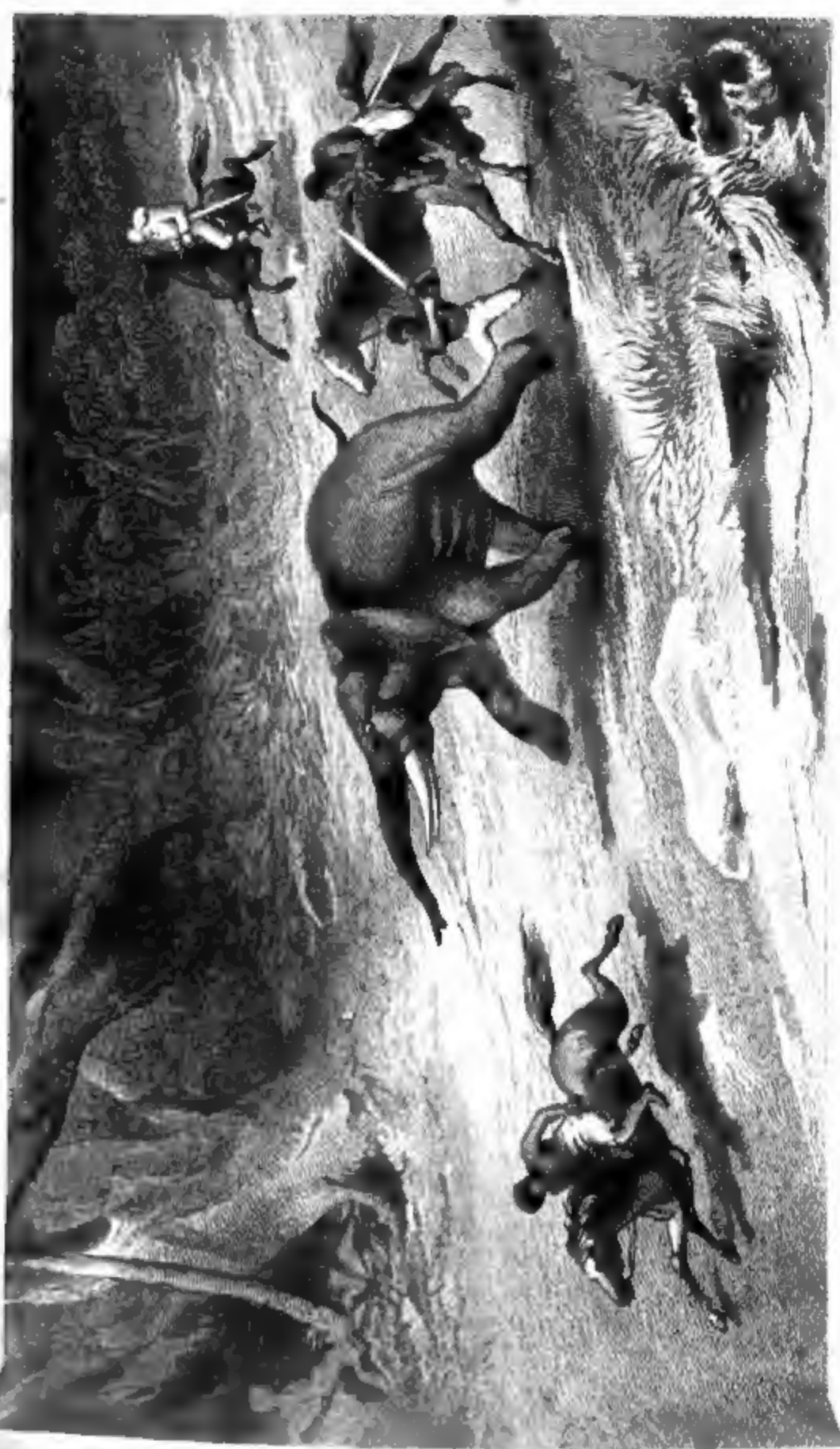
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>







The Dinosaur in the Land of the Mammoth

THE BOOK
OF
ADVENTURE AND PERIL



WILLIAM P. NIMMO

LONDON, 14, KING WILLIAM STREET, STRAND.

AND EDINBURGH.

THE BOOK

OF

ADVENTURE AND PERIL:

A RECORD OF

Heroism and Endurance on Sea and Land.

COMPILED AND EDITED

BY

CHARLES BRUCE,

EDITOR OF 'SEA SONGS AND BALLADS,' 'THE BIRTHDAY BOOK OF PROVERBS,' ETC.

ILLUSTRATED.

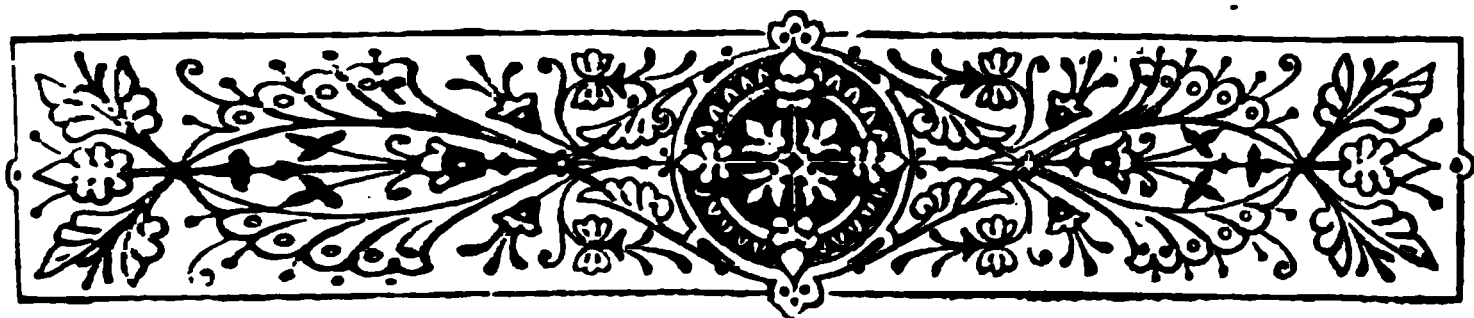
WILLIAM P. NIMMO,

**LONDON: 14 KING WILLIAM STREET, STRAND;
AND EDINBURGH.**

1875.

203 1 1 1

MURRAY AND GIBB, EDINBURGH, .
PRINTERS TO HER MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE.



PREFACE.



PREFACES are not usually read, therefore we will make this as brief as possible ; it shall serve the purpose of an index to point out the contents of the volume. We have given the book no startling or sensational title, yet still we trust it will find favour and acceptance with very many readers. We have gathered into one volume a series of narratives, real experiences, personal adventures, which otherwise can only be gleaned from many books. The volume opens with stories of poor prisoners, and their desperate and persevering attempts to escape from the cells and dungeons where a cruel and despotic power had immured them. The sea with its episodes of storm and shipwreck never wearies ; the interest is perpetually kept alive : incessantly our sea-girt island sends forth its armies of sailors to see the ‘wonders of the Lord in the great deep,’ to do valiant battle with its tempests, and to brave its perils of shipwreck and death ; and ever and again there floats to our shore the news of some terrible disaster, to shed its gloom over happy homes and hearts. Thus, even while the last pages of this work were passing *through the press, the news spread rapidly through the length and breadth of the land, of the foundering of the La Plata and the*

burning of the *Cospatrick*, and the subsequent privations, sufferings, and horrors through which the miserable remnants of their crews passed. We have therefore devoted a space to the narratives of calamitous shipwrecks, of perilous voyages in open boats, and of men left upon desolate islands. Here, too, the reader will find interesting narrations of perils encountered in savage warfare among North American Indians, in which they are not always proved to be as chivalrous as Cooper has drawn them with his able pen ; and lastly will be found the exploits of the hunter in the forest and the field, in his warfare with their savage denizens,—the whole forming a piquant and attractive bill of fare. We have to thank those gentlemen—Sir Samuel Baker, Sir George L'Estrange, and others—who have kindly allowed us to use material from their works. In conclusion, we have only this word to add, to boys and all, *Read the book*, thereby slightly altering the famous and laconic preface by which Dr. Abernethy introduced one of his works to the public—‘*Read my book.*’

CONTENTS.

BOOK I.

CHAPTER I.	PAGE	CHAPTER VII.	PAGE
The story of a poor Huguenot galley-slave,	1	How Captain Wilson became a prisoner of Hyder Ali; his wonderful adventures and sufferings,	143
CHAPTER II.		CHAPTER VIII.	
The escape of the Earl of Nithsdale from the Tower,	23	How Lieutenant L'Estrange said good-bye to the fortress of Bitch, and also to France,	153
CHAPTER III.		CHAPTER IX.	
Prison exploits of Baron Trenck,	34	How Count Lavalette escaped from the Conciergerie,	173
CHAPTER IV.		CHAPTER X.	
Casanova's escape from the state prison of Venice,	73	The Empress Eugenie's escape from Paris and from France,	183
CHAPTER V.		CHAPTER XI.	
Narrative of the adventures of two brothers during the American War of Independence,	93	Story of Communistic prisoners,	193
CHAPTER VI.			
The story of Latude, and his wonderful escape from the Bastille,	110		

BOOK II.

CHAPTER I.	CHAPTER II.
The wintering of Jacob Hemskirk and William Barentz with their crew in Nova Zembla, and how they left in an open boat,	God's power and providence shown in the miraculous preservation and deliverance of eight Englishmen, left by mischance in Greenland,
201	

	PAGE		PAGE
anno 1630, nine months and twelve days; with a true relation of all their miseries, the shifts and hardships they were put to, their food, such as neither heathen nor Christian ever before endured. Faithfully reported by Edward Pelham, one of the eight men aforesaid,	212	CHAPTER IX.	
		Remarkable boat voyage — The frozen ship,	295
		CHAPTER X.	
CHAPTER III.		Captain Inglefield's narrative of the loss of H.M.S. <i>Centaur</i> , and the perilous voyage in an open boat of himself and eleven companions,	304
The adventures of seven poor sailors, who wintered on the island of Maurice in Greenland, where they died in the year 1634,	233	CHAPTER XI.	
		The mutiny of the <i>Bounty</i> , and voyage of Captain Bligh and seventeen of his crew in an open boat,	315
CHAPTER IV.		CHAPTER XII.	
A small monument of great mercy, in the miraculous deliverance of five persons from slavery at Algiers, in a canvas boat; with an account of the great distress and extremities which they endured at sea: by William Oakely, 1644,	239	The sufferings of six deserters—The schooner's men and the sharks—A wonderful preservation,	360
CHAPTER V.		CHAPTER XIII.	
How Sieur de Montauban's vessel blew up,	252	A supercargo's narrative of the loss of a Russian ship on the north-west coast of America, and the subsequent adventures of the crew,	370
CHAPTER VI.		CHAPTER XIV.	
Adventures of nine men in an open boat in the Arctic Seas,	265	Life on the <i>Medusa</i> raft,	382
CHAPTER VII.		CHAPTER XV.	
How Philip Ashton escaped from the pirates, and resided for sixteen months in solitude on a desolate island,	270	Alone on an island in the Pacific,	405
CHAPTER VIII.		CHAPTER XVI.	
A true narrative of the sufferings of four Russian sailors who were left on a desert island off East <i>Isabergen</i> ,	288	The fever ship,	413
		CHAPTER XVII.	
		The burning of the <i>Earl of Eldon</i> ,	419

BOOK III.

CHAPTER I.	PAGE	CHAPTER V.	PAGE
The captivity and adventures of Alexander Henry among the Chippeway Indians,	425	The story of my uncle's adventures among the North American Indians,	477
CHAPTER II.		CHAPTER VI.	
Capture of Quintin Stockwell by Indians, and perilous journey made in their company, . . .	456	The story of John Glover, and how he escaped from a terrible death,	482
CHAPTER III.		CHAPTER VII.	
Captain Carver's adventures at the massacre of Fort William Henry,	464	The soldier and the Indian—Colonel Boone's escape—Harrod's wolf-skin cap—Bartle's adventure, . .	490
CHAPTER IV.		CHAPTER VIII.	
How Peter Williamson was captured by the Indians, what terrible scenes he witnessed, and the manner in which he effected his escape,	469	A lonely log-hut—Colter's adventure—Brady's leap,	499
		CHAPTER IX.	
		Three remarkable incidents in the life of Audubon the naturalist, . .	510

BOOK IV.

CHAPTER I.	CHAPTER V.
How Mr. Waterton captured his snakes, 520	Elephant-hunting in Ceylon, by Sir Samuel Baker, 547
CHAPTER II.	CHAPTER VI.
Adventures with the cobra de ca- pello — A battle between two snakes, 526	Adventure with a buffalo, 558
CHAPTER III.	CHAPTER VII.
Crocodile - shooting in Ceylon — How Abbe Domeneck caught his crocodile, 533	Between a tiger's jaws—Under- neath a tiger—A fine specimen of courage—Tiger-shooting at night, 567
CHAPTER IV.	CHAPTER VIII.
A ride on the back of a cayman— The alligator and the bear, 539	How the Arabs attack a lion — Gerard's second lion — Moffat's lion adventures—A sentry seized by a lion—A lion encounter— Death of Hendrich, 578

•

•

•





THE BOOK OF ADVENTURE AND PERIL, P. 1.

THE BOOK OF ADVENTURE AND PERIL.

BOOK I.

CHAPTER I.

STORY OF A HUGUENOT GALLEY-SLAVE.

I WAS born at Bergerac, a small town in the province of Perigord, in the year 1684. My parents were in trade. By the grace of God they had always maintained, even unto death, the doctrines of the true reformed religion; their conduct was such as never to draw down any reproach upon these doctrines. They brought up their children in the fear of God, continually instructing them in the principles of true religion, and in aversion to the errors of Popery.

I will not weary my reader by relating the events of my childhood up to the year 1700, when persecution tore me from the bosom of my family, forced me to fly from my country, and to expose myself, notwithstanding my tender age, to the perils of a journey of two hundred leagues, which I made in order to seek a refuge in the *United Provinces of the Netherlands*. I shall only relate briefly, and in simple truth,

what has happened to me since my sorrowful separation from my parents, whom I left enduring the most cruel persecution.

Before detailing the story of my flight from my dear country, it is necessary to speak of what occasioned it, and kindled the most inhuman persecution in my native province. During the war which was terminated by the Peace of Ryswick, the Jesuits and priests had not been able to indulge in the pleasure of dragooning the reformed in France, because the king had all his troops upon the frontiers of his kingdom; but no sooner was peace concluded, than they wished to indemnify themselves for the repose they had been obliged to give us during the war. These pitiless and inveterate persecutors then made their rage felt in all the provinces of France, wherever there were any of the reformed faith. I shall confine myself to detailing

some of the best authenticated facts which took place in Perigord.

In the year 1699, the Duke de la Force, who proved that he by no means shared the sentiments of his illustrious ancestors with regard to the reformed religion, at the instigation of the Jesuits, requested permission to go to his estates in Perigord, in order, as he expressed it, to convert the Huguenots. In doing this he flattered the views and principles of the court too well not to obtain such an honourable and worthy employment. So he set out from Paris, accompanied by four Jesuits, a few guards, and his servants. Arrived at his castle of La Force, about a league distant from Bergerac, he began, in order to give an idea of the gentleness of his mission and the spirit of his counsellors, to exercise unheard of cruelties against those of his vassals who belonged to the reformed faith, carrying off daily, peasants of every age and of both sexes, and making them suffer in his presence, and without any form of trial, the most frightful tortures,—continued upon some till they died,—to compel them to abjure their religion upon the spot, without any reason but his own will. Then, by means as diabolical, he obliged all these poor wretches to take the most fearful oaths to remain inviolably attached to the Roman religion. To testify the joy and satisfaction which he felt at his happy

success, and to terminate his enterprise in a manner worthy of the motives and counsels which had caused him thus to act, he celebrated public rejoicings in the village of La Force, where his castle was situated, and made a bonfire of a magnificent library, composed of the pious books of the reformed religion, which his ancestors had carefully collected. The town of Bergerac this time was exempt from persecution, as well as several other towns in the neighbourhood; but this repose was only a calm, which was to be followed by the most terrible tempest.

The Duke de la Force, proud of the fine conversions which he had made, went to give an account of them to the court. We can easily judge whether he and his Jesuits exaggerated the effect which their mission had produced. However that might be, in the year 1700, to convert, by means of a pitiless dragoonade, the Huguenots in the royal towns of that province, he came then to Bergerac, where he took up his residence, accompanied by the same four Jesuits, and by a regiment of dragoons, whose cruel mission—for they were allowed full licence among the townspeople—made a great many more converts than the exhortations of the Jesuits. There were no conceivable cruelties which these booted and spurred missionaries did not exercise to oblige the poor citizens to go

to mass, make their public abjuration, and swear with horrible oaths never to abandon the practice of the Roman religion. The duke had a form of this oath filled with imprecations against the reformed faith, which he made them sign and swear to, either by their consent or by force.

Twenty-two of these execrable dragoons were quartered in my father's house. I do not know for what reason the duke caused my father to be taken to prison at Perigueux. Two of my brothers and my sister, who were but children, were seized and placed in a convent. I had the good fortune to escape from the house. My poor mother found herself left, the only one of the family, in the midst of those twenty-two wretches, who caused her to undergo horrible tortures. After having consumed and destroyed everything in the house, they dragged my poor, unhappy mother before the duke, who, by the infamous treatment to which he subjected her, accompanied by horrible threats, forced her to sign his formulary. This the poor woman did, weeping abundantly, and protesting against the act to which she was compelled. She resolved that her hand should join in the lamentable protestations of her lips; so, the duke having presented the form, she wrote her name on it, and at the bottom added the words, '*(la) Force made me do it,*' alluding,

doubtless, to the name of the duke. They tried to make her efface these words, but she persisted in refusing; so one of the Jesuits took the trouble of erasing them.

I had escaped from the house before the dragoons entered it. I was then just sixteen years of age. It is not a time of life when one has much experience, especially in getting out of such a critical position as mine was. How was I to escape the vigilance of the dragoons, by whom the town, and all the approaches to it, were filled, in order to stop the flight of any of the inhabitants? Nevertheless, I had the happiness, by the great mercy of God, to leave the town at night without being perceived, accompanied by one of my friends; and after walking all night through the woods, we found ourselves the next morning at Mussidan, a small town four leagues from Bergerac. There we resolved, whatever the perils might be, to continue our journey as far as Holland, resigning ourselves wholly to the will of God in the prospect of all those dangers which presented themselves to our imagination; and as we implored the divine protection, we made a firm resolution not to imitate Lot's wife in looking back, and that, whatever might be the result of our perilous enterprise, we would remain firm and constant in confessing the true

reformed religion, even at the risk of the punishment of the galleys, or of death. After this resolution, we implored God's gracious help and mercy, and then proceeded cheerfully along the high road to Paris. We consulted our purse, which was not too well supplied. Our whole capital consisted of about ten pistoles. We formed economical plans to make our little money last, and lodged every day at the humblest inns to save expense. We had not, thank God, any unpleasant adventure as far as Paris, where we arrived on the 10th of November.

We expected at Paris to see some of our acquaintances, who would tell us the easiest and least dangerous route to the frontier. A good friend and good Protestant wrote out for us a little itinerary as far as Mezières, a garrison town on the Meuse, at that time the frontier of the Spanish Netherlands, on the borders of the formidable forest of Ardennes. This friend informed us that the only danger we should have to guard against was on entering this town,—for on going out no one was stopped,—and that the forest of Ardennes would favour our journey to Charleroi, six or seven leagues distant from Mezières; and that once at Charleroi we were safe, for then we should really be out of the French territories.

He added, that there was also at Charleroi a Dutch garrison and commander, who would

protect us from all danger. This friend, however, warned us to be prudent, and to take the greatest precaution in entering the town of Mezières, because they were extremely particular in stopping at the gates all those whom they suspected of being strangers; and that if they were found without passports, they were taken at once before the governor, and thence to prison.

At last we started from Paris for Mezières. We had no disagreeable adventure during the journey, for within the French dominions no one was stopped. The strictest attention of the government was only directed to guarding all the roads across the frontiers. We arrived, then, one afternoon about four o'clock, at the summit of a little hill, about a quarter of a league from Mezières, whence we could see the whole of this town, and the gate by which we should have to enter it. One can easily judge of our feelings of suspense and dread as we considered the near and imminent peril which presented itself before our eyes. We sat down for a moment upon the hill to take counsel concerning an entrance into the town. In narrowly observing the gate, we perceived that a long bridge over the Meuse led up to it, and as it was very fine weather, a number of the inhabitants were walking about upon the bridge. We thought that by mixing with the citizens, and

walking with them upon the bridge, we should be able to enter the town with the crowd without being recognised as strangers by the sentinel at the gate. Having decided upon this stratagem, we emptied our knapsacks of the few shirts which we had, putting them all on, and the knapsacks into our pockets. Then we cleaned our shoes, combed our hair, and finally took all the precaution requisite in order not to look like travellers. We had no swords, for it was then forbidden in France to carry them.

Thus equipped, we descended the hill, and betook ourselves to the bridge, walking up and down there with the citizens till the drum beat for the closing of the gates. Then all the inhabitants hastened to return into the town, and we with them, the sentinel not perceiving that we were strangers. We were filled with the greatest joy at having avoided this great peril, believing that it was the only one we had to fear. But we were reckoning, as the saying is, without our host. We could not leave Mezières at once, the gate opposite to that being shut. We must, then, lodge in the town. We entered the first inn which presented itself. The landlord was not there; his wife received us. We ordered supper; and whilst we were at table, *about nine o'clock, the master of the house arrived. His wife told him that she had re-*

ceived two young strangers. We heard from our chamber her husband ask her if we had a ticket of permission from the governor. His wife having replied that she had not inquired, 'Jade!' said he, 'do you wish that we should be utterly ruined? You know the vigorous prohibitions against lodging strangers without permission. I must go at once with them to the governor.'

This dialogue which we overheard made us shudder. The landlord soon after entered our chamber, and asked us very civilly if we had spoken to the governor. We told him that we had not thought this necessary for lodging one night only in the town.

'It would cost me a thousand crowns,' said he, 'if the governor knew that I had lodged you without permission. But have you a passport to enable you to enter the frontier towns?' We replied boldly that we were well furnished with papers.

'That changes the whole affair,' said he, 'and saves me from incurring the blame of lodging you without permission; but still you must come with me to the governor to show your passports.'

We replied that we were very weary and fatigued, but that the next morning we would willingly accompany him there. He was satisfied with this. We finished our supper, and though our bed was a very good one, it did not induce us to sleep, so troubled

were we by anxiety at the peril which threatened us. How many counsels we held through that long night ! How many expedients did we propose with regard to the answer which we should make to the governor ! But, alas ! they were all counsels and expedients without result. Seeing nothing which could protect us from going straight from the governor's house to prison, we passed the remainder of the night imploring in prayer the help of God in such a pressing hour of need, and asking Him that, to whatever His divine will might think fit to expose us, He would grant us the firmness and constancy necessary to confess worthily the truth of the gospel. The dawn of day found us in this pious exercise. We got up quickly, and went down to the kitchen, where the landlord and his wife slept. As we were dressing, we thought of an expedient to avoid appearing before the governor, which we put into practice, and it succeeded admirably. It was as follows : We formed the design of leaving our lodging clandestinely, before our host was up and able to observe us. When he saw us so early in his kitchen, he inquired our reason for such early rising. We said that, having to go to the governor with him, we wished to breakfast at once, so that on leaving the governor's house we could continue our journey. He approved of our scheme, and *ordered his servant to fry some*

sausages whilst he was getting up. This kitchen was on the ground floor, and close to the street door. Having perceived that the servant had opened the street door, we made a pretext that we wished to go out for a few moments. The host suspecting nothing, we went out of this fatal inn without saying farewell or paying our reckoning ; for the trick seemed absolutely necessary.

Once in the street, we found a little boy, of whom we asked the way to the Charleville gate, that by which we were to leave the town. We were very near it, and as the gate was open, we went out without any obstacle. We entered Charleville, a small town with neither gate nor garrison, which is within gunshot of Mezières. We breakfasted here quickly, and then left it to enter the forest of Ardennes. It had frozen during the night, and the frost appeared terrible to us ; the trees were covered with hoar-frost and icicles. As we penetrated this vast forest, we perceived a great number of roads, and did not know which to take to lead us to Charleroi. While we were in this embarrassment, a peasant met us, of whom we asked the way to Charleroi. This peasant answered us, shrugging his shoulders, that he saw well enough that we were strangers, and that our enterprise of going to Charleroi by the Ardennes was a very dangerous one, seeing that we did not know the roads,

and it was almost impossible that we should follow the right one, as the farther we advanced the more roads we should meet; and that, as there was neither village nor house in this great wood, we should run the risk of losing ourselves, that we might wander about for twelve or fifteen days; that, moreover, the forest was full of ravenous animals, and that if the frost continued, we might perish there of cold and hunger. These words alarmed us, and made us offer the peasant a louis d'or if he would serve us as guide as far as Charleroi.

'Not if you were to offer me a hundred,' he said; 'I see very well that you are Huguenots escaping from France, and I should be putting the rope round my own neck if I rendered you this service. But,' continued he, 'I will give you a piece of good advice: leave the Ardennes; take the road which you see upon your left; you will arrive at a village; you will sleep there; and to-morrow morning continue your journey, keeping to the right of this village. You will then see the town of Rocroy, which you will leave upon your left, and, pursuing your road always to the right, you will arrive at Couvé, a small town; you will pass through it, and in leaving it will find a road to your left; follow it; it will lead you to Charleroi without peril. The route by which I have directed you,' added this peasant, '*is longer than that by the*

Ardennes, but it is without any danger.'

We thanked this good man, and took his advice. In the evening we arrived at the village of which he had spoken; we slept there, and next morning found the road to the right; we took it, leaving Rocroy to the left. But the peasant had not told us, perhaps through ignorance, that this road led us straight to a gorge between two mountains, which was very narrow, and where there was a guard of French soldiers, who stopped all strangers who had no passports, and took them to prison at Rocroy. We, like poor straying sheep, walked with rapid strides into the jaws of the wolf. However, without seeing or knowing the inevitable danger that we ran, we avoided it by the most favourable chance in the world; for, at the very moment we entered this gorge, called the Guet du Sud, the rain fell so heavily, that the sentinel on duty before the guard-house had gone into it for shelter, and we passed by very innocently, without being noticed, and, pursuing our way, arrived at Couvé. At that moment we were safe, had we only known that this little town was not on French territory. It belonged to the Prince of Liège, and contained a castle garrisoned by Dutch troops. But, alas! to our great misfortune we did not know this, for had we done so we should have gone to this castle at once, the

governor of which granted an escort to all refugees who requested it to conduct them to Charleroi. But it was God's will that we should remain in this ignorance, so that our constancy and our faith should be put to trial during many years of misery.

We arrived, then, as I said, at Couvé. We were wet to the skin. We entered an inn to dry ourselves and get something to eat. Having sat down to table, they brought us a pot of beer with two handles, without giving us any glasses. On asking for some, the host said he perceived that we were Frenchmen—for the custom of that country was to drink out of the pot. We at once conformed to it. But this request for glasses, which seemed a mere trifle, and of no consequence, was, humanly speaking, the cause of our ruin; for in the same room with us were two men, one a citizen of the place, the other a gamekeeper of the Prince of Liège. The latter, noticing the observation of the landlord, that he had perceived at once that we were Frenchmen, began to examine us very minutely, and at last made free to accost us, and declared that he was quite ready to lay a wager that we did not carry rosaries in our pockets. My companion, who was taking a pinch of snuff, showing him his snuff-box, said, very imprudently, that that was his rosary.

His reply confirmed the gamekeeper in his opinion that we

were Protestants escaping from France; and as the spoils of those who were arrested belonged to the informer, he conceived the design of having us arrested, if, in leaving Couvé, we passed by Mariembourg, a league distant in the French territory. This was not our intention, for, following the instructions of the good peasant, in leaving Couvé we were to take a road to the left, by which we should have avoided touching upon any French territory. But who can avoid his destiny?

Going forth from Couvé, we walked along the road to the left; but perceiving in the distance an officer on horseback coming towards us, we were afraid, as the least thing increases fear, lest the officer should stop us, which made us turn back and take the fatal road which led us to Mariembourg. This town is small, and has only one gate; so there is no passage through it. We knew this, and resolved to leave it upon our right, and to proceed to Charleroi, keeping to the left, according to our previous plan. But we did not know that the treacherous gamekeeper was following us in the distance ready to pounce upon us. At last we arrived before Mariembourg, and as it was almost dark, and we saw an inn opposite the gate of the town, we decided to stop there for the night. We went in; they gave us a room, and we had a good fire made to dry ourselves.

We had scarcely been there half an hour, when a man came in, whom we thought was the landlord. He saluted us very civilly, and then asked us whence we came and whither we were going. We told him we came from Paris, and were going to Philippeville. He said that we must go and speak to the governor of Mariembourg. We thought to quiet him as we had done our host at Mezières, but in this we deceived ourselves, for he replied immediately, and sharply enough, too, that we must follow him thither at once. We met this bad luck with a good heart, and without showing any fear, prepared to follow him. Speaking in *patois* to my companion, so that the man should not understand, I said that, as it was such a dark night, we might escape from our conductor between the inn and the town; so we followed the fellow whom we took for the landlord, but who was really a sergeant of the town guard, accompanied by a detachment of eight soldiers with fixed bayonets, whom we found in the court-yard of the inn. At their head was the treacherous gamekeeper of Couvé; these soldiers seized us in such a way that it was impossible for us to escape. We were led to the governor, M. Pallier by name, who asked us what countrymen we were, and whither we were going. To the first question we told him the truth, but to the second we prevaricated, *telling him that we*

were hairdressers' apprentices, and that we were making the circuit of France; that our design was to go to Philippeville, from thence to Maubeuge, Valenciennes, Cambrai, etc., and thus return to our own country. The governor had us examined by his own valet, who knew something about a barber's work, and who fortunately began with my companion, who really was one. He was convinced that such was our business. The governor then asked us of what religion we were; we told him plainly that we were of the reformed religion, for on this question our conscience would not allow us to disguise the truth. Alas! that we were weak and foolish enough not to tell the whole truth to the other questions which the governor asked us; for this may God pardon us; for, to be faithful followers of the Christian religion, we ought never to lie. But such is the weakness of human nature, which never performs a good work perfectly. The governor having asked us whether our design was not in reality to leave the kingdom, we denied it.

After this examination, which lasted a good hour, the governor ordered the major to conduct us safely to prison, which he did with the escort which had arrested us. On the way from the government house to the prison, the major, named M. de la Salle, asked me if it were true that we were from Ber-

gerac. I told him that indeed it was.

'I was also born half a league from Bergerac,' said he; and having asked my name and my family, he exclaimed, 'Why, your father is my best friend; be comforted, my children,' he added; 'I will get you out of this unhappy affair, and you will be free after two or three days.'

Thus discoursing, we arrived at the prison. The gamekeeper asked the major to have us searched, that he might have his reward, believing that we had a great deal of money; but all our capital consisted of about one pistole, which the major told us to give to him without having us searched. The major, who was touched with compassion at our unhappy fate, and who wished to be of service to us, feared lest we had much more money, which circumstance would have been to our detriment, as it would have been a sign that we wished to escape from the kingdom; for it is well known that wandering apprentices are not overburdened with cash. Besides, he feared that the wicked gamekeeper, of whom he had a perfect horror, because he caused us to be arrested, would receive from our spoils too lucrative a recompense for his perfidy. The major, then, fearing this, would not have us searched, but kept the little money which we had given him, to remit it afterwards to the governor. The gamekeeper, seeing that we were not

searched, had the impudence to tell the major that was not the way Huguenots were treated when they fled to Holland. 'I shall know how to find their money,' said he, attempting roughly to search us himself.

'Rascal,' said the major, 'if you are not off at once, I'll have you well thrashed. Do you think you are going to teach me my duty?' At the same time he drove him from his presence. Such was the reward this wretch received for all the trouble he had taken in causing us to be arrested, added to which, a few days after, the Prince of Liège, at the solicitation of the Dutch governor of the castle of Couvé, dismissed him from his service, and banished him from his dominions, on account of this wicked and treacherous action. A fit recompense for this worthless and cunning fellow.

We were now placed in a frightful dungeon. With tears in our eyes, we asked, 'What crime have we committed, sir, that we should be treated as criminals who have deserved the gallows and the wheel?'

'These are my orders, children,' said the major, much affected; 'but I will take care you don't sleep here.'

He went immediately to give in his report to the governor, telling him that he had caused us to be very strictly searched, and that he had only found about a pistole on us, proving clearly enough that we had no design of leaving France,

without reckoning other proofs which we had given him to the same effect, and that he thought it would be just and right to set us at liberty. But, unfortunately, it was the evening of the day on which the courier left for Paris; and while we were being conducted to prison, the governor had written to the court about our detention. Owing to this mischance, he could not now liberate us without an order from the court. The major was mortified at this obstacle, and entreated the governor to release us from this terrible and infamous dungeon, and to grant us the jailor's house for our prison, promising to place a sentinel at the gates to watch us, and that he would be responsible, even to his head, that we did not escape. The governor acquiesced; and we had not been an hour in the dungeon, when the major returned to the prison with a corporal and a sentinel, to whom he consigned us. He gave orders that we should have full liberty within the jailor's house, and chose himself a bed-room for us. Moreover, he gave the little money which we had given up to him to the jailor, ordering him to provide us with food as long as the money lasted, not wishing that we should appear to be criminals fed by the government. He told us with deep regret, that the governor had already written to the court about our detention, but that he would do his best with the

governor that our *procès-verbal* should be favourable. The major's kind treatment consoled us a little.

Soon after, the governor sent our *procès-verbal* to the court; it was strongly in our favour. But the declaration we had made, that we were of the reformed religion, prejudiced the Marquis de la Vrillière, the minister of state, so strongly against us, that he would pay no attention to the remarks contained in this *procès-verbal*, which indicated that we had no intention of leaving the kingdom, and he ordered the governor of Mariembourg to prosecute us, and condemn us to the galleys for being found on the frontiers without a passport. Meanwhile, the curé of Mariembourg was to use every effort to bring us back within the pale of the Roman Catholic Church. If he succeeded, after we had been instructed, and had made an abjuration, by the favour of the court we might be set at liberty, and brought back to Bergerac. The Major had these instructions of the Marquis de la Vrillière read to us.

'I shall give you no advice,' he said to us, 'as to what you ought to do; your faith and your conscience must decide you. All that I can say is, that your abjuration will at once open the door of your prison, and that unless you make it, you will certainly go to the galleys.'

We replied that we placed our whole confidence in God,

and that we resigned ourselves to His holy will ; that we did not expect any human help ; and that by God's grace, which we would never cease to implore, we would never deny the divine and true principles of our holy religion ; that he must not believe it was through obstinacy or infatuation that we continued steadfast ; that it was, thank God, through a firm conviction of the goodness of our cause ; and that our parents had taken all possible care to instruct us in the truth of our religion and the errors of the Roman faith, that we might boldly profess the one and avoid falling into the dangers of the other. We thanked him very affectionately for all the pains he had taken to be of service to us, and assured him that, not being able by any other means to testify our gratitude, we would always pray to God for him. This good major, who was in his heart a Protestant like ourselves, though a Roman Catholic, tenderly embraced us, confessing that he felt less happy than we did, and left us, weeping bitterly, entreating us not to think it unkind of him if he did not see us again, for he had not the courage to do so.

Our money, which had been given to the jailor, was exhausted. They gave us a pound and a half of bread a day, the *king's bread* ; but the governor and the major, by turns, sent *every day enough to eat and*

drink. The curé, who hoped to make proselytes of us, and the nuns of a convent in the town also, sent us occasionally things to eat ; so that we in our turn fed the jailor and his family.

The curé came to visit us nearly every day, and gave us a controversial catechism to prove the truth of the Roman religion. We opposed to this the catechism of M. Drelincourt which we had. Upon his deposition, it was resolved to commit us for trial. The judge of the place and his registrar came to interrogate us judicially in the prison, and two days after our sentence was read to us, the substance of which was as follows : 'That being found upon the frontier without passports from the court, and that being of the pretended reformed religion, we were suspected and convicted of having intended to escape from the kingdom, against the ordinances of the king, who has forbidden it ; and as a punishment, we were therefore condemned to be taken to his majesty's galleys, to remain there in penal servitude for life, with confiscation of our property, etc.' Our sentence read, the judge asked us if we wished to appeal to the parliament of Tournay, in the jurisdiction of which the town of Mariembourg is situated. We replied that we should only appeal from his iniquitous sentence to the tribunal of God ; that all men were against us ; and that we

looked to God alone, in whom we reposed our confidence, and who was a righteous Judge. 'Do not, I pray you,' said he, 'attribute to me the rigour of your sentence ; these are king's orders which condemn you.'

'But, sir,' said I, 'the king does not know if I am suspected and convicted of intending to leave the kingdom, and the ordinance does not state that for professing the reformed religion one is sent to the galleys ; it is only a conviction of the intention of escaping from the kingdom which condemns to this kind of punishment ; but you, sir, have introduced in the sentence, "suspected and convicted of having intended to escape from the kingdom," not only having no proof of this, but not even having examined whether there was any.'

'What would you have ?' said he. 'It is a formality required to obey the king's orders.'

'No longer call yourself a judge, then,' said I, 'but simply an executor of the king's orders.'

'Appeal to the parliament,' said he.

'We will do nothing of the kind,' we replied ; 'for we know well enough that the parliament is devoted to the king's orders, and that it will not examine the proofs in our favour any more than you have done.'

'Very well,' said he ; 'then I must appeal for you.' *We knew this before, as no inferior judge can carry into execution a sentence which involves corporal*

punishment without its being ratified by parliament. 'Therefore prepare,' said the judge, 'to start for Tournay.'

'We are ready for anything,' we replied.

The same day they shut us up again in the dungeon ; and we only left it to set out for Tournay, with four archers, who put fetters on our hands, and bound us together with cords. Our journey on foot was very painful. We went by Philippeville, Maubeuge, Valenciennes, and thence to Tournay. Every evening they placed us in the most frightful dungeons that they could find, giving us only bread and water, neither bed nor straw to rest on ; and if we had deserved the wheel or the gallows, we could not have been treated more cruelly. At last, arrived at Tournay, we were confined in the prison of the parliament. We had not a sou ; and as no charitable person entered this prison to assist the prisoners, as is the custom in so many jails, and having only a pound and a half of bread a day, we soon nearly died of hunger. The curé of the parish obtained the consent of the parliament that our act of indictment should not be revised till he had exercised his mission upon us, hoping, as he said, to convert us. But the curé, either by idleness or to constrain us by famine, only came to see us every eight or fifteen days, and then he spoke so little to us about religion,

that we had not even the trouble of defending ourselves ; and when we wished to tell him our sentiments upon the truths of the reformed religion, he cut us short. ' Another time,' said he ; and off he went. Meanwhile, we became so thin and attenuated, that we could no longer stand, and were obliged to lie down upon a little damp straw, filled with vermin, close to the door of our cell, through a hole in which our bread was thrown to us, as if we were dogs ; for if we had strayed farther away from the door, we should not have had the strength to go and take it, so weak were we. In this extremity, we sold to the turnkey, for a little bread, our coats and waistcoats, as well as a few shirts which we had, only reserving the one which we wore, and which soon fell into rags. In this state, the most miserable which can be imagined, we saw no one but the curé, who sometimes paid us a visit, rather to mock us than to show us any compassion. The object of his mission was to ask us if we were not weary of suffering thus, and to tell us that we were not to be pitied, since our deliverance and welfare depended upon ourselves and our renouncing the errors of Calvin. At last his discourses were so wearisome to us, that we did not deign to answer him.

Such was our situation in the prison of the parliament of Tournay during nearly six weeks ; at the end of which,

one morning about nine o'clock, the jailor threw us a broom through the door, telling us to sweep out our dungeon well, as they were just about to bring two gentlemen to keep us company. We asked him of what they were accused. ' They are,' said he, ' Huguenots, like you ;' and then he left us. A quarter of an hour afterwards the door of our cell opened, and the jailor and some soldiers, armed with swords and muskets, led into it two young gentlemen, covered with lace from head to foot. As soon as this escort had thrust them into our cell, they shut the door and went away. We recognised these gentlemen as being two of our fellow-townsmen, sons of well-to-do citizens of Bergerac, with whom we had been very intimate, having been schoolfellows together. They, on their part, did not recognise us, for the misery in which we were made it absolutely impossible for any one to do so. We were the first to salute them, calling them by name. One was named Sorbier, the other Rivasson. But they pretended to be nobles : Sorbier called himself Chevalier, and Rivasson Marquis, titles which they had assumed to facilitate their escape from France. Hearing themselves addressed in our *patois*, they inquired who we were ; we told them our names and our country. They were very much astonished, and told us that our relatives and friends, during the six or seven months since

we had left Bergerac, hearing nothing of us, believed us to be dead, or assassinated on the road. Indeed, since our detention we had not been allowed to write. Then we all four embraced each other, shedding abundance of tears at the sad situation in which we found ourselves.

These gentlemen asked us if we had anything to eat, for they were hungry. We gave them our wretched morsel of bread, intended for the whole day, and the pitcher of water for our drink. 'Good God!' they cried, 'shall we be treated in this manner? and can we by payment have something to eat and drink?'

'Certainly,' said I, 'for money; but there is the difficulty; we have not seen a coin for nearly three months.'

'Oh, oh!' said they, 'if we can have what we want for money, it is all right.' At the same time they cut the seams of their belts and trousers, and the soles of their shoes, and nearly 400 louis d'or fell out. I confess that I never felt greater joy than the sight of the gold caused me; for I foresaw that we should eat a good meal, and no longer languish in hunger. Our friends now gave me a coin, requesting me to try to get something to eat. I knocked with all my strength at the door. The jailor came and asked us what we wanted.

'To eat,' I said to him, 'for

money,' giving him the louis d'or at the same time.

'Very well, gentlemen,' said he, 'what would you like to have? will you have soup and boiled beef?'

'Yes, yes,' said I; 'a good thick soup, and a ten-pound loaf, and some beer.'

'You shall have it all in an hour,' said he.

'In an hour!' I replied. 'What a long time!'

The two gentlemen could not help laughing at my eagerness to get something to eat.

At last the long-desired hour arrived. They brought us a thick cabbage soup, a dish of boiled beef, and a ten-pound loaf. The two gentlemen ate very little; but as for my companion and myself, we fell upon the soup in such a ravenous manner, that I suffered greatly in consequence, having so long been accustomed to a spare diet. An apothecary was sent for, who gave me an emetic, without which I should probably have died.

When I had recovered, they asked me through what bad luck we had been reduced to this miserable condition. I told them all which had passed since our departure from Bergerac up to the present time. They began to weep on account of their own weakness, confessing to us that they had resolved to abjure their religion rather than be condemned to the galleys.

'What an example, gentle-

men,' said I, 'do you bring us here! We should wish rather never to have seen you, than to find you holding sentiments so opposed to the education which your parents gave you, and to the faith in which you have been instructed. Do you not tremble for fear of the just judgment of God, who declares that those who know their Master's will and do it not, shall be beaten with more stripes than those who are ignorant of it?'

'What would you have us do?' they replied. 'We cannot make up our minds to go to the galleys. You are very fortunate in having courage to do so, and we praise you for it; but speak no more about it—our resolution is taken.' We could do nothing but lament and sigh over their weakness, and pray God to bring them to a better mind.

Sorbier and Rivasson prevented us from dying of hunger, as I have already said. We knew that they had plenty of money; and the fear that we should be again reduced to starvation after their departure, made me supplicate them with clasped hands to leave us three or four louis d'or. I told them that I would write out an order, so that my father should pay them at Bergerac. But they were so hard-hearted that they would only leave us half a louis, which I gave back to them when we met in the prisons of *Lille, in Flanders, a few days before their release.* We econo-

mised this half louis d'or extremely, eating nothing but bread. However, we had no time to spend it in the parliament prison, for we were transferred to the prison of the tower, named Le Beffroi, at the request of the Bishop of Tournay, who, having heard of the indifference, or rather negligence and ignorance of the curé who visited us,—in converting us,—determined to have us placed in a prison of his own diocese.

Here we were, then, in the prison of Beffroi, where we were much better off than in that of the parliament. Many Protestants, respectable citizens of Tournay, had permission to visit us. They 'greased the paw,' as the expression is, of the jailor, who, at their solicitation, opened our cell door every morning that we might take the air in a small courtyard close by for several hours, often till the evening. There our zealous friends frequently came to see us, consoling us as much as they could, and exhorting us to perseverance. The grand vicar, Regnier, often met them there, but without taking the least offence at it.

One day about nine in the morning our jailor put five persons into our cell, and then retired. We looked at each other, and soon recognised three of these gentlemen as being from Bergerac; but we did not know the other two, who burst into tears on embracing us, as each of the three first did, calling us

by name, and appearing to know us intimately. Surprised at not knowing these two persons, who did not cease to embrace us, and to lament our condition as much as their own, we asked *Sieur Dupuy*—who was one of the three—who these two persons were.

‘One,’ said he, ‘is *Mademoiselle Madras*, and the other *Mademoiselle Conceil*, of *Bergerac*, your good friends, who have exposed themselves to the perilous journey of escaping from France with us, in men’s attire, as you now see them, and who have endured the fatigue of this painful journey on foot with a firmness and constancy, extraordinary for persons brought up in refinement, and who, previous to this expedition, would not have been able to walk a league.’

We saluted these two ladies, but represented to them the impropriety of their remaining thus disguised, and continuing in the same cell with five young men, which our enemies would certainly magnify into a scandalous crime. I begged them to allow me to acquaint the jailor with their disguise, which could in no way serve them at present, and that they ought now to declare their names and sex, and confess the truth with firmness and constancy. The gentlemen were of my opinion, and the ladies consented. I called the jailor, and having told him about it, he made these ladies leave our cell, put

them into a private room, and told the judge, who gave them clothes suitable to their sex. We have not seen them since, for they were condemned for the remainder of their days to the convent of the ‘*Repentants*’ at Paris, to which they were taken, at the time their companions in suffering were condemned to the galleys, for attempting to escape the kingdom.

After the space of six weeks, we were for a second time deprived of our fellow-prisoners; for these three gentlemen were conducted to *Lille*, where the chain of galley-slaves assembled. They were bound, two and two together, by their hands. Thus bound, at ten o’clock in the morning they took them out of the prison to lead them to *Lille*. Their departure much afflicted us.

Some weeks after the loss of our friends, the archers of the *Grand Provost* came to conduct us also to *Lille*, in *Flanders*, to join a chain of galley-slaves there assembled. We were bound, and fetters put on our hands. We arrived at *Lille* in the evening, exhausted with the fatigue of walking these five leagues, and much inconvenienced by our bonds. They took us to the town prison, where the tower of *St. Pierre* is set apart for the galley-slaves, on account of the thickness of its walls. On entering the prison, the jailor searched us all over; and as, either by chance or pre-arranged design, there

happened to be two Jesuit fathers there, they took from us our books of devotion and the copy of the sentence, and never returned either the one or the other; and I overheard one of these fathers say to the other, after having read this sentence, that it was a great imprudence of the parliament to give authentic copies of such documents.

After this examination they led us to the dungeon of the galley-slaves in the tower of St. Pierre, one of the most frightful prisons I have ever seen. It is a spacious dungeon, but so dark, although it is on the second storey of the tower, that the unfortunate persons there imprisoned never know whether it is day or night, except by the bread and water which is brought to them every morning; and what is worse, neither fire nor light is allowed them. One has to lie down upon a little straw, torn and gnawed by rats and mice, of which there are great numbers here, and who ate with impunity our bread, because we could not see them to drive them away. On arriving in this cruel dungeon, where there were about thirty villains of every kind, condemned for divers crimes,—we could only know their number by asking them, for we could not see each other,—their first compliment was to demand money from us, under the penalty of tossing us *in a counterpane*. Rather than *experience this game*, we pre-

ferred giving them two crowns, to the amount of which these wretches taxed us without mercy. It was performed two days after upon a wretched new-comer, who endured it rather through want of money than courage. These fellows had an old counterpane of coarse cloth, upon which they stretched their victim; then four of the most robust convicts each took a corner, and raising it as high as they could, they then let it fall down upon the stones which formed the flooring of the cell. This was done as often as the poor wretch's sentence decreed, according to his obstinacy in refusing the money for which they had taxed him. This horrible punishment made me shudder. The miserable victim had good reason to cry out; there was no compassion for him. Even the jailor, to whom all the money which this execrable game produces goes in the end, did nothing but laugh. He looked through the hole in the door, and cried to them, 'Courage, comrades!' The poor wretch was so bruised by his repeated falls, that they thought he would have died. Nevertheless, he recovered. A few days after I had, in my turn, a terrible experience to undergo.

Every evening the jailor, accompanied by four great rogues of turnkeys, and the guard of the prison, came to visit our dungeon, to see if we were making any attempts to escape. All these men, to the number of

about twenty, were armed with pistols, swords, and bayonets. They examined the four walls and the floor very minutely, to see if we were making any holes there. One evening, after they had paid their visit, and as they were retiring, one of the turnkeys remained the last to lock the door. I addressed a few words to him; and as he answered me amiably enough, I thought I had conciliated him a little, and made bold to ask him for the bit of candle which he held in his hand, that we might rid ourselves of the vermin which so tormented us; but he would do nothing of the kind, and shut the door in my face. I remarked aloud, not thinking that the fellow was near enough to hear me, that I was sorry I had not snatched the candle from his hand, as I easily could have done. He overheard me, however, and reported me to the jailor.

The next morning, when all my companions were awake and singing their litanies as usual,—which, if they had neglected, the priests would have given them no alms, as they were accustomed to do every Thursday,—and I was sleeping on my bit of straw, I was suddenly awoken by several blows from the flat side of a sword. I started up and saw the jailor, sword in hand, the four turnkeys, and all the soldiers of the guard, armed to the teeth. I asked them why they ill-treated me thus. The jailor only replied by giving

me twenty more blows of the sword; and the turnkey, with the candle-end, gave me such a terrible box on the ear that he knocked me down. Having got up again, the jailor told me to follow him, and perceiving that it was to do me more injury, I refused to obey him until I knew by whose orders he treated me thus; for that if I deserved it, the Grand Provost alone could order me to be punished. Then they gave me so many blows that I fell down a second time. The four turnkeys now took me up, two by the legs and two by the arms, and carried me out of the dungeon, dragging me like a dead dog down the steps of the tower into the court-yard, where they opened the door of another stone staircase which led underground. Then they pushed me down these steps, of which there must have been twenty-five or thirty; at the bottom they opened a cell with an iron gate, called the 'dungeon of the sorceress.' They forced me in here, shut the door on me, and went away. I could see no more in this horrible dungeon than if my eyes had been shut. I groped a few steps to find a little straw, and then sunk down to my knees in water as cold as ice. I turned back and leaned against the door, where the ground was higher and less damp. By groping about I found a little straw, upon which I sat; but I had not been there two minutes, when I felt the

water coming through the straw. I then firmly believed that they had buried me alive, and felt that this dungeon would be my tomb if I remained there twenty-four hours. Half an hour after the turnkey brought me some bread and water. I rejected his pitcher and bread, saying, 'Go, tell your butcher of a master that I will neither eat nor drink till I have spoken to the Grand Provost.'

The turnkey went away, and in less than an hour the jailor came alone, with a candle in his hand, armed with nothing but a bunch of keys; and opening the door of the dungeon, he told me, quite kindly, to follow him upstairs. I obeyed. He led me into his kitchen. I was dirty, covered with blood, which had run from my nose and from a contusion on the head, which these barbarous turnkeys had given me, when they let me fall and dragged my head down the stone stairs. The jailor washed off the blood, put a plaster on my bruise, and then gave me a glass of canary wine, which revived me a little. He reprimanded me slightly for my imprudence about the turnkey's candle, and, after having made me breakfast with him, he led me into a cell in the courtyard which was dry and light, as he said he could not put me back with the other galley-slaves after what had happened.

'But let me have my comrade with me,' I said to him.

'Patience,' said he; 'that will come in time.'

I remained four or five days in this cell, during which time the jailor sent me my dinner from his table. One day he proposed to place my comrade and myself in a chamber in the prison, where there was a good bed, and every necessary comfort, for two louis d'or a month. We were not very well provided with money. However, I offered him a louis and a half up to the time when the chain started. He refused, but afterwards changed his mind. For a few days after, I was placed in a large good room, with comfortable beds, where I was well fed, without it costing me anything, as I will presently relate. One day he told me that my comrade had entreated him to bring me back to him, and that he had promised to do so. 'Very well,' said I; 'but why not bring him down to me?'

'No,' said he; 'you must return with the other galley-slaves to the tower of St. Pierre.'

I saw that he wished to oblige us to give him the two louis a month to put us into a room; but, consulting our purse, and considering that if the chain did not start for two or three months, we could by no means afford it, I kept strictly to the offer that I had made him; so he put me back into the tower with the others. My companion, who thought me lost, was delighted to feel

me near him. I say *feel*, for we could not *see*; we had no light for that.

One morning about nine o'clock, the jailor came to open our dungeon, and calling my companion and myself, told us to follow him. We thought that he was going to put us into the chamber for one louis and a half; but we were soon undeceived, for when we were out of the dungeon, he said, 'It is M. Lambertie, Grand Provost of Flanders, and who is master here, who wishes to speak with you. I hope,' continued he, 'that you will tell him nothing about what happened recently.'

'No,' said I; 'when I have pardoned I forget, and do not seek revenge.' Thus speaking, we arrived at an apartment, where we found M. de Lambertie, who gave us a most gracious reception. He held in his hand a letter from his brother, a good gentleman of Protestant origin, who lived three leagues from Bergerac. Our father had procured this recommendation for us. M. de Lambertie told us how sorry he was not to be able to procure our release. 'For any other crime,' said he, 'I should have sufficient influence and friends at court to obtain your pardon; but no one dares to exert himself for those of the reformed religion. All that I can do is to make you comfortable in this prison, and to keep you here as long as I

can, though the chain is just starting for the galleys.' Then he asked the jailor what good and comfortable chamber he had empty. The jailor mentioned two or three, which he rejected, and said: 'I not only desire that these gentlemen have every comfort, but also that they enjoy some recreation; and I therefore order you to place them in the alms-room.'

'But, sir,' said the jailor, 'there are only civil prisoners in that department, who have liberties which we dare not give to condemned criminals.'

'Well,' replied M. de Lambertie, 'I command that you give them those liberties; it is your business, and that of your turnkeys, to take care that they do not escape. Give them good beds and all they desire for their comfort, putting it all to my account, and not daring to take a sou from them.'

'Go, gentlemen,' continued he to us, 'to this alms-room; it is the largest, the best ventilated, the most cheerful in the whole prison; and, besides having good cheer, which will cost you nothing, you can make some money there. I order,' said he to the jailor, 'that you make M. Marteilhe provost of that room.' We thanked M. de Lambertie as well as we could for his great kindness. He told us that he would often come to the prison to inquire after us, and see if the jailor performed his orders with respect to us; and then he retired.

We were placed in the alms-room, and I was installed provost, to the great regret of my predecessor, who was removed elsewhere. This alms-room was very large, and contained six beds of twelve civil prisoners, who were generally people of some consideration and respectability; and besides, there were one or two young scapegraces, pickpockets, or prisoners for some light offences, whose business it was to make the beds, to cook, and keep clean the room. They slept upon a mattress in a corner of the apartment; they were, in fact, our *valets de chambre*. The provostship with which I was invested was a sufficiently onerous employment. He who possesses this office in the alms-room has to distribute all the charitable donations which are made to the prison. They are generally considerable, and are all brought into this room. There is a box, which hangs by a chain from the sill of the window, to receive the charity of the passers-by. The provost, who has the key of this box, opens it every morning to take the money out, and to distribute it to all the prisoners, as well to the civil, if they wish it, as to the criminal. Besides this, every morning the turnkeys go with carts or barrows throughout the town to collect the offerings of bakers, butchers, brewers, and fishmongers. They go also to the different markets, and all that

they collect is brought to the alms-room to be divided and distributed in all the apartments and cells by the provost, in proportion to the number of prisoners in each, of which the jailor gives him a list every day, and of which the total, when I arrived there, was from five to six hundred.

Although I had become the distributor-general of these alms, I was unable to remedy one abuse, which prevented any of this charity reaching the prisoners condemned to the galleys. The jailor received their share of the money from the box, to use it, he said, in making soup for them; but, alas! what soup that was! It was generally composed of bad and putrid pieces of beef, which he cooked for them with a little salt, the very smell of which made me sick.

Six weeks after we had resided in this happy apartment, M. de Lambertie came to see us, and told us that the chain was to start to-morrow for Dunkirk, where were six of the king's galleys, but that he had got us exempted from going, passing us off for sick; we must therefore remain that day in bed till the chain had started, which we did. This procured us the blessing of remaining in this comfort three months longer, after which another chain set out; and with this we went, as I will now narrate.

In January 1702, M. de Lambertie came to see us, and told us that the chain would start

the next day ; that he could still procure our exemption from joining it ; but that he must warn us, so that we might have the choice of going or remaining, that this would be the last chain which would go to the Dunkirk galleys ; that all the subsequent ones would go to Marseilles, a journey of more than three hundred leagues, which would be much harder and more painful for us ; that we should be obliged to do it all on foot, with the chain round our necks. Moreover, he should have to go himself into the country in the month of March, and would no longer be able to render us any service at Lille. He advised us, therefore, to start with the chain which to-morrow began its journey to Dunkirk. This chain was under his orders as far as that town ; he would have us conveyed apart from the other galley-slaves in a cart, as comfortably as possible, the distance being about twelve leagues.

These plausible reasons of M. de Lambertie decided us to choose the latter alternative. This good nobleman kept his word ; for instead of chaining us to the twenty-five or thirty galley-slaves who composed the band, and who went on foot, he put us into a cart, and every evening they gave us a good bed. The officer of the archers who guarded the chain made us take our meals at his table at Ypres, Furnes, and other places which we passed through, so that we were taken for people of distinction. But, alas ! this comfort was only a smoke, which soon disappeared ; for the third day after our departure from Lille, we arrived in Dunkirk, when we were all placed in the galley *L'Heureuse*, commanded by Captain de la Pailletine, who was the head of the squadron of six galleys which were in the port.—*By permission from the 'Autobiography of a French Galley-Slave.'*

CHAPTER II.

THE ESCAPE OF THE EARL OF NITHSDALE FROM THE TOWER.

It was at the surrender of Preston, in the rebellion of 1715, that William Maxwell, Earl of Nithsdale, was taken prisoner ; and early in the following year he was brought to trial, and found *guilty of high treason*. *Winter had set in with great rigour before the countess re-*

ceived the melancholy tidings that her husband was in the Tower, and that his life was in imminent danger. She heard, too, that he had manifested the utmost anxiety to have the consolation of seeing her.

Although at Terregles, near Traquair in Peeblesshire, when

the news reached her, consulting only her affection, this noble-minded woman determined to set off without delay. In these days, when conveyances were of the most imperfect kind, a hasty journey, at such a dreary season, to the British capital was not a light undertaking. She rode to Newcastle on horseback, whence she proceeded to York by stage. On her arrival at York, the country was covered to such a depth with snow, and the weather was so inclement, that it was impossible for the stage to continue its progress. Even the mail could not be forwarded. But while her husband stood in need of comfort and succour, she was not to be stopped by the formidable obstacles which were opposed to her. She resolutely took horse, and though the snow was generally above the horse's girths, she reached London safe and sound, without any accident.

But though she had happily accomplished her toilsome journey, there were still serious difficulties to be overcome. On applying to the government to be allowed to see her husband, she met with a repulse; she was told that her wish could not be granted, unless she would consent to be shut up with him in the Tower. To this, however, she would not submit, and she assigned as her reason, that she was in a state of health which would not suffer her to undergo confinement. Her real motive for refusing was, that her being

thus secluded would prevent her from soliciting in her husband's behalf, and, which was of far more importance, would render abortive a scheme which she had already formed to effect his escape. The negative which she had received from the government did not prevent her from obtaining frequent interviews with her husband. By bribing the guards she often contrived to see her lord, till the day upon which he was condemned; after that she was allowed, for the last week, to see and take her leave of him.

As soon as she arrived in London, she began her exertions to ward off the danger which hung over the man she loved. Her first applications were made to persons in office, and those possessing political influence. The result would have disheartened any one less determined than she was to persevere. Not a single individual held out to her the slightest hope; from every mouth she heard the dreadful assurance, that though some of the captives would be pardoned, it was absolutely certain that Lord Nithsdale would not be included in the number. From a direct appeal to the sovereign there was little or no prospect of benefit. George I. is said to have expressly prohibited any petition being conveyed into his hands from the earl, and even to have taken precautions to avoid a personal supplication being made to him. Lord Nithsdale, however, was

extremely anxious that the king should receive one,—not, it appears, merely for his own sake, but because he flattered himself that it might excite an interest in favour of his wife.

Though the countess felt convinced that the step would be unavailing, she consented to make the trial, for the purpose of satisfying her husband. In the narrative she wrote to her sister of her husband's escape, she gives an account of her interview with the king:—

‘So the first day that I heard the king was to go to the drawing-room, I dressed myself in black, as if I had been in mourning, and sent for Mrs. Morgan (the same who accompanied me to the Tower); because, as I did not know his majesty personally, I might have mistaken some other person for him. She stayed by me, and told me when he was coming. I had another lady with me (Lady Nairn), and we remained in a room between the king's apartments and the drawing-room, so that he was obliged to go through it; and as there were three windows in it, we sat in the middle one, that I might have time enough to meet him before he could pass. I threw myself at his feet, and told him in French that I was the unfortunate Countess of Nithsdale, that he might not pretend to be ignorant of my person. But perceiving that he wanted to go off without receiving my petition, I caught hold of the skirt of his coat, that

he might stop and hear me. He endeavoured to escape out of my hands, but I kept such strong hold, that he dragged me on my knees from the middle of the room to the very door of the drawing-room. At last one of the blue ribbons who attended his majesty took me round the waist, while another wrested the coat out of my hands. The petition, which I had endeavoured to thrust into his pocket, fell down in the scuffle, and I almost fainted away through grief and disappointment. One of the gentlemen in waiting picked up the petition; and as I knew that it ought to have been given to the lord of the bedchamber, who was then in waiting, I wrote to him, and entreated him to do me the favour to read the petition which I had had the honour to present to his majesty. Fortunately for me, it happened to be my Lord Dorset, with whom Mrs. Morgan was very intimate. Accordingly, she went into the drawing-room and delivered him the letter, which he received very graciously. He could not read it then, as he was at cards with the prince; but as soon as ever the game was over, he read it, and behaved (as I afterwards learned) with the warmest zeal for my interest, and was seconded by the Duke of Montrose, who had seen me in the ante-chamber, and wanted to speak to me. But I made him a sign not to come near me, lest his acquaintance might thwart my designs.

They read over the petition several times, but without any success; but it became the topic of their conversation the rest of the evening; and the harshness with which I had been treated soon spread abroad, not much to the honour of the king.'

This abortive supplication seems to have even accelerated the fate of Lord Nithsdale and his fellow-prisoners. It was made on Monday the 13th of February, and on Thursday or Friday following, it was resolved in council, that the sentence passed on the delinquents should be carried into effect. The needful preliminary warrants and orders to the lieutenant of the Tower, and to the sheriffs of London and Middlesex, were accordingly issued on Saturday. While these matters were in progress, the Countess of Derwentwater, accompanied by the Duchesses of Cleveland and Bolton, and several other ladies of the highest rank, succeeded in obtaining a private audience with the king, and implored his clemency for her husband. She was suffered to speak, but her prayers were in vain.

There was yet one resource left. It was, indeed, a weak one. This was to petition the two Houses of Parliament to intercede for the criminals. On the 21st of February the wives of the doomed lords, with about twenty more women of rank, went to the Parliament House to present petitions, and solicit

Nothing, however, was done by either assembly on that day. On the ensuing morning the mournful bands of wives, with an increased number of female friends, again stationed themselves in the lobbies to win the votes of the members. This measure produced considerable effect; many were moved by the tears and pleadings of the melancholy supplicants. In the Commons the petitions were presented by Sir Richard Steele, Mr. Shippen, and others, all of whom strenuously exerted themselves to turn the scale on the side of mercy. The speech of Sir Richard Steele in particular was copious and forcible; it must have been powerful in its effect, for it drew down on him the virulent abuse and slander of the ministerial journals. The motion to address the king in favour of the delinquents, was hotly opposed by the ministers and the staunchest of their adherents. Walpole with violence scarcely stopped short of stigmatizing as traitors all who wished the king to exercise in this instance his prerogative of pardoning. Fearing that, if the question of an address were put to the vote, he should be left in a minority, he moved an adjournment for a week. He carried his point, but in so doing closed one avenue to the gates of mercy.

The struggle was still more vigorously made in the Upper House. Many of the Lords had been gained over by female eloquence. An animated de-

bate took place on the question of whether the petitions should be read. The permitting them to be read was vehemently opposed by the ministers and their friends; nevertheless it was carried in the affirmative by a small majority. Foiled in this point, the opponents of the petitions next contended, that the sovereign had no power to pardon or reprove persons who had been sentenced under an impeachment. But here again they failed, it being decided that the disputed power was possessed by the king. Having thus far succeeded, the advocates of the condemned peers moved that an address should be presented to his majesty, entreating him to grant a respite to the convicted lords. The opposite party, however, moved as an amendment, that his majesty should be requested to reprove such of the guilty peers as should deserve his mercy. The amendment was carried, as was also another—that the time of the respite should be left to his majesty's discretion. The address was presented on the same evening; and the king replied, that, on this and other occasions, he would do as he thought most consistent with the dignity of his crown and the safety of his people.

The meaning of the king's words did not long remain ambiguous. On the evening of the next day, the 23d of February, a council was held to decide upon, or rather to announce, the

fate of the prisoners. A respite was granted to the Earl of Carnwath and the Lords Widdington and Nairn, but orders were given to execute the Earls of Derwentwater, Nithsdale, and Viscount Kenmure, on the following morning.

From the very first, the Countess of Nithsdale had placed but little reliance upon the royal clemency, and had busied herself in devising the means for the earl's escape. But as soon as she heard the turn which the debate had taken in the House of Peers, she saw clearly that her husband must expect no favour from the Government. There remained, therefore, no other resource than to carry into effect, without delay, the scheme which she had formed to save him. She had less than twenty-four hours in which to accomplish her purpose. If within that short time she could not rescue her husband, his death was inevitable. With what admirable skill and presence of mind she achieved her arduous task, must be told in her own words:—

‘As the motion had passed generally, I thought I could draw some advantage in favour of my design. Accordingly, I immediately left the House of Lords, and hastened to the Tower, where, after affecting an air of joy and satisfaction, I told all the guards I passed that I came to bring joyful tidings to the prisoner. I desired them to lay aside their fears, for the

petition had passed the House in their favour. I then gave them some money to drink to the lords and his majesty, though it was but trifling; for I thought that if I were too liberal on the occasion, they might suspect my designs, and that giving them something would gain their good humour and service for the next day, which was the eve of the execution. The next morning I could not go to the Tower, having so many things on my hands to put in readiness; but in the evening, when all was ready, I sent for Mrs. Mills, with whom I lodged, and acquainted her with my design of attempting my lord's escape, as there was no prospect of his being pardoned, and this was the last night before the execution. I told her that I had everything in readiness, and that I trusted she would not refuse to accompany me,—that my lord might pass for her. I pressed her to come immediately, as we had no time to lose. At the same time, I sent for Mrs. Morgan, then usually known by the name of Hilton, to whose acquaintance my dear Evans (her maid) had introduced me, which I looked upon as a very singular happiness. I immediately communicated my resolution to her. She was of a very tall and slender make, so I begged her to put under her own riding hood one that I had purchased for Mrs. Mills,—as she was to send her to my lord,—
~~thinking~~ *thinking* out he might be

taken for her. Mrs. Mills was then with child, so that she was not only of the same height, but nearly the same size, as my lord. When we were in the coach I never ceased talking, that they might have no leisure to reflect. Their surprise and astonishment when I first opened my design to them, had made them consent without ever thinking of the consequences.

‘On our arrival at the Tower, the first I introduced was Mrs. Morgan; for I was only allowed to take in one at a time. She brought in the clothes that were to serve Mrs. Mills, when she left her own behind her. When Mrs. Morgan had taken off what she had brought for my purpose, I conducted her back to the staircase; and in going I begged her to send me in my maid to dress me,—that I was afraid of being too late to present my petition that night if she did not come immediately. I despatched her safe, and went partly down stairs to meet Mrs. Mills, who had the precaution to hold her handkerchief to her face, as was very natural for a woman to do when she was going to bid her last farewell to a friend on the eve of his execution. I had, indeed, desired her to do it, that my lord might go out in the same manner. Her eyebrows were rather inclined to be sandy, and my lord's were dark and very thick; however, I had prepared some paint, of the colour of hers, to disguise his with. I also bought

an artificial head-dress of the same coloured hair as hers ; and I painted his face with white, and his cheeks with rouge, to hide his long beard, which he had not had time to shave. All this provision I had before left in the Tower. The poor guards, whom my slight liberality the day before had endeared me to, let me go quietly with my company, and were not so strictly on the watch as they usually had been ; and the more so, as they were persuaded, from what I had told them the day before, that the prisoners would obtain their pardon. I made Mrs. Mills take off her own hood, and put on that which I had brought for her. I then took her by the hand, and led her out of my lord's chamber, and in passing through the next room, in which there were several people, with all the concern imaginable, I said : " My dear Mrs. Catherine, go in all haste and send me my waiting-maid ; she certainly cannot reflect how late it is ; she forgets that I am to present a petition to-night, and if I let slip this opportunity I am undone, for to-morrow will be too late. Hasten her as much as possible, for I shall be on thorns till she comes." Everybody in the room, who were chiefly guards' wives and daughters, seemed to compassionate me exceedingly, and the sentinel officiously opened the door. When I had seen her out, I returned back to my

lord and finished dressing him. I had taken care that Mrs. Mills did not go out crying, as she came in, that my lord might the better pass for the lady who came in crying and afflicted ; and the more so, because he had the same dress she wore.

' When I had almost finished dressing my lord in all my petticoats, excepting one, I perceived that it was growing dark, and was afraid that the light of the candles might betray us ; so I resolved to set off. I went out leading him by the hand, and he held his handkerchief to his eyes. I spoke to him in the most piteous and afflicted tone of voice, bewailing bitterly the negligence of Evans, who had ruined me by her delay. Then said I : " My dear Mrs. Betty, for the love of God run quickly and bring her with you. You know my lodging, and if ever you made despatch in your life, do it at present. I am almost distracted with this disappointment." The guards opened the doors, and I went down stairs with him, still conjuring to make all possible despatch. As soon as he had cleared the door, I made him walk before me, for fear the sentinel should take notice of his walk ; but I still continued to press him to make all the despatch he possibly could. At the bottom of the stairs I met my dear Evans, into whose hands I confided him.

' I had before engaged Mr. Mills to be in readiness before

the Tower to conduct him to some place of safety, in case he succeeded. He looked upon the affair as so very improbable to succeed, that his astonishment when he saw us threw him into such consternation, that he was almost out of himself; which Evans perceiving, with the greatest presence of mind, without telling him (Lord Nithsdale) anything, lest he should mistrust them, conducted him to some of her own friends, on whom she could rely, and so secured him,—without which we should have been undone. When she had conducted him and left him with them, she returned to find Mr. Mills, who by this time had recovered himself from his astonishment. They went home together; and having found a place of security, they conducted him to it.

‘ In the meanwhile, as I had pretended to have sent the young lady on a message, I was obliged to return up-stairs and go back to my lord’s room, in the same feigned anxiety of being too late; so that everybody seemed sincerely to sympathize with my distress. When I was in the room, I talked to him as if he had been really present, and answered my own questions in my lord’s voice, as nearly as I could imitate it. I walked up and down, as if we were conversing together, till I thought they had time enough thoroughly to clear themselves of the guards. *I then thought proper to make* ~~it~~ *also. I opened the door,*

and stood half in it, that those in the outward chamber might hear what I said; but held it so close that they could not look in. I bid my lord a formal farewell for that night, and added, that something more than usual must have happened to make Evans negligent on this important occasion, who had always been so punctual in the smallest trifles; that I saw no other remedy but to go in person; that if the Tower were still open when I finished my business, I would return that night; but that he might be assured that I would be with him as early in the morning as I could gain admittance to the Tower; and I flattered myself I should bring favourable news. Then, before I shut the door, I pulled through the string of the latch, so that it could only be opened on the inside. I then shut it with some degree of force, that I might be sure of its being well shut. I said to the servant as I passed by, who was ignorant of the whole transaction, that he need not carry candles in to his master till my lord sent for him, as he desired to finish some prayers first. I went down stairs and called a coach, as there were several on the stand. I drove home to my lodgings, where poor Mr. Mackenzie had been waiting to carry the petition, in case my attempt failed. I told him there was no need of any petition, as my lord was safe out of the Tower, and out of the hands

of his enemies ; but that I did not know where he was.

‘ I discharged the coach, and sent for a sedan-chair, and went to the Duchess of Buccleuch, who expected me about that time, as I had begged of her to present the petition for me, having taken my precautions against all events. I asked if she were at home, and they answered that she expected me, and had another duchess with her. I refused to go up-stairs, as she had company with her, and I was not in a condition to see any other company. I begged to be shown into a chamber below stairs, and that they would have the goodness to send her grace’s maid to me, having something to say to her. I had discharged the chair, lest I might be pursued and watched. When the maid came in, I desired her to present my most humble respects to her grace, who they told me had company with her, and to acquaint her that this was my only reason for not coming up-stairs. I also charged her with my sincerest thanks for her kind offer to accompany me when I went to present my petition. I added that she might spare herself any further trouble, as it was now judged more advisable to present one general petition in the name of all : however, that I should never be unmindful of my particular obligations to her grace, which I would return very soon to acknowledge in person.

‘ I then desired one of the servants to call a chair, and I went to the Duchess of Montrose, who had always borne a part in my distresses. When I arrived, she left her company to deny herself, not being able to see me under the affliction which she judged me to be in. By mistake, however, I was admitted ; so there was no remedy. She came to me ; and as my heart was in an ecstasy of joy, I expressed it in my countenance as she entered the room. I ran up to her in the transport of my joy. She appeared to be exceedingly shocked and frightened, and has since confessed to me that she apprehended my trouble had thrown me out of myself, till I communicated my happiness to her. She then advised me to retire to some place of security, for that the king was highly displeased, and even enraged, at the petition I had presented to him, and had complained of it severely. I sent for another chair ; for I always discharged them immediately, lest I might be pursued. Her grace said she would go to court, and see how the news of my lord’s escape was received. When the news was brought to the king, he flew into an excess of passion, and said he was betrayed, for it could not have been done without some confederacy. He instantly despatched two persons to the Tower, to see that the other prisoners were secure, lest they

should follow the example. Some threw the blame upon one, some upon another. The duchess was the only one at court who knew it.

‘When I left the duchess, I went to a house which Evans had found out for me, and where she promised to acquaint me where my lord was. She got thither some few minutes after me, and told me that, when she had seen him secure, she went in search of Mr. Mills, who by this time had recovered himself from his astonishment; that he returned to her house, where she had found him, and that he had removed my lord from the first place, where she had desired him to wait, to the house of a poor woman directly opposite to the guard-house. She had but one small room, up one pair of stairs, and a very small bed in it. We threw ourselves upon the bed, that we might not be heard walking up and down. She left us a bottle of wine and some bread, and Mrs. Mills brought us some more in her pocket the next day. We subsisted on this provision from Thursday till Saturday night, when Mrs. Mills came and conducted my lord to the Venetian ambassador’s. We did not communicate the affair to his excellency, but one of his servants concealed him in his own room till Wednesday, on which day the ambassador’s coach-and-six was to go down *to Dover to meet his brother. My lord put on a livery, and*

went down in the retinue, without the least suspicion, to Dover, where Mr. Mitchell, the ambassador’s servant, hired a small vessel, and immediately set sail for Calais. The passage was so remarkably short, that the captain threw out this reflection, that the wind could not have served better if his passengers had been flying for their lives, little thinking it to be really the case.

‘For my own part, I absconded to the house of a very honest man in Drury Lane, where I remained until I was assured of my lord’s safe arrival on the Continent. I then wrote to the Duchess of Buccleuch—everybody thought till then that I was gone off with my lord—to tell her that I understood I was suspected of having contrived my lord’s escape, as was very natural to suppose; that if I could have been happy enough to have done so, I should be flattered to have the merit of it attributed to me; but that a bare suspicion, without proof, could never be a sufficient ground for my being punished for a supposed offence, though it might be motive enough to me to provide a place of security; so I entreated her to procure leave for me to go with safety about my business. So far from granting my request, they were resolved to secure me if possible. After several debates, Mr. Solicitor-General (Mr. Fortescue Aland), who was an utter stranger to me, had the humanity to say, that since I showed so

much respect to Government as not to appear in public, it would be cruel to make any search after me; upon which it was decided, that if I remained concealed no further search should be made, but that if I appeared either in England or Scotland I should be secured.'

This scanty portion of kindness was of no benefit whatever to the countess. 'It was not,' says she, 'sufficient for me, unless I would submit to expose my son to beggary.' With her wonted spirit, she determined that, having already risked her life for the safety of the father, she would once more hazard it for the fortune of the child. On first hearing of her husband's apprehension, she had thought it prudent to conceal many important family papers and other valuables; and having no person at hand with whom they could be safely entrusted, had hid them under-ground, in a place known only to the gardener, in whom she could entirely confide. It had proved a happy precaution; for after her departure the house had been searched, and as she expressed it, 'God only knows what might have transpired from those papers.' In addition to the danger of their being discovered, there was the imminent risk of their being destroyed by damp, so that no time must be lost in regaining them before too late. She therefore determined on another journey to the north, and, for greater secrecy, on

horseback, though this mode of travelling, which was new to her, was extremely fatiguing. She, however, with her maid Mrs. Evans, and a servant that could be depended on, set out from London, and reached Traquair in safety, and without any one being aware of her intentions. Here she ventured to rest two days, in the society of her sister-in-law and Lord Traquair, feeling security in the conviction, that as the lord-lieutenant of the county was an old friend of her husband's, he would not allow any search to be made after her without first giving her warning to abscond. From thence she proceeded to Terregles, whither it was supposed she came with the permission of Government; and to keep up that opinion, she invited her neighbours to visit her. That same night she dug up the papers from their hiding-place, where happily they had sustained no injury, and sent them at once by safe hands to Traquair. This was accomplished just in time, for the magistrates of Dumfries began to entertain suspicions of her right to be there, and desired to see her leave from Government. On hearing this, 'I expressed,' she says, 'my surprise that they had been so backward in paying their respects; "but," said I, "better late than never: be sure to tell them that they shall be welcome whenever they choose to come." This was after dinner; but I lost

no time to put everything in readiness, yet with all possible secrecy; and the next morning, before daybreak, I set off again for London, with the same attendants, and, as before, I put up at the smallest inns, and arrived safe once more.'

George I. could not forgive Lady Nithsdale for the heroic part she had acted. This was manifested in various ways. When he was petitioned for dower by the widows of the peers who had been found guilty of treason, he granted the request, with only one exception; that exception was the Countess of Nithsdale, whom he declared not to be entitled to the same privilege. He is even said to have forbidden her name to be uttered in his presence. Her visit to Scotland only served to increase his wrath. 'A lady informed me,' says Lady Nithsdale, 'that the king was extremely incensed at the news; that he had issued orders to have me arrested; adding, that

I did whatever I pleased in despite of all his designs, and that I had given him more trouble than any woman in Europe. For which reasons I kept myself as closely concealed as possible, till the heat of these rumours had abated. In the meanwhile, I took the opinion of a very famous lawyer, who was a man of the strictest probity; he advised me to go off as soon as they had ceased searching for me. I followed his advice, and about a fortnight after I escaped, without any accident whatever.'

She met her husband and children at Paris, whither they had come from Bruges to meet her. They soon afterwards joined the Pretender's Court at Avignon; but, finding the mode of life there little to their taste, shortly after returned to Italy, where they lived in great privacy. Lord Nithsdale died at Rome in 1744; his wife survived him five years.

CHAPTER III.

THE PRISON EXPLOITS OF BARON TRENCK.

AMONG those who have been the victims of a despotic power, and who have struggled manfully and perseveringly to defeat its cruelty, the name of Frederick, Baron Trenck, takes a foremost place. Born of an eminent and noble family, he entered the University of Königsberg at the age of thirteen, and in 1743, when not quite eighteen, found himself a cornet in the body-guards of the Prussian sovereign, and high in favour with that monarch, Frederick the Great. But when, some time after, it came to Frederick's ears that Trenck had secret re-

lations with a member of the royal family that cast a stain upon his kingly honour, he was treated with great harshness; and his enemies, of whom he had many, concocted a plan to effect his ruin.

In the Austrian service there was a first cousin and namesake of Trenck, Baron Francis Trenck, who commanded the Pandours,—a heartless, godless man, and stained with innumerable vices. In the campaigns of 1744 and 1745 he had incessantly harassed the Prussian army, inflicting on it many severe blows, and on one occasion he narrowly missed making Frederick a prisoner. An intercourse between this obnoxious personage and one of the officers of the body-guards, was consequently not pleasing to the monarch. Francis had openly declared his intention to bequeath all his vast property to his cousin, and had sent back to him, with a friendly billet, two of his cousin's horses, which had been captured by the Pandours. In an evil hour Trenck was induced by his secret enemies to write a letter to his cousin, thanking him for his kindness, and asking for some of his fine Hungarian horses. The man who prompted him to ask for the horses, and offered to forward the letter, was his own captain. This officer was a favourite and spy of the king, and cherished an old grudge against Trenck, and was likewise considerably in his debt.

It is doubtful whether the letter was sent; but four months afterwards, an answer, purporting to be from the Austrian baron, was delivered to Trenck by the camp postman. The answer, which the receiver believes was a forgery, contained expressions on which a suspicious mind might put sinister constructions.

On the day after the receipt of this fatal letter, Trenck was arrested, deprived of his commission, and sent off from the army under an escort of fifty hussars, to be imprisoned in the fortress of Glatz. It was the intention of the king to limit to a year the period of confinement; but of this intention Trenck was unfortunately left in ignorance. Captivity for life was the dreary prospect which was ever before him. He petitioned for a trial by court-martial, desiring no favour if he were found guilty. The petition remained unnoticed, and this confirmed him in his idea that he had nothing to hope. At the commencement of his imprisonment, his situation was as bearable as imprisonment can be to a young and high-spirited man, who knows that he is unjustly punished. He was placed in an apartment belonging to an officer of the guard, had his servants to wait on him, could obtain whatever books he wanted, and was allowed the privilege of walking on the ramparts. In one instance, still more indulgence underhand was

They read over the petition several times, but without any success; but it became the topic of their conversation the rest of the evening; and the harshness with which I had been treated soon spread abroad, not much to the honour of the king.'

This abortive supplication seems to have even accelerated the fate of Lord Nithsdale and his fellow-prisoners. It was made on Monday the 13th of February, and on Thursday or Friday following, it was resolved in council, that the sentence passed on the delinquents should be carried into effect. The needful preliminary warrants and orders to the lieutenant of the Tower, and to the sheriffs of London and Middlesex, were accordingly issued on Saturday. While these matters were in progress, the Countess of Derwentwater, accompanied by the Duchesses of Cleveland and Bolton, and several other ladies of the highest rank, succeeded in obtaining a private audience with the king, and implored his clemency for her husband. She was suffered to speak, but her prayers were in vain.

There was yet one resource left. It was, indeed, a weak one. This was to petition the two Houses of Parliament to intercede for the criminals. On the 21st of February the wives of the doomed lords, with about twenty more women of rank, went to the Parliament House *to present petitions, and solicit the members as they entered.*

Nothing, however, was done by either assembly on that day. On the ensuing morning the mournful bands of wives, with an increased number of female friends, again stationed themselves in the lobbies to win the votes of the members. This measure produced considerable effect; many were moved by the tears and pleadings of the melancholy supplicants. In the Commons the petitions were presented by Sir Richard Steele, Mr. Shippen, and others, all of whom strenuously exerted themselves to turn the scale on the side of mercy. The speech of Sir Richard Steele in particular was copious and forcible; it must have been powerful in its effect, for it drew down on him the virulent abuse and slander of the ministerial journals. The motion to address the king in favour of the delinquents, was hotly opposed by the ministers and the staunchest of their adherents. Walpole with violence scarcely stopped short of stigmatizing as traitors all who wished the king to exercise in this instance his prerogative of pardoning. Fearing that, if the question of an address were put to the vote, he should be left in a minority, he moved an adjournment for a week. He carried his point, but in so doing closed one avenue to the gates of mercy.

The struggle was still more vigorously made in the Upper House. Many of the Lords had been gained over by female eloquence. An animated de-

bate took place on the question of whether the petitions should be read. The permitting them to be read was vehemently opposed by the ministers and their friends; nevertheless it was carried in the affirmative by a small majority. Foiled in this point, the opponents of the petitions next contended, that the sovereign had no power to pardon or reprieve persons who had been sentenced under an impeachment. But here again they failed, it being decided that the disputed power was possessed by the king. Having thus far succeeded, the advocates of the condemned peers moved that an address should be presented to his majesty, entreating him to grant a respite to the convicted lords. The opposite party, however, moved as an amendment, that his majesty should be requested to reprieve such of the guilty peers as should deserve his mercy. The amendment was carried, as was also another—that the time of the respite should be left to his majesty's discretion. The address was presented on the same evening; and the king replied, that, on this and other occasions, he would do as he thought most consistent with the dignity of his crown and the safety of his people.

The meaning of the king's words did not long remain ambiguous. On the evening of the next day, the 23d of February, a council was held to decide upon, or rather to announce, the

fate of the prisoners. A respite was granted to the Earl of Carnwath and the Lords Widdington and Nairn, but orders were given to execute the Earls of Derwentwater, Nithsdale, and Viscount Kenmure, on the following morning.

From the very first, the Countess of Nithsdale had placed but little reliance upon the royal clemency, and had busied herself in devising the means for the earl's escape. But as soon as she heard the turn which the debate had taken in the House of Peers, she saw clearly that her husband must expect no favour from the Government. There remained, therefore, no other resource than to carry into effect, without delay, the scheme which she had formed to save him. She had less than twenty-four hours in which to accomplish her purpose. If within that short time she could not rescue her husband, his death was inevitable. With what admirable skill and presence of mind she achieved her arduous task, must be told in her own words:—

‘As the motion had passed generally, I thought I could draw some advantage in favour of my design. Accordingly, I immediately left the House of Lords, and hastened to the Tower, where, after affecting an air of joy and satisfaction, I told all the guards I passed that I came to bring joyful tidings to the prisoner. I desired them to lay aside their fears, for the

petition had passed the House in their favour. I then gave them some money to drink to the lords and his majesty, though it was but trifling ; for I thought that if I were too liberal on the occasion, they might suspect my designs, and that giving them something would gain their good humour and service for the next day, which was the eve of the execution. The next morning I could not go to the Tower, having so many things on my hands to put in readiness ; but in the evening, when all was ready, I sent for Mrs. Mills, with whom I lodged, and acquainted her with my design of attempting my lord's escape, as there was no prospect of his being pardoned, and this was the last night before the execution. I told her that I had everything in readiness, and that I trusted she would not refuse to accompany me,—that my lord might pass for her. I pressed her to come immediately, as we had no time to lose. At the same time, I sent for Mrs. Morgan, then usually known by the name of Hilton, to whose acquaintance my dear Evans (her maid) had introduced me, which I looked upon as a very singular happiness. I immediately communicated my resolution to her. She was of a very tall and slender make, so I begged her to put under her own riding hood one that I had prepared for Mrs. Mills,—as she *was to lend hers to my lord,—that in coming out he might be*

taken for her. Mrs. Mills was then with child, so that she was not only of the same height, but nearly the same size, as my lord. When we were in the coach I never ceased talking, that they might have no leisure to reflect. Their surprise and astonishment when I first opened my design to them, had made them consent without ever thinking of the consequences.

‘ On our arrival at the Tower, the first I introduced was Mrs. Morgan ; for I was only allowed to take in one at a time. She brought in the clothes that were to serve Mrs. Mills, when she left her own behind her. When Mrs. Morgan had taken off what she had brought for my purpose, I conducted her back to the staircase ; and in going I begged her to send me in my maid to dress me,—that I was afraid of being too late to present my petition that night if she did not come immediately. I despatched her safe, and went partly down stairs to meet Mrs. Mills, who had the precaution to hold her handkerchief to her face, as was very natural for a woman to do when she was going to bid her last farewell to a friend on the eve of his execution. I had, indeed, desired her to do it, that my lord might go out in the same manner. Her eyebrows were rather inclined to be sandy, and my lord's were dark and very thick ; however, I had prepared some paint, of the colour of hers, to disguise his with. I also bought

an artificial head-dress of the same coloured hair as hers ; and I painted his face with white, and his cheeks with rouge, to hide his long beard, which he had not had time to shave. All this provision I had before left in the Tower. The poor guards, whom my slight liberality the day before had endeared me to, let me go quietly with my company, and were not so strictly on the watch as they usually had been ; and the more so, as they were persuaded, from what I had told them the day before, that the prisoners would obtain their pardon. I made Mrs. Mills take off her own hood, and put on that which I had brought for her. I then took her by the hand, and led her out of my lord's chamber, and in passing through the next room, in which there were several people, with all the concern imaginable, I said : " My dear Mrs. Catherine, go in all haste and send me my waiting-maid ; she certainly cannot reflect how late it is ; she forgets that I am to present a petition to-night, and if I let slip this opportunity I am undone, for to-morrow will be too late. Hasten her as much as possible, for I shall be on thorns till she comes." Everybody in the room, who were chiefly guards' wives and daughters, seemed to compassionate me exceedingly, and the *sentinel* officiously opened the door. When I had seen her out, I returned back to my

lord and finished dressing him. I had taken care that Mrs. Mills did not go out crying, as she came in, that my lord might the better pass for the lady who came in crying and afflicted ; and the more so, because he had the same dress she wore.

' When I had almost finished dressing my lord in all my petticoats, excepting one, I perceived that it was growing dark, and was afraid that the light of the candles might betray us ; so I resolved to set off. I went out leading him by the hand, and he held his handkerchief to his eyes. I spoke to him in the most piteous and afflicted tone of voice, bewailing bitterly the negligence of Evans, who had ruined me by her delay. Then said I : " My dear Mrs. Betty, for the love of God run quickly and bring her with you. You know my lodging, and if ever you made despatch in your life, do it at present. I am almost distracted with this disappointment." The guards opened the doors, and I went down stairs with him, still conjuring to make all possible despatch. As soon as he had cleared the door, I made him walk before me, for fear the sentinel should take notice of his walk ; but I still continued to press him to make all the despatch he possibly could. At the bottom of the stairs I met my dear Evans, into whose hands I confided him.

' I had before engaged Mr. Mills to be in readiness before

the Tower to conduct him to some place of safety, in case he succeeded. He looked upon the affair as so very improbable to succeed, that his astonishment when he saw us threw him into such consternation, that he was almost out of himself; which Evans perceiving, with the greatest presence of mind, without telling him (Lord Nithsdale) anything, lest he should mistrust them, conducted him to some of her own friends, on whom she could rely, and so secured him,—without which we should have been undone. When she had conducted him and left him with them, she returned to find Mr. Mills, who by this time had recovered himself from his astonishment. They went home together; and having found a place of security, they conducted him to it.

‘In the meanwhile, as I had pretended to have sent the young lady on a message, I was obliged to return up-stairs and go back to my lord’s room, in the same feigned anxiety of being too late; so that everybody seemed sincerely to sympathize with my distress. When I was in the room, I talked to him as if he had been really present, and answered my own questions in my lord’s voice, as nearly as I could imitate it. I walked up and down, as if we were conversing together, till I thought they had time enough thoroughly to clear themselves of the guards. *I then thought proper to make off also. I opened the door,*

and stood half in it, that those in the outward chamber might hear what I said; but held it so close that they could not look in. I bid my lord a formal farewell for that night, and added, that something more than usual must have happened to make Evans negligent on this important occasion, who had always been so punctual in the smallest trifles; that I saw no other remedy but to go in person; that if the Tower were still open when I finished my business, I would return that night; but that he might be assured that I would be with him as early in the morning as I could gain admittance to the Tower; and I flattered myself I should bring favourable news. Then, before I shut the door, I pulled through the string of the latch, so that it could only be opened on the inside. I then shut it with some degree of force, that I might be sure of its being well shut. I said to the servant as I passed by, who was ignorant of the whole transaction, that he need not carry candles in to his master till my lord sent for him, as he desired to finish some prayers first. I went down stairs and called a coach, as there were several on the stand. I drove home to my lodgings, where poor Mr. Mackenzie had been waiting to carry the petition, in case my attempt failed. I told him there was no need of any petition, as my lord was safe out of the Tower, and out of the hands

of his enemies ; but that I did not know where he was.

‘ I discharged the coach, and sent for a sedan-chair, and went to the Duchess of Buccleuch, who expected me about that time, as I had begged of her to present the petition for me, having taken my precautions against all events. I asked if she were at home, and they answered that she expected me, and had another duchess with her. I refused to go up-stairs, as she had company with her, and I was not in a condition to see any other company. I begged to be shown into a chamber below stairs, and that they would have the goodness to send her grace’s maid to me, having something to say to her. I had discharged the chair, lest I might be pursued and watched. When the maid came in, I desired her to present my most humble respects to her grace, who they told me had company with her, and to acquaint her that this was my only reason for not coming up-stairs. I also charged her with my sincerest thanks for her kind offer to accompany me when I went to present my petition. I added that she might spare herself any further trouble, as it was now judged more advisable to present one general petition in the name of all : however, that I should never be unmindful of my particular obligations to her grace, which I would return very soon to acknowledge in person.

‘ I then desired one of the servants to call a chair, and I went to the Duchess of Montrose, who had always borne a part in my distresses. When I arrived, she left her company to deny herself, not being able to see me under the affliction which she judged me to be in. By mistake, however, I was admitted ; so there was no remedy. She came to me ; and as my heart was in an ecstasy of joy, I expressed it in my countenance as she entered the room. I ran up to her in the transport of my joy. She appeared to be exceedingly shocked and frightened, and has since confessed to me that she apprehended my trouble had thrown me out of myself, till I communicated my happiness to her. She then advised me to retire to some place of security, for that the king was highly displeased, and even enraged, at the petition I had presented to him, and had complained of it severely. I sent for another chair ; for I always discharged them immediately, lest I might be pursued. Her grace said she would go to court, and see how the news of my lord’s escape was received. When the news was brought to the king, he flew into an excess of passion, and said he was betrayed, for it could not have been done without some confederacy. He instantly despatched two persons to the Tower, to see that the other prisoners were secure, lest they

order given, and supposed the plot to have been betrayed, hurried to the citadel, and warned him of his danger. Perilous as his position seemed to be, Schell was too much a man of honour to abandon the prisoner without making an effort to save him. He entered the prison, drew a corporal's sabre from under his coat, and said, 'My friend, we are betrayed; follow me; only do not suffer me to fall alive into the hands of my enemies.' Trenck followed him in such haste that he had not time to think of taking with him six pistoles, which was all the money he possessed. They had not gone a hundred paces before they met the adjutant and an officer, who was coming to put Schell under arrest. At sight of them Schell sprang upon the rampart, leaped from the wall, and was quickly followed by Trenck. The distance to the ground was not great, and Trenck was very slightly hurt; but Schell was so unfortunate as to dislocate his ankle. Shuddering at the thought of being taken, he earnestly begged that his friend would despatch him. Possessed of more than common strength, Trenck did not despair of rescuing his comrade, who was a small, weak man. He lifted him over the palisades, took him upon his back, and began to run with all his might. There were several circumstances in favour of the fugitives. No one would venture

his neck in leaping after them, and therefore their pursuers must go round the citadel and through the town before they could fairly enter on the chase. The sun, too, was just setting, and darkness would soon conceal their track.

They had not gone more than a hundred yards ere the alarm-guns were fired, to summon the peasants and hussars to guard all the passes, and intercept deserters. This was an alarming sound, their being a general belief that escape was impossible when a runaway had not by full two hours the start of the signal. They soon heard the alarm sounding in the frontier villages, and the peasants everywhere in motion to cut off their retreat. In this emergency, Trenck's presence of mind did not desert him. They had been seen making for the Bohemian border, and on that side egress, and even progress, was become impossible; but on the Silesian side of the river Neisse no one would think of looking for them. To that quarter Trenck directed his flight. Partly wading, partly swimming, with his friend clinging to him, he contrived to cross the river, which was slightly frozen. Their course was continued up the bank, till they had left behind them the villages which formed what was called 'the line of desertion,' and then, having luckily found a fisherman's boat moored to the shore, they

recrossed the Neisse, and took to the mountains. On reaching them they sat down to deliberate, after which Trenck cut a stick to assist his friend in limping forward, when he himself was compelled to desist for a while from carrying him. They then resumed their journey, and wandered about for hours, up to the middle in snow, without being able to discover a path. When day broke, and they were expecting to find themselves on the frontier, they heard the town clock of Glatz, which painfully convinced them that they had gone astray, and were still in the midst of danger. They were, in fact, only seven miles from Glatz, and had still twice that distance to travel before they could get beyond the reach of their enemies.

They were now so nearly worn out with hunger, cold, and fatigue, that it seemed impossible to proceed much further without some assistance. Trenck resorted to the following stratagem to procure the necessary relief from the inhabitants of two houses, which were about three hundred paces from them on the hill-side. He was to act the part of a deserter, and Schell that of the officer who had arrested, wounded, and bound him, but whose horse had been killed, and his ankle put out in the scuffle, and who therefore wanted a cart for the conveyance of himself and his prisoner. *As Schell had his*

gorget and military scarf on, he was ready to perform his character, and Trenck fitted himself for his by cutting his finger, smearing the blood over his face, shirt, and clothes, and making his friend tie his hands loosely behind him. All this preparation, however, was thrown away, for the peasant to whom Schell applied knew his person, and had heard of his desertion with Trenck. But though detected, they obtained their purpose. While Schell kept the man in parley, Trenck went to the stable, from which he brought out two horses. Saddles were not to be had, but his entreaties prevailed on the peasant's daughter to procure him bridles; and thus mounted, they proceeded on their way.

Their appearance without saddles or hats—for they had lost their hats in leaping from the rampart—exposed them to great risk in the broad daylight. Nor, indeed, did they pass unknown. As they were approaching the Austrian confines, they were seen by Captain Zerbet, one of the officers who had been sent in pursuit. But the officers were all so linked together in the ties of friendship, that, Zerbet fortunately being alone, the fugitives were safe. He called out to Trenck, 'Make to the left, brother, and you will see some lone houses; they are on the Austrian frontier; the hussars have gone straight forward;' and he then

moved on as if he had not seen them. Their last trial was the passing through a town which was garrisoned by a hundred and eight foot soldiers and twelve horse, for the express purpose of seizing deserters. Having traversed this dangerous spot unchallenged, they soon reached the Bohemian town of Braunau, and had nothing more to fear.

Thus, after fifteen months' confinement and repeated failures, did Trenck recover his liberty. 'Never in all my life,' says he, 'did I feel pleasure more exquisite than at this moment. My friend had risked a shameful death for me, and now, after having carried him at least twelve hours on my shoulders, I had saved both him and myself. We certainly should not have suffered any man to take us back again to Glatz alive. Yet this was but the first act of the tragedy of which I was doomed to be the hero, and the mournful incidents of which all arose out of, and depended on, each other. Could I have read the book of fate, and have seen the forty years' fearful afflictions that were to follow, I certainly should not have rejoiced at this my escape from Glatz.'

The fugitives were detained three weeks at Braunau by the lameness of Schell. During this time, Trenck deliberated *as to the step which it would be most prudent for him to take.* The idea of joining his

Austrian cousin at Vienna was abandoned at once, as he feared that such a measure would afford grounds for believing him to be a traitor. He had soon reason to be satisfied with his decision; he learned that his cousin was closely imprisoned and under prosecution. At length he determined upon travelling on foot, with Schell, through Bohemia, Moravia, and Poland, to the neighbourhood of Königsberg, for the purpose of seeing his mother, and obtaining from her some money; after doing which, he designed to enter into the Russian service. The journey was not less than between seven and eight hundred miles, and it was to be performed in the depth of winter. This plan, however, was afterwards a little modified: instead of proceeding direct to his mother's, he resolved first of all to solicit assistance from a married sister, who lived in Brandenburg, on a fine estate near Landsberg, on the river Watha. To reach her residence, the two fugitives were compelled to coast along the whole north-eastern frontier of Silesia; and as she resided on Prussian territory, though it was on the very verge of it, they had some cause of apprehension for their safety.

Many were the adventures into which this daring man and his companion plunged in effecting their purpose. At Czenstochow, a good Samaritan, who had given them food and

shelter, informed them that a carriage had arrived with an officer and soldiers sent to arrest them. All precautions were taken to prevent capture ; but early on the second morning after leaving the town, they saw a carriage before them, which they knew to be that of their pursuers. The Prussian emissaries were standing round it, pretending it was fast in the snow, and they called out for help. Well aware that this was a stratagem to entrap them, Trenck and his companion went about thirty yards out of the road, and replied that they could not spare time to stop. Their enemies immediately drew out their pistols, and came upon them at full speed. Trenck turned round, and shot the foremost dead upon the spot. Schell was less fortunate ; a ball wounded him severely in the neck. Another of the assailants fled from Trenck, who overtook him after a chase of three hundred yards, and cut him down with his sabre. While Trenck was thus occupied, Schell, disabled by a cut on the right hand, had fallen into the power of the two remaining Prussians, who were dragging him to the carriage. On seeing Trenck, however, coming back victorious, they relinquished their prey, and escaped over the fields. One of them never reached home, he having been mortally wounded. From one of the dead men the con-

querors took a watch, a hat, and a musket. The approach of a coach and six compelled them to leave the other unrifled. He was the officer who headed the party ; and they afterwards learned that he had in his pocket a hundred and fifty ducats.

It was not until February, after wandering for six weeks, that Trenck, with Schell, arrived at his sister's house ; and then, to his bitter disappointment and indignation, he was refused admission, and turned from the door. No resource now presented itself but to turn their course to the eastward, and proceed to Ebling, that Trenck might open a communication with his mother. On his journey he was compelled to leave Schell, who was too weak and ill to advance farther, in the hands of a peasant woman, and to make his way alone to his destination. He was reduced to almost the last extremity when his weary feet entered Ebling ; there, however, he was most hospitably welcomed by his old tutor, a captain in a Polish regiment, who wrote so powerful a letter to the mother of Trenck, that she hastened to embrace him ; and through her liberality he was speedily placed in a position to which he had long been a stranger.

From Ebling Trenck journeyed to Vienna, picking up his friend Schell on the way, for whom he procured a com-

mission in the regiment of Palavacini, and gave him also a sum of money to enable him to join his regiment in Italy. Trenck soon left Vienna in disgust at the treatment he had received from his cousin,—who had attempted his assassination both secretly and by duelling,—and entered the Russian service, in which he remained several years, successfully eluding various snares laid by his enemies to get him again under Prussian power. In 1754, however, his capture was finally effected, by the treachery of one in whom he placed entire confidence.

In the spring of that year his mother died, and he made a journey to Dantzic, that he might settle the family affairs with his brothers and sister. Having completed his family arrangements, and secured a passage for Riga in a Swedish vessel, he would shortly have been out of reach of his enemies, had he not been circumvented by the most infamous treachery. The traitor who betrayed him was an Austrian resident at Dantzic, a man named Abramson, on whom Trenck placed implicit reliance. The King of Prussia had required that Trenck should be given up to him, a demand with which the magistrates of the city hesitated to comply; and a correspondence took place upon the subject. The magistrates finally yielded. While the question was in de-

bate, Trenck would have been on his voyage to Riga, had not the treacherous Abramson prevailed on him to remain a few days longer. On the last night of his intended stay, he had but just got into bed, when a loud knocking was heard at the door, which was followed by two of the city magistrates and twenty grenadiers bursting so suddenly into his room that he had not time to use his weapons. Resistance, indeed, would have been unavailing, for he had no one to aid him, his three servants having already been secured. He was conveyed to the city prison, where he remained twenty-four hours. Here he was visited by the traitor Abramson, who hypocritically condoled with him, and promised to move heaven and earth for his deliverance. The deceiver played his part so well, that he induced the prisoner to place in his hands property to the amount of seven thousand florins, to prevent it, as he pretended, from being seized. On the following day he set out from Dantzic, guarded by an escort of dragoons. At Lauenberg, in Pomerania, he was handed over to the custody of thirty Prussian hussars, by whom he was conveyed to Berlin, and from thence to Magdeburg, where he was thrown into a dungeon.

‘My dungeon,’ he says, ‘was in a casemate, the forepart of which, six feet wide and ten feet long, was divided by a party

wall. In the inner wall were two doors, and a third at the entrance of the casemate itself. The window in the seven feet thick wall was so situated, that though I had light, I could see neither heaven nor earth; I could only see the roof of the magazine; within and without this window were iron bars, and in the space between an iron grating, so close and so situated, by the rising of the walls, that it was impossible I should see any person without the prison, or that any person should see me. On the outside was a wooden palisade, six feet from the wall, by which the sentinels were prevented from conveying anything to me. I had a mattress, and a bedstead, but which was immoveably ironed to the floor, so that it was impossible I should drag it, and stand up to the window; beside the door was a small iron stove and a night-table, in like manner fixed to the floor. I was not yet put in irons, and my allowance was a pound and a half per day of ammunition bread, and a jug of water.

‘From my youth I had always had a good appetite, but my bread was so mouldy I could scarcely at first eat the half of it. This was the consequence of Major Reiding’s avarice, who endeavoured to profit even by this, so great was the number of unfortunate prisoners; therefore it is impossible I should describe to my readers the excess of tortures that, during

eleven months, I felt from ravenous hunger. I could easily every day have devoured six pounds of bread; and every twenty-four hours, after having received and swallowed my small portion, I continued as hungry as before I began, yet must wait another twenty-four hours for a new morsel. How willingly would I have signed a bill of exchange for a thousand ducats, on my property at Vienna, only to have satiated my hunger on dry bread! For so extreme was it, that scarcely had I dropt into a sweet sleep, before I dreamed I was feasting at some table luxuriously loaded, where, eating like a glutton, the whole company were astonished to see me, while my imagination was heated by the sensation of famine. Awakened by the pains of hunger, the dishes vanished, and nothing remained but the reality of my distress; the cravings of nature were but inflamed, my tortures prevented sleep, and looking into futurity, the cruelty of my fate suffered, if possible, increase, from imagining that the promulgation of pangs like these was insupportable. God preserve every honest man from sufferings like mine! They were not to be endured by the villain most obdurate. Many have fasted three days, many have suffered want for a week or more, but certainly no one beside myself ever endured it in the same excess for eleven months. Some have supposed

the most bitter.'

Far from obtaining redress by his remonstrances and requests to be allowed a sufficiency of food, Trenck only drew on himself from the governor a volley of brutal insult. His solitude was almost complete. It was only once a week, on Wednesday, that he saw a human being. On that day, after his den had been cleaned out, the governor and town major paid their visit of inspection. All the rest of the week no one came near him, his pittance of bread and water being thrust in, once in twenty-four hours, through an aperture in the door.

Nearly two months passed away before the mind of Trenck recovered his balance sufficiently to admit the hope of escaping. Hope at length came, and roused him to exert

and broke the nails, heads, that again in the night appeared weekly visits. I took some tools to the floor, under the door. My first attempt was to make a hole through the floor, which was thick, behind the door. By the night my labour was of little avail. I came to large holes, but I deavoured accordingly and remembered of the flooring that I might reach. I might reach all might applied having accordingly succeeded. The visitation, all placed, and mortar as can be seen the whole.

they taken the precaution to come at any other time in the week, the stated Wednesday excepted, I had inevitably been discovered ; but as no such accident befell me, in six months my Herculean labours gave me a prospect of success. Means were to be found to remove the rubbish from my prison, all of which in a wall so thick it was impossible to replace. Mortar and stone could not be removed; I therefore took the earth, scattered it about my chamber, and ground it under my feet the whole day, till I had reduced it to dust ; this dust I strewed in the aperture of my window, making use of the loosened night table to stand upon ; I tied splinters from my bedstead together with the ravelled yarn of an old stocking, and to this affixed a tuft of my hair. I worked a large hole under the middle grating, which could not be seen when standing on the ground, and through this I pushed my dust with the tool I had prepared in the outer window ; then, waiting till the wind should happen to rise during the night, I brushed it away, it was blown off, and no appearance remained on the outside. By this single expedient I rid myself of at least three hundredweight of earth, and thus made room to continue my labours ; yet, this being still insufficient, I had recourse to another *artifice*. *I made little balls, and when the sentinel was walking, blew them through*

a paper tube out of the window. Into the empty space I put my mortar and stones, and worked on successfully.

‘I cannot, however, describe my difficulties after having penetrated about two feet into the hewn stone. My tools were the irons I had dug out, which fastened my bedstead and night-table. A compassionate soldier also gave me an old iron ram-rod and a soldier’s sheath knife, which did me excellent service, more especially the latter, as I shall presently more fully show. With these, too, I cut splinters from my bedstead, which aided me to pick the mortar from the interstices of the stone ; yet the labour of penetrating through this seven-feet wall was incredible. The building was ancient, and the mortar occasionally quite petrified, so that the whole stone was obliged to be reduced to dust. After continuing my work unremittingly for six months, I at length approached the accomplishment of my hopes, as I knew by coming to the facing of brick, which now was only between me and the adjoining case-mate.’

Meanwhile, Trenck did not neglect to try his powers of seduction upon the soldiers who guarded him, and he was no less successful than he had been at Glatz. An old grenadier, whose name was Gefhardt, seems to have contracted a warm friendship for him. Gefhardt introduced to him a good-natured

Jewess, Esther Heymannen, whose father had been for ten years a prisoner; she could therefore feel for Trenck. She consented to be his agent, and she brought over to his interest two other grenadiers. They procured for him paper, another knife and file; of which he contrived to obtain possession, by cutting splinters from his bedstead, so as to make a stick long enough to reach beyond the palisades. He now wrote to his sister, requesting that she would send by the Jewess 300 rixdollars to assist him in effecting his flight. He also wrote to the Austrian ambassador at Berlin, and enclosed a draft for 1000 florins, payable from his property at Vienna, which sum he desired might be given to the bearer of the letter, as a reward for her faithful services. Unfortunately, the ambassador referred her to his secretary, Weingarten, who was a traitor, bribed by the Prussian court. Weingarten pocketed the 1000 florins, and betrayed the plan of escape. The sister of Trenck gladly advanced the 300 dollars, and entreated the Jewess to use every possible means for his deliverance. Esther brought the money safely to Magdeburg, and then, just in time to save herself, she learned from the wife of one of the grenadiers that the scheme was discovered. Upon hearing these tidings, she lost not a moment in hastening *back to her abode at Dessau, in Saxony, where she was be-*

yond the reach of the Prussian myrmidons. Her confederates were less fortunate. Her imprisoned father was punished with more than a hundred blows to extort a confession; one of the grenadiers was hanged; and the other was condemned to run the gauntlet for three successive days. Gefhardt was left untouched, it not being known he was concerned in the project.

The monarch must have been excessively exasperated by this scheme of Trenck's; for on this occasion he outraged every feeling of humanity. He determined that the future life of the captive should be spent in constant torture, unmitigated even by a gleam of hope. To accomplish his purpose, he himself planned a dungeon, and what may be called a system of fetters, which he thought would set at defiance all attempts to escape. The sister of Trenck, as a punishment for having aided her brother, was compelled to pay the expense of building the dungeon, and was also heavily fined. Some days elapsed before Trenck was made acquainted with the calamitous circumstances which had occurred. The news was communicated to him by Gefhardt, who likewise informed him respecting the new dungeon, but assured him that it could not be ready in less than a month.

'I therefore determined as soon as possible to complete my breach in the wall, and

escape without the aid of any one. The thing was possible; for I had twisted the hair of my mattress into a rope, which I meant to tie to a cannon, and descend the rampart, after which I might endeavour to swim across the Elbe, gain the Saxon frontier, and thus safely escape. On the 26th of May I had determined to break into the next casemate; but when I came to work at the bricks, I found them so hard and strongly cemented, that I was obliged to defer the labour till the following day. I left off, weary and spent, at daybreak; and should any one enter my dungeon, they must infallibly discover the breach. How dreadful is the destiny by which through life I have been persecuted, and which has continually plunged me headlong into calamity when I imagined happiness was at hand!

‘The 27th of May was a cruel day in the history of my life. My cell in the Star Fort had been finished sooner than Gefhardt had supposed; and at night, when I was preparing to fly, I heard a carriage stop before my prison. O God! what was my terror, what were the horrors of this moment of despair! The locks and bolts resounded, the doors flew open, and the last of my poor remaining resources was to conceal my knife. The town-major, the major of the day, and a captain entered; I saw them by the light of their two lanterns. The

only words they spoke were, “Dress yourself;” which was immediately done. I still wore the uniform of the regiment of Cordova. Irons were given me, which I was obliged myself to fasten on my wrists and ankles: the town-major tied a bandage over my eyes, and taking me under the arm, they thus conducted me to the carriage. It was necessary to pass through the city to arrive at the Star Fort: all was silent, except the noise of the escort; but when we entered Magdeburg, I heard the people running, who were crowding together to obtain a sight of me. Their curiosity was raised by the report that I was going to be beheaded. That I was executed on this occasion in the Star Fort, after having been conducted blindfold through the city, has since been both affirmed and written; and the officers had then orders to propagate this error, that the world might remain in utter ignorance concerning me. I indeed knew otherwise, though I affected not to have this knowledge; and as I was not gagged, I behaved as if I expected death,—reproached my conductors in language that even made them shudder, and painted their king in his true colours, as one who, unheard, had condemned an innocent subject by a despotic exercise of power.

‘My fortitude was admired, at the moment when it was supposed I thought myself going

darkness was taken from my eyes. The dungeon was lighted by a few torches. What were my feelings when I beheld the whole floor covered with chains, a fire-pan, and two grim men standing with their smith-hammers!

'To work went these engines of despotism. Enormous chains were fixed to my ankle at one end, and at the other to a ring which was incorporated in the wall. This ring was three feet from the ground, and only allowed me to move about two or three feet to the right and left. They next riveted another huge iron ring, of a hand's breadth, round my naked body, to which hung a chain fixed into an iron bar as thick as a man's arm. This bar was two feet in length, and at each end of it was a handcuff. The iron collar round my neck was not added till the year 1756. No soul bade me good night. All re-

which I was
was admitt
circular ape
and two i
aperture asc
of the wall,
thick; and
was a close
which, outv
descended,
tremities we
strong iron b
was built in
fortification;
by which the
so covered t
rampart, that
immediate p
only gained
flection. Th
smallness of
the impeding
iron bars, mu
obscurity gre
time became
this glimmer
see a mouse
how

was built in the wall in red brick, and under my feet was a tombstone, with the name of TRENCK also cut on it, and carved with a death's-head. The doors to my dungeon were double, of oak two inches thick; without these was an open space or front cell, in which was a window, and this space was likewise shut in by double doors. The ditch in which this dreadful den was built was enclosed on both sides by palisades twelve feet high, the key of the door of which was entrusted to the officer of the guard, it being the King's intention to prevent all possibility of speech or communication with the sentinels. The only motion I had the power to make was that of jumping upward, or swinging my arms, to procure myself warmth. When more accustomed to these fetters, I was likewise capable of moving from side to side about four feet; but this pained my shin-bones.

'The cell had been finished with lime and plaster but eleven days, and everybody supposed it would be impossible I should exist in these damps above a fortnight. I remained six months continually immersed in water that trickled upon me from the thick arches under which I was, and I can safely affirm that for the first three months I was never dry; yet did I *continue in health*. I was visited daily at noon, after relieving guard, and the doors

were then obliged to be left open for some minutes, otherwise the dampness of the air put out their candles.'

About noon, the harsh jarring of the bolts announced the arrival of some of his jailors. They looked as though they pitied him; but they did not speak. A camp bedstead, a mattress, and blankets, were brought in; and a jug of water and a six-pound loaf of ammunition-bread were set down on the floor. The town-major broke the silence by saying, 'That you may not complain of hunger again, you shall have as much bread as you can eat.' Having uttered these welcome words, he and his attendants withdrew, and Trenck was left to his solitude.

So intensely had Trenck suffered from want of food, that he was now almost beside himself for joy at the idea of having enough even of this coarse fare. He ate, rested, surveyed the precious morsel, ate again, and absolutely shed tears of pleasure. But he had soon reason to repent this indulgence of appetite. Even his iron frame could not stand the shock which was caused by the sudden change from fasting to repletion. His body swelled, and throughout the night he was racked by cramp, colic, and burning fever. For three days he was unable to touch a morsel, and his mind, weakened by his bodily pains, gave way to despondency. It seemed im-

possible that he could ever recover his liberty, or much longer endure rigorous imprisonment and the heavy weight of his fetters, and he therefore determined to resign an existence which was become an intolerable burden. Either a remnant of hope, or an instinctive clinging to life, induced him, however, to postpone for a week the fulfilment of his deadly purpose. If no prospect of better days should in the meantime open, he decided to terminate his woes on the 4th of July.

‘In the meantime, I revolved in my mind what possible means there were of escape. The next day I observed, as the four doors were opened, that they were only of wood, therefore questioned whether I might not even cut off the locks with the knife that I had so fortunately concealed; and should this and every other means fail, then would be time to die. I likewise determined to make an attempt even to free myself of my chains. I happily forced my right hand through the handcuff, though the blood trickled from my nails. My attempts on the left were long ineffectual; but by rubbing with a brick, which I got from my seat, on the rivet that had been negligently closed, I effected this also.

‘The chain was fastened to the rim round my body by a *hook, one end of which was not inserted in the rim; therefore, by setting my foot against the wall,*

I had strength enough so far to bend this hook back, and open it, as to force out the link of the chain. The remaining difficulty was the chain that attached my foot to the wall. The links of this I took, doubled, twisted, and wrenched, till at length,—nature having bestowed on me great strength,—I made a desperate effort, sprang forcibly up, and two links at once flew off.

‘Fortunate indeed did I think myself: I hastened to the door, groped in the dark to find the clinkings of the nails by which the lock was fastened, and discovered no very large piece of wood need be cut. Immediately I went to work with my knife, and cut through the oak door to find its thickness, which proved to be only one inch; therefore was it possible to open all the four doors in four-and-twenty hours.

‘Again hope revived in my heart. To prevent detection, I hastened to put on my chains; but, O God! what difficulties had I to surmount! After much groping about, I at length found the link that had flown off; this I hid. It being my good fortune hitherto to escape examination, as the possibility of ridding myself of such chains was in no wise suspected. The separated iron links I tied together with my hair-ribbon; but when I again endeavoured to force my hand into the ring, it was so swelled that every effort was fruitless. The whole night was

employed upon the rivet, but all labour was in vain.

‘Noon was the hour of visitation; and necessity and danger again obliged me to attempt forcing my hand in, which at length, after excruciating torture, I effected. My visitors came, and everything had the appearance of order. I found it, however, impossible to force out my right hand while it continued swelled. I therefore remained quiet till the day fixed; and on the determined 4th of July, immediately as my visitors had closed the doors upon me, I disencumbered myself of my irons, took my knife, and began my Herculean labour on the door. The first of the double doors that opened inwards was conquered in less than an hour; the other was a very different task. The lock was soon cut round, but it opened outwards; there was therefore no other means left but to cut the whole door away above the bar. Incessant and incredible labour made this possible, though it was the more difficult, as everything was to be done by feeling, I being totally in the dark; the sweat dropped, or rather flowed from my body, my fingers were clotted in my own blood, and my lacerated hands were one continued wound. Daylight appeared; I clambered over the door that was half cut away, and got up to the window in the space or cell that was between the double doors as before described. Here I saw

my dungeon was in the ditch of the first rampart; before me I beheld the road from the rampart, the guard but fifty paces distant, the high palisades that were in the ditch, and must be scaled before I could reach the rampart. Hope grew stronger; my efforts were redoubled. The first of the next double doors was attacked, which likewise opened inward, and was soon conquered. The sun set before I had ended this, and the fourth was to be cut away as the second had been. My strength failed; both my hands were raw; I rested awhile, began again, and had made a cut of a foot long, when my knife snapped, and the broken blade dropped to the ground!’

Overwhelmed by this calamity, the unhappy man attempted to commit suicide. With his broken knife he gashed through the veins of his left arm and foot. From loss of blood he fainted. How long he remained in that state he knew not; but suddenly he heard his own name repeatedly uttered. The speaker was the kind-hearted Gefhardt, who had ventured upon the rampart that he might converse with him.

‘How do you do?’ said Gefhardt.

‘Weltering in my blood,’ answered Trenck; ‘to-morrow you will find me dead.’

‘Why should you die?’ was the reply; ‘it is much easier to escape here than from the citadel. Here is no sentinel,

sentinels, one at the entrance
and the other at the guard-
house. Do not despair; God
will succour you. Trust to me.'

This good man's kindness
and discourse revived the poor
prisoner's hopes. He immedi-
ately tore his shirt, bound up
his wounds, and waited the ap-
proach of day. In the few
hours that elapsed before the
visit of his jailors, Trenck de-
cided upon the conduct that he
should pursue towards them.
He had no doubt that an at-
tempt to escape would bring
additional cruelty upon him,
unless he could find the means
of averting it. To face them
boldly, and declare that he
would rather die on the spot
than submit to an increase of
suffering, was the plan which
he adopted. He was weak from
excessive loss of blood.

approach
Major, k
vernor I
chains, a
if so he p
so only
Here no
will destr
here are n
I die in c
The major
resolution,
to the gov
sat down
what might
intent, ho
desperate
sought onl
able capitu
'The go
presently c

scend, they leaped terrified back. A short pause ensued, and the old town-major, with the chaplain, advanced towards the door to soothe me; the conversation continued some time. Whose reasons were most satisfactory, and whose cause was the most just, I leave to the reader. The governor grew angry, and ordered a fresh attack. The first grenadier was knocked down, and the rest ran back to avoid my missiles.

‘The town-major again began a parley. “For God’s sake, my dear Trenck,” said he, “in what have I injured you, that you endeavour to effect my ruin? I must answer for your having through my negligence concealed a knife. Be persuaded, I entreat you; be appeased. You are not without hope, not without friends.”

‘My answer was, “But will you not load me with heavier irons than before?”

‘He went out, spoke with the governor, and gave me his word of honour that the affair should be no further noticed, and that everything should be exactly reinstated as formerly.

‘Here ended the capitulation, and my wretched citadel was taken. The condition I was in was viewed with pity; my wounds were examined, a surgeon sent to dress them, another shirt was given me, and the bricks clotted with blood removed. *I meantime lay half dead on my mattress; my thirst was excessive; the surgeon or-*

dered me some wine; two sentinels were stationed in the front cell, and I was thus left four days in peace, unironed. Broth also was given me daily; and how delicious this was to taste, how much it revived and strengthened me, is wholly impossible to describe. Two days I lay in a slumbering kind of trance, forced by unquenchable thirst to drink whenever I awoke. My feet and hands were swelled; the pains in my back and limbs were excessive.

‘On the fifth day the doors were ready; the inner was entirely plated with iron, and I was fettered as before. The principal chain, however, which fastened me to the wall, like that I had before broken, was thicker than the first. Except this, the capitulation was strictly kept.

‘Gefhardt, my honest grenadier, had infused fresh hope, and my mind now busily began to meditate new plans. A sentinel was placed before my door, that I might be more narrowly watched; and the married men of the Prussian states were appointed to this duty, who, as I will hereafter show, were more easy to persuade in aiding my flight than foreign fugitives. The Pomeranian will listen, and is by nature kind, therefore may easily be moved and induced to succour distress. I began to be more accustomed to my irons, which I had before found so insupportable; I could comb out my long hair, and

, especially about the lips ; but this also custom conquered, and I performed this operation in the following years once in six weeks or two months ; as the hair thus plucked up required that length of time before the nails could again get hold. Vermin did not molest me ; the dampness of my den was inimical to them. My limbs never swelled, because of the exercise I took, as before described. The greatest pain I found, was in the continued unvivifying dimness in which I lived.

‘About three weeks after my attempt to escape, the good Gefhardt first came to stand sentinel over me ; and the sentinel they had so carefully set was indeed the only hope I could have of escape ; for help must be had from without, or this was impossible.

‘Gefhardt scarcely had

grating, a
of small v
ing amad
a match,
had light
finger, and
to my fai
Ruckhardt
my situati
sent him
three thou
revenues ;
would disp
florins to c
of his jour
only two n
burg. Here
to be on th
About noon
he was to w
his hand, an
there to mee
of smoking
he must ren
florins, and

heart palpitate when he came, and exclaimed, "All is right! we have succeeded." He returned in the evening, and we began to consider by what means he could convey the money to me. I could not, with my hands chained to an iron bar, reach the aperture of the window that admitted air; besides that, it was too small. It was therefore agreed that Gefhardt should, on the next guard, perform the office of cleaning my dungeon, and that he then should convey the money to me in the water-jug. This, luckily, was done. How great was my astonishment when, instead of one, I found two thousand florins! for I had permitted him to reserve half to himself as a reward for his fidelity. He, however, had kept but five pistoles, which he persisted was enough. Having money to carry on my designs, I began to put my plan of burrowing under the foundation into execution. The first thing necessary was to free myself from my fetters. To accomplish this, Gefhardt supplied me with two small files, and by the aid of these, this labour, though great, was effected.

'The cap or staple of the foot-ring was made so wide that I could draw it forward a quarter of an inch. I filed the iron which passed through it on the inside; and the more I filed this away, the further I could draw the cap down, till at last the whole inside iron, through which the chains passed,

was quite cut through. By this means I could slip off the ring, while the cap on the outside continued whole; and it was impossible to discover any cut, as only the outside could be examined. My hands, by continued efforts, I so compressed as to be able to draw them out of the handcuffs. I then filed the hinge, and made a screw-driver of one of the foot-long flooring nails, by which I could take out the screws at pleasure, so that at the time of examination no proofs would appear. The iron round my body was but a small impediment, except the chain which passed from my hand-bar; and this I removed by filing an aperture in one of the links, which at the necessary hour I closed with bread rubbed over with rusty iron, first drying it with the heat of my body; and would wager any sum that, without striking the chain link by link with a hammer, no one not in the secret would have discovered the fracture. The window was never strictly examined; I therefore drew the two staples by which the iron bars were fixed to the wall, and which I daily replaced, carefully plastering them over. I procured wire from Gefhardt, and tried how well I could imitate the inner grating. Finding I succeeded tolerably, I cut the real grating totally away, and substituted an artificial one of my own fabricating, by which I obtained a free communica-

and undetected. Everything prepared, I went to work. The floor of my dungeon was not of stone, but oak plank three inches thick; three beds of which were laid crossways, and were fastened to each other by nails half an inch in diameter and a foot long. Having worked round the head of a nail, I made use of the hole at the end of the bar which separated my hands, to draw it out, and this nail sharpened upon my tombstone made an excellent chisel.

'I now cut through the board more than an inch in width, that I might work downward, and having drawn away a piece of board which was inserted two inches under the wall, I cut this so as exactly to fit; the small crevice it occasioned I stopped up with bread, and strewed over with dust, so as to prevent all suspicious appearance. My labour under this

as he
or con
tents.

secrete
obtained
gether
powder,

'I no
foundatic
stead of
feet deep
patience
break ou
discoverec
impossible
not wantin
was obligec
correspond
tion, and v
and stoop
on the flo
tinual stoo
earth, the r
all must b
made the
and after
things wer

'Being without a stove, I suffered much this winter from cold; yet my heart was cheerful as I saw the probability of freedom, and all were astonished to find me in such good spirits. Lulled with security, an accident happened that will appear almost incredible, and by which every hope was nearly frustrated. Gefhardt had been working with me, and was relieved in the morning. As I was replacing the window, which I was obliged to remove on these occasions, it fell out of my hands, and three of the glass panes were broken. Gefhardt was not to return until guard was again relieved; I had therefore no opportunity of speaking to him, or concerting any mode of repair. I remained nearly an hour conjecturing and hesitating; for certainly, had the broken window been seen, as it was impossible I should reach it when fettered, I should immediately have been more rigidly examined, and the false grating must have been discovered.

'I therefore came to a resolution, and spoke to the sentinel (who was amusing himself with whistling) thus: "My good fellow, have pity, not upon me, but upon your comrades, who, should you refuse, will certainly be executed: I will throw you thirty pistoles through the window if you will do me a small favour." He remained some moments silent, and at last answered in a low voice, "What! have you money then?" I im-

mediately counted thirty pistoles, and threw them through the window. He asked to know what he was to do; I told my difficulty, and gave him the size of the panes in paper. The man fortunately was bold and prudent. The door of the palisades, through the negligence of the officer, had not been shut that day. He prevailed on one of his comrades to stand sentinel for him during half an hour, while he meantime ran into the town and procured the glass, on the receipt of which I instantly threw him out ten more pistoles. Before the hour of noon and visitation came, everything was once more reinstated, my glazery performed to a miracle, and the life of my worthy Gefhardt preserved. Such is the power of money in this world! This is a very remarkable incident, for I never spoke after to the man who did me this signal service.

'Gefhardt's alarm may easily be imagined. He some days after returned to his post; and was the more astonished as he knew the sentinel who had done me this good office,—that he had five children, and a man most to be depended on by his officers, of any one in the whole grenadier company.

'I now continued my labour, and found it very possible to break out under the foundation; but Gefhardt had been so terribly frightened by the late accident, that he started a thousand difficulties in proportion

as my end was more nearly accomplished ; and at the moment when I wished to concert with him the means of flight, he persisted it was necessary to find additional help to escape in safety, and not bring both him and myself to destruction. At length we came to the following determination, which, however, after eight months' incessant labour passed, rendered my whole project abortive. I wrote once more to Ruckhardt at Vienna ; sent him a new assignment for money ; and desired he would again repair to Gummern, where he would wait six several nights, with two spare horses, on the glacis of Klosterbergen ; at the time appointed, everything would be prepared for flight. Within these six days Gefhardt would have found means, either in rotation or by exchanging the guard, to have been with me. Gefhardt sent his wife to Gummern with the letter, and this silly woman told the postmaster her husband had a lawsuit at Vienna ; that therefore she begged he would take particular care of the letter, for which purpose she slipped ten rixdollars into his hand.

'This unexpected liberality raised the suspicions of the Saxon postmaster, who therefore opened the letter, read the contents, and instead of sending it to Vienna, he preferred the traitorous act of taking it himself to the governor of Magdeburg, who then was

Prince Ferdinand of Brunswick. What were my terrors, what my despair, when I beheld the Prince himself, about three o'clock in the afternoon, enter my prison, with his attendants, present my letter, and ask in an authoritative voice who had carried it to Gummern. My answer was, "I know not."

'The Prince began to threaten. I persisted I had never seen the sentinel who had rendered me this service, nor asked his name. Seeing his attempts all ineffectual, the governor in a milder tone said, "You have ever complained, Baron Trenck, of not having hitherto been legally sentenced, or heard in your own defence ; I give you my word of honour this you shall be, and also that you shall be released from your fetters, if you will only tell me who took your letter." To this I replied, with all the fortitude of innocence, "Everybody knows, my lord, I have never deserved the treatment I have met with in my country. My heart is irreproachable. I seek to recover my liberty by every means in my power ; but were I capable of betraying the man whose compassion has induced him to succour my distress, were I the coward that could purchase happiness at his expense, I then should indeed deserve to wear these chains with which I am loaded. For myself, do with me what you please ; yet remember I am not wholly destitute ; I am still a

captain in the Imperial service, and a descendant of the house of Trenck."

'Prince Ferdinand stood for a moment unable to answer, then renewed his threats, and left my dungeon. I have since been told, that when he was out of hearing he said to those round him, "I pity his hard fate, and cannot but admire his strength of mind!"'

A strict search was made in Trenck's cell by smiths, carpenters, and masons; but though they spent half an hour in their investigation, they failed to discover either the hole which he had made, or the manner in which he had freed himself from his fetters. The removal of the middle grating in the aperture was all that they detected. On the following day, a board, with only an air-hole of about six inches in diameter, was substituted for the grating.

Soon after his interview with the prince, the Seven Years' War broke out. The news was communicated to the prisoner by Gefhardt, who also informed him that in the course of a few days the garrison would take the field. At first he thought this would be a death-blow to all his plans. On second thoughts, he was disposed to believe that there was less cause than he had imagined for regret. The excavation which he had made was still a secret, and he possessed 500 florins and a store of candles and implements. But the greatest con-

solation was, that the officers and men of the militia were much more easily won over than the regular troops. Four lieutenants were appointed to mount guard in turn at the Star Fort, and twelve months did not elapse before three of them were entirely devoted to him.

At the commencement, however, he had much to endure. The new major of the militia was one of the most stupid and sulky of mortals, and General Bork, the recently appointed governor, was a most pitiless tyrant. The latter began his reign by an act of great barbarity. Round the prisoner's neck he ordered to be riveted an iron collar of a hand's breadth, which was connected with the chains of the feet by additional heavy links. He next walled up the window, with the exception of a small air-hole, took away the bed, and refused the wretched captive even straw to lie upon. 'I was obliged to sit down upon the bare ground, and lean with my head against the damp wall. The chains that descended from the neck-collar were obliged to be supported, first with one hand and then with the other; for if thrown behind, they would have strangled me, and if hanging forward, occasioned most excessive headaches. The bar between my hands held me down while leaning on my elbow; I supported with the other my chains; and this so benumbed the muscles and

prevented circulation, that I could perceive my arms sensibly waste away. The little sleep I could have in such a situation may easily be supposed; and at length body and mind sunk under this accumulation of miserable suffering, and I fell ill of a burning fever.

‘The tyrant Bork was inexorable; he wished to expedite my death, and rid himself of his troubles and his terrors. Here did I experience what was the lamentable condition of a sick prisoner, without bed, refreshment, or aid from human being. Reason, fortitude, heroism,—all the noble qualities of the mind decay when the corporal faculties are diseased; and the remembrance of my sufferings at this dreadful moment still agitates, still inflames my blood, so as almost to prevent an attempt to describe what they were.

‘Yet hope had not totally forsaken me. Deliverance seemed possible, especially should peace ensue; and I sustained perhaps what no mortal man ever bore except myself, being, as I was, unprovided with pistols, or any such mode of instant despatch.

‘I continued ill about two months, and was so reduced at last that I had scarcely strength to lift the water-jug to my mouth.’

One morning the jailors found Trenck senseless, and his parched tongue hanging out *of his mouth*. They believed *that he was dead*; but as there *was a chance that life was not*

quite extinct, they poured some water down his throat. The reviving draught recalled him back to consciousness. This was the crisis of his disease; and the plentiful supply of water produced almost instantly the most beneficial effect. From that moment his progress towards recovery was uninterrupted. His deplorable situation became the talk of all Magdeburg, and excited so much sympathy, that the ladies joined with the officers to plead for him, and by their remonstrances shamed the governor into restoring the prisoner’s bed. At the end of six months Trenck was once more in the full enjoyment of health and spirits.

Frederick had provided with such ingenuity for the safe keeping of the prisoner, that escape would have been impossible had the keepers strictly performed their duty. The keys of the four doors were committed to four different persons, that the captive might never be able to speak to any of the jailors alone. It was not long, however, before the whole of the keys were entrusted first to one and then to another, so that Trenck had opportunities to confer in succession with the officers upon guard. He received remittances from his sister and the Countess Bestucheff, and he made such a liberal use of them among the officers, that the rigour of his captivity was much alleviated. He had a supply of light, books, and

meat. The guards were paid with money to drink, occasionally some of the officers would even spend half night in his company.

Lieutenant Sonntag got false handcuffs made for me, that were so wide I could easily draw my hands out. The lieutenants examined my irons, and new handcuffs were made exactly similar to the old.

The remainder of my chains I had disencumber myself of at leisure. When I exercised myself I held them in my hand, so the sentinels might be deceived by their clanking. The key-iron was the only one I could not remove; it was strongly riveted. I filed through the upper link of the principal chain, by which means I could take it off, and this I concealed with bread. So could I disencumber myself of most of my fetters, and sleep at ease. Liberty still, however, was most desirable; but, alas! not one of the three lieutenants had the courage of a Schell.

The sentinels were doubled, before my escape through my hole, which had been two years old, could not, unperceived by them, be effected; still less could I in the face of the red clamber the twelve feet of palisades. The following year, therefore, though Herculean, was undertaken:—

Lieutenant Sonntag, measuring the interval between the hole I had dug and the entrance of the gallery in the principal

rampart, found it to be thirty-seven feet. Into this it was possible I might by mining penetrate. The difficulty of the enterprise was lessened by the nature of the ground—a fine white sand. Could I reach the gallery, my freedom was certain. I had been informed how many steps, to the right or left, must be taken to find the door that led to the second rampart, and on the day when I should be ready for flight, the officer was secretly to leave this door open. I had light, and mining tools, and I was further to rely on money and my own discretion.

‘I began and continued this labour about six months. I have already noticed the difficulty of scraping out the earth with my hands. The noise of instruments would have been heard by the sentinels. I had scarcely mined beyond my dungeon wall before I discovered the foundation of the rampart was not more than a foot deep,—a capital error, certainly, in so important a fortress. My labour became the lighter, as I could remove the foundation stones of my dungeon, and was not obliged to mine so deep.

‘My work at first proceeded so rapidly, that while I had room to throw back my sand, I was able in one night to gain three feet; but ere I had proceeded ten feet I discovered all my difficulties. Before I could continue my work, I was obliged to make room for myself by emptying the sand out of my hole

upon the floor of the prison, and this itself was an employment of some hours. The sand was obliged to be thrown out by the hand, and after it thus lay heaped in my prison, must again be returned into the hole; and I calculated that after I had proceeded twenty feet, I was obliged to creep under ground in my hole, from 1500 to 2000 fathoms, within twenty-four hours, in the removal and replacing of the sand. This labour ended, care was to be taken that in none of the crevices of the floor there might be any appearance of this fine white sand. The flooring was next to be exactly replaced, and my chains to be resumed. So severe was the fatigue of one day in this mode, that I was always obliged to rest the three following. To reduce my labour as much as possible, I was constrained to make the passage so small that my body only had space to pass, and I had not room to draw back my arm to my head. The work, too, must all be done naked, otherwise the dirtiness of my shirt must have been remarked; the sand was wet. At length the expedient of sandbags occurred to me, by which it might be removed out and in more expeditiously. I obtained linen from the officers, and I took my sheets and the ticking that enclosed my straw, and cut them up for sandbags, *taking care to lie down on my bed, as if ill, when Buckhausen paid his visit.*

‘The labour toward the conclusion became so intolerable as to incite despondency. I frequently sat contemplating the heaps of sand, during a momentary respite from work; and thinking it impossible I could have strength or time again to replace all things as they were, resolved patiently to wait the consequence, and leave everything in its present disorder. No; I can assure the reader, that to effect concealment, I have scarcely had time in twenty-four hours to sit down and eat a morsel of bread. Recollecting, however, the efforts and all the progress I had made, hope would again revive, and exhausted strength return. Again would I begin my labours, that I might preserve my secret and my expectations: yet has it frequently happened, that my visitors have entered a few minutes after I had reinstated everything in its place.

‘When my work was within six or seven feet of being accomplished, a new misfortune happened, that at once frustrated all further attempts. I worked, as I have said, under the foundation of the rampart near where the sentinels stood. I could disencumber myself of my fetters, except my neck collar and its pendant chain. This, as I worked, though it was fastened, got loose, and the clanking was heard by one of the sentinels about fifteen feet from my dungeon. The officer was called; they laid their ears to the

ground, and heard me as I went backward and forward to bring my earth bags. This was reported the next day; and the major, who was my best friend, with the town-major and a smith and mason, entered my prison. I was terrified. The lieutenant by a sign gave me to understand I was discovered. An examination was begun, but the officers could not see, and the smith and mason found all, as they thought, safe. The sentinel was called, and, "Blockhead, you have heard some mole under ground, and not Trenck." There was now no time for delay. In a few days I could have broken out; but when ready, I was desirous to wait for the visitation day of the man who had treated me so harshly—Bruckhausen, that his own negligence might be evident. The visitation being over, the doors were no sooner barred than I began my supposed last labours. I had only three feet further to proceed, and it was no longer necessary I should bring out the sand, having room to throw it behind me. My evil genius, however, had decreed that the same sentinel who had heard me before should be that day on guard. He was piqued by vanity to prove he was not the blockhead he had been called; he therefore again laid his ear to the ground, and again heard me burrowing.

'He called his comrades first; next the major; he came, and heard me likewise; accordingly

they went without the palisades, and heard me working near the door, at which place I was to break into the gallery. This door they immediately opened, entered the gallery with lanterns, and waited to catch the hunted fox when unearthed.

'Through the first small breach I made I perceived a light, and saw the heads of those who were expecting me. This was indeed a thunder-stroke! I crept back, made my way through the sand I had cast behind me, and awaited my fate with shuddering. I had the presence of mind to conceal my pistols, candles, paper, and some money under the floor, which I could remove. The money was disposed of in various holes, well concealed also between the panels of the doors; and under different cracks in the floor I hid my small files and knives. Scarcely were these disposed of before the doors resounded; the floor was covered with sand and sand-bags; my handcuffs, however, and the separating bar, I had hastily resumed, that they might suppose I had worked with them on, which they were silly enough to credit, highly to my future advantage.

'No man was more busy on this occasion than the brutal and stupid Bruckhausen, who put many interrogatories, to which I made no reply, except assuring him that I should have completed my work some days sooner, had it not been his good

fortune to fall sick, and that this only had been the cause of my failure. The man was absolutely terrified with apprehension; he began to fear me, grew more polite, and even supposed nothing was impossible to me.

'It was too late to remove the sand; therefore the lieutenant and guard continued with me, so that this night at least I did not want company. When the morning came, the hole was first filled up, and the planking renewed. The tyrant Bork was ill, and could not come, otherwise my treatment would have been still more lamentable. The smiths had ended before the evening, and the irons were heavier than ever. The foot chains, instead of being fastened as before, were screwed and riveted; all else remained as formerly. They were employed on the flooring till the next day, so that I could not sleep; and at last I sank down with weariness.

'The greatest of my misfortunes was, they again deprived me of my bed, because I had cut it up for sand-bags. Before the doors were barred, Bruckhausen and another major examined my body very narrowly. They often had asked me where I concealed all my implements. My answer was, "Gentlemen, Beelzebub is my best and most intimate friend; he brings me *everything* I want, supplies me *with light*; we play whole nights *at piquet*, and guard me as you

please, he will finally deliver me out of your power."'

Soon after this last futile attempt to escape, a fearful addition was made to the wretched prisoner's sufferings. An order arrived that his sleep should be broken every quarter of an hour, by the sentinels calling to him. This was directly carried into effect, and was persisted in for four years. This was, indeed, a punishment intolerable to nature; yet custom at length taught him to answer in his sleep. One benefit, however, he managed to derive from it; by the advice of one of the friendly officers, he refused to answer the sentinel unless his bed was restored, and his firmness ultimately compelled his persecutors to comply with his demand. At this time Bork, the deputy-governor, became insane, and was replaced by Lieutenant-Colonel Reichmann, who was of a kind and benevolent disposition. He could not strike off Trenck's fetters, or alter the general regulations, but he did all that lay in his power to lighten the woes of his prisoner. By his direction the doors were occasionally left open to admit light and air, and at length were suffered to remain so throughout the day.

The light that entered Trenck's dungeon enabled him to beguile many tedious hours. To amuse himself, he began to carve with a nail a variety of figures and satirical verses upon the pewter cups out of which he drank.

His work was greatly admired ; every one wished to possess a specimen ; fresh cups were constantly sent to him, and practice at length gave him such perfect mastery in his art, that his productions were sold at a high price, and even admitted into museums.

Undiscouraged by his repeated disappointments, Trenck renewed his exertions to mine his way out. He cut through his chains and the flooring as he had before done, taking care when he left off to fill up every cranny so carefully that no trace of his work was visible. To get rid of the sand he had recourse to an ingenious stratagem. After having thrown out a large quantity, he replaced the flooring, and began with much noise to excavate another hole near the door. The noise drew, as he expected, the jailors into the dungeon ; they laughed at his folly in excavating at a spot where escape was impossible, ordered the sand to be wheeled away, and punished him by the deprivation of his bed and candle for a fortnight. When the vigilance of his keepers had somewhat abated, he proceeded with his mining. This time he reverted to his original plan of making an outlet between the foundation and the palisades. When he had burrowed as far as the dry ditch, he broke a hole through, and threw out one of his *slippers under the palisade, that he might be supposed to have lost it in climbing over.*

He then returned towards his prison, and concealed himself in a hole which he had made under the floor, stopping up the passage between the two holes that he might not be seen. In the morning the slipper was found ; it was concluded he had got off, the alarm guns were fired, cavalry were sent to scour the country, and all the garrison thronged to look at the hole whence Trenck had emerged. He, meanwhile, could hear throughout the day the searches and remarks that were made by his keepers. Yet a few hours more, and he would be able to quit his retreat and scale the palisades, as it was not probable that sentinels would be posted now that he was imagined to be gone. These hopes, however, were speedily blighted. An ensign, on looking at the hole, thought it far too small for its purpose, and tried himself to enter ; but finding he was unable to do so, concluded that the prisoner had not effected his escape, but was in hiding. Obtaining a light, he peeped into the aperture. The stifling heat of the spot where he was coiled up, had compelled Trenck to remove the sand between the holes, and part of his dress was consequently discerned by the sharp-sighted officer. The poor captive was drawn from his concealment amidst the laughter of the bystanders, and reinstated in his dungeon ; but no additional severity was inflicted upon him. For the clemency which he

my friends assisted me with all their power. My money melted away, but they provided me with tools, gunpowder, and a good sword. I had remained so long quiet that my flooring was no more examined. For my further security, an old lieutenant had with my money purchased a house in the suburbs, where I might lie concealed. At Chemnitz, in Saxony, a friend with two good horses was to wait a whole year, to ride on the nights of Klosterbergen, on the 1st and 15th of each month, and at a given signal haste to my assistance.

My passage was to be ready in case of emergency; I therefore removed the upper plank by taking up the two under which the boards into chips, and burnt them in my stove. By this I obtained so much clearance as to proceed to my mine. Linen again was brought me, sand-bags made, and thus I successfully proceeded to all but the last operation. Everything was so well closed and arranged that I had nothing to fear from the narrowest inspection. The support of the under floor being left to support the upper, and it appeared exactly as before, to avoid suspicion, especially as the new-comer garrison could not know what was the original design of the planks. This secret labour reduced me again to a very little state of body, and by the return of the regulars,

my friends assisted me with all their power. My money melted away, but they provided me with tools, gunpowder, and a good sword. I had remained so long quiet that my flooring was no more examined. For my further security, an old lieutenant had with my money purchased a house in the suburbs, where I might lie concealed. At Chemnitz, in Saxony, a friend with two good horses was to wait a whole year, to ride on the nights of Klosterbergen, on the 1st and 15th of each month, and at a given signal haste to my assistance.

My passage was to be ready in case of emergency; I therefore removed the upper plank by taking up the two under which the boards into chips, and burnt them in my stove. By this I obtained so much clearance as to proceed to my mine. Linen again was brought me, sand-bags made, and thus I successfully proceeded to all but the last operation. Everything was so well closed and arranged that I had nothing to fear from the narrowest inspection. The support of the under floor being left to support the upper, and it appeared exactly as before, to avoid suspicion, especially as the new-comer garrison could not know what was the original design of the planks. This secret labour reduced me again to a very little state of body, and by the return of the regulars,

in a moment was deprived of all my friends.

‘I must in this place relate a dreadful accident, which I cannot even now remember without shuddering, and the terror of which has often haunted my very dreams. While mining under the foundation of the rampart, just as I was going to carry out the sand-bag, I struck my foot against a stone in the wall above, which fell down and closed up the passage. What was my horror to find myself thus buried alive! After a short time for reflection, I began to work the sand away from the side, that I might obtain room to turn round. By good fortune there were some feet of empty space, into which I threw the sand as I worked it away; but the small quantity of air soon made it so foul that a thousand times I wished myself dead, and made several attempts to strangle myself. Further labour began to seem impossible. Thirst almost deprived me of my senses, but as often as I put my mouth to the sand I inhaled fresh air. My sufferings were incredible, and I imagine I passed full eight hours in this distraction of horror. Of all dreadful deaths, surely such a death as this is the most dreadful. My spirits fainted; again I somewhat recovered, again I began to labour; but the earth was as high as my chin, and I had no more space into which I might throw the sand, that I might turn round.

I made a more desperate effort, drew my body into a ball, and turned round; I now faced the stone, which was as wide as the whole passage; but there being an opening at the top, I respired fresher air. My next labour was to root away the sand under the stone, and let it sink, so that I might creep over, and by this means at length I once more happily arrived in my dungeon.

‘The morning was advanced; I sat myself down, so exhausted, that I supposed it was impossible I had time or strength to cover up and conceal my hole. After half an hour’s rest, however, my fortitude returned; again I went to work, and had scarcely ended before the resounding locks and bolts told the approach of my visitors. They found me pale as death; I complained of the headache, and continued some days so much affected by the fatigue I had sustained, that I began to imagine my lungs were impaired. After a time health and strength returned; but perhaps of all my nights of horror this was the most horrible. I long repeatedly dreamed I was buried in the centre of the earth, and now, though three-and-twenty years have elapsed, my sleep is still haunted by this vision.

‘After this accident, whenever I worked in my cavity I hung a knife round my neck, that, in case I should be again so enclosed, I might shorten my miseries. Over the stone that had fallen, several others

hung tottering, under which I was several hundred times obliged to creep. Meantime I was nearly betrayed by a most singular circumstance. I had two years before so tamed a mouse that it would play round me and eat from my mouth. In this small animal I discovered proofs of intelligence too great to easily gain belief; were I to write them, priests would rail, monks grumble, and such philosophers as suppose man alone endowed with the power of thought, allowing nothing but what they call instinct to animals, would proclaim me a fabulous writer, and my opinions heterodox to what they suppose sound philosophy. This intelligent mouse had nearly been my ruin. I had diverted myself with it during the night; it had been nibbling at my door, and capering on a trencher. The sentinels happened to hear our amusement, and called the officers; they heard also, and added all was not right in my dungeon. At day-break my doors resounded; the town-major, a smith, and mason entered; strict search was begun; flooring, walls, chains, and my own person were all scrutinized, but in vain. They asked what was the noise they had heard. I mentioned the mouse, whistled, and it came and jumped upon my shoulder. Orders were given that I should *be deprived of its society*; I earnestly entreated they would at least spare its life. The officer

on guard gave me his word of honour he would present it to a lady, who would treat it with the utmost tenderness. The lady put the poor little thing in a cage; but it pined, refused all sustenance, and died.'

The peace of Hubertsburg put an end to the war between Austria and Prussia. In one respect it was prejudicial to Trenck; the militia were relieved from duty at Magdeburg, and the keeping of the fortress was committed to the regular troops. He was thus deprived of many who had become his warm friends, and they were not easily to be replaced. By these new-comers he was more strictly watched, and he ceased to obtain the comforts which he had recently enjoyed; ammunition-bread was again his sole fare. To make his condition more painful, he learned that, instead of his release being insisted on, his name had scarcely been mentioned during the negotiation for peace.

At this moment fortune seemed inclined to give him yet another chance of getting free. There was in the garrison a lieutenant of the regular forces, who had run so deeply into debt that he was preparing to desert. This man having manifested pity for Trenck, and a desire to be serviceable, the captive made him a present of a hundred ducats. This led to the forming of a plan for the liberation of the captive. It was arranged that the lieutenant should procure

four keys like those of the dungeon, which he was to substitute for them ; the guards were to be got out of the way on various pretences, and the two fugitives were to mount the horses which would be ready for them, and gallop off to the Saxon town of Gummern. The day was also fixed for carrying this scheme into execution. Being thus, as he fondly imagined, thrice armed against disappointment, he came to a resolution which to every reasonable man must appear extravagant and rash. 'I was vain enough,' he says, 'stupid enough, mad enough, to form the design of casting myself on the generosity and magnanimity of the great Frederick. Should this fail, I still thought my lieutenant a certain saviour.' This singular resolution consisted in disclosing every particular relative to his means of escape through the mine and gallery. He carried it into effect. When the major came to visit the cell, Trenck desired him to inform Prince Ferdinand of Brunswick, that the captive would make his appearance on the glacis of Klosterbergen, at whatever hour the prince might please to appoint ; in which case he would hope for his highness' protection, and statement of the matter to the king, who would then be convinced of his innocence, and the perfect clearness of his conscience.

The major rode to town with this message, and soon returned with three other officers. The

prisoner was told that all he required had been promised by the prince, on condition of his proving the truth of his assertion ; but that, as a breaking-out could not be permitted, it would suffice for him to give other proofs of his veracity. After they had made the most solemn promises of good faith, he threw off his chains, raised the flooring, and left nothing unrevealed. They then quitted him for about an hour, came back, and said that the prince was astonished, and wished him all happiness. He was then conducted to the guard-house, where he continued some days ; and though the strictest watch was kept upon him, he was treated in a friendly manner, and fared sumptuously. It is probable that the sight of several workmen employed on his dungeon, and carts carrying heavy stones to it, did occasionally excite unpleasant feelings ; but it was not till his friend the lieutenant came on guard that Trenck's hopes of freedom were crushed. The officer blamed the disclosure which the captive had made, and assured him that Prince Ferdinand knew nothing of the matter. The report spread in the garrison was, he said, that the prisoner had been detected in making a new attempt. The information given by the lieutenant was correct. Dreading censure for their want of vigilance, the officers had suppressed the captive's message, and stated

that by their diligence he had been caught at work.

As soon as the dungeon was completed, Trenck was led back to it. It had been paved with enormous flagstones, and rendered impenetrable in every part. In one point his condition was amended. Only his ankle was chained to the wall; and though the links were twice as strong as before, the relief must have been considerable. While the smith was riveting the chain, Trenck vented his indignation in bitter reproaches, and tauntingly declared, that if they were to build their dungeon of steel it would be insufficient to retain him. The lofty tone of Trenck was prompted by a firm reliance upon the promised aid from the lieutenant. He waited anxiously for the day when his friend was to be on guard; and when that day arrived, his disappointment was extreme to see another officer instead of him. Week after week he hoped to see the man on whom his liberty depended, but he saw him no more. At length he learned that the lieutenant had quitted the corps of grenadiers. The cause of his supposed friend's breach of faith he never discovered. It is not unlikely that the officer was intimidated, or disgusted, by what he might consider as the rash disclosures which Trenck had made. The defection was severely felt by the prisoner; gloom and sadness took possession of his heart.

Yet, while he was thus mourning over his ruined hopes, and looking forward to nothing but a life of monotonous incarceration and misery, he was on the eve of being gratified to the full extent of his wishes. On the 24th of December 1763, nine months after the close of the war, the day, to accelerate which he had made almost superhuman struggles, at last dawned upon him. Reichmann, the deputy governor, accompanied by several persons, entered his dungeon; their countenances were more cheerful than usual. 'This time, my dear Trenck,' said Reichmann, 'I am the joyful messenger of good news. Prince Ferdinand has prevailed upon the king to let your irons be taken off.' Accordingly, to work went the smith. 'You shall also,' continued he, 'have a better apartment.' 'I am free, then,' said Trenck; 'but you are afraid to tell me too suddenly. Speak! fear not! I can moderate my transports.' 'Then you *are* free!' was the reply. When the smith had ended his work Trenck was conducted to the guard-room, where he was congratulated by everybody, and took the oath which was administered to all state prisoners on such occasions. At the time of his liberation he was thirty-seven years of age, eleven years of which had been wasted in captivity—seventeen months at Glatz, and the remainder at Magdeburg.

CHAPTER IV.

CASANOVA'S ESCAPE FROM THE STATE PRISON OF VENICE.

CASANOVA, whose Christian name was John James, and who thought proper to add 'de Seingalt' to his surname, was by birth a Venetian, but claimed to be descended from the ancient Spanish house of Palafox. Talent seems to have been largely bestowed upon his family; his two younger brothers, Francis and John Baptist, attained a high reputation as painters, and the latter is also known as a writer upon pictorial art. John James was born at Venice in 1725; studied at Padua, and distinguished himself by his precocious abilities, and his rapid progress in learning. His wit and conversational powers made him a favourite guest among the patricians of his native city. He was designed for the Church, and had the prospect of rising in it, but his dissipated habits and social intrigues marred his fortunes, and even brought imprisonment upon him.

After a variety of adventures, he embarked in 1743 for Constantinople, where he formed an acquaintance with the celebrated Count Bonneval. A quarrel at Corfu compelled him to return to Venice. There for a while he gained subsistence as a violin player. By a lucky chance he acquired the friendship of a rich and powerful Venetian. He happened to be present one day when the sena-

tor Bragadino was struck by a fit. Casanova boldly prohibited the use of the medicine which the physicians had prescribed, and by his own skill succeeded in recovering the patient. The grateful Bragadino took him into his house, and thenceforth seems to have almost considered him as a son. But the unsteadiness of Casanova stood in the way of his permanent happiness. He was again under the necessity of quitting his native place, and successively other cities which he visited; and he spent some years in wandering over Italy and visiting Paris, devoting his time chiefly to pleasure and to gaming.

Again Casanova found his way back to Venice, where his converse and social powers procured for him a hearty welcome. But he did not long remain in safety. The malice of an enemy, aided by his own culpable imprudence, at length brought him under the severe lash of the Venetian government. His dissolute character undoubtedly justified suspicion. He confesses with shameless candour that he was anything but pious, and that there was not a more determined libertine in Venice. It was, however, no love of morality that prompted the proceedings against him. Among the many individuals whom he had offended by his tongue, his

upon the floor of the prison, and this itself was an employment of some hours. The sand was obliged to be thrown out by the hand, and after it thus lay heaped in my prison, must again be returned into the hole ; and I calculated that after I had proceeded twenty feet, I was obliged to creep under ground in my hole, from 1500 to 2000 fathoms, within twenty-four hours, in the removal and replacing of the sand. This labour ended, care was to be taken that in none of the crevices of the floor there might be any appearance of this fine white sand. The flooring was next to be exactly replaced, and my chains to be resumed. So severe was the fatigue of one day in this mode, that I was always obliged to rest the three following. To reduce my labour as much as possible, I was constrained to make the passage so small that my body only had space to pass, and I had not room to draw back my arm to my head. The work, too, must all be done naked, otherwise the dirtiness of my shirt must have been remarked ; the sand was wet. At length the expedient of sandbags occurred to me, by which it might be removed out and in more expeditiously. I obtained linen from the officers, and I took my sheets and the ticking that enclosed my straw, and cut them up for sandbags, *taking care to lie down on my bed, as if ill, when Buckhausen paid his visit.*

‘The labour toward the conclusion became so intolerable as to incite despondency. I frequently sat contemplating the heaps of sand, during a momentary respite from work ; and thinking it impossible I could have strength or time again to replace all things as they were, resolved patiently to wait the consequence, and leave everything in its present disorder. No ; I can assure the reader, that to effect concealment, I have scarcely had time in twenty-four hours to sit down and eat a morsel of bread. Recollecting, however, the efforts and all the progress I had made, hope would again revive, and exhausted strength return. Again would I begin my labours, that I might preserve my secret and my expectations: yet has it frequently happened, that my visitors have entered a few minutes after I had reinstated everything in its place.

‘When my work was within six or seven feet of being accomplished, a new misfortune happened, that at once frustrated all further attempts. I worked, as I have said, under the foundation of the rampart near where the sentinels stood. I could disencumber myself of my fetters, except my neck collar and its pendant chain. This, as I worked, though it was fastened, got loose, and the clanking was heard by one of the sentinels about fifteen feet from my dungeon. The officer was called ; they laid their ears to the

ground, and heard me as I went backward and forward to bring my earth bags. This was reported the next day; and the major, who was my best friend, with the town-major and a smith and mason, entered my prison. I was terrified. The lieutenant by a sign gave me to understand I was discovered. An examination was begun, but the officers could not see, and the smith and mason found all, as they thought, safe. The sentinel was called, and, "Block-head, you have heard some mole under ground, and not Trenck." There was now no time for delay. In a few days I could have broken out; but when ready, I was desirous to wait for the visitation day of the man who had treated me so harshly—Bruckhausen, that his own negligence might be evident. The visitation being over, the doors were no sooner barred than I began my supposed last labours. I had only three feet further to proceed, and it was no longer necessary I should bring out the sand, having room to throw it behind me. My evil genius, however, had decreed that the same sentinel who had heard me before should be that day on guard. He was piqued by vanity to prove he was not the blockhead he had been called; he therefore again laid his ear to the ground, and again heard me burrowing.

'He called his comrades first; next the major; he came, and heard me likewise; accordingly

they went without the palisades, and heard me working near the door, at which place I was to break into the gallery. This door they immediately opened, entered the gallery with lanterns, and waited to catch the hunted fox when unearthed.

'Through the first small breach I made I perceived a light, and saw the heads of those who were expecting me. This was indeed a thunder-stroke! I crept back; made my way through the sand I had cast behind me, and awaited my fate with shuddering. I had the presence of mind to conceal my pistols, candles, paper, and some money under the floor, which I could remove. The money was disposed of in various holes, well concealed also between the panels of the doors; and under different cracks in the floor I hid my small files and knives. Scarcely were these disposed of before the doors resounded; the floor was covered with sand and sand-bags; my handcuffs, however, and the separating bar, I had hastily resumed, that they might suppose I had worked with them on, which they were silly enough to credit, highly to my future advantage.

'No man was more busy on this occasion than the brutal and stupid Bruckhausen, who put many interrogatories, to which I made no reply, except assuring him that I should have completed my work some days sooner, had it not been his good

fortune to fall sick, and that this only had been the cause of my failure. The man was absolutely terrified with apprehension; he began to fear me, grew more polite, and even supposed nothing was impossible to me.

‘It was too late to remove the sand; therefore the lieutenant and guard continued with me, so that this night at least I did not want company. When the morning came, the hole was first filled up, and the planking renewed. The tyrant Bork was ill, and could not come, otherwise my treatment would have been still more lamentable. The smiths had ended before the evening, and the irons were heavier than ever. The foot chains, instead of being fastened as before, were screwed and riveted; all else remained as formerly. They were employed on the flooring till the next day, so that I could not sleep; and at last I sank down with weariness.

‘The greatest of my misfortunes was, they again deprived me of my bed, because I had cut it up for sand-bags. Before the doors were barred, Bruckhausen and another major examined my body very narrowly. They often had asked me where I concealed all my implements. My answer was, “Gentlemen, Beelzebub is my best and most intimate friend; he brings me *everything I want*, supplies me *with light*; we play whole nights *at piquet*, and guard me as you

please, he will finally deliver me out of your power.”’

Soon after this last futile attempt to escape, a fearful addition was made to the wretched prisoner’s sufferings. An order arrived that his sleep should be broken every quarter of an hour, by the sentinels calling to him. This was directly carried into effect, and was persisted in for four years. This was, indeed, a punishment intolerable to nature; yet custom at length taught him to answer in his sleep. One benefit, however, he managed to derive from it; by the advice of one of the friendly officers, he refused to answer the sentinel unless his bed was restored, and his firmness ultimately compelled his persecutors to comply with his demand. At this time Bork, the deputy-governor, became insane, and was replaced by Lieutenant-Colonel Reichmann, who was of a kind and benevolent disposition. He could not strike off Trenck’s fetters, or alter the general regulations, but he did all that lay in his power to lighten the woes of his prisoner. By his direction the doors were occasionally left open to admit light and air, and at length were suffered to remain so throughout the day.

The light that entered Trenck’s dungeon enabled him to beguile many tedious hours. To amuse himself, he began to carve with a nail a variety of figures and satirical verses upon the pewter cups out of which he drank.

His work was greatly admired ; every one wished to possess a specimen ; fresh cups were constantly sent to him, and practice at length gave him such perfect mastery in his art, that his productions were sold at a high price, and even admitted into museums.

Undiscouraged by his repeated disappointments, Trenck renewed his exertions to mine his way out. He cut through his chains and the flooring as he had before done, taking care when he left off to fill up every cranny so carefully that no trace of his work was visible. To get rid of the sand he had recourse to an ingenious stratagem. After having thrown out a large quantity, he replaced the flooring, and began with much noise to excavate another hole near the door. The noise drew, as he expected, the jailors into the dungeon ; they laughed at his folly in excavating at a spot where escape was impossible, ordered the sand to be wheeled away, and punished him by the deprivation of his bed and candle for a fortnight. When the vigilance of his keepers had somewhat abated, he proceeded with his mining. This time he reverted to his original plan of making an outlet between the foundation and the palisades. When he had burrowed as far as the dry ditch, he broke a hole through, and threw out one of his *slippers under the palisade, that he might be supposed to have lost it in climbing over.*

He then returned towards his prison, and concealed himself in a hole which he had made under the floor, stopping up the passage between the two holes that he might not be seen. In the morning the slipper was found ; it was concluded he had got off, the alarm guns were fired, cavalry were sent to scour the country, and all the garrison thronged to look at the hole whence Trenck had emerged. He, meanwhile, could hear throughout the day the searches and remarks that were made by his keepers. Yet a few hours more, and he would be able to quit his retreat and scale the palisades, as it was not probable that sentinels would be posted now that he was imagined to be gone. These hopes, however, were speedily blighted. An ensign, on looking at the hole, thought it far too small for its purpose, and tried himself to enter ; but finding he was unable to do so, concluded that the prisoner had not effected his escape, but was in hiding. Obtaining a light, he peeped into the aperture. The stifling heat of the spot where he was coiled up, had compelled Trenck to remove the sand between the holes, and part of his dress was consequently discerned by the sharp-sighted officer. The poor captive was drawn from his concealment amidst the laughter of the bystanders, and reinstated in his dungeon ; but no additional severity was inflicted upon him. For the clemency which he

...the title of
'*The Mystic City of God: by
Maria of Jesus, called Agreda*;' the other was a work written by a Jesuit, to inculcate a particular veneration for the heart of the Saviour. The *Mystic City* was a wild rhapsody, the production of a nun whose intellect was evidently disordered by ascetic practices and visionary contemplation. Having nothing else to beguile the tedious hours with, Casanova persisted for a whole week in reading it, and there was some danger of his becoming as mad as the writer. 'I felt,' says he, 'the influence of the disorder which the nun of Agreda had engrafted on a mind depressed by melancholy and bad food. I smile now when I recall my fantastic'

held i
lowing
to the
would
lings w
and he
sum for
and reti
month's
was acc
In the
Casanov
more th
health h
way, and
tion to e
of the de
leaden re
into a kin
was obliq
unclothe
arm-chair
down

doctor, surgeon, and medicines, without its costing you anything.'

A physician was introduced by the jailor, but Casanova declared that to his physician and his confessor he would not open his lips in the presence of witnesses. Lorenzo at first refused to leave them together, but was finally obliged to yield. Ill as he was, the prisoner still retained a portion of his satirical spirit. 'If you wish to get well,' said the doctor, 'you must banish your melancholy.' 'Write a receipt for that purpose,' said the patient, 'and bear it to the only apothecary who can prepare a dose of it for me. Signor Cavalli, the secretary, is the fatal doctor, who prescribed for me *The Heart of Jesus*, and the *Mystic City*; those works have reduced me to this condition.' By the care of his medical attendant, who also lent him Boethius to read, and obtained from the secretary a promise of other books, the health of the prisoner was speedily improved. 'Nothing now tormented me,' says he, 'but heat, vermin, and ennui; for I could not read Boethius eternally.'

A slight favour was now granted to Casanova by the pity or the policy of his jailor. He was permitted to enter the garret while his cell was being set in order. During the eight or ten minutes which were thus occupied, he walked rapidly up and down, as much for the purpose of scaring away his enemies the rats, as for the sake of exer-

cise. Casanova prudently rewarded the jailor for what he had already done, and thus tempted him to do more. When Lorenzo on the same day came to settle his accounts, 'there remained,' says Casanova, 'a balance of about five-and-twenty shillings in my favour, but I gave it to him, telling him that he might have masses said for it; he thanked me as if he were the priest who was to say them. At the end of each month I repeated this gift, but I never saw any receipt from a priest.'

From day to day Casanova continued to flatter himself that the morrow would set him free. When repeated failures had weakened his confidence of immediate liberation, he took up the hope that some term of imprisonment had originally been fixed; and it struck him that the term would probably expire on the 1st of October, that being the day on which the state inquisitors were changed. On the night preceding that day, his feelings would not suffer him to sleep. The morning for which he had so ardently longed brought him nothing but disappointment. Nearly the whole of the following week was passed in paroxysms of rage and despair. When he subsided into a calmer mood, and was capable of reflecting, he began to think it probable he was to be confined for life. This idea did not, however, bring back his fits of fury or despondency. 'The fearful thought,' says he,

his friends, nor weapons, nor tools, but still he was not to be deterred from his enterprise; for in his opinion there was no object a man might not obtain by incessantly devoting his thoughts to it.

While his mind was occupied in pondering upon the means to carry his resolve into effect, a circumstance occurred, which showed that the idea of recovering liberty was so predominant as to leave no room for that of danger. He was standing in his cell on the 1st of November, looking up to the window in the roof, and scanning the large beam that crossed it. All at once he saw the massive timber shake, bend to the right, and then resume its place, while he himself lost

was a
who h
and w
gained
master
agreea
but ma
sighs a
vented
account
unlucky
nova lei
to sleep
one the
formed t
small su
support.
told the
share hi
giorino,
the mon
weekly
was so

A short time his spirits were depressed. In a few days the vacancy was transiently filled up by a less pleasing character. The stranger was a thin, stooping, shabbily-dressed man, of about fifty, with a sinister expression of countenance. He dined at Casanova's expense on the first day; on the second, when Lorenzo asked for money to purchase food, the new-comer declared that he had not a single farthing. Lorenzo coolly replied, 'Oh, very well! then you shall have a pound and a half of ship-biscuit and excellent water;' and with this humble fare he provided him. Seeing that his fellow-captive seemed low-spirited, Casanova offered to let him share in his repasts, at the same time telling him that he was very imprudent to come there entirely without money. 'I have money,' he replied; 'but one must not let these harpies know it.' He was a usurer, and had attempted to defraud a nobleman, who had unwarily entrusted him with a considerable sum. He had been cast in a suit for the recovery of the deposit, and was to be held in durance till he made restitution, and paid the costs. After he had been imprisoned for four days, he was summoned before the secretary, and in his hurry he slipped on Casanova's shoes instead of his own. In about half an hour he returned with a most woe-begone look, took out of his own shoes two purses containing three hundred

and fifty sequins, and went back to the secretary. Casanova saw no more of him. Stimulated, perhaps, by the threat of torture, the usurer had regained his liberty by parting with his idolized gold. Some months elapsed before he was succeeded by another tenant.

'On the 1st of January 1756,' says Casanova, 'I received a new year's gift. Lorenzo brought me a beautiful dressing-gown lined with fox-fur, a silken coverlid quilted with wool, and a case of bear-skin to put my feet in; for in proportion as my prison was hot in summer was it cold in winter. At the same time he informed me that six sequins monthly were placed at my disposal, and that I might buy what books and newspapers I pleased. He added that this present came from my friend and patron the patrician Bragadino. I begged of him some paper and a pencil, and wrote on it, "My thanks for the clemency of the tribunal, and the generosity of Signor Bragadino." A person must have been in my situation to be able to appreciate the effect this had on me. In the fulness of my heart I pardoned my oppressors; indeed, I was nearly induced to give up all thoughts of escaping, so pliant is man, after misery has bowed him down and degraded him.'

The feeling of submission to his fate was, however, only momentary. His mind was again incessantly employed in dwell-

greatest advantage. At first the favour was considered valuable only as affording him an enlarged space for exercise; but it was not long before he began to imagine that he might turn it to better account. In the course of his brief visits to this spot, he discovered in a corner two chests, round which was a quantity of old lumber. One of the chests was locked; that which was open contained feathers, paper, and twine, and a piece of what seemed to be smooth black marble, about an inch thick, three inches wide, and six inches long. Apparently without having settled what use he could make of it, he carried the stone to his cell, and hid it under his shirts.

Some time after this, while he was walking, his eyes rested on a bolt as thick as a thumb.

stone
had
fix it,
oblige
For
incess
becam
right a
withou
howev
ing the
angular
have d
maker's
finished
of his
would b
ting mu
or perh
alone co

After
five day
done, C
break t
cell was

right in them, while the others were rendered low and dark by the beams which crossed the windows. The only access was through the gates of the Palace, the Bridge of Sighs, and the galleries, and the secretary kept the key, which was daily returned to him by the jailor, after he had attended on the prisoners.

Casanova was aware that under his cell was the secretary's chamber, and that the chamber was open every morning. If by the help of the bedclothes he could descend unseen into it, he purposed to hide himself under the table of the tribunal, and watch an opportunity to sally forth. If, contrary to his expectations, he should find a sentinel in the room, he made up his mind to kill him. He could not, however, yet begin his work, for the cold was so intense, that when he grasped the iron his hands became frozen; and besides, for nineteen hours out of the twenty-four he was in complete darkness, the winter fogs at Venice being so thick, that even in the day-time he had not light enough to read by. He was therefore compelled to postpone till a more favourable season the commencement of his operations.

This compulsory delay, and the want of something to beguile the lagging hours, depressed his spirits. He again sunk into despondency. A lamp would have made him happy. He thought

how he could supply the place of one. He required a lamp, wick, oil, flint and steel, and tinder, and he had not one of them all. By dint of contrivance he soon procured a part of them. An earthen pipkin, which he managed to conceal, was the lamp; the oil was saved from his salad; a wick he formed from cotton taken out of his bed; and a buckle in his girdle was converted into a steel. A flint, matches, and tinder were still deficient. These, too, his perseverance obtained. Pretending to have a violent toothache, he prevailed on Lorenzo to give him a fragment of flint, for the purpose of being steeped in vinegar and applied to the tooth; and to prevent suspicion, he put three pieces of it into vinegar in the presence of the jailor. Sulphur he got by a similar stratagem. He was very opportunely attacked by an irritation of the skin, for which the article he stood in need of was one of the remedies prescribed.

But now for the tinder; to contrive a substitute for that was the work of three days. It at last occurred to him that he had ordered his tailor to stuff his silken vest under the arms with sponge, to prevent the appearance of stain. The clothes lay before him. 'My heart beat,' he says; 'the tailor might not have fulfilled my orders; I hesitated between fear and hope. It only required two steps, and I should be out

...the sponge.
I was no sooner in possession
of it than I poured the oil into
the pipkin, set the wick in,
and the lamp was ready. It
was no little addition to the
pleasure this luxury afforded
me, that I owed it entirely to
my own ingenuity, and that I
had violated one of the strictest
laws of the prison. I dreaded
the approach of night no longer.'

The pleasure which he de-
rived from this acquisition en-
abled him to bear with tolerable
patience the necessary postpone-
ment of his great undertaking.
Considering that during the
riotous festivities of the Carni-
val he would be daily liable to
have companions sent to him,
he resolved not to begin his
labours till the first Monday in
Lent. But here he was stag-
gered by another obstacle, which
he had not hitherto taken

of as
work I
But h
away;
wily ca
found
greeted
so viol
a blood
up a ha
stained
thumb,
how I
for a p
came, p
his comp
assented
rected t
thencefo
Havin
field fo
moved
alcove, I
set vigor
floor wi

toil he had penetrated through this plank, he found beneath it another of equal thickness, which was succeeded by a third. Three weeks were consumed in getting through these multiplied impediments. When he had conquered them, he came to a still more formidable obstacle—a sort of pavement, composed of small pieces of marble. On this his stiletto could make no impression. His resourceful brain, however, discovered a method of surmounting this difficulty. Taking the hint from a well-known proceeding ascribed to Hannibal, he moistened the mortar with vinegar, and softened it so much, that at the end of four days he was enabled to remove the pieces of marble. There was yet another plank to cut through, and as the hole was already ten inches deep, this part of his task was exceedingly troublesome and laborious.

Prone on the ground, quite naked, and streaming with perspiration, his lamp standing lighted in the hole, Casanova had been working at the last plank for three hours of a sultry day in June, when he was startled by the rattling of bolts in the ante-rooms. He had barely time to blow out the lamp, push the bed back into its place, and throw upon it the mattress and bedding, before Lorenzo entered. The jailor brought with him a prisoner, and congratulated the tenant of the cell on having such a companion. The new-comer

exclaimed, 'Where am I? and where am I to be confined? What a heat, and what a smell! With whom am I to be imprisoned?' As soon as the captives could see each other, a mutual recognition took place. The person whom Lorenzo had installed in the cell was Count Fanarola, an agreeable and honourable man of middle age, who was committed for some trifling remarks, which he had been so imprudent as to make in a public place. Casanova, who was well acquainted with the count, confided to him the secret of his project, and was encouraged to persevere. Fanarola was liberated in the course of a few days.

Left once more alone, Casanova resumed his toilsome occupation. It was protracted by a circumstance which he had feared might happen, but was unable to prevent. When he had made a small perforation in the last plank, he found that the room beneath was, as he had supposed, the secretary's; but he found also that he had made his aperture just over a large cross-beam, which would hinder his descent. He was therefore obliged to widen the hole on the other side, so as to keep clear of this impediment. In the meantime he carefully stopped up the small perforation with bread, that the light of his lamp might not be perceived. It was not till the 23d of August, 1756, that he brought his labour to a close. All was ready for breaking

...round in
Venice. Three men came forward as Casanova's accusers, and in their depositions they mingled a small portion of truth with much absurd falsehood. They swore that he ate meat on the prohibited days, and that he went to mass only to hear the music, two charges which no doubt were true. Their inventions, however, were more formidable than their facts. They swore vehemently that he was suspected of freemasonry; that the large sums lost by him in gaming, he obtained by selling to foreign ambassadors the state secrets, which he artfully wormed out of his patrician friends; and that he believed only in the devil, in proof of which last accusation they urged, that when he lost his money at play, he never, as all good Christians did, gave way to execrations against

himself. We secured the books, Casanova dressed, and as though he went to a ball in the evening. The papers among the books, his cabalistic lectures, he quitted with the head of a man who was surprised to find more than thirty persons waiting.

'Is it not true,' observes, 'examine the English, who are the most moderate, one man is sufficient to arrange a revolution in my country, and he has set up his own system, he required for this a few more, probably a coward, when he attacks, and is attacked, and

which are known also by the name of I Plombi, from their being immediately under the leaden roof of the state prison. This prison was opposite to the ducal palace, on the canal called Rio di Palazzo, and was connected with it by a covered bridge, which was emphatically denominated the *Bridge of Sighs*.

On reaching his destination, Casanova was presented to the secretary of the inquisitors, who merely cast a glance on him, and said, 'It is he; secure him well.' He was then led up into a dirty garret, about six yards long and two broad, lighted through a hole in the roof. He supposed that he was to be confined there; but he was not to be so leniently dealt with. The jailor applied a large key to a strong, iron-bound door about three feet and a half high, in the centre of which was a grated hole eight inches square. While the jailor was doing this, the prisoner's attention was engaged upon a singular machine, made of iron, which was fixed in the wall. Its use was explained to him in a tone of levity accompanied by laughter, as though there had been some excellent joke in the matter. It was an instrument, similar to the Spanish garotte, for strangling those who were condemned by the cruel inquisitors. After having received this consolatory explanation, he was ushered into his cell, which he could not enter without stooping till he was nearly bent double. The

door was closed on him, and he was asked through the grating what he would have to eat. The sudden calamity which had befallen him had deadened his appetite and soured his temper, and he sullenly replied that he had not yet thought about what he would have. The question was not repeated; he was left alone, listened to the keeper locking door after door, and then leaned against the grating in confused and gloomy meditation.

When he was a little recovered from the first shock, Casanova began to explore his dungeon. It was so low that he was obliged to stoop as he groped along, and there was neither bed, chair, nor table in it. There was nothing but a shelf, on which he deposited the silk mantle, hat, plume, and other finery in which he had so unseasonably arrayed himself. The place was involved in all but utter darkness. There was indeed a window, or rather aperture, of two feet square, but it was ingeniously contrived to admit the smallest possible quantity of light. Not only was it thickly checkered by broad iron bars, but immediately above it was a beam of eighteen inches in diameter, which crossed before the opening in the roof.

The heat now became so intolerable, that it drove him to the grating in the door, where he could also rest by leaning on his elbows. From this loop-

near him. He began to feel the misery of solitude, and though he had no desire for food, he was pained by the neglect which left him without it. As the day advanced, his passions rose almost to madness; he howled, stamped, cursed, and screamed for more than an hour. No notice whatever was taken of him; and at length, it being pitch dark, he tied a handkerchief round his head, and stretched himself on the floor. There he lay for some time, his mind distracted with contending thoughts and emotions, till sleep brought him a welcome relief.

He had slept for three hours, when he was aroused by the midnight bell. Stretching out his hand for a handkerchief, it met another. which was

hours.
was laughing
stead of
suggestions.
place which
seemed to
a dream
half her
fancy felt
hopes or
He began
the reality
presented
his mind.

With this
revived in
nova. He
mediate
spirit which
scarcely was
meditating
revenge.

you are much mistaken !' He then handed a pencil and paper to Casanova, who gave him a list of what he should want. The jailor, on its being read to him, declared that books, ink, paper, looking-glass, and razors must be omitted, as they were forbidden things. He required money for the provisions, and Casanova gave him one of three sequins, which was all his present wealth. At noon the furniture and the food were brought, and he was desired to mention what he would have for the morrow, as the keeper could visit him only once a day. He was informed, likewise, that the secretary would send him books more fitting than those in the list, as the latter belonged to the prohibited class.

On Casanova desiring that his thanks might be conveyed to the secretary for having given him a room to himself, instead of placing him with such scoundrels as he supposed to be the inmates of these dungeons, the surprised jailor, who at first thought the speech was in jest, assured him that none but people of condition were put here, and that far from being in favour, his insulated condition was intended as an aggravation of punishment. 'The fellow was right,' says Casanova, 'as I learned some days afterwards but too well. I then learned that a man who is alone in his confinement, without the power of employing himself, in a cell early dark, and where he only

sees once a day the person who brings him food, and in which he cannot even walk about upright, becomes the most miserable of living creatures ; he may at last even long for the company of a murderer, a madman, or even a bear. Solitude in these prisons brings despair ; but none know that who have not had the experience.'

Drawing his table towards the grating, for the sake of the gleam of light that entered there, Casanova sat down to his repast ; an ivory spoon was his only substitute for a knife and fork. He had, however, little occasion for carving implements. Long fasting and anxiety had taken away his appetite, and he could not swallow more than a spoonful of soup. Seated in his arm-chair, he passed the whole of the day in feverish expectation of the promised books. At night, sleep was banished from his couch by a combination of circumstances ; rats in the adjacent garret were persevering and noisy in their gambols ; the clock of St. Mark's tower, nigh at hand, was as audible as though it had been in the cell ; and he was overrun and tormented by myriads of fleas, which, he says, almost sent him into convulsions. At day-break Lorenzo, the jailor, appeared, ordered the cell to be swept out, placed the victuals on the table, and produced two large books, which were sent by the secretary. Casanova wished to go into the garret,

Though the delay was dictated by prudence, Casanova had reason to repent of it. 'On the 25th of August an event happened,' says he, 'which even now makes me shudder at the recollection of it. I heard the bolts drawn, and a death-like fear seized me; the beating of my heart shook my body, and I threw myself almost fainting into my arm-chair. Lorenzo, still in the garret, said to me through the grating in a tone of pleasure, "I wish you joy of the news I bring."

'I imagined he had brought me my freedom, and I saw myself lost; the hole I had made would effectually debar me from liberty. Lorenzo entered, and desired me to follow him. I offered to dress myself, but he said it was unnecessary, as he was only going to remove me from this detestable —"

of that
Would
my toils
have ac
'Lear
Lorenzo
to enlive
two lon
three st
hall, and
at the lei
ridor twe
broad.
dows in it
wide exte
part of th
in a situa
prospect.
tined pris
of this cor
of it was
windows
sage, so t
not only
the prosp

were petrified. His mind was agitated by a variety of feelings, in which disappointment and alarm were predominant. He had not only to lament that his hopes were blighted on the very eve of their being realized, but he had reason to fear that his punishment would be much increased. Clemency to state criminals was not an attribute of the Venetian government. He already seemed to himself to be condemned to dwell for life, in the dark and silent dungeons called *the wells*, where, far beneath the level of the waves, the victim pined away existence amidst swarms of vermin, oozing waters, and noisome exhalations. At last, however, by a powerful mental effort, he in some measure recovered his composure.

Shortly after his removal, two under-jailors brought his bed, and went back for the remainder of his things. They did not return; and for more than two hours he was kept in suspense. At length hurried footsteps and words of wrath were heard in the passage, and Lorenzo rushed into the apartment, hot with rage, and pouring forth a torrent of imprecations and blasphemies. He demanded the axe with which the hole had been made, the name of the faithless servant who had furnished it, and ordered his prisoner to be searched. Casanova, who knew his man, met him with scorn and defiance. *The captive, the bed, and the mattress*

were examined, but nothing was found; luckily the under side of the arm-chair, into which the stiletto was thrust, was not looked into. 'So you won't tell me where the tools are that you used to cut through the floor?' said Lorenzo. 'I'll see if you'll confess to others.' Casanova answered with provoking coolness, 'If it be true that I have cut through the floor, I shall say that I had the tools from yourself, and that I have given them back to you.' This was too much for the jailor to bear; he began literally to howl, ran his head against the wall, stamped and danced like a madman, and finally darted from the room. The threat which Casanova had thrown out produced the effect which he probably expected from it. Lorenzo had the hole secretly filled up, and took special care to say nothing about it to his suspicious and vindictive masters.

On quitting the cell, Lorenzo closed all the windows, so as to prevent the prisoner from inhaling a single breath of fresh air. The place was like an oven, and to sleep was rendered impossible. As he durst not report to his superiors the offence which had been committed, the jailor seems to have determined to revenge himself by making the culprit as uncomfortable as he could. In the morning sour wine, stinking water, tainted meat, and hard bread were brought to Casanova; and when he requested that the window

think he should be suffocated ; the perspiration dropped from him so profusely that he could not read or walk about ; and he could neither eat nor drink of the disgusting food with which he was supplied. The same fare was furnished on the second day, and the same silence maintained by the malicious jailor. The prisoner grew furious, and determined that he would stab his tormentor on the following day ; but prudence, or a better feeling, induced him to relinquish his purpose, and he contented himself with assuring Lorenzo, that as soon as he regained his liberty he would certainly throttle him.

For a whole week Lorenzo kept up this system of annoyance. On the eighth day Casanova, in the presence of the under-turnkeys. imperious

the v
Conci
change
the b
might
wife, v
sequin,
among
they we
'You h
indebte
made th
floor of
not, the
anything
gave yo
yourself,
gave me
the rest
is true ;
that I he
to breal
'Just as
thing fro
patience

from being made. Every day one of the attendants searched the floor and walls of the apartment with an iron bar. But the prisoner laughed at this useless care. It was neither through the walls nor the floor that he was planning to escape. He well knew that in those quarters nothing could be done. His new scheme was to find the means of opening a correspondence with the prisoner over his head, whom he would furnish with the stiletto, for the purpose of making an aperture, through which he himself might ascend into the upper cell. On reaching that cell, Casanova purposed to break another hole in the ceiling, get out upon the roof with his fellow-labourer, and either find some outlet, or let themselves down by the help of their linen and bed-clothes.

It is obvious, that the success of such a project was so extremely doubtful, that it seemed to be the height of absurdity to reckon upon it. At the very outset, the commencing and carrying on an intercourse with the prisoner above-stairs, appeared to present an almost insuperable difficulty. If that were surmounted, there was the chance that his confederate might be cowardly or treacherous, there was the hourly risk that their operations would be detected, and there was the danger which they must encounter in *effecting their descent from the lofty summit of the prison.* But the longing

to recover freedom can inspire the captive with hope, though hope be lost. The first obstacle was unconsciously removed by Lorenzo himself. That worthy had an insatiable love of gold, and could not bear to see the money of the prisoners pass into any other pockets than his own. Casanova satirically describes him, as being one who would have sold St. Mark himself, for a dollar. The prisoner having desired him to purchase the works of Maffei, the jailor suggested that the expense might be saved by borrowing books from another captive, and lending his own in return. This suggestion was readily adopted by Casanova, who hoped that it might lead to a correspondence, which would forward his design. A volume of Wolff's writing was brought to him, in which he found a sheet of paper, containing a paraphrase in verse of a sentence from Seneca. He had neither pen nor pencil, but he nevertheless contrived to write some verses on the same paper, and a catalogue of his books on the last leaf of the volume. The nail of his little finger, shaped into a sort of pen, and some mulberry juice, were the materials which he employed.

An answer, in the Latin language, came on the morrow with the second volume. The writer, who was the inhabitant of the cell above Casanova's, stated himself to be a monk, by name Marino Balbi, and of a noble

Venetian family; Count Andreas Asquino, of Udina, was his fellow-prisoner. Both of them offered the use of their books. In reply, Casanova gave an account of himself, which drew forth a second epistle from the monk. In the next book was a letter of sixteen pages, and at the back of the volume, paper, pen, and pencil. These invaluable articles the two prisoners had procured by bribing Nicolo, the under-keeper who attended on them.

Balbi, who had learned from Nicolo the particulars of the recent attempt to escape, was eager to know what were Casanova's present plans. At first Casanova hesitated to trust him, having conceived an unfavourable opinion of his character; but considering that he could not do without his assistance, he finally resolved to confide in him. The monk made some objections to the feasibility of the plan, which, however, were soon overruled. That Balbi might perforate the floor, it was necessary for him to have the stiletto; and Casanova was puzzled how to convey it to him. He at last hit upon a method. He directed Lorenzo to procure a large folio edition of a work which he specified, and which he thought would allow of the stiletto being concealed in the hollow, between the binding and the leather back. Unluckily the stiletto

was to be two inches longer than the volume, and Casanova

was obliged to task his ingenuity to find a remedy for this defect.

'I told Lorenzo,' he says, 'that I was desirous of celebrating Michaelmas day with two great plates of macaroni, dressed with butter and Parmesan cheese, and that I wished to give one to the prisoner who had lent me his books. He answered that the same prisoner had expressed a wish to borrow my great book. I told him I would send it with the macaroni, and ordered him to procure me the largest dish he could; I would myself fill it. While Lorenzo went for the dish, I wrapped up the hilt in paper, and stuck it behind the binding. I was convinced that if I put a large dish of macaroni on the top of the book, Lorenzo's attention would be so occupied in carrying that safely, that he never would perceive the end of the iron projecting. I informed Balbi of this, and charged him to be particularly cautious to take the dish and book together. On Michaelmas day Lorenzo came with a great pan, in which the macaroni was stewed. I immediately added the butter, and poured it into both dishes, filling them up with grated Parmesan cheese; the dish for the monk I filled to the brim, and the macaroni swam in butter. I put the dish upon the volume, which was half as broad in diameter as the book was long, and gave them to Lorenzo, with the back of the book turned

towards him, telling him to stretch out his arms, and to go slowly, that the butter might not run over the book. I observed him steadily; he could not turn his eyes away from the butter, which he feared to spill. He proposed to take the dish first, and then return for the book, but I told him by so doing my present would lose half its value; he consented to take both at last, observing that it would not be his fault if the butter ran over. I followed him with my eyes as far as I could, and soon heard Balbi cough three times, the concerted signal of the success of my stratagem.'

Balbi now set to work with the stiletto. Though he was young and strong, he did not labour with the same spirit which had been displayed by Casanova, to whom he often wrote complaining of the toil that he had to encounter, and expressing his fears that it would be unavailing. As, however, the floor presented but comparatively few obstacles, he had advanced so far by the middle of October, that only the last plank remained to be cut through. To push in the ceiling was all that would then be requisite to open a passage, and this, of course, was not to be done till the moment arrived for their flight. But while Casanova was exulting in the idea of speedily *regaining his liberty*, a formidable impediment was *thrown in his way*. He heard

the outer door open, and instantly made the preconcerted signal to Balbi to stop working. Lorenzo entered, accompanied by two of his underlings and a prisoner, and apologized for being obliged to bring him a scoundrel as a companion. The person he thus described was a very ill-looking, small, thin man, apparently between thirty and forty, wearing a shabby dress and a round black wig. After having ordered a mattress for the new-comer, and informed him that tenpence a day was allowed for his support, the jailor took his leave.

The name of Casanova's unwelcome comrade was Sorodaci. He was a common informer, and a spy of the worst class, who was sent to prison for having deceived the council by false information, while at the same time he had betrayed his own cousin. He was intensely superstitious, his only vulnerable spot, and upon this Casanova worked. To wait till he was removed would have been to relinquish all hope of escape. The last night of October was fixed for the completion of the enterprise, as the inquisitors and their secretary annually visited some villages on the mainland on the 1st of November; and Lorenzo, taking advantage of their absence, usually made himself so merry, that he did not rise till late the next morning to visit his prisoners. Casanova persuaded the wretched spy, that the Holy Virgin would

The inquisitors and their secretary had set out for the mainland. Lorenzo had supplied the wants of the captives, and was preparing for his carousal, and the field was thus left clear for Casanova's operations. As the clock struck twelve, Balbi began his final attack on the floor; and in a few minutes a piece of the last plank and the ceiling fell in, and was speedily followed by the worker himself. Casanova now took the stiletto, and leaving the monk with his companion, he himself passed into the upper cell to reconnoitre. At first sight he perceived that Count Asquino was not a man fitted for making perilous exertions. On being told how the escape was to be effected, the count, who was seventy years of age, replied that he had no

care to
est ma
his cle
some
then re
count.
ready
set to w
ing in
out, he
light of
ness of
allow o
their ent
St. Mar
people,
scarcely
bling ab
hours the
they cou
money
article, th
was requ
who, how
them two

myself in the same manner. We then dressed in our vest only, and with our hats on our heads, looked through the opening I had made. I went first. Notwithstanding the mist, every object was visible enough. Kneeling and creeping, I thrust my weapon between the joints of the lead plates; holding with one hand by that, and with the other by the plank on which the lead plate had lain, which I had removed, I raised myself on the roof. Balbi, in following me, grasped my band behind, so I resembled a beast of burden, which must draw as well as carry; in this manner I had to ascend a steep and slippery roof side. When we were half-way up this dangerous place, Balbi desired me to stop a moment, for that one of his bundles had fallen off, and had probably only rolled down to the gutter. My first thought was to give him a push that would send him after it, but Heaven enabled me to contain myself; the punishment would have fallen upon me as well as him, for without his help I could do nothing. I asked if the bundle was gone; and when I heard that it contained his black gown, two shirts, and a manuscript, I consoled him for its loss; he sighed and followed me, still holding by my clothes.

‘After I had climbed over about sixteen lead plates, I reached the ridge of the roof; I set myself astride on it, and the monk imitated me. Our

backs were turned towards the island of St. Georgio Maggiore, and two hundred steps before us was the cupola of St. Mark’s, a part of the ducal palace, wherein the chapel of the Doge is more magnificent than any king’s. Here we took off our bundles. He placed his ropes between his legs; but on laying his hat upon them, it rolled down the roof and fell into the canal. He looked on this as a bad omen, and complained that he had now lost hat, gown, shirts, and manuscript; but I remarked to him that it was fortunate the hat had fallen to the right and not to the left, for otherwise it would have alarmed the sentinel in the arsenal.

‘After looking about me a little, I bid the monk remain quite still here till my return, and climbed along the roof, my dagger in my hand. I crept in this manner for an hour, trying to find a place to which I might fasten my rope to enable me to descend; but all the places I looked down into were enclosed ones, and there were insuperable difficulties in getting to the canonica on the other side of the church; yet everything must be attempted, and I must hazard it without allowing myself to think too long on the danger. But about two-thirds of the way down the side of the roof I observed a dormer window, which probably led to some passage, leading to the dwelling-places not within the

limits of the prisons, and I thought I should find some of the doors going out of it open at daybreak. If any one should meet us, and take us for state prisoners, he would find, I determined, some difficulty in detaining us. With this consideration, with one leg stretched out towards the window, I let myself gently slide down till I reached the little roof of it that ran parallel to the great one, and set myself upon it. I then leaned over, and by feeling discovered it to be a window, with small round panes of glass cased in lead, behind a grating. To penetrate this required a file, and I had only my stiletto. Bitterly disappointed, and in great embarrassment, I seemed incapable of coming to a determination, when the clock of St. Mark's striking midnight awakened my fainting resolution. I remembered that this sound announced the beginning of All Saints' Day: when misfortune drives a strong mind to devotion, there is always a little superstition mingled with it; that bell aroused me to action, and promised me victory. Lying on my stomach, and stretching over, I struck violently against the grating with my dagger in the hope of forcing it in. In a quarter of an hour four of the wooden squares were broken, and my hand grasped the wood-work; the panes of *glass were speedily demolished, for I heeded not the cutting of my hand.*

'I now returned to the top of the roof, and crept back to my companion. I found him in a dreadful rage, cursing me for having left him two hours; he at last thought I must have fallen over, and was about to return to his prison. He asked me what were my intentions. "You will soon see," I said; and packing our bundles on our necks, I bid him follow me. When we reached the roof of the window, I explained to him what I had done, and what I intended to do. I asked his advice as to the best mode of getting in at it. It would be easy for the first man, as the second would hold the rope; but what would this last one do? In leaping down from the window to the floor he might break a leg; for we knew nothing of the space between. The monk instantly proposed I should let him down first, and afterwards think how I should get in myself. I was sufficiently master of myself to conceal my indignation at this proposal, and to proceed to execute his wish. I tied a rope round my companion, and sitting astride of the window roof, let him down to the window, telling him to rest on his elbows on the roof, and to put his feet through the hole I had made. I then lay down again on the roof, and told him to be satisfied that I would hold the rope fast.

'Balbi came safely down upon the floor, untied himself, and I drew the rope back to me; but in doing this I found that the

space from the window to the floor was ten times my arm's length; it was impossible, therefore, to jump this. Balbi called to me to throw the rope to him, but I took care not to follow his absurd and selfish counsel. I now determined on returning to the great roof, where I discovered a cupola at a place I had not yet been; it brought me to a stage laid with lead plates, and which had a trap-door covered with two folding shutters. I found here a tub full of fresh lime, building tools, and a tolerably long ladder; the latter, of course, attracted my particular attention. I tied my rope round one of the rings, and climbing up the roof again, drew the ladder after me. The ladder I must contrive to put in at the window, and it was twelve times the length of my arm. Now I missed the help of the monk. I let the ladder down to the gutter, so that one end leaned against the window; the other stood in the gutter; I drew it up to me again as I leaned over, and endeavoured to get the end in at the window, but in vain; it always came over the roof; and the morning might come and find me here, and bring Lorenzo soon after it. I determined to slide down to the gutter, in order to give the ladder the right direction. This gutter of marble yielded me a resting-place, where I lay at length on it; and I succeeded in putting the ladder a foot into

the window, which diminished its weight considerably. But it was necessary to push it in two feet more; I then should only have to climb back to the window roof, and by means of the line draw it entirely in. To effect this I was compelled to raise myself on my knees; while doing so they slipped off the gutter, and I lay with my whole breast and elbows upon it.

'I exerted all my strength to draw my body up again, and lay myself on the gutter. I had fortunately no trouble with the ladder; it was now three feet in the window, and did not move. As soon as I found that I lay firm, I endeavoured to raise my right knee up to the level of the gutter. I had nearly succeeded, when the effort gave me a fit of the cramp, as paralyzing as it was painful. What a moment! I lay for two minutes motionless; at length the pain subsided, and I succeeded in raising one knee after the other upon the marble again; I rested a few minutes, and then pushed the ladder still farther into the window. Sufficiently experienced in the laws of equilibrium by this adventure, I returned to the window roof, and drawing the ladder entirely in, my companion received the end of it, and secured it; I then threw in the rope and bundle, and soon rejoined him: after brief congratulations, I felt about to examine the dark and narrow place we were in.

‘We came to a grated window, which opened on my raising the latch, and we entered a large hall; we felt round the walls, and met with a table surrounded by arm-chairs. I at length found a window, opened the sash of it, and looked by star-light down a fearful depth; here was no descent by rope practicable. I returned to the place where we had left our things, and sat down in an arm-chair, where I was seized with such an invincible desire to sleep, that if I had been told it was death I should have welcomed it; the feeling was indescribable. At the third hour the noise of the monk awoke me; he said my sleeping at such a time and place was incomprehensible; but nature had overcome me. I, however, gained a little strength by my rest.

‘I said as I arose that this was no prison, and that there must therefore be an exit somewhere. I searched till I found the large iron door, and opposite to it was a smaller one with a keyhole; I put my stiletto into it, and exclaimed, “Heaven grant it may not be a cupboard!” After some efforts the lock yielded, and we entered a small room, in which was a table with a key upon it; I tried it; it opened, and I found myself in cupboards filled with papers, it being the archive-chamber. We ascended some *steps, and passing through a glass door, entered the chancery of the Doge.* I now knew

where I was, and as in letting ourselves down we might get into a labyrinth of small courts, I seized an instrument with which the parchments are pierced to affix the seals. This tool I bid Balbi stick into the chink in the door, which I made with my bolt, and worked it about on all sides, not caring for the noise, till I had made a tolerable hole; but the projecting splinters threatened to tear our skin and clothes, and it was five feet from the floor to the opening; for I had chosen the place where the planks were thinnest. I drew a chair to it, and the monk got on it; he stuck his arms and head through the opening, and I pushed the rest of him through into the chamber, the darkness of which did not alarm me. I knew where we were, and threw my bundle through to him, but left the rope behind. I had no one to aid me, on which account I placed a chair on the top of two others, and got through the aperture as far as my loins; when I desired Balbi to pull me through with all his force, regardless of the pain the laceration of flesh gave me. We hastened down two flights of steps, and arrived at the passage leading to the royal stairs as they are called; but these, wide as a town gate, were, as well as those beyond, shut with four wide doors; to force these would have required a petard.

‘I sat down by Balbi, calm and collected, and told him

that my work was done, and that heaven and fortune would achieve the rest for us. "To-day," I continued, "is All Saints' Day, and to-morrow All Souls', and it is not likely anybody should come here; if any one should come to open the doors, I will rescue myself, and do you follow me; if none come, I will remain here and die of hunger, for I can do no more." Balbi's rage and desperation knew no bounds; but I kept my temper, and began to dress myself completely. If Balbi looked like a peasant, his dress at least was not in shreds and bloody like mine. I drew off my stockings, and found on each foot large wounds, for which I was indebted to the gutter and lead plates; I tore my handkerchief, and fastened the bandages with thread which I had about me. I put on my silk dress, which was ill-assorted with the weather, arranged my hair, and put on a shirt with lace ruffles, and silk stockings, and tossed my old clothes into a chair. I now had the appearance of a rake. I threw my handsome cloak on the monk's shoulders, and the fellow looked as if he had stolen it. I now approached a window, and, as I learned some two years afterwards in Paris, some loiterer below, who saw me, informed the keeper of the palace of it, who, fearing that he had locked some one in by *mistake*, came to release us. *I heard the noise of steps coming up the stairs,*

and looking through a chink, saw only one man, with some keys in his hand. I commanded Balbi to observe the strictest silence, and hiding my stiletto under my clothes, placed myself close to the door, so that I needed only one step to reach the stairs. The door was opened, and the old man was so astonished at my appearance, that I was able silently and quickly to pass by him, the monk following me. Assuming then a sedate pace, I took the direction to the great staircase; Balbi wanted to go to the church to the right, for the sake of the sanctuary, forgetting that in Venice there was no sanctuary against state crimes and capital offences; but at last he followed me.

'I did not expect security in Venice. I knew I could not be safe till I had passed the frontiers; I stood now before the royal door of the ducal palace; but without looking at any one, which was the best way to avoid being looked at, I crossed the Piazzetta, and reaching the canal, entered the first gondola I found there. I cast a look behind us, and saw no gondola in pursuit of us. I rejoiced in the fine day, which was as glorious as could be wished, shining with the first rays of an incomparable sunshine. Reflecting on the dangers of the past, on the place where I had spent the preceding day, and on all the fortunately-concurring events which had so

favoured me, gratitude filled my soul, and I raised in silence my thanks for the mercy of God. Overcome by the variety of emotions, I burst into tears, which relieved my heart from the oppression of a joy that seemed ready to burst it.'

Such is the record of one of the most remarkable escapes from prison ever attempted.

But although out of prison, Casanova was not free from danger, and many days, spent in weary wanderings and hair-breadth escapes from recapture, elapsed ere he successfully gained the Venetian frontier, and with a joyful heart crossed the border line and found himself in safety.

CHAPTER V.

NARRATIVE OF THE ADVENTURES OF TWO BROTHERS DURING THE AMERICAN WAR OF INDEPENDENCE.

SOON after the outbreak of the American War of Independence, Sir John Johnson made a sudden incursion into the Mohawk valley—where he once held large possessions—with a force composed of Europeans and Indians. He penetrated the country by the way of Lake Champlain to Crown Point, and thence through the woods to the Sacandaga river. He divided his force into two detachments, himself leading one to the village of Johnstown. The other detachment was sent through a more eastern settlement, to strike the Mohawk river at, or below, Tripe's Hill. From thence it was directed to sweep up the river, through the ancient Dutch village of Caughnawaga, to the Cayadutta Creek, and there unite with Sir John. The old

among others a family of Dutch descent, of great wealth and respectability, named Sammons,—an old man, and his two sons Jacob and Frederick.

The old Dutchman, however, was soon after released, but his two sons, with about forty other captives, were sent to the fortress of Chamblee. On the day after their arrival, Jacob Sammons, having taken an accurate survey of the garrison and facilities of escape, conceived the project of inducing his fellow-prisoners to rise upon the guard and obtain their freedom. The garrison was weak in number, and the sentinels less vigilant than is usual among good soldiers. The prison doors were open once a day, when the prisoners were visited by the proper officer, with four or five soldiers. Jacob had observed where the arms of the guards were stacked in the yard,

Dutch village was surprised in the night, and many of its inhabitants taken prisoners,

and his plan was, that some of the prisoners should arrest, and disarm the visiting guard at the opening of the door, while the residue were to rush forth, seize the arms, and fight their way out. The proposition was accepted to by his brother Frederick, and another man named Van Shuyck, but was considered too daring by the great body of the prisoners to be undertaken. It was therefore abandoned, and the brothers sought afterwards only a chance of escaping by themselves. Within three days the desired opportunity occurred, viz. on the 13th of June.

The prisoners were supplied with an allowance of spruce beer, for which two of their number were detached daily to bring the cask from a brew-house, under a guard of five men with fixed bayonets. Having reason to suppose that the arms of the guards, though charged, were not primed, the brothers so contrived matters as to be taken together to the brewery on the day mentioned, with an understanding that, at a given point, they were to dart from the guard, and run for their lives,—believing that in the confusion of the moment, and the delay consequent upon priming their muskets by the guards, they would be able to escape beyond the ordinary range of musket-shot. The project was boldly executed. At the concerted moment the brothers sprang from their conductors, and darted across the plain

with great fleetness. The alarm was given, and the whole garrison was soon after them in hot pursuit. Unfortunately for Jacob, he fell into a ditch and sprained his ankle. Perceiving the accident, Frederick turned to his assistance; but the other generously admonished him to secure his own flight if possible, and leave him to the chances of war. Recovering from his fall, and regardless of the accident, Jacob sprang forward again with as much expedition as possible; but finding that his lameness impeded his progress, he plunged into a thick clump of shrubs and trees, and was fortunate enough to hide himself between two logs before the pursuers came up. Twenty or thirty shots had previously been fired upon them, but without effect. Probably, in consequence of the smoke of their fire, the guards had not observed Jacob when he threw himself into the thicket, and supposing that like his brother he had passed round it, they followed on until they were fairly distanced by Frederick, of whom they lost sight and trace. They returned in about half an hour, halting by the bushes in which the other fugitive was sheltered, and so near that he could distinctly hear their conversation. The officer in command was Captain Steele. On calling his men together, some were swearing, and others laughing, at the race and the speed of the 'long-legged Dutch-

men,' as they called the flying prisoners. The pursuit being abandoned, the guards returned to the fort.

The brothers had agreed, in case of separation, to meet at a certain spot at ten o'clock that night. Of course Jacob lay ensconced in the bushes until night had dropped her sable curtain, and until he supposed the hour had arrived, when he sallied forth, according to the antecedent understanding. But time did not move so rapidly on that evening as he supposed. He waited at the spot agreed on, and called aloud for Frederick, until he despaired of meeting him, and prudence forbade his remaining any longer. It subsequently appeared that he was too early on the ground, and that Frederick had made good his appointment.

Following the bank of the Sorel, Jacob passed Fort St. John, soon after day-break on the morning of the 14th. His purpose was to swim the river at that place, and pursue his course homeward through the wilderness, on the eastern shore of Lake Champlain; but just as he was preparing to enter the water, he descried a boat approaching from below, filled with officers and soldiers of the enemy. They were already within twenty rods. Concealing himself again in the woods, *he resumed his journey after their departure, but had not proceeded more than two or*

three miles, before he came upon a party of several hundred men engaged in getting out timber for the public works at the fort. To avoid these he was obliged to describe a wide circuit, in the course of which, at about twelve o'clock, he came to a small clearing. Within the enclosure was a house, and in the field a man and a boy were hoeing potatoes. They were at that moment called to dinner, and supposing them to be French, who he had heard were rather friendly to the American cause than otherwise, incited also by hunger and fatigue, he made bold to present himself, trusting that he might be invited to partake of their hospitality. But instead of a friend he found an enemy. On making known his character he was roughly received. 'It is by such villains as you are,' replied the forester, 'that I was obliged to fly from Lake Champlain.' The rebels, he added, had robbed him of all he possessed, and he would now deliver his self-invited guest to the guard, which he said was not more than a quarter of a mile distant. Sammons promptly replied that that was more than he should do. The refugee then said he would go for the guard himself, to which Sammons rejoined that he might act as he pleased, but that all the men in Canada should not again make him a prisoner.

The man thereupon returned with his son to the potato-field

and resumed his work, while his more compassionate wife gave Jacob a bowl of bread and milk, which he ate sitting on the threshold of the door, to guard against surprise. While in the house he saw a musket, powder-horn, and bullet-pouch hanging against the wall, of which he determined if possible to possess himself, that he might be able to procure food during the long and solitary march before him. On retiring, therefore, he travelled only far enough into the woods for concealment, returning to the woodman's house in the evening, for the purpose of obtaining the musket and ammunition. But he was again beset by imminent peril. Very soon after he entered the house the sound of approaching voices was heard, and he took to the rude chamber for security, where he lay flat upon the irregular floor; and looking through the interstices, saw eleven soldiers enter, who it soon appeared came for milk. His situation was now exceedingly critical. The churlish proprietor might inform against him, or a single movement betray him. But neither circumstance occurred. The unwelcome visitors departed in due time, and the family all retired to bed, excepting the wife, who, as Jacob descended from the chamber, refreshed him with another bowl of bread and milk. The good woman now earnestly entreated her guest to surrender himself and join the ranks of

the king, assuring him that his majesty must certainly conquer in the end, in which case the rebels would lose all their property, and many of them be hanged into the bargain. But to such a proposition he of course would not listen. Finding all her efforts to convert a rebel into a royalist fruitless, she then told him that if he would secrete himself two days longer in the woods, she would furnish him with some provisions, for a supply of which her husband was going to the fort the next day, and she would likewise endeavour to provide him with a pair of shoes. Disinclined to linger so long in the country of the enemy, and in the neighbourhood of a British outpost, however, he took his departure forthwith. But such had been the kindness of the good woman, that he had it not in his heart to seize upon her husband's arms, and he left this wild scene of rustic hospitality without supplies, or the means of procuring them.

Arriving once more at the water's edge, at the lower end of Lake Champlain, he came upon a hut, within which, on cautiously approaching it for reconnaissance, he discovered a party of soldiers all sound asleep. Their canoe was moored by the shore, into which he sprang, and paddled himself up the lake, under the most encouraging prospect of a speedy and comparatively easy voyage to its head, whence his return

home would be unattended with either difficulty or danger. But his pleasing anticipations were extinguished on the night following, as he approached the Ile aux Noix, where he descried a fortification, and the glitter of bayonets bristling in the air, as the moonbeams played upon the burnished arms of the sentinels, who were pacing their tedious rounds. The lake being very narrow at this point, and perceiving that both sides were fortified, he thought the attempt to shoot his canoe through between them, rather too hazardous an experiment. His only course, therefore, was to run ashore and resume his travels on foot. Nor on landing was his case in any respect enviable. Without shoes, without food, and without the means of obtaining either, a long journey before him through a deep and trackless wilderness, it may well be imagined that his mind was not cheered by the most agreeable anticipations. But without pausing to indulge unnecessarily his thick-coming fancies, he commenced his solitary journey, directing his course along the eastern lake shore toward Albany.

During the first four days of his progress he subsisted entirely upon the bark of the birch, chewing the twigs as he went. On the fourth day, while resting by a brook, he heard a *rippling of the water, caused by the fish as they were stemming its current.* He succeeded

in catching a few of these ; but having no means of striking a fire, after devouring one of them raw, the others were thrown away. His feet were by this time cruelly cut, bruised, and torn by thorns, briars, and stones ; and while he could scarcely proceed by reason of their soreness, hunger and fatigue united to retard his cheerless march. On the fifth day his miseries were augmented by the hungry swarms of musquitoes, which settled upon him in clouds while traversing a swamp. On the same day he fell upon the nest of a black duck, the duck sitting quietly upon her eggs until he came up and caught her. The bird was no sooner deprived of her life and her feathers, than he devoured the whole, including the head and feet. The eggs were nine in number, which Sammons took with him ; but on opening one, he found a little half-developed duckling already alive. Against such food his stomach revolted, and he was obliged to throw the eggs away. On the tenth day he came to a small lake. His feet were now in such horrible state that he could scarcely crawl along. Finding a mitigation of pain by bathing them in water, he plunged his feet into the lake, and lay down upon its margin. For a time it seemed as though he could never rise upon his feet again. Worn down by hunger and fatigue, bruised in body and wounded in spirit, in a lone

wilderness, with no eye to pity, and no human arm to protect, he felt as though he must remain in that spot, until it should please God, in His goodness, to quench the dim spark of life that remained. Still he was comforted in some measure by the thought, that he was in the hands of a Being without whose knowledge not a sparrow falls to the ground.

Refreshed at length, though to a trifling degree, he resumed his weary way, when, on raising his right leg over the trunk of a fallen tree, he was bitten in the calf by a rattlesnake. Quick as a flash, with his pocket-knife he made an incision in his leg, removing the wounded flesh to a greater depth than the fangs of the reptile had penetrated. His next business was to kill the venomous reptile and dress it for eating, thus appropriating the enemy that had sought to take his life, to its prolongation. His first meal was made from the heart and fat of the serpent. Feeling somewhat strengthened by the repast, and finding, moreover, that he could not travel farther in his present condition, he determined to remain where he was for a few days, and by repose, and feeding upon the body of the snake, recruit his strength. Discovering also a dry fungus upon the trunk of a maple-tree, he succeeded in striking a fire, by which his comforts were essentially increased. Still he was obliged to creep upon his hands and

knees to gather fuel, and on the third day he was yet in such a state of exhaustion as to be utterly unable to proceed. Supposing that death was inevitable and very near, he crawled to the foot of a tree, upon the bark of which he commenced cutting his name, in expectation that he should leave his bones there, and in the hope that in some way, by the aid of the inscription, his family might ultimately be apprised of his fate. While engaged in this sad work, a throng of painful thoughts crowded upon his mind, the tears involuntarily stole down his cheeks, and before he had completed the melancholy task he fell asleep.

On the fourth day of his residence at this place he began to gain strength, and as a part of the serpent yet remained, he determined upon another effort to resume his journey. But he could not do so without devising some substitute for shoes. For this purpose he cut up his hat and waistcoat, binding them upon his feet, and thus he hobbled along. On the following night, while lying in the woods, he became strongly impressed with a belief that he was not far distant from a human habitation. He had seen no indications of proximity to the abode of man, but he was nevertheless so confident of the fact, that he wept for joy. Buoyed up and strengthened by this impression, he resumed his journey on the following

morning, and in the afternoon, it being the 28th of June, he reached a house in the town of Pittsford, in the New Hampshire grants, now forming the State of Vermont. He remained there for several days, both to recruit his health, and if possible, to gain intelligence of his brother. But no tidings came; and as he knew Frederick to be a capital woodsman, he of course concluded that sickness, death, or re-capture must have interrupted his journey. Procuring a conveyance at Pittsford, Jacob travelled to Albany, and thence to Schenectady, where he had the happiness of finding his wife and family.

Not less interesting, or marked by fewer vicissitudes, were the adventures of Jacob's brother Frederick. The flight from the fort at Chamblee was made just before sunset, which accounts for the chase having been abandoned so soon. On entering the edge of the woods, Frederick encountered a party of Indians returning to the fort from fatigue duty. Perceiving that he was a fugitive, they fired, and called out, 'We have got him!' In this opinion, however, they were mistaken; for although he had run close upon them before perceiving them, yet, being swift of foot, by turning a short corner and increasing his speed, in ten minutes he was entirely clear of the party. He then sat down *to rest, the blood gushing from his nose in consequence of the extent to which his physical*

powers had been taxed. At the time appointed he also had repaired to the point which, at his separation from Jacob, had been agreed upon as the place of meeting. The moon shone brightly, and he called loud and often for his brother,—so loud, indeed, that the guard was turned out in consequence. His anxiety was very great for his brother's safety; but in ignorance of his situation, he was obliged to attend to his own. He determined, however, to approach the fort,—as near to it, at least, as he could venture; and in the event of meeting any one, disguise his own character by inquiring whether the rebels had been taken. But a flash from the sentinel's musket, the report and the noise of a second pursuit, compelled him to change the direction of his march, and proceed again with all possible speed. It had been determined by the brothers to cross the Sorel, and return to the east side of the river and lake; but there was a misunderstanding between them as to the point of crossing the river—whether above or below the fort. Hence their failure of meeting. Frederick repaired to what he supposed to be the designated place of crossing, below the fort, where he lingered for his brother until near morning. At length, having found a boat, he crossed over to the eastern shore, and landed just at the cock-crowing. He proceeded directly to the barn where he supposed the

chanticleer had raised his voice, but found not a fowl on the premises. The sheep looked too poor by the dim twilight to serve his purpose of food ; but a bullock presenting a more favourable appearance, Frederick succeeded in cutting the unsuspecting animal's throat, and severing one of the hind-quarters from the carcass, he shouldered and marched off with it directly into the forest. Having proceeded to a safe and convenient distance, he stopped to dress his beef, cutting off what he supposed would be sufficient for the journey, and forming a knapsack from the skin by the aid of bark peeled from the moose-wood.

Resuming his journey, he arrived at the house of a French family, within the distance of five or six miles. Here he made bold to enter, for the purpose of procuring bread and salt, and in the hope also of obtaining a gun and ammunition. But he could neither obtain provisions, nor make the people understand a word he uttered. He found means, however, to prepare some tinder, with which he re-entered the woods, and hastened forward in a southern direction until he ascertained, by the firing of the evening guns, that he had passed St. John's. Halting for the night, he struck a light ; and having kindled a fire, occupied himself until morning in drying and smoking his beef, *cutting it into slices for that purpose.* His knapsack of raw hide was cured

by the same process. Thus prepared, he proceeded onward without interruption or adventure until the third day, when he killed a fawn and secured the venison. He crossed the Win-ooski, or Onion river, on the next day ; and having discovered a man's name carved upon a tree, together with the distance from the lake (Champlain), eight miles, he bent his course for its shores, where he found a canoe with paddles. There was now a prospect of lessening the fatigue of his journey ; but his canoe had scarce begun to dance upon the waters ere it parted asunder, and he was compelled to hasten ashore and continue his march by land.

At the close of the seventh day, and when, as he supposed, he was within two days' travel of a settlement, he kindled his fire, and lay down to rest in fine health and spirits ; but ere the dawn of day he awoke with racking pains, which proved to be an attack of pleurisy. A drenching rain came on, continuing three days, during which time he lay helpless, in dreadful agony, without fire or shelter, or sustenance of any kind. On the fourth day, his pain having abated, he attempted to eat a morsel, but his provisions had become too offensive to be swallowed. His thirst being intense, he fortunately discovered a pond of water near by, to which he crawled. It was a stagnant pool, swarming with frogs, — another providential

circumstance, inasmuch as the latter served him for food. Too weak, however, to strike a light, he was compelled to devour them raw, and without dressing of any kind. Unable to proceed, he lay in this wretched condition fourteen days. Supposing that he should die there, he succeeded in hanging his hat upon a pole, with a few papers, in order that if discovered his fate might be known. He was lying upon a high bluff, in full view of the lake, and at no great distance therefrom. The hat thus elevated served as a signal, which saved his life. A vessel sailing past descried the hat, and sent a boat ashore to ascertain the cause. The boatmen discovered the body of a man, yet living, but senseless and speechless, and transferred him to the vessel. By the aid of medical attendance he was slowly restored to his reason, and having informed the captain who he was, had the rather uncomfortable satisfaction of learning that he was on board an enemy's ship, and at that moment lying at Crown Point. Here he remained sixteen days, in the course of which time he had the gratification to hear, from a party of Tories coming from the settlements, that his brother Jacob had arrived safe at Schenectady, and joined his family. He was also apprised of Jacob's sufferings, and of the *bite of the serpent* which took place near Otter Creek, close to the place where he had him-

self been so long sick. The brothers were therefore near together at the time of their greatest peril and endurance.

Frederick's recovery was very slow. Before he was able to walk he was taken to St. John's, and thence, partly on a wheelbarrow and partly in a calash, carried back to his old quarters at Chamblee, experiencing much rough usage by the way. On arriving at the fortress, the guards saluted him by the title of 'Captain Lightfoot,' and there was great joy at his re-capture. It was now about the 1st of August. As soon as his health was sufficiently recovered to bear it, he was heavily ironed, and kept in close confinement at that place until October 1781—fourteen months, without once beholding the light of the sun. Between St. John's and Chamblee he had been met by a British officer with whom he was acquainted, and by whom he was informed that severe treatment would be his portion. Compassionating his situation, however, the officer slipped a guinea and a couple of dollars into his hands, and they moved on.

No other prisoners were in irons at Chamblee, and all but Sammons were taken upon the parade-ground twice a week, for the benefit of fresh air. The irons were so heavy and so tight as to wear into the flesh of his legs; and so incensed was Captain Steele, the officer of the 32d regiment, yet com-

manding the garrison at Chamblee, at the escape of his prisoner, that he would not allow the surgeon to remove the irons, to dress the wounds of which they were the cause, until a peremptory order was procured for that purpose from General St. Leger, who was then at St. John's. The humanity of the surgeon prompted this application of his own accord. Even then, however, Steele would only allow the leg-bolts to be knocked off, still keeping on the handcuffs. The dressing of his legs was a severe operation. The iron had eaten to the bone, and the gangrened flesh was of course to be removed. One of the legs ultimately healed up, but the other was never afterwards entirely well.

In the month of November 1781, the prisoners were transferred from Chamblee to an island in the St. Lawrence, called at that time Prison Island, situated in the rapids some distance above Montreal. Sammons was compelled to travel in his handcuffs, but the other prisoners were not thus encumbered. There were about two hundred prisoners on the island, all of whom were very closely guarded. In the spring of 1782, Sammons organized a conspiracy with nine of his fellow-prisoners, to make their escape by seizing a provision boat, and had *well-nigh effected their object. Being discovered, however, their purpose was de-*

feated, and Sammons, as the ringleader, was once more placed in irons; but at the end of five weeks the irons were removed, and he was allowed to return to his hut.

Impatient of such protracted captivity, Frederick was still bent on escape, for which purpose he induced a fellow-prisoner, by the name of M'Mullen, to join him in the daring exploit of seeking an opportunity to plunge into the river, and taking their chance of swimming to the shore. A favourable moment for attempting the bold adventure was afforded on the 17th of August. The prisoners having, to the number of fifty, been allowed to walk to the foot of the island, but around the whole of which a chain of sentinels was extended, Sammons and M'Mullen, without having conferred with any one else, watching an opportunity when the nearest sentinel turned his back upon them, quietly glided down beneath a shelving rock, and plunged into the stream, each holding up and waving a hand in token of farewell to their fellow-prisoners, as the surge swept them rapidly down the stream. The sentinel was distant about six rods when they threw themselves into the river, and did not discover their escape until they were beyond the reach of any molestation he could offer them. Three quarters of a mile below the island, the rapids were such as to heave

[illegible]

was effected by boldly entering a house, and rummaging an old man's work-basket. The good woman, frightened at the appearance of the visitors, ran out and alarmed the village, the inhabitants of which were French. In the meantime they searched the house for provisions, fire-arms, and ammunition, but found none of the latter, and only a single loaf of bread. They also plundered the house of a blanket, flannel-coat, and a few other articles of clothing. By this time the people began to collect in such numbers, that a precipitate retreat was deemed advisable. M'Mullen being seized by two Canadians, was only released from their grasp by the well-directed blows of Frederick's club. They both then

commenced running for the woods, when Sammons, encumbered with his luggage, unluckily fell, and the loaf rolled away from him. The peasants now rushed upon them, and their only course was to give battle, which they prepared to do in earnest: whereupon, seeing their resolution, the pursuers retreated almost as rapidly as they had advanced. This demonstration gave the fugitives time to collect and arrange their plunder, and commence their travels anew. Taking to the woods, they found a resting-place, where they halted until nightfall. They then sallied forth once more in search of provisions, with which it was necessary to provide themselves before crossing to the south side

of the river, where at that day there were no settlements. The cattle fled at their approach; but they at length came upon a calf in a farm-yard, which they captured; and appropriating to their own use and behoof a canoe moored in the river, they embarked with their prize, to cross over to the southern shore. But, alas! when in the middle of the stream their paddle broke, and they were in a measure left to the mercy of the flood, which was hurrying them onward, as they very well knew, towards the rapids or falls of the Cedars. There was an island above the rapids, from the brink of which a tree had fallen into the river. Fortunately the canoe was swept by the current into the branches of this tree-top, among which it became entangled. While struggling in this predicament the canoe was upset; being near shore, however, the navigators got to land without losing the calf. Striking a fire, they now dressed their veal, and on the following morning, by towing their canoe along shore round to the south edge of the island, succeeded in crossing to their own side of the river. They then plunged directly into the unbroken forest, extending from the St. Lawrence to the Sacandaga, and after a journey of twelve days of excessive hard-

ship, emerged from the woods within six miles of the point for which, without chart or compass, Sammons had laid his course. Their provisions lasted but a few days, and their only subsequent food consisted of roots and herbs. The whole journey was made almost in a state of nudity, both being destitute of pantaloons. Having worn out their hats upon their feet, the last three days they were compelled to travel barefooted. Long before their journey was ended, therefore, their feet were dreadfully lacerated and swollen. On arriving at Schenectady, the inhabitants were alarmed at their wild and savage appearance—half-naked, with lengthened beards and matted hair. The people at length gathered round them with strange curiosity; but when they made themselves known, a lady named Ellis rushed through the crowd to grasp the hand of Frederick, and was so much affected at his altered appearance that she fainted and fell. The welcome fugitives were forthwith supplied with whatever of food and raiment was necessary; and young Sammons learned that his father and family had removed back to Marbletown, in the county of Ulster, whence he had previously emigrated to Johnstown.

CHAPTER VI.

THE STORY OF LATUDE, AND HIS WONDERFUL ESCAPE FROM THE BASTILE.

LATUDE, who was in his twenty-fifth year when his misfortunes began, was the son of the Marquis de Latude, a military officer, and was born in Languedoc. He was intended for the engineer service, but the peace of Aix-la-Chapelle prevented him from being enrolled.

The notorious Marchioness de Pompadour was then in the zenith of her power, and was as much detested by the people as she was favoured by the sovereign. As Latude was one day sitting in the garden of the Tuileries, he heard two men vehemently inveighing against her. A thought struck him, that, by turning this circumstance to account, he might obtain her patronage. His plan was a clumsy one, and it was clumsily executed. He began by putting into the post-office a packet of harmless powder, directed to the marchioness. He then waited on her, related the conversation which he had overheard, said that he had seen them put a packet into the post office, and expressed his fears that it contained some extremely subtle poison. She offered him a purse of gold, but he refused it, and declared that he was only desirous of being rewarded *by her protection*. Suspicious *of his purpose*, she wished to *see his handwriting*, and there-

fore, under pretence of intending to communicate with him, asked for his address. He wrote it, and unfortunately for him, he wrote it in the same hand in which he had directed the packet of pretended poison. He was then graciously dismissed. The sameness of the writing, and the result of the experiments which she ordered to be made on the contents of the packet, convinced her that the whole was a fraud. It is scarcely possible not to smile at the blundering folly of the youthful impostor. Had he sent real poison, and disguised his handwriting, he would perhaps have succeeded.

But this proved to be no laughing matter for the luckless Latude. The marchioness looked upon the trick as an unpardonable insult, and she was not slow in revenging it. In the course of a few days, while he was indulging in golden dreams, he was painfully awakened from them by the appearance of the officers of justice. They carried him to the Bastile, and there he was stripped, deprived of his money, jewels, and papers, clothed in wretched rags, and shut up in the Tower du Cour.

On the following day, the 2nd of May, 1749, he was interrogated by M. Berryer, the lieutenant of police. Unlike

of his class, Berryer was a man of feeling; he promised to intercede for him with the marchioness, and in the meanwhile, he endeavoured to make Latude as comfortable as a man could be who was robbed of liberty. To make the time pass less heavily, he gave him for a comrade, a Jew, a man of various intrigues, Abuzaglo by name, who was accused of being a secret British agent. The two prisoners soon became friends; Abuzaglo had hopes of speedy liberation through the influence of the Prince of Conti, and he promised to obtain the exercise of that influence in behalf of his companion. Latude, on his part, in case of his being first released, bound himself to strain every nerve to rescue Abuzaglo. He was ever on the watch to catch the conversation of the prisoners, the jailors appear to have acquired a knowledge of the intrigues and reciprocal engagements of the friends. When Latude had been four months in the Bastile, three turnkeys were ordered, and said that an order had come to set him free. Abuzaglo embraced him, and conducted him to remember his promise. But no sooner had the joyful Latude crossed the threshold of his prison, than he was told that he was only going to be removed to Vincennes. Abuzaglo was liberated shortly after; but believing that Latude was not free, and had broken his promise to him, he ceased to take any interest in his fate.

It is not wonderful that the health of Latude gave way under the pressure of grief and disappointment. M. Berryer came to console him, removed him to the most comfortable apartment in the castle, and allowed him to walk daily for two hours in the garden. But he did not conceal that the marchioness was inflexible; and in consequence of this, the captive, who felt a prophetic fear that he was destined to perpetual imprisonment, resolved to make an attempt to escape. Nearly nine months elapsed before he could find an opportunity to carry his plan into effect. The moment at length arrived. One of his fellow-prisoners, an ecclesiastic, was frequently visited by an abbé; and this circumstance he made the basis of his project. To succeed, it was necessary for him to elude the vigilance of two turnkeys, who guarded him when he walked, and of four sentinels, who watched the outer doors; and this was no easy matter. Of the turnkeys, one often waited in the garden while the other went to fetch the prisoner. Latude began by accustoming the second turnkey to see him hurry down-stairs, and join the first in the garden. When the day came on which he was determined to take flight, he, as usual, passed rapidly down the stairs without exciting any suspicion, his keeper having no doubt that he should find him in the garden. At the bottom was a

him from his dundid all that lay in his render it less wearisome; condoled with him; in vain, to soften his; and, as a loophole, admitted light allow of reading, he m to be supplied with ns, ink, and paper. On these resources atude to bear his fate: degree of fortitude. He was then exhausted, gave way to rage and in the paroxysms of vented his angry feelings in epigrams and satirical lines of these compositions which is certainly not in bitterness, he was enough to write on of a book which had to him. Latude had precaution to write in a feigned hand; but he was aware that, whenever he returned a book, it was carefully examined. The jailors discovered the ruse, and took the book from him. John Lebel, the governor, who dutifully hastened before the marchioness, was extreme. Sending M. Berryer, she exclaimed in a voice half-smothered emotion, 'See here! learn the man for whom I have so much interested, to again to solicit my aid!'

For ten dreary months away, during which he was strictly confined to

his dungeon, scarcely hearing the sound of a human voice. At last M. Berryer took upon himself the responsibility of removing him to a better apartment, and even allowing him to have the attendance of a servant. A young man, named Cochar, was found willing to undertake the monotonous and soul-depressing task of being domestic to a prisoner. He was gentle and sympathizing, and in so far was qualified for his office; but he had miscalculated his own strength, and the weight of the burden he was to bear. He drooped, and in a short time he was stretched on the bed of mortal sickness. Fresh air and liberty might have saved him. Those, however, he could not obtain; for it was a rule that the fate of any one who entered into the service of a prisoner, became linked with that of his master, and that he must not expect to quit the Bastille till his employer was set at large. It was not till Cochar was expiring, that the jailors would so much as consent to remove him from the chamber of Latude. Within three months from his entrance into the Bastille he ceased to exist.

Latude was inconsolable for the loss of the poor youth, who had always endeavoured to comfort him, as long as he had spirits to do so. To mitigate his grief, M. Berryer obtained for him the society of a fellow-captive, who could scarcely fail to have a perfect communion

handed and pointed out the means by which he thought she might remove it and become an object of affection. For giving this advice, he had already spent three years within the walls of the Bastille. Yet his woes were now only beginning. The unfortunate D'Alegre had ample cause to lament his having forgotten the scriptural injunction, not to cast pearls before swine.

M. Berryer took the same warm interest in D'Alegre as in Latude. He was indefatigable in his exertions to obtain their pardon; and for a while he flattered himself that he should succeed. At last, wearied by his importunity, the marchioness vowed that her vengeance should

sidered men the height of trenches water,—possible mured i of huma their esc

'It w 1400 fee one of thirty fe other of several i nev, and night thr thick, at fifteen fe was nec articles accompli

oured our persons with a strict examination.

'You must have been confined in the Bastile to know how wretches are treated there. Figure to yourself ten years spent in a room without seeing or speaking to the prisoner over your head. Many times have there been immured the husband, the wife, and a family of children, for a number of years, without either apprehending that a relation was near. You never hear any news there; let the king die, let the ministry be totally changed, you are not told a syllable of the matter. The officers, the surgeon, the turnkeys, say nothing to you but "Good morning!" "Good evening!" "Do you stand in need of anything?"

'There is a chapel, in which is daily performed one mass, and on holidays and Sundays three. In the chapel are five little closets; the prisoner is placed in one of these, when the magistrate gives him leave to be present at the celebration of that ceremony; he is taken back after the elevation, so that no priest ever views the face of a prisoner, and the latter never sees more than the back of the priest. M. Berryer had granted me permission to hear mass on Sundays and Wednesdays, and had allowed the same liberty to my companion. He had given that leave also to the prisoner who lodged above us. *I had observed that this prisoner never made any noise; did not so*

much as move his chair, nor even cough, etc. He went to mass on our days, descended the first, and returned up-stairs after us. My mind being constantly intent on my scheme of escaping, I told my companion that I had a mind to take a view of the stranger's room at our return from mass; and I desired him to forward my wish, by putting his tweezer-case in his handkerchief, and when we had regained the second story, to contrive, by pulling out his handkerchief, that the tweezer-case should fall down the stairs to the greatest distance possible; and that he should desire the turnkey, who usually attended us, to go and pick it up. This was no sooner proposed than done. Being foremost, I ran up without loss of time, drew back the bolt, and opened the door. I examined the height of the room, and found it could not be above ten feet. I shut the door again, and had leisure to measure one, two, and three steps of the staircase; I counted their number from that chamber to ours, and discovered a difference of about five feet. As the separation was not a stone arch, I readily perceived that it could not be five feet thick, and consequently must be double.

'I then said to my companion, "Never despair! With a little patience and courage we may make our escape. Here is my estimate: there is a drum between the room on the third storey and ours."

will engage that we shall succeed."

"But before we talk of hiding our ropes, we must have them; and you know that it is impossible to get ten feet."

"As to the ropes," said I, "give yourself no trouble about them, for in my trunk there is more than a thousand feet."

He looked at me very earnestly, and said, "Faith! I believe you have lost your senses; I know the contents of your portmanteau. I am certain there is not a foot of rope in it; and yet you tell me that it holds more than a thousand."

"Yes," I replied, "in that trunk are twelve dozen of shirts, six dozen pairs of silk stockings, twelve dozen pairs of under stockings, five dozen drawers, and six dozen nankins. Now

of our ap-
steel; by
manufact-
less than
the hand
will serve
purposes.

'As soon
we pulled
table; with
tile from c
digging so
six hours
found that
three feet
other. For
considered
tainty. V
which has
having be
day I brok
a penknife
instrument
to the hir
gave an

fty feet long. We then them, and formed a fifty-five feet long; and the wood they brought us made twenty rounds, connected by the rope, e a ladder twenty feet

last we began the most difficult undertaking—the removal of the iron bars from the chimney. To accomplish this we fastened our rope-ladder to the weight to the end of it, by means of the steps, supplied ourselves, while we dislodged the bars. In a few days we loosened them all, and stored them to their places, to be removed at any time we wanted them. This was a troublesome piece of

We never descended without bloody hands; and our faces were so bruised in the process, that we could not return to our toil for an hour afterwards. This labour over, we made a wooden ladder of twenty feet, from the trench to the parapet, where the soldiers are posted, and that way to enter the governor's garden.

One day they gave us wood for making, about twenty inches

We still wanted blocks and many other things, and our hinges were not fit for these uses, much less to saw bil-

In a few hours, with the fragment of the steel, I made an excellent saw from an old candlestick. With the file, the hinges, and the rope began to shape and

smooth our billets, to make at each end a kind of joint or mortise, and tenants to fix in one another, with two holes, one to receive a round, and one a peg, to prevent their shaking; and as fast as we finished a part of our ladder, we concealed it between the two floors. With these implements we made a pair of compasses, a square, a reel, blocks, steps, etc.

‘As the officers and turnkeys often entered our apartment in the daytime, when we least expected them, we were obliged not only to hide our tools, but the smallest chips and rubbish that we made, the least of which would have betrayed us. We had likewise given each of them a private name; for instance, we called the saw Faunus, the reel Anubis, the hinges Tubal Cain, the drum Polyphemus, in allusion to the fabulous grotto, the wooden ladder Jacob, the steps suckers, a rope a dove, etc. When any person was coming in, he who was next the door said to the other, Tubal Cain, Faunus, Anubis, Dove, etc., and the other threw his handkerchief over what was to be concealed, or removed it; for we were always on our guard.

‘Not having materials sufficient to form two sides to our wooden ladder, it had only one pole twenty feet long, in which were inserted twenty rounds, fifteen inches long, that projected from the pole six inches on each side; and every round

100 feet long. We unravelled our shirts, napkins, stockings, drawers, etc. As fast as we made a clew of a certain length, we hid it in Polyphemus ; and when we had completed a sufficient number in one night, we twisted our capital rope.

‘All round the Bastile is an entablature, which projects three or four feet. We were convinced that at every step of our descent the ladder would vibrate from side to side, and at those intervals the steadiest head might be overpowered. To prevent either of us from being crushed by a fall, we made a second rope 360 feet long, or twice the measure of the height of the tower. This rope was to pass through a kind of fixed pulley, that there might be no danger of its sticking between the sides and iron bar of the

cost
night
‘I
quis
throu
platf
scen
get u
the g
scend
wood
the gr
St. Ar
to ble
requir
night:
interve
rain fr
nine
weathe
that c
round
to ano
only a

at 300 times ; that its waters
 must have dissolved the salts
 contained in the mortar, the
 depth of half an inch every time,
 and that consequently it would
 be easy for us to perforate a hole
 in it, by which we might escape
 with less hazard. In order to
 obtain a gimlet, we could draw
 a screw out of our bedstead,
 to which we would fix a good
 cross handle ; and with it might
 make some holes in the joining
 of the stones, to stick in them
 our iron bars, by which we
 might remove more than five
 tons weight with the purchase
 of the lever ; and so might easily
 pierce the wall that separates
 the trench of the Bastile from
 that of St. Anthony's gate.
 There would be a thousand
 times less risk in issuing by this
 method, than by getting out on
 the parapet, and passing under
 the very noses of the sentinels,
 &c. M. D'Alegre agreed to
 this, and said, that should we be
 foiled in this perforation, it
 would be still less hazardous
 than to scale a corner of the
 wall, as we had heretofore in-
 tended, by the parapet,—a re-
 source that would be left us
 should our other attempt be
 frustrated by insurmountable
 obstacles. Accordingly, we
 made wrappers for our iron
 bars, we drew out the bed-screw
 and made a gimlet of it ; in
 short, when our apparatus was
 ready, though the river had
 overflowed, and the water was
three or four feet deep in each
trench, we resolved to depart

the next evening, the 25th of
 February 1756.

' Besides my trunk, I had a
 large leathern portmanteau ;
 and not questioning that all the
 clothes on our backs would be
 soaked by working in the water,
 we filled this portmanteau with
 a complete suit, not omitting
 the best of every article left us.
 Next day, as soon as we had
 dined, we fitted up our great
 ladder, with its flight of steps,
 and then hid it under our beds,
 that it might not be discovered
 by the turnkey when he brought
 our supper. We next adjusted
 our wooden ladder, then made
 up the rest into several bundles,
 being free from the apprehen-
 sion of any visit till the usual
 hour of five. The two iron bars
 for which we had occasion were
 pulled down, and put into their
 wrappers, both to prevent a
 noise and that we might handle
 them more conveniently. We
 had provided a bottle of usque-
 baugh, to keep us warm and
 recruit our strength, should we
 be obliged to work in the water.
 This proved a very necessary
 precaution, for without the as-
 sistance of that liquor we should
 never have been able to stand
 up to the neck in the wet for
 six hours.

' The critical moment now ar-
 rived. Our supper was scarcely
 brought, when, in spite of a
 rheumatic pain in my left arm, I
 set about climbing up the chim-
 ney, and had a hard struggle to
 reach the top. I was almost
 smothered with the soot, not be-

I placed myself astride, and thence unwound a ball of packthread, to the end of which my companion had agreed to fasten the strongest rope that held my portmanteau ; by this I drew it up and lowered it on the platform. I returned the rope, to which my companion tied the wooden ladder. I drew it up ; in the same manner the two iron bars and the rest of our parcels. When I had these, I again let down my packthread to raise the rope-ladder, drawing up the superfluous length, that by the end my companion might mount the chimney with more facility than I had done ; and at his signal I fastened it. He ascended with ease ; we finished drawing up the remainder, and hung the whole in such a manner across the chimney, that we descended both at once on

rope of the ladder, and descended ; I let out the but, notwithstanding caution, everybody resembled a body resem in the air, happened thousand p have seen r but would l for lost ; yet the trench.

‘ Immedia lowered my iron bars, t and all our placed high rising above water at the He next fas the block at t his knee, and me a signal

the sentinel could not be above thirty feet from us, walking on the corridor, as it did not rain ; which prevented our mounting thither to get into the garden according to our first plan. We were therefore obliged to make use of our iron bars ; I took one of them, with the gimlet, on my shoulder, and my companion the other. We proceeded directly to the wall that parts the trench of the Bastile from that of St. Anthony's gate, between the garden and the governor's house. There was in this place a small trench six feet wide and about four feet deep, which wetted us up to the arm-pits.

'At the moment that I began with my gimlet to bore a hole between two stones to insert our levers, the major's round passed us with the great lantern, but twelve feet at most over our heads. To conceal ourselves we stood up to the chin in water, and when it was gone I soon made two or three small holes with my gimlet ; and in a short time we got a large stone out. We then attacked a second and a third stone. The second watch passed us, and we again slipped into the water up to our chin. We were obliged to perform this ceremony regularly every half hour that we were disturbed by the watch. Before midnight we had displaced two wheelbarrows of stones ; and in a few hours had made a breach in the wall, which is four feet and a half thick. I immediately

bade D'Alegre go out and wait for me on the other side, and should I meet with any misfortune in fetching the portmanteau, to flee at the least noise. Thanks to Heaven ! I got it without any disaster ; he drew it out ; I followed, and gladly left the rest of our luggage behind us.

'In the trench of St. Anthony's gate we thought ourselves out of danger ; he held one end of my portmanteau, and I the other, taking the way to Bercy. We had scarcely advanced fifty steps when we fell into the aqueduct in the middle of that great trench, with at least six feet of water over our heads. My companion, instead of gaining the other side, for the aqueduct is not six feet wide, dropped the portmanteau to hang on me. Thus dangerously entangled, with a jerk I made him let go his hold, clinging at the same moment to the opposite side, and plunging my arm in the water, drew him towards me by the hair of his head, and afterwards my portmanteau, which floated on the surface. We were not till now out of danger. Here ended the horrors of that dreadful night. As the trench formed a declivity, thirty paces from thence we were on dry ground. Then we embraced each other, and fell on our knees, to thank God for the great mercy He had bestowed on us, that neither of us had been dashed to pieces in the fall, and that He had

restored us to liberty. Our rope-ladder was so exact as not to be a foot too long or too short; every part of it was so well disposed that not an inch was out of its place. All the clothes on our backs were thoroughly soaked; but we were provided for this inconvenience by those in my portmanteau, which being well covered at top with dirty linen, and carefully packed, were not injured by a drop of water. Our hands were galled by drawing out the stones to form a breach; and what may be thought surprising is, that we were less cold up to the neck in water than on dry ground, when a universal tremor seized us, and we almost lost the use of our hands. I was obliged to be my friend's *valet de chambre*, and he in return mine. As we mounted the slope it struck four o'clock. We took the first hackney coach, and went to the house of Mr. Silhouette, chancellor of the Duke of Orleans; but as unluckily he was at Versailles, we flew for refuge to the Abbey of St. Germain-des-prez.'

To gain strength after their toils, as well as to let the hue and cry die away, the friends remained nearly a month in concealment. It having been settled between them, that in order to avoid being both caught at once, they should quit the country separately. D'Alegre, *in the disguise of a peasant*, set out on his journey to Brussels. *He reached that city in safety,*

and informed Latude of his success. Furnished with a parish register of his host, who was nearly of his own age, and with some old papers relative to a lawsuit, and dressed as a servant, Latude departed. He went on foot a few leagues from Paris, and then took the diligence for Valenciennes. He was several times stopped, searched, and questioned, and on one occasion was in imminent danger of being detected. By dint, however, of sticking to his story, that he was carrying law papers to his master's brother at Amsterdam, he got safely to Valenciennes, at which town he removed into the stage for Brussels. He was walking when they reached the boundary post which marks the frontier line of France and the Netherlands. 'My feelings,' said he, 'got the better of my prudence; I threw myself on the ground, and kissed it with transport. At length, thought I, I can breathe without fear! My companions, with astonishment, demanded the cause of this extravagance. I pretended that just at the very moment in a preceding year I had escaped a great danger, and that I always expressed my gratitude to Providence by a similar prostration when the day came round.'

Latude had appointed D'Alegre to meet him at the Hotel de Coffi, in Brussels. Thither he went immediately on his arrival; but there disappointment and sorrow awaited him.

he landlord at first denied any knowledge of D'Alegre, and when further pressed he hesitated, and became extremely embarrassed. This was enough to convince the inquirer that his friend had been seized; and the conviction was strengthened by his having heard nothing from him, though D'Alegre knew the moment when his companion would reach Brussels. As his friend could be arrested on the Austrian territory, it was obvious that Latude could not remain in it without danger; and with a heavy heart, he resolved to fly instantly from this inhospitable soil. He secured a place in the canal boat, which was that night to proceed to Antwerp. In the course of the voyage, he learned the fatal truth from a fellow-passenger. He was told that one of the two prisoners escaped from the Bastile had arrived at the Hotel de Coffi, had been apprehended by a police officer, and had been ultimately sent under a strong escort to Lille, and there delivered into the custody of a French exempt; and, moreover, that all this was kept as secret as possible, in order not to alarm the other fugitive, the search after whom was carried on with such activity, that he must inevitably fall into the hands of his pursuers.

Believing that if he went on immediately to Amsterdam, he would find there *an officer of the police waiting to seize him,* he directed his steps to Bergen-

op-Zoom. But now another trouble fell upon him. He had nearly exhausted his scanty stock of money, and had not found at Brussels a remittance which he expected from his father: he afterwards learned that it had been intercepted by the French exempt who was employed to trace him. While he remained at Bergen-op-Zoom, which was till he supposed that his enemies would have lost the hope of his coming to Amsterdam, he wrote to his father for a supply. But a considerable time must elapse before he could receive it, and in the meanwhile he would run the risk of starving. When he had paid the rent of his wretched garret at Bergen-op-Zoom, and the fare of the boat which was to convey him to Amsterdam, a few shillings was all that was left. In this state of penury, unwilling to beg, he tried whether life could be supported by grass and wild herbs alone. The experiment failed, for his stomach rejected the loathsome food. To render his herbs less disgusting, he bought four pounds of a black and clay-like rye bread to eat with them.

Hoping that by this time the bloodhounds of the marchioness had desisted from seeking him in the Dutch capital, Latude ventured to embark. To hide his poverty, he kept aloof as much as possible from his fellow-voyagers. He was, however, not unobserved. There was in the boat one John Teerhost,

... what an extraordinary dinner you are making! You seem to have more appetite than money!' Latude frankly owned it was so. The good-natured Dutchman immediately led him to his own table. 'No compliments, Mr. Frenchman,' said he; 'seat yourself there, and eat and drink with me.' On further acquaintance with him, Latude discovered that his host was not only a truly benevolent man, but that he had also the rare talent of conferring favours with such delicacy, as not to wound the feelings of the person whom he obliged.

When they reached Amsterdam, Teerhost offered to introduce him to a Frenchman named Martin, who, judging from himself, he doubted not would be delighted to serve him. Latude, however,

tation
into t
served
other
room,
the na
crowde
make
tude it
and his
a mattr
Not co
lodging
strove to
choly tl
whereve
that coi
charitab
tially su
of Latud
by his o
and still
brooding
the fate
Thou

Latude had been forty days without a change of it. Clergue also assembled his friends to hear the story of his guest, and to consult what could be done for him. They were all of opinion that Latude had nothing to fear, as neither the States-General nor the people of Amsterdam would ever consent to deliver up a persecuted stranger, who had confidently thrown himself on their protection. Even Latude himself began to believe that at last he was safe. The unfortunate man was soon wofully undeceived. Not for a moment had his pursuers slackened in the chase; not a single precaution had they neglected that could lead to success. In aid of the subaltern agents, the French ambassador had also exerted himself. By representing the fugitive as a desperate malefactor, he had obtained the consent of the States to arrest him. Calumny was one of the weapons uniformly employed against prisoners, in order to insulate them from their fellow-creatures, by extinguishing pity. But in this instance, there seems reason for believing that bribery was an auxiliary to calumny. The expense of following up the fugitives was no less than £9000 sterling, a sum for which it is impossible to account, without supposing that much of it was expended in bribes.

Though Latude had changed his name, and the address to which his friends were to direct

their communications, the active agents of the marchioness had succeeded in intercepting all his letters. One was at last allowed to reach him, as the means of effecting his ruin. It does not appear whether his residing in the house of M. Clergue was known to them; probably it was; but if it were, they perhaps thought that it would be imprudent to seize him there, as his protector might proclaim to the populace the innocence of his guest, and thus excite a tumult. A letter from Latude's father, containing a draft on a banker, was therefore forwarded to him. Into this snare he fell. As he was proceeding to the banker's, the Dutch police officers pounced upon him, and he was immediately fettered and dragged along. The crowd which had quickly gathered were told that he was a dangerous criminal; but as the numbers nevertheless continued to increase, the brutal officers, who were armed with heavy bludgeons, dealt their blows liberally on all sides, to clear the way to the Town Hall. One of these blows struck the prisoner with such violence on the nape of the neck, that he dropped senseless to the ground.

When consciousness returned, he was lying on a truss of straw in a dungeon; there was not a ray of light visible, not a sound to be heard. He seemed to be cut off from the human race, and he resigned himself wholly to despair. His tumultuous re-

He told me, says Latude, 'that I ought to pronounce the name of the Marchioness de Pompadour with the most profound respect; she was anxious only to load me with favours; far from complaining, I ought to kiss the generous hand that struck me, every blow from which was a compliment and an obligation.' In a second visit some time after, the exempt brought him an ounce of snuff, which he strongly recommended, but which Latude did not use, because he imagined, and not unreasonably, that it was poisoned. Latude remained nine days in this dungeon, while his captors were waiting for permission to carry him through the territory of the Empress Maria Theresa. They were anxious to receive it without delay, for M. Clergue and the other friends of the prisoner were loudly asserting his innocence; and the citizens began

the territory of
In 1752, M. I
was carried c
He was secret
lebone, put c
Gravesend, a
the Bastile, w
having been c
seven years.
subjects were
publisher of a
having printed
xiv., he was k
land, conveye
St. Michael c
coast, and sh
till he died.

At two in the
9th of June 17
Latude came
Round his bod
a strong leather
were two large
padlocks. Thr
his hands were
his arms were p
his sides witho
motion II

[beef swimming in gravy ; they took the meat in their hands, and thrust it into his mouth ; they then took some bread which they steeped in the grease, and made him swallow it in a similar manner.

The mode of confinement by the belt was absolute torture to the prisoner. At length, thanks to the compassionate interference of a servant on board, who declared that if no one else would, he would himself cut it, the belt was removed, and Latude was indulged by being only handcuffed on the right arm, and chained to one of his guards. When they arrived at Lille, St. Marc halted for the night, and sent the prisoner to the town jail, where he was bolted to the chain of a deserter, scarcely nineteen, who had been told that he was to be hanged on the morrow. The despairing youth spent the night in trying to convince him that he, too, would be hanged, and in proposing that they should elude a public execution by strangling themselves with their shirts. For the remainder of the journey, Latude, with his legs ironed, travelled in a carriage with St. Marc, who took the precaution of carrying pistols, and had likewise an armed servant by the side of the vehicle, whose orders were to shoot the captive if he made the slightest motion.

By his associates at the Bastille, St. Marc was received like some victor returning from the

scene of his triumph. They swarmed round him, listened with greedy ears to the tale of his exertions and stratagems, and lavished praises and attentions upon him. The group must have borne no very distant resemblance to fiends exulting over a lost soul. Stripped, and re-clothed in rags which were dropping to pieces, his hands and feet heavily ironed, the prisoner was thrown into one of the most noisome dungeons of the fortress. A sprinkling of straw formed his bed ; covering it had none. The only light and air which penetrated into this den of torment came through a loophole, which, narrowing gradually from the inside to the outside, had a diameter of not more than five inches at the farthest extremity. This loophole was secured and darkened by a fourfold iron grating, so ingeniously contrived that the bars of one network covered the interstices of another ; but there was neither glass nor shutters to ward off the inclemency of the weather. The interior extremity of this aperture reached within about two feet and a half of the ground, and served the captive for a chair and a table ; and sometimes he rested his arms and elbows on it to lighten the weight of his fetters.

Shut out from all communication with his fellow-beings, Latude found some amusement in the society of the rats which infested his dungeon. His first attempt to make them compan-

female joined the first comer. At the outset she was timid; but it was not long before she acquired boldness, and would quarrel and fight for the morsels which were given by the prisoner.

‘When my dinner was brought in,’ says Latude, ‘I called my companions. The male ran to me directly; the female, according to custom, came slowly and timidly, but at length approached close to me, and ventured to take what I offered her from my hand. Some time after, a third appeared, who was much less ceremonious than my first acquaintances. After his second visit, he constituted himself one of the family, and made himself so perfectly at home, that he resolved to introduce his comrades. The next day he came accompanied by two others.’

in the
I thr
scald
ran t
selves
while
waited
it was
a com
their p
them
piece
pende
course
compar
six. W
peared
recepti
and ha
he coul
tude en
a spider
success
Anot

off the buckle which fastened the waistband of his breeches, and bending it into the form of a chisel by means of his leg irons; and with this handy instrument, after the lapse of many months, he contrived to form a rude kind of musical pipe. It was probably much inferior to a child's whistle, but his delight when he had completed it was extreme; the singing was natural, and the sounds must have been absolutely new to his ear. Though his isolation and his animal communications made his lonely hours somewhat less burdensome, and moments drew his attention away from maddening thoughts, his longing for liberty would periodically recur, and he racked his mind for plans to shake off his chains. The thought occurred to him, that if he could be fortunate enough to suggest the plan which would benefit the state, it might be repaid by the gift of freedom. At that time the non-commissioned military officers were armed only with halberts, which could be of no use but in close engagement. Latude proposed to substitute muskets for the halberts, and thus make effective at least 1000 men. But how was he to communicate his idea to the king and the ministers? He had neither pen, ink, nor paper; and secret orders had been given that he should be debarred from the use of them. This obstacle, however, he got over. For he moulded thin tablets

of bread, six inches square; for pens he used the triangular bones cut out of a carp's belly; for ink his blood was substituted; to obtain it he tied round a finger some threads from his shirt, and punctured the end. As only a few drops could be procured in this way, and as they dried up rapidly, he was compelled to repeat the operation so often that his fingers were covered with wounds, and enormously swelled. The necessity of frequent punctures he ultimately obviated, by diluting the blood with water.

When the memorial was finished, there was yet another difficulty to be surmounted; it must be copied. In this emergency, Latude clamorously demanded to see the major of the Bastille. To that officer he declared, that being convinced he had not long to live, he wished to prepare for his end by receiving religious assistance. The confessor of the prison was in consequence sent to him, was astonished and delighted by the memorial, became interested in his favour, and obtained an order that he should be supplied with materials for writing. The memorial was accordingly transcribed, and presented to the king.

The suggestion was adopted by the government; the unfortunate prisoner was, however, left to languish unnoticed in his dungeon. Again he tasked his faculties for a project which might benefit at once his country

and himself. At this period no provision was made in France for the widows of those who fell in battle. The king of Prussia had recently set the example of granting pensions, and Latude deemed it worthy of being imitated. But knowing that an empty treasury would be pleaded against its adoption, he proposed a trifling addition to the postage of letters, which he calculated would raise an ample fund. His memorial, and the data on which it was founded, were forwarded to the monarch and the ministers. The tax was soon after imposed, and nominally for the purpose pointed out by Latude; but the widows, nevertheless, continued to be destitute, and the projector unpitied.

Foiled in all his efforts, the firmness of Latude gave way. He had been pent for three years and five months in a loathsome dungeon, suffering more than pen can describe. Exposed in his horrible, fireless, and windowless abode to all the blasts of heaven, three winters, one of which was peculiarly severe, had sorely tortured his frame. The cold, the keen winds, and a continual defluxion from his nostrils, had split his upper lip and destroyed his front teeth; his eyes were endangered from the same causes, and from frequent weeping; his head was often suddenly affected by a sort of apoplectic stroke; and his limbs were racked by cramp and rheumatism. Hope *was extinct*; intense agony of

mind and body rendered existence insufferable; and the unhappy victim resolved to throw off a burden which he could no longer bear. No instrument of destruction being within reach, he tried to effect his purpose by starving himself; and for a hundred and thirty-three hours he obstinately persisted in refusing all food. At last his jailors wrenched open his mouth, and frustrated his design. Still bent on dying, he contrived to obtain and secrete a fragment of broken glass, with which he opened four of the large veins. During the night he bled till life was all but extinct. Once more, however, he was snatched from the grave; and he now sullenly resigned himself to await his appointed time.

After he had been confined a considerable time longer, a fortunate overflowing of the Seine occasioned his removal. The turnkey complained heavily that he was obliged to walk through the water to the prisoner, and Latude was in consequence removed to an apartment in the tower of La Comte. It had no chimney, and was one of the worst rooms in the tower, but it was a paradise when compared with the pestiferous hole from which he had emerged. Yet so strong is the yearning for society, that, gladdened as he was by his removal, he could not help bitterly regretting the loss of his sociable rats. As a substitute for them, he tried to catch some of the pigeons which

perched on the window ; and by means of a noose formed from threads drawn out of his linen, he finally succeeded in snaring a male and female. He tried every means to console them for the loss of liberty. He assisted them to make their nest and to feed their young ; his care and attention equalled their own. 'They seemed sensible of this, and repaid him by every possible mark of affection. As soon as this reciprocal understanding had been established, he occupied himself entirely with them. How he watched their actions, and enjoyed their expressions of tenderness ! He lost himself entirely while with them, and in his dreams continued the enjoyment.

This pleasure was too great to be lasting. He had been placed in his present apartment because it was under the care of a brutal turnkey, named Daragon, who had been punished for Latude's former escape, and cherished a rankling feeling of revenge. It was Daragon who purchased the grain for the pigeons, and for this service the prisoner, besides the large profit which the turnkey made, gave him one out of the seven bottles of wine which was his weekly allowance. Daragon now insisted on having four bottles, without which he would purchase no more grain. It was to no purpose that Latude pleaded that the wine was indispensably necessary to restore his health ; the turnkey was deaf to reason.

Latude was provoked into asperity ; Daragon rushed out in a rage, and in a short time he returned, pretending that he had an order from the governor to kill the pigeons. 'My despair at this,' says Latude, 'exceeded all bounds, and absolutely unsettled my reason ; I could willingly have sacrificed my life to satisfy my just vengeance on this monster. I saw him make a motion towards the innocent victims of my misfortunes ; I sprang forward to prevent him. I seized them, and in my agony I crushed them myself. This was perhaps the most miserable moment of my whole existence. I never recall the memory of it without the bitterest pangs. I remained several days without taking any nourishment ; grief and indignation divided my soul ; my sighs were imprecations, and I held all mankind in mortal horror.'

Fortunately, a humane and generous man, the Count de Jumilhac, was, soon after, appointed governor of the Bastile. He compassionated the sufferings of Latude, and exerted himself to relieve them. He obtained for him an interview with M. de Sartine, the minister of police, who gave him leave to walk for two hours daily on the platform of the Bastile, and promised to befriend him. That promise he soon broke. Hope revived in the breast of Latude, and he again set to work to form plans for the good of the country. Schemes for issuing a new species

of nature, and the most interesting of all, that of the human mind, were among the first fruits of his meditations. With respect to the other papers he says, 'Nothing could be more simple than the mode I suggested of constructing and preserving these magazines. It consisted in a slight copy upon parchment, which all the people in town who wished to appear so would have paid with eagerness, as I had the address to find it upon their vanity.' This project pleased M. de Sartine so much, that he wished to have the merit of it to himself, and by means of a third person he solicited Latude to know whether he would relinquish his claim to it on having a small pension secured to him. Latude gave a brief but peremptory refusal, and M. de Sartine was thenceforth his enemy. All letters and messages to him remained unnoticed.

While he was one day walking on the platform, he learned the death of his father. The sentinel who guarded him had served under his father, but did not know that the prisoner was the son of his old officer. Latude was overwhelmed by this fatal intelligence, and he fainted on the spot. His mother still lived; but she, too, was sinking into the grave from grief. It was in vain that in the most pathetic language she repeatedly implored the *mar-chionness* to have mercy on the *captive*. Her prayers might

have moved a heart of flint, but they had no effect on Madame de Pompadour. But the horrors of imprisonment were not enough to be inflicted on him; he was made the victim of calumny, and a stain was fixed upon his character. To get rid of impunity in his behalf, the men in office replied to his advocates, 'Beware how you solicit the pardon of that miscreant. You would shudder if you knew the crimes he has committed.'

Thus goaded almost to madness it is not to be wondered at that he was eager to take vengeance on his persecutors. Since the heart of Madame de Pompadour was inaccessible to pity, he determined that it should at least feel the stings of mortification and rage. His plan was to draw up a memorial, exposing her character, and to address it to La Beaumelle, who had himself tasted the rigours of the Bastile. He had only to place in trusty hands the true history of her birth and infamous life, with all the particulars of which he was well acquainted. In depriving him of existence she would dread his dying words, and even from the tomb he would still be an object of terror to her. There was nothing then to restrain the blow with which he had the power of crushing her. The faithful friends who were to become the depositaries of his vengeance, in apprising her of the danger, would merely give her a single

moment to escape it by doing him justice.

It was while he was walking on the platform of the Bastile that he formed this chimerical project; for chimerical it was, there being scarcely a probability that any one would have courage enough to second his attack on the potent and vindictive marchioness. Having calculated the distance between the top of the tower and the street of St. Anthony, on which he looked down, he perceived that it was possible to fling a packet into the street. Nothing of this kind could, however, be done while he was closely watched by Falconet, the aid-major, and a sergeant, both of whom always attended him in his walk. Falconet was insufferably garrulous, particularly in his own exploits, and Latude hoped to disgust him by perpetual sarcasm and contradiction. He succeeded in silencing him, but Falconet still clung to him like his shadow. To tire him out, Latude adopted the plan of almost running during the whole of the time that he was on the platform. The aid-major remonstrated, but the prisoner answered that rapid motion was indispensably necessary to him, in order to excite perspiration. At last Falconet suffered him to move about as he pleased, and fell into gossiping with the sergeant, in which they both engaged so deeply that Latude was left unnoticed.

The next step of Latude was

to gaze into the windows of the opposite houses, and scrutinize the faces of the persons whom he saw, till he could see some one whose countenance seemed indicative of humane feelings. It was on the female sex, as having more sensibility than the male, that he mainly relied for pity and succour; and his attention was finally fixed on two young women, who were sitting by themselves at work in a chamber, and whose looks appeared to betoken that they were of kind dispositions. Having caught the eye of one of them, he respectfully saluted her by a motion of his hand; the sign was answered by both of them in a similar manner. After this dumb intercourse had continued for some days, he showed them a packet, and they motioned to him to fling it; but he gave them to understand that it was not yet ready.

The means of conveyance for his intended work were now secured; but as he no longer had materials for writing, he had still much to contrive. But he was not of a nature to be discouraged even by serious obstacles. He had fortunately been allowed to purchase some books, and he resolved to write between the lines and on the margins of the pages. As a pen made of a carp bone would not write a sufficiently small hand for interlineations, he beat a copper coin as thin as paper, and succeeded in shaping it into a tolerable pen. Ink was yet to

be provided, and this was the worst task of all to accomplish. Having on the former occasion narrowly escaped gangrene in his fingers, he was afraid to use blood, and was therefore compelled to find a substitute. To make this ink of lamp-black was the mode which occurred to him; but as he was allowed neither fire nor candle, how was the black to be obtained? By a series of stratagems he managed to surmount the difficulty. Under pretence of severe tooth-ache, he borrowed from the sergeant who attended him on the platform, a pipe and the articles for lighting it, and he secreted a piece of the tinder. By a simulated fit of colic he got some oil from the doctor. This he put into a pomatum pot, and made a wick from threads drawn out of the sheets. He then made a bow and peg like a drill, and with this and the piece of tinder, by dint of rapid friction he ignited two small bits of dry wood, and lighted his lamp. The first view of the light threw him, he says, into a delirium of joy. The condensed smoke he collected on the bottom of a plate, and in six hours he had sufficient for his purpose. But here he was stopped short; and all his trouble seemed likely to be thrown away, for the light and only black floated on the water instead of mixing with it. He ~~was not~~ ^{was not} this by affecting to have tooth-ache. The prison ~~doctor~~ ^{doctor} sent him some syrup,

and Latude employed it to render the lamp-black miscible with water.

Thus provided with materials for writing, Latude sat down to compose his work. 'My whole heart and soul were in it,' says he, 'and I steeped my pen in the gall with which they were overflowing.' Having completed the history of his persecutor, he wrote a letter of instructions to La Beaumelle, another to a friend, the Chevalier de Mehegan, in case of La Beaumelle being absent, and a third to his two female friends, in which he directed them how to proceed, and entreated them to exert themselves in his behalf. The whole of the papers he packed up in a leathern bag, which he formed out of the lining of a pair of breeches. As the packet was rather bulky, and the carrying of it about his person was dangerous, he was anxious to get rid of it as soon as possible. Some time, however, elapsed before he could catch sight of his friendly neighbours. At length one of them saw his signal, descended into the street, and caught the packet. Three months and a half passed away, during which he frequently saw them. They seemed to be pleased with something that related to him, but he was unable to comprehend their signs. At last, on the 18th of April 1764, they approached the window, and displayed a roll of paper, on which was written in large characters, 'The Mar-

chioness of Pompadour died yesterday.'

'I thought I saw the heavens open before me!' exclaimed Latude. His oppressor was gone; and he felt an undoubting confidence that his liberation would immediately follow as a necessary consequence. He was cruelly undeceived. After some days had passed over, he wrote to the lieutenant of police, and claimed his freedom. Sartine had given strict orders to all the officers of the Bastile, to conceal the death of the marchioness, and he instantly hurried to the prison to discover how the news had reached Latude. He summoned the prisoner into his presence, and harshly questioned him on the subject. Latude perceived that a disclosure might be prejudicial to the kind females, and with equal firmness and honour he refused to make it. 'The avowal,' said Sartine, 'is the price of your liberty.' The captive, however, again declared that he would rather perish than purchase the blessing at such a cost. Finding him inflexible, the baffled lieutenant retired in anger. Irritated by repeated letters, petitions, and remonstrances being neglected, and having been led to fear that he was to be perpetually imprisoned to prevent him from suing Pompadour's heirs, Latude in an evil hour lost all command over himself, and wrote a violent epistle to Sartine, avowedly for the purpose of enraging him.

This act of insane passion was punished by instant removal to one of the worst dungeons, where his fare was bread and water.

After Latude had been in this dungeon for eighteen days, M. de Sartine obtained an order to transfer him to Vincennes and immure him in an *oubliette*. Before he removed the prisoner, he circulated a report that he meant to deliver him, but that, to accustom him by degrees to a change of air, he was going to place him for a few months in a convent of monks. On the night of the 14th of August 1764, an officer of police, with two assistants, came to convey him to his new prison. 'My keepers,' he says, 'fastened an iron chain round my neck, the end of which they placed under the bend of my knees; one of them placed one hand upon my mouth, and the other behind my head, whilst his companion pulled the chain with all his might, and completely bent me double. The pain I suffered was so intense that I thought my loins and spine were crushed; I have no doubt it equalled that endured by the wretch who is broken on the wheel. In this state I was conveyed from the Bastile to Vincennes.' At Vincennes he was placed in a cell. His mind and body were now both overpowered by the severity of his fate; dangerous illness came on, and he every day grew weaker. Fortunately for Latude, M. Guyonnet, the governor of

the fortress, had nothing of 'the steeled jailor' about him; he was a generous, humane man, of amiable manners. He listened to the mournful tale of the captive, wept for his misfortunes, took on himself the responsibility of giving him a good apartment, and obtained for him the privilege of walking daily for two hours in the garden. Despairing, as well he might, of being ever released by his inflexible enemies, Latude meditated incessantly on the means of escaping. Fifteen months elapsed before an opportunity occurred, and then it was brought about by chance. He was walking in the garden on a November afternoon, when a thick fog suddenly came on. The idea of turning it to account rushed into his mind. He was guarded by two sentries and a sergeant, who never quitted his side for an instant; but he determined to make a bold attempt. By a violent push of his elbows he threw off the sentries, then pushed down the sergeant, and darted past a third sentry, who did not perceive him till he was gone by. All four set up the cry of 'Seize him!' and Latude joined in it still more loudly, pointing with his finger to mislead the pursuers. There remained only one sentry to elude, but he was on the alert, and unfortunately knew him. Presenting his bayonet, he threatened *to kill the prisoner if he did not stop.*

'My dear Chenu,' said he to

him, 'you are incapable of such an action; your orders are to arrest, and not to kill me.' He had slackened his pace, and came up to him slowly; as soon as he was close to him he sprang upon his musket, and wrenched it from him with such violence that he was thrown down in the struggle. Latude jumped over his body, flinging the musket to a distance of ten paces, lest he should fire it after him, and once more he achieved his liberty.

Favoured by the fog, Latude contrived to hide himself in the park till night, when he scaled the wall, and proceeded by by-ways to Paris. He sought a refuge with the two kind females to whom he had entrusted his packet. They were the daughters of a hairdresser named Lebrun. The asylum for which he asked was granted in the kindest manner. They procured for him some linen and an apartment in the house, gave him fifteen livres which they had saved, and supplied him with food from all their own meals. The papers confided to them they had endeavoured, but in vain, to deliver to the persons for whom they were intended; two of those persons were absent from France; the third was recently married, and his wife, on hearing that the packet was from the Bastille, would not suffer her husband to receive it.

Latude was out of prison, but he was not out of danger. He was convinced that to whatever

quarter he might bend his steps, it would be next to impossible to elude M. de Sartine, who by means of his spies was omnipresent. In this emergency he deemed it prudent to conciliate his persecutor; and he accordingly wrote a letter to him, entreating forgiveness for insults offered in a moment of madness, promising future silence and submission, and pathetically imploring him to become his protector. This overture had no result. He tried the influence of various persons, among whom was the Prince of Conti, but everywhere he was met by the prejudice which Sartine had raised against him; and to add to his alarm and vexation, he learned that a strict search was making for him, and that a reward of a thousand crowns was offered for his apprehension. As a last resource, he determined to make a personal appeal to the Duke of Choiseul, the first minister, who was then with the court at Fontainebleau. It was mid-December when he set out, the ground was covered with ice and snow, and the cold was intense. A morsel of bread was his whole stock of provisions; he had no money, and he dared not approach a house, proceed on the high road, or travel by day, lest he should be intercepted. In his nightly circuitous journey of more than forty miles, he often fell into ditches, or tore himself in scrambling through the hedges. *'I hid myself in a field,' says he, 'during the whole*

of the 16th; and after walking for two successive nights, I arrived on the morning of the 17th at Fontainebleau, worn out by fatigue, hunger, grief, and despair.'

Latude was too soon convinced that there was no chance of escaping from the vengeance of M. de Sartine. As soon as he had announced his arrival to the duke, two officers of the police came to convey him, as they said, to the minister; but their mask was speedily thrown off, and he found that they were to escort him back to Vincennes. They told him that every road had been beset and every vehicle watched to discover him, and they expressed their wonder at his having been able to reach Fontainebleau undetected. 'I now learned,' says he, 'for the first time, that there was no crime so great, or so severely punished, as a complaint against a minister. These exempts quoted to me the case of some deputies from the provinces, who, having been sent a short time before to denounce to the king the exactions of certain intendants, had been arrested and punished as dangerous incendiaries!'

On his reaching Vincennes, he was thrown into a horrible dungeon, barely six feet by six and a half in diameter, which was secured by four iron-plated treble-bolted doors, distant a foot from each other. To aggravate his misery, he was told that he deserved a thousand

times with treatment, for that he had seen the crest of the sergeant who guided him being seized. This appearing to him, he determined to demand the release of his friend de Sarrina, and, accordingly, accused himself as the murderer of the turnkey. In the course of a few days, however, a compassionate sentinel who was moved by his cries and groans, relieved his heart by informing him that the sergeant was well, and had only been imprisoned.

The kind-hearted governor sometimes visited Larude, but the information which he brought was not consolatory. He had tried to move M. de Sarrina, and had found him inflexible. Sarrina, however, sent to offer the prisoner his liberty, on condition that he would name the person who held his papers, and he pledged his honour that no harm should come to that person. Larude knew him too well to trust him. He resolutely answered, 'I entered my dungeon an honest man, and I will die rather than leave it a dastard and a knave.'

Into the den where he was, as it were, walled up, no ray of light entered: the air was never changed but at the moment when the turnkey opened the wicket; the straw on which he lay was always rotten with damp, and the narrowness of the space scarcely allowed him room to move. His health, of course, rapidly declined, and his body swelled enormously, retaining

in every part of it when touched the impression of the finger. Such were his agonies, that he implored his keepers as an act of mercy to terminate his existence. At last, after having endured months of intense suffering, he was removed to a habitable apartment, where his strength gradually returned.

Though his situation was improved, he was still entirely secluded from society. Hopeless of escape, he pondered on the means of at least opening an intercourse with his fellow-prisoners. On the outer side of his chamber was the garden in which each of the prisoners, Larude alone being excluded, was daily allowed to walk by himself for a certain time. This wall was five feet thick; so that to penetrate it seemed almost as difficult as to escape. But what cannot time and perseverance accomplish! His only instruments were a broken piece of a sword and an iron hoop of a bucket, which he had contrived to secrete; yet with these, by dint of twenty-six months' labour, he managed to perforate the mass of stone. The hole was made in a dark corner of the chimney, and he stopped the interior opening with a plug formed of sand and plaster. A long wooden peg rather shorter than the hole was inserted into it, that, in case of the external opening being noticed and sounded, it might seem to be not more than three inches in depth. For a signal to the

prisoner walking in the garden, he tied several pieces of wood so as to form a stick about six feet long, at the end of which hung a bit of riband. The twine with which it was tied, was made from threads drawn out of his linen. He thrust the stick through the hole, and succeeded in attracting the attention of a fellow-captive, the Baron de Venac, who had been nineteen years confined for having presumed to give advice to Madame de Pompadour. He successively became acquainted with several others, two of whom were also the victims of the marchioness. One of them had been seventeen years in prison, on suspicion of having spoken ill of her; the other had been twenty-three years because he was suspected of having written against her a pamphlet, which he had never even seen. The prisoners contrived to convey ink and paper to Latude through the hole. He opened a correspondence with them, encouraged them to write to each other, and became the medium through which they transmitted their letters. The burden of captivity was much lightened to him by this new occupation.

An unfortunate change for the prisoner now took place. The benevolent and amiable-mannered Guyonnet was succeeded by Rougemont, a man who was a contrast to him in every respect. He was avaricious, flinty-hearted, brutal, and

a devoted tool of M. de Sartine. The diet which he provided for the captives was of the worst kind; and their scanty comforts were as much as possible abridged. That he might not be thwarted in the exercise of his tyranny, he dismissed such of the prison attendants as he suspected of being humane, and replaced them by men whose dispositions harmonized with his own. How utterly devoid of feeling were the beings whom he selected, may be judged by the language of his cook. This libel on the human race is known to have said, 'If the prisoners were ordered to be fed on straw, I would give them stable-litter;' and on other occasions he declared, 'If I thought there was a single drop of juice in the meat of the prisoners, I would trample it under my foot to squeeze it out!' Such a wretch would not have scrupled to put poison into the food, had not his master had an interest in keeping the captives alive. When any one complained of the provisions, he was insultingly answered, 'It is but too good for prisoners;' when application for the use of an article, however insignificant, was made, the reply was, 'It is contrary to the rules.' So horrible was the despotism of the governor, that within three months four of the prisoners strangled themselves in despair. 'The Inquisition itself,' says Latude, 'might envy his proficiency in

filled the interstices of the bars with close iron network, and then, lest a blade of grass should still be visible, blockaded the outside with a blind like a mill-hopper, so that nothing could be perceived but a narrow strip of sky. But his situation was soon made far worse. In a fit of anger, caused by his being refused the means of writing to the lieutenant of police, he imprudently chanced to wish himself in his former cell again. He was taken at his word. On the following morning, when he had forgotten his unguarded speech, he was led back to his dark and noisome dungeon. 'Few will believe,' says he, 'that such inhuman jests could be practised in a civilised country.'

M. de Sartine, being now appointed minister of the police,

straw dipped
appeal was d
to prevent him
it in the same
vornor ordered
candle to be
side of the wic
a few feeble
trate into the
the captive was
discouraged; :
took a delight
persecutors. E
in a pomatum p
by the surgeon
colic pains whi
by the dampne
Cotton drawn fr
supplied him w
then twisted so
into a rope, whi
and fastened in
bee-hive. With
of straw he mad
five feet long, w

lamp, and wrote a second with his own blood. The result was to make his friends believe that he was aided by the prince of darkness.

It was not till Latude was at death's door that he was removed from his dungeon. On being taken out he fainted, and remained for a long while insensible. When he came to himself his mind wandered, and some time he imagined that he had passed into the other world. Medical aid was granted him, and he slowly recovered his health. The turnkeys now occasionally dropped obscure hints of some beneficial change, which he was at a loss to understand. The mystery was at length explained. The benevolent M. de Malesherbes had lately been appointed a cabinet minister, and one of his first business was to inspect the state prisons. He saw Latude, listened to his mournful story, was indignant at his six-and-thirty years' captivity, and proposed redress.

Latude had been more than ten years at Vincennes when the order arrived for his release. His heart beat high with exultation; but he was doomed to suffer severe disappointment. At the moment when he imagined that he was free, an officer informed him that the minister thought it expedient to accuse him gradually to a purer land and that he was therefore directed to convey him to a prison, where he was to re-

main for a few months. These were the very same words which had been spoken to him when he was sent from the Bastille to Vincennes; and knowing their meaning but too well, they almost palsied his faculties. His enemies had been busily at work. By gross misrepresentations, and by forging in his name an extravagant memorial to the king, they had induced M. de Malesherbes to believe that the prisoner's intellects were disordered, and that he could not be immediately released without peril. It was to the hospital of Charenton, the Parisian bedlam, that the officers were removing Latude. When he was about to quit Vincennes, he heard the brutal Rougemont describe him to them as a dangerous and hardened criminal, who could not be too rigorously confined. It was also hinted that the prisoner was gifted with magical powers, by virtue of which he had thrice escaped in an extraordinary manner. When he was turned over to the monks, called the Brothers of Charity, who had the management of Charenton, these particulars were faithfully reported to them, and he was introduced under the name of 'Danger,' in order to excite an idea of his formidable character.

Unacquainted with the nature of Charenton, Latude on seeing the monks had supposed that he was in a monastery. On finding that he was in a mad-house he dropped fainting to the

at their windows. They were both of them state prisoners, the hospital being occasionally converted into a jail by the ministers; one was named St. Magloire, the other the Baron de Prilles. Latude introduced himself to them, and they promised him all the services in their power. De Prilles possessed considerable influence with the officers of the establishment, and he exerted it so effectually, that he obtained permission for Latude to be visited by his fellow-captives. He had, however, enjoyed this comfort only for a short time, when Rougemont came and gave orders for his being placed in close and solitary confinement.

Latude remained in seclusion for a considerable time; but at length, by dint of incessant remonstrances De Prilles induced

him to disobey in allowing that he did not stop of the hospital was so deeply injured by the injustice done that he waited for herbes to in. On his assurance that the prison was docile, and p. hearer, who has Latude was a was astonished at having been promised that I release him, he might in enjoy as much hospital regulations. Unfortunately, Latude, Malesherbes after ceased to ministers.

Though he

The party thus formed admitted to their society several of the lunatics who had been liberally educated and were harmless. One of these unfortunate men asserted himself to be the Divinity, another claimed to be a son of Louis xv., a third took a higher flight, and was the reigning monarch. These aspiring pretensions were strongly contrasted with the humility of others. A barrister, whose intellect love had shaken, manifested his insanity by throwing himself at every one's feet and imploring pardon. Another individual, who had been a hermit, obstinately persisted in believing that Latude was a German elector; and in spite of all attempts to prevent it, would perform for him the meanest domestic offices. 'If I told him in the morning,' says Latude, 'that a flea had disturbed my rest, he would not leave my chamber till he had killed it: he would bring it to me in the hollow of his hand, to show me what he had done. "My lord," he would say, "it will bite no more, and will never again disturb the sleep of your most serene highness."'

A fellow-prisoner, who had recently been confined in a cell, during a furious paroxysm of insanity, now gave some information to Latude which deeply wounded his feelings. From him, Latude learned that his early friend, D'Alegre, was in the prison, a raving maniac, shut up in an iron cage. His

entreaties were so pressing, that the monks granted him permission to visit this unfortunate being. He found him a lamentable spectacle, shrunk to a skeleton, his hair matted, and his eyes sunken and haggard. Latude rushed to embrace him, but was repelled with signs of aversion by the maniac. In vain he strove to recall himself to the maniac's recollection; the lost being only looked fiercely at him, and exclaimed in a hollow tone, 'I know you not!—begone!—I am God!' This victim of despotism had been ten years at Charenton, and he continued there in the same melancholy state during the remainder of his existence, which was protracted till a very late period.

After Latude had been for nearly two years at Charenton, his friends succeeded in obtaining an order for his release, on condition that he should permanently fix his abode at Montagnac, his native place. He quitted the prison without hat or coat, all his dress consisting of a tattered pair of breeches and stockings, a pair of slippers, and a greatcoat thirty years old, which damp had reduced to rottenness. He was penniless too; but he was regardless of all the circumstances; it was enough that he was free.

With some money which he borrowed from a person who knew his family, Latude procured decent clothing. He called on M. Le Noir, who

de Beauveau, to whom he related his woful story. In his memorial he mentioned M. de Sartine; and though he intimates that he said nothing offensive, we may doubt whether he manifested much forbearance. The ministers now gave him peremptory orders to quit Paris; it is obvious that they were acquainted with his memorial, and were irritated by it beyond measure. He had proceeded forty-three leagues on his journey to the south of France, when he was overtaken by an officer of police, who carried him back a prisoner to the capital.

Latude was now taught that hitherto he had not reached the lowest depth of misery; he was doomed to experience 'a bitter change, severer for severe.' Till this time, his companions in suffering

series admitted, numerous at his prison. 'I was compelled to endure the long unprincipled breath of vice.' procure the den of in friends were from Charles were silence hood that madman, created by broken into of rank, terrified by large sum calumny and he was to demand

s a motto, 'I gnaw my
xpecting the day when
ite him who has bitten

: the money lasted which
had taken into the
e could obtain a supply
bad indeed of quality,
lanously cooked, . but
able of supporting na-
but the money was soon
nd he was then reduced
prison allowance, which
nty in quantity, of the
ind, and often polluted
admixture of filth and

Latude was a large
nd the portion of food
to him was so trifling,
was tortured by hunger.
h extremity was he
that he was compelled
on the sweepers to give
ne of the hard crusts,
were thrown into the
s by the richer prisoners,
ch were collected every
; for the pigs.

s the fare of Latude was,
ing was far worse. His
less cell, only eight feet
swarmed with fleas and
such a degree, that to
as all but impossible ;
s at a time were under
erlet. He had neither
candle, his clothing was
ent, and the wind and
d snow beat furiously
the iron grating, which
admitted the light. In
ather, and during thaws,
r ran in *streams down*
of the dungeon. Eight-
months were spent

in this infernal abode. Rheuma-
tism, that prevented him from
quitting his pallet, was the first
consequence of his exposed
situation. This brought with it
an aggravation of another evil ;
for when Latude was unable to
approach the wicket, the keeper
flung in his bread, and gave him
no soup. Scurvy of the most
inveterate kind at length at-
tacked him, his limbs were
swelled and blackened, his gums
became spongy, and his teeth
loose, and he could no longer
masticate the bread. For three
days he lay without sustenance,
voiceless and motionless, and he
was just on the point of expiring
when he was conveyed to the
infirmary. The infirmary was
a loathsome place, little better
than a charnel-house ; but the
medical aid which he obtained
there restored him, after a
struggle of many months, to a
tolerable state of health.

On his recovery he was placed
in a decent apartment. He did
not, however, long enjoy it.
Having attempted to present a
petition to a princess of the
house of Bouillon, who came to
see the Bicêtre, he was punished
by being thrust into a dungeon
more horrible than that which
he had previously inhabited.
His own words will best de-
scribe what he underwent. 'I
was,' says he, 'still enduring a
physical torture, which I had ex-
perienced before, though never
to so cruel and dangerous an
extent. After having triumphed
over so many disasters, and van-

myriads of these noxious animals that assailed me at once ; the dreadful irritation made me tear my flesh with my teeth and nails, until my whole body became covered with ulcers ; insects generated in the wounds, and literally devoured me alive. It was impossible to sleep : I was driven mad with agony, my sufferings were drawing to a close, and death in its most horrid shape awaited me.'

Gloomy as appearances were, the dawn of a brighter day was at hand. A providential occurrence, which seemed calculated to destroy his last hope, was the cause of his redemption. In 1781, the President de Gourgue visited the Bicêtre, heard the story of Latude, desired that the captive would draw up a memorial, and promised to exert himself in his behalf. T

was sh
protrac
prison
After s
the me
particip
ried it t
magistr
by the
tive wa
lunatic,
desist fr
be fruitl
however
sense an
believe
mad ; st
morial ;
perceive
disordere
firmly co
victim o
resolved
and facu
Never, p

ever paused for a moment from the pursuit of her object, never uttered a sentence of regret that she had engaged in it. Her husband, too, though less personally active, has the merit of having entirely coincided with her in opinion, and aided her as far as he had the power.

It is delightful to know that her noble labours were crowned with success. Her toils, and the result of them, are thus summed up by Latude, who has also narrated them at great length: Being thoroughly convinced of my innocence, she resolved to attempt my liberation; she succeeded, after occupying three years in unparalleled efforts and unwearied perseverance. Every feeling heart will be deeply moved at the recital of the means she employed, and the difficulties she surmounted. Without relations, friends, fortune, or assistance, she undertook everything, and shrank from no danger and no fatigue. She penetrated to the levées of ministers, and forced her way to the presence of the great; she spoke with the natural eloquence of truth, and falsehood fled before her words. They excited her hopes and extinguished them, received her with kindness and repulsed her rudely; she reiterated her petitions, and returned a hundred times to the attack, emboldened by defeat itself. The friends her virtues had created trembled for her liberty, even for her life. She resisted all their entreaties, dis-

regarded their remonstrances, and continued to plead the cause of humanity. When seven months pregnant, she went on foot to Versailles, in the midst of winter; she returned home, exhausted with fatigue, and worn out with disappointment; she worked more than half the night to obtain subsistence for the following day, and then repaired again to Versailles. At the expiration of eighteen months she visited me in my dungeon, and communicated her efforts and her hopes. For the first time I saw my generous protectress; I became acquainted with her exertions, and I poured forth my gratitude in her presence. She redoubled her anxiety, and resolved to brave everything. Often on the same day she has gone to Montmartre to visit her infant, which was placed there at nurse, and then came to the Bicêtre to console me and inform me of her progress. At last, after three years, she triumphed, and procured my liberty.'

In the first instance, the boon of liberty could not be said to be more than half granted, Latude being ordered to fix his abode at Montagnac, and not to leave the town without the permission of the police officer of the district. As his fortune was entirely lost, a miserable pension of four hundred livres (about £16) was assigned for his subsistence. By the renewed exertions of Madame Legros, however, the decree of exile

It was on the 24th of March 1784 that Latude emerged into the world, from which he had for five-and-thirty years been secluded. He and his noble-minded benefactress were for a considerable time objects of general curiosity. Happily, that curiosity did not end in barren pity and wonder, but proved beneficial to those who excited it. A subscription was raised, by which two annuities, each of 300 livres, were purchased, one

readily. tude also o crease; but that it receiv importance; brought an heirs of the Pompadour, were awarde withstanding his frame ha existence of tracted till r at the age of

CHAPTER VII.

HOW CAPTAIN WILSON BECAME A PRISONER HIS WONDERFUL ADVENTURES AND SU

CAPTAIN WILSON was the youngest of seventeen children; his father was a commander of a ship in the Newcastle trade arriving in sail quitted his sh to abide in the he became

for the ships returning from the East, to advise of the arrival of the French on, under Suffrein, on board, and to put them on board.

Ship he commanded was, and in the voyage her rig grew so loose as to admit great quantities of water, with great difficulty she was preserved from foundering. He was therefore obliged to run for land off Pulicat distant from the French fleet going to the coast. He expected to have been pressed with the shore, where a ship would probably be permitted and capture; but as she was so leaky, he was obliged to run her on the beach, the lives of himself and his crew proceeded thence, just at the critical moment when the settlement was in its greatest distress. Sir Eyre Coote had marched to the shore and was so surrounded by Ali's army, that no relief could reach him by land. The French squadron, which at Pondicherry, had cut off all supplies by sea, so that the British troops were reduced to great difficulties and danger of famine, their stores nearly exhausted.

Several ships had been loaded at Madras, but as the French fleet lay directly in the way they dared not attempt

to Cuddalore, near Sir Eyre Coote was engaged. The governor of

Madras, Mr. Smith, had heard of Mr. Wilson, and sending for him, inquired if he would attempt to carry down the ships with the supplies for the camp, stating the danger and hazard of the run, and offering him four hundred pagodas for the service, and more if he should be detained beyond a fortnight. The captain undertook to attempt the passage, and immediately made preparations for his departure.

The vessel in which he embarked was about five hundred tons burden, with three others under his command, all navigated by black men, himself being the only European, except an officer who went down as a passenger to the army. He pushed on as far as Sadras, about sixteen leagues, where he took refuge under the Dutch flag, and despatched two hicarrahs to Sir Eyre Coote, to inform him of his approach, and to expect his orders. But the roads were so obstructed by Hyder's horse, that to avoid the marauding army, the hicarrahs were obliged to take a great circuit; and as they ventured to travel only by night, they were eleven days before they returned. They brought from the general the most urgent orders to proceed at all hazards, and without a moment's delay; adding, that if the captain brought only one vessel, and lost the rest, it would be of the most important service.

Wilson accordingly immedi-

ately weighed anchor, proceeding at such a distance from Pondicherry as to see from the mast-head the French flag, and if possible, to pass them in the night undiscovered. The French fleet that very evening weighed anchor, occasioned by a singular circumstance, which was afterwards known. Suffrein had sent his water-casks on shore to be filled. Meanwhile Sir Eyre Coote had detached a corps of grenadiers and light infantry, who, entering Pondicherry, which was open on the land side since the fortifications had been demolished, found the casks lying on the beach, and destroyed them by staving them all; this induced Suffrein to run down to Point de Galle to repair the loss, just at the moment when Captain Wilson was passing in the offing. As Suffrein's ships sailed so much better than his, they were off Cuddalore in the morning, and Captain Wilson arrived in the afternoon, thus providentially escaping, and bringing in the whole of the cargoes entrusted to his care, and so much wanted by the army. They had been reduced to forty-five bags of paddy, and not a grain of rice to be procured. This supply rescued them from the impending famine, or the necessity of cutting their way through the enemy; and under God, was the means, as all acknowledged, of the preservation of the army and the Carnatic.

Captain Wilson had some

stores of his own, which were greedily seized and devoured as soon as landed. The next day he was invited to dine with the general and the staff, and was placed at Sir Eyre Coote's right hand, receiving the most cordial acknowledgments for his services. He informed the company of the seizure of his stores. They bade him prepare an account of them, and gave him a pagoda for every bottle of wine, and for the rest in proportion; so that this successful trip produced him about a thousand pounds, and a testimony of Sir Eyre Coote's high satisfaction in the service which he had performed.

Returning to Bengal, he continued to be employed in carrying down supplies. But on one occasion, while sailing with a very valuable cargo of military stores for Sir Edward Hughes, whose ammunition had been nearly exhausted in the well-known conflict with Suffrein, he was unfortunately taken prisoner by the French, and carried into Cuddalore, which had recently fallen into their possession; and there he found the crew of the *Hannibal* in the same captivity. He was permitted, with other officers, to be at large on his parole, and hoped shortly to be exchanged.

Hyder Ali had at that time overrun and wasted a great part of the Carnatic; and in conjunction with the French, after taking Cuddalore, hoped to expel the English from all that

territory. He had lately defeated Colonel Bailey's detachment, and made them prisoners, and used every effort to get as many of the English as possible into his power, in order either to tempt them into his service, or to gratify his brutality by exposing them to a lingering death. He had bribed Suffrein with three hundred thousand rupees, to surrender up to him all his prisoners at Cuddalore; and the order being communicated to the commander of the fort, nothing could exceed the indignation and grief which he and his officers testified at such an infamous bargain. However, as he dared not disobey the orders of his superior, he informed the gentlemen on parole of the transaction, and his necessity of delivering them up the next day, to the escort appointed to carry them to Seringapatam.

Captain Wilson no sooner received the intelligence, than he determined that very night, if possible, to attempt his escape from captivity, which appeared to him worse than death. He had observed as he walked the ramparts the possibility of dropping down into the river; and though he neither knew the height of the wall, nor the width of the rivers which were to be crossed before he could reach a neutral settlement, he determined to seize the moment of delay, and risk the consequences, whatever danger or difficulty might be in the way.

He communicated his resolu-

tion to a brother officer and a Bengalese boy, his servant, who both resolved to accompany him in his flight. It was concerted between them to meet on the ramparts, just before the guard was set, as it grew dark, and silently drop down from the battlement. Before the hour appointed, his companion's heart failed him. About seven o'clock, he, with his boy Toby, softly ascended the rampart unperceived, and the captain leaping down, uncertain of the depth, pitched on his feet; but the shock of so great a descent, about forty feet, made his chin strike against his knees, and he tumbled headlong into the river which runs at the foot of the wall, dreading all the while lest the noise of the dash into the water would discover him. He recovered himself, however, as soon as possible, and returning to the foot of the wall, where there was a dry bank, bid the boy drop down, and caught him safe in his arms.

All that part of the Tanjore country is low, and intersected with a number of rivers, branching off from the great Coleroon; these necessarily must all be crossed. He inquired, therefore, of the boy, if he could swim, but found he could not. This was very embarrassing, but he resolved not to leave him behind, and therefore took him on his back, and being an excellent swimmer, carried him over. They pushed towards Porto Nuovo, about four

a sepoy sentry challenged, 'Who goes there?' on which they shrunk back, and concealed themselves, turning down on the river-side. The river in that place was very wide, and being near the sea, the tide ran in with rapidity. He took, however, the boy on his back, as he had done before, and bade him be sure and hold only by his hands, and cast his legs behind him; but when they came into the breakers, the boy was frightened, and clung round the captain with his legs so fast as almost to sink him. With difficulty he struggled with the waves, and turning back to the shore, found they must inevitably perish together if he thus attempted to proceed. Therefore, setting the boy safe on land, he bade him go back to Dr. Mein, who he thought might take care of him.

river, when rushed upon him whither he was bound. He seized the canoe, and of defence against which they had told them he had urgent business, and thither and launching his maining strength the river, he conveyed him to the good-natured down their planks, and with the stern, rowed to the opposite shore. I gave many thanks, else to give thanks on the beach pushed forward might.

He found he

the flux which he carried in prison, and for a year maintained a state of health above his fellows; but worn with misery, cold, hunger, nakedness, he was attacked the usual symptoms which carried off so many others. His body enormously distended, his thighs as big as his waist before, and his face enormously bloated; death seemed to have seized him for his prey. He survived such accumulation of misery, exhausted with age and disease, the unwholesome vapour of a prison thickening around him, and the cold entering into his flesh, is next to a miracle.

Reduced now to the extremity of weakness, his chains too strait to be endured, and threatening mortification, he seemed to have touched the moment of his dissolution, and was released from them to lie down and die. The soldier to whom he had been last chained served him with great affection; whilst the others who had been linked together often quarrelled, and rendered mad by their suffering, blasphemed and aggravated each other's miseries. Seeing him thus to all appearance near his end, and thinking it might alleviate his pain, Sam entreated he might spend for oil the daily pice, about three farthings, paid them, and anoint his legs; but the captain objected, saying that he should then have nothing to buy firing and salt to cook his next day's provision. Sam shook

again stripped him to his skin, and left only a sorry rag to wrap round his waist.

In this wretched state, chained to another fellow-sufferer, under a vertical sun, with a scanty provision of rice only, he had to travel, naked and barefoot, five hundred miles, insulted by his guards, who goaded him on all the day, and at night thrust him into a damp, unwholesome prison, crowded with other miserable objects.

On their way, they were brought into Hyder's presence, and strongly urged to enlist in his service, and profess his religion, and thus obtain their liberty. To induce them to comply, these horrible severities were inflicted on them; and to escape these sufferings, some of the poor creatures consented. But the captain rejected these

and fatigues greater than there. I starved, noisome food and hundred sufferers, Captain men of vigour. Colonel : put on : two pound rigour, he the punishment to as well rejection offers made officers were them was soon after of all their the very city

guard. In the middle was a covered place open on all sides, exposed to the wind and rain. There, without any bed but the earth, or covering but the rags wrapped round him, he was chained to a fellow-sufferer, and often so cold that they would dig a hole in the earth, and bury themselves in it, as some defence from the chilling blast of the night. The whole allowance was only a pound of rice a day per man, and one rupee for forty days, or one pice a day, less than a penny, to provide salt and firing to cook the rice. It will hardly be believed, that it was among their eager employments to collect the white ants which pestered them in the prison, and fry them to procure a spoonful or two of their buttery substance. A state of raging hunger was never appeased by an allowance scarce able to maintain life; and the rice was so full of stones that he could not chew, but must swallow it; and often, he said, he was afraid to trust his own fingers in his mouth, lest he should be tempted to bite them.

The noble and athletic Highlanders were among the first victims. The flux and dropsy daily diminished their numbers. Often the dead body was unchained from his arm in the morning, that another living sufferer might take his place, and fall by the same disease. How his constitution could endure such sufferings is astonishing. Yet he had recovered

from the flux which he carried into prison, and for a year maintained a state of health above his fellows; but worn down with misery, cold, hunger, and nakedness, he was attacked with the usual symptoms which had carried off so many others. His body enormously distended, his thighs as big as his waist was before, and his face enormously bloated; death seemed to have seized him for his prey. How he survived such accumulated misery, exhausted with famine and disease, the unwholesome vapour of a prison thickening around him, and the iron entering into his flesh, is next to a miracle.

Reduced now to the extremity of weakness, his chains too strait to be endured, and threatening mortification, he seemed to touch the moment of his dissolution, and was released from them to lie down and die. The soldier to whom he had been last chained served him with great affection; whilst the others who had been linked together often quarrelled, and rendered mad by their suffering, blasphemed and aggravated each other's miseries. Seeing him thus to all appearance near his end, and thinking it might alleviate his pain, Sam entreated he might spend for oil the daily pice, about three farthings, paid them, and anoint his legs; but the captain objected, saying that he should then have nothing to buy firing and salt to cook his next day's provision. Sam shook

the mode which occurred to him; but as he was allowed neither fire nor candle, how was the black to be obtained? By a series of stratagems he managed to surmount the difficulty. Under pretence of severe toothache, he borrowed from the sergeant who attended him on the platform, a pipe and the articles for lighting it, and he secreted a piece of the tinder. By a simulated fit of colic he got some oil from the doctor. This he put into a pomatum pot, and made a wick from threads drawn out of the sheets. He then made a bow and peg like a drill, and with this and the piece of tinder, by dint of rapid friction he ignited two small bits of dry wood, and lighted his lamp. The first view of the light threw him, he says, into a delirium of joy.

pen in
they were
completed
persecutor
instruction
another to
lier de M.
Beaumelle
third to hi
in which h
to proceed
to exert t
half. The
he packed
which he
lining of a
the packe
and the ca
person wa
anxious to
possible.
elapsed be
sight of his
At length
signal dees

and every humane attention, than he had been when destitute, famished, covered with sores, and lying naked on the floor of a dungeon.

Being now restored, and capable of accompanying his countrymen, he descended the Ghauts, and proceeded on to Madras. Lord Macartney had forwarded a supply of clothes to meet them; but there not being a sufficiency for all, some had one thing and some another. To Captain Wilson's share a very large military hat fell, which, with a banyan and pantaloons with many a breach, made his meagre figure very much resemble a maniac. Impatient to visit his friends, he walked on from the last halting-place, while the sentries would hardly let him pass. He hastened to a friend, whose name was Ellis, and knocking at the door, inquired of the servants for their master and mistress. The footmen stared at him, said they were not at home, and were shutting the door against him, when he pressed in, rushed by them, and threw himself down upon a sofa. The servants were Mahommedans, who hold the insane in much reverence, and such they supposed him. Without any violence, therefore, used to remove him, Captain Wilson was permitted quietly to rest himself, and being tired, he fell into the most profound sleep, in which state *his friends on their return found him, and hardly recognised him, he was*

so altered. They left him thus sound asleep till the evening, when the lustres were lighted, and several friends assembled, curious to hear the story of his miserable captivity. When he awoke and saw the glare of light, and the persons around him, he could scarce recover his recollection, and for a moment seemed as if he had dropped into some enchanted abode.

The welcome and kind treatment of his friends, who supplied all his wants, soon restored him to his former life and spirits; and he began to think of new service, as he had yet obtained but a scanty provision, which his long captivity had not much increased, though he had received the arrears of his pay. He accordingly shipped himself as first mate in the 'Intelligence,' Captain Pennington, for Bencoolen and Batavia. In his passage through the Straits of Malacca, they were surrounded with water-spouts, one of which was very near them, and they fired to disperse it. The roaring was tremendous, and presently a torrent of rain came pouring down on the ship, which brought down with it many fish and seaweeds; yet the water was perfectly fresh,—a phenomenon singularly curious.

During the voyage to Bencoolen, the white ants and cockroaches, with other insects, multiplied in the most prodigious manner, so that it was resolved to run the ship down from Bencoolen to Puley Bay, and lay

make this ink of lamp-black was the mode which occurred to him; but as he was allowed neither fire nor candle, how was the black to be obtained? By a series of stratagems he managed to surmount the difficulty. Under pretence of severe toothache, he borrowed from the sergeant who attended him on the platform, a pipe and the articles for lighting it, and he secreted a piece of the tinder. By a simulated fit of colic he got some oil from the doctor. This he put into a pomatum pot, and made a wick from threads drawn out of the sheets. He then made a bow and peg like a drill, and with this and the piece of tinder, by dint of rapid friction he ignited two small bits of dry wood, and lighted his lamp. The first view of the light threw him

whole h
it,' says
pen in
they were
complete
persecut
instructio
another t
lier de M
Beaumell
third to h
in which l
to proceed
to exert t
half. The
he packed
which he
lining of a
the packe
and the ca
person wa
anxious to
possible.
elapsed be
sight of his

chioness of Pompadour died yesterday.'

'I thought I saw the heavens open before me!' exclaimed Latude. His oppressor was gone; and he felt an undoubting confidence that his liberation would immediately follow as a necessary consequence. He was cruelly undeceived. After some days had passed over, he wrote to the lieutenant of police, and claimed his freedom. Sartine had given strict orders to all the officers of the Bastile, to conceal the death of the marchioness, and he instantly hurried to the prison to discover how the news had reached Latude. He summoned the prisoner into his presence, and harshly questioned him on the subject. Latude perceived that a disclosure might be prejudicial to the kind females, and with equal firmness and honour he refused to make it. 'The avowal,' said Sartine, 'is the price of your liberty.' The captive, however, again declared that he would rather perish than purchase the blessing at such a cost. Finding him inflexible, the baffled lieutenant retired in anger. Irritated by repeated letters, petitions, and remonstrances being neglected, and having been led to fear that he was to be perpetually imprisoned to prevent him from suing Pompadour's heirs, Latude in an evil hour lost all command over himself, and wrote a violent epistle to Sartine, avowedly for the purpose of enraging him.

This act of insane passion was punished by instant removal to one of the worst dungeons, where his fare was bread and water.

After Latude had been in this dungeon for eighteen days, M. de Sartine obtained an order to transfer him to Vincennes and immure him in an *oubliette*. Before he removed the prisoner, he circulated a report that he meant to deliver him, but that, to accustom him by degrees to a change of air, he was going to place him for a few months in a convent of monks. On the night of the 14th of August 1764, an officer of police, with two assistants, came to convey him to his new prison. 'My keepers,' he says, 'fastened an iron chain round my neck, the end of which they placed under the bend of my knees; one of them placed one hand upon my mouth, and the other behind my head, whilst his companion pulled the chain with all his might, and completely bent me double. The pain I suffered was so intense that I thought my loins and spine were crushed; I have no doubt it equalled that endured by the wretch who is broken on the wheel. In this state I was conveyed from the Bastile to Vincennes.' At Vincennes he was placed in a cell. His mind and body were now both overpowered by the severity of his fate; dangerous illness came on, and he every day grew weaker. Fortunately for Latude, M. Guyonnet, the governor of

neither fire nor candle, how was the black to be obtained? By a series of stratagems he managed to surmount the difficulty. Under pretence of severe toothache, he borrowed from the sergeant who attended him on the platform, a pipe and the articles for lighting it, and he secreted a piece of the tinder. By a simulated fit of colic he got some oil from the doctor. This he put into a pomatum pot, and made a wick from threads drawn out of the sheets. He then made a bow and peg like a drill, and with this and the piece of tinder, by dint of rapid friction he ignited two small bits of dry wood, and lighted his lamp. The first view of the light threw him, he says, into a delirium of joy. The condensed smoke he collected on the bottom of a plate,

completed the
persecutor, he
instructions
another to a
lier de Mehe
Beaumelle b
third to his t
in which he c
to proceed, a
to exert ther
half. The w
he packed up
which he fo
lining of a pa
the packet v
and the carry
person was d
anxious to get
possible. So
elapsed befor
sight of his fri
At length one
signal, descend
and caught th
months and a

did not desert him now. Feigning sickness one morning, he proposed to take charge of the dwelling while the family were at work; during their absence he fled from the cottage, and reached his hiding-place in the wood,—without attracting any notice,—where he had previously left his bundle.

In the afternoon, observing a party of mounted *gendarmes* proceeding towards the village, he felt convinced they were the very same that he had been in such unpleasantly close proximity to at the *auberge*: he was afterwards confirmed in this supposition. Later in the day he saw a man advancing on horseback with a pillion. Reflecting upon the wisest plan to pursue, he suddenly decided how to act, and coming out of his shady recess, asked the rider to give him a lift. His request was willingly complied with. '*Monter, Mademoiselle!*' said the equestrian, and backing the animal, our adventurer was soon seated on the pillion. While conversing, his unsuspecting companion told him as an amusing piece of information, he had just met the *gendarmes*, and they were in search of an English prisoner who had escaped from Verdun! Prudence prompted him not to be too inquisitive, in case it might lead to more awkward consequences. He had ascertained the fact, without doubt, that the party referred to were retracing their steps in pursuit of the fugitive,

and like hounds at fault in the chase, were turning back to find their game.

This circumstance removed considerable uneasiness from his mind, and he now hoped to be able to continue his journey with less risk of being captured. When they had travelled about two leagues he dismounted, wishing him good-night, with many thanks for his politeness, and directed his steps towards a plantation which was some little distance from the road, where, throwing of his woman's garb for that of his own sex, and feeling less apprehensive than he had done for some time, he lifted up his heart in gratitude to God for thus far preserving him from falling into the hands of his enemies; then, sitting down to rest in this tranquil spot, he began considering which would be the safest character to personate on his way to Rotterdam. The female he thought objectionable, as the police might have gained information from the cottagers of his late proceedings, and the pedlar's was equally imprudent; so he resolved to equip himself as a sailor; but, alas! on seeking through his little stock of requisites, he did not possess the necessary additions to make his toilet complete as a jolly tar. At last he decided to try the dress of a labourer seeking harvest work; with a red wig, and a patch on his eye, he was sure it would be difficult for any one to recognise him. After re-

responsibility
of giving him a good apartment,
and obtained for him the privilege
of walking daily for two
hours in the garden. Despair-
ing, as well he might, of being
ever released by his inflexible
enemies, Latude meditated in-
cessantly on the means of escap-
ing. Fifteen months elapsed
before an opportunity occurred,
and then it was brought about
by chance. He was walking
in the garden on a November
afternoon, when a thick fog
suddenly came on. The idea
of turning it to account rushed
into his mind. He was guarded
by two sentries and a sergeant,
who never quitted his side for
an instant; but he determined
to make a bold attempt. By a
violent push of his elbows he
threw off the sentries, then
pushed down the sergeant, and
darted past a third sentry who

sprang
wrenched
violence
down in
jumped
the musk
paces, les
him, and
his liberty

Favour
contrived
park till r
the wall, a
ways to Pa
fuge with
to whom l
packet. T
ters of a h
brun. The
asked was
manner. T
some linen
in the hou
livres which
supplied hi

er he might bend his steps, would be next to impossible. M. de Sartine, who by means of his spies was omniscient. In this emergency he deemed it prudent to conciliate the persecutor; and he accordingly wrote a letter to him, ending in forgiveness for insults received in a moment of madness, promising future silence and submission, and pathetically imploring him to become his protector.

The overture had no result. He tried the influence of various persons, among whom was the Duke of Conti, but everywhere he was met by the prejudice which Sartine had raised against him; and to add to his alarm and vexation, he learned that a strict search was making for him, and that a reward of a hundred crowns was offered for his apprehension. As a last resource, he determined to make a personal appeal to the Duke of Noailles, the first minister, who he then with the court at Fontainebleau. It was mid-December when he set out, the ground covered with ice and snow, the cold was intense. A loaf of bread was his whole stock of provisions; he had no money, and he dared not approach a house, proceed on the road, or travel by day, lest he should be intercepted. In a nightly circuitous journey of more than forty miles, he often fell into ditches, or tore himself in scrambling through the snow. 'I hid myself in a hole,' says he, 'during the whole

of the 16th; and after walking for two successive nights, I arrived on the morning of the 17th at Fontainebleau, worn out by fatigue, hunger, grief, and despair.'

Latude was too soon convinced that there was no chance of escaping from the vengeance of M. de Sartine. As soon as he had announced his arrival to the duke, two officers of the police came to convey him, as they said, to the minister; but their mask was speedily thrown off, and he found that they were to escort him back to Vincennes. They told him that every road had been beset and every vehicle watched to discover him, and they expressed their wonder at his having been able to reach Fontainebleau undetected. 'I now learned,' says he, 'for the first time, that there was no crime so great, or so severely punished, as a complaint against a minister. These exempts quoted to me the case of some deputies from the provinces, who, having been sent a short time before to denounce to the king the exactions of certain intendants, had been arrested and punished as dangerous incendiaries!'

On his reaching Vincennes, he was thrown into a horrible dungeon, barely six feet by six and a half in diameter, which was secured by four iron-plated treble-bolted doors, distant a foot from each other. To aggravate his misery, he was told that he deserved a thousand

passionate sentinel, who was moved by his cries and groans, relieved his heart by informing him that the sergeant was well, and had only been imprisoned.

The kind-hearted governor sometimes visited Latude, but the information which he brought was not consolatory. He had tried to move M. de Sartine, and had found him inflexible. Sartine, however, sent to offer the prisoner his liberty, on condition that he would name the person who held his papers, and he pledged his honour that no harm should come to that person. Latude knew him too well to trust him. He resolutely answered, 'I entered my dungeon an honest man, and I will die rather than leave it a dastard and a knave.'

Into the den where he was, as it were, walled up, no ray of light entered.

Though his proved, he was excluded from all means of intercourse with the prisoners. On his chamber, which each prisoner had, Latude alone was daily allowed himself for a wall was five feet thick, to penetrate it as difficult as what cannot time and force accomplish. Instruments were of a sword and a bucket, which he contrived to secret by dint of twofold labour, he managed the mass of stone was made in a

mise, leading the way through dismal corridors, dimly lit here and there by an oil lamp, until, getting out into the night air, and after going a little farther, he whispered a God-speed to them and a hurried farewell, motioning by a gesture the path to take, and soon disappearing in a contrary direction. Our two fugitives proceeded on until abruptly accosted by a sentinel with the usual '*Qui vive ?*' L'Estrange turned to address his unsophisticated companion, and recollecting at the moment he could not speak a word of correct French, quickly exclaimed, '*C'est mon domestique.*' To their intense relief, the sentry added, '*C'est bon ; passe, mon officier,*' and unfastening the postern, quickly allowed them to pass.

The formidable ramparts of the citadel frowned menacingly in the gloom, increasing the darkness as they hastily strode along. At the termination of them, without further interruptions, they found themselves on the main road, heartily thankful for their good luck so far. Breathing more freely than they had as yet done, they were enabled to converse unreservedly, the elder impressing the young fellow with him to be sure to follow his advice regarding their movements, as so much depended on prudence and forethought. He told him his object was to reach Verdun, a distance of *thirty leagues, where he had many friends and acquaintances, prisoners of war,*

one in particular being Sir Stephen May, to whom he had communicated his intention of effecting his escape from Bitche, requesting him, if he could possibly manage it, to render any assistance in the event of his being compelled to scale the walls of that garrison, every turn of which he knew so well during his lengthened detention there. The greatest drawback now to contend with arose from the want of a *passe-port*, which precluded them from attempting to enter the town without being arrested, or to travel in any public conveyance.

It was June 1811, between nine and ten o'clock P.M., that these two commenced their journey on foot to Verdun. The undertaking was favoured by mild, warm weather; and they calculated that their escape would not be discovered until eight o'clock the next morning, when measures would be immediately taken to follow their track. L'Estrange being the most experienced, decided upon doing as he did before, walking all night long, and resting by day in some hiding-place, from whence they might singly emerge, cautiously to purchase food at unfrequented-looking farm-houses or some village shops. Making the most of their time, they continued steadily to advance on their way, thinking they must have now got forty miles from Bitche. Feeling completely exhausted, unaccustomed to exercise as they had been for

... reached before
 ...
 ... Porto Nuovo
 a sepoy sentry challenged,
 'Who goes there?' on which
 they shrunk back, and concealed
 themselves, turning down on the
 river-side. The river in that
 place was very wide, and being
 near the sea, the tide ran in
 with rapidity. He took, how-
 ever, the boy on his back, as
 he had done before, and bade
 him be sure and hold only by
 his hands, and cast his legs
 behind him; but when they
 came into the breakers, the boy
 was frightened, and clung round
 the captain with his legs so fast
 as almost to sink him. With
 difficulty he struggled with the
 waves, and turning back to the
 shore, found they must inevi-
 tably perish together if he thus
 attempted to proceed. There-

13
 w
 an
 river
 rust
 whi
 boa
 of tl
 of d
 whic
 told
 had
 bar,
 and
 main
 the r
 conv
 The
 down
 thwa
 the s
 posit
 many
 else
 am

times he was on the point of going in quest of him, when voices and the sound of horses' feet in the distance warned him what madness it would be to venture out. Alas ! poor fellow ! that he had been seized by the police there could be little doubt.

Quite unnerved and depressed by what had happened, the perils of his own position weighed more heavily on his mind now, than when shared with by another. He knew his chief chance of safety was to remain perfectly still until darkness set in. He singled out the largest tree, to climb into should he hear any one approaching his place of concealment.

It was with deep feelings of sadness for the fate of his less fortunate comrade, that he started once more on his way, much later than usual, thinking about sixteen miles farther would bring him to the walls of Verdun, where he fully expected to meet Sir Stephen May waiting to render the assistance he had solicited from him to get into the town.

Buoyed up with this hope, he made all the speed he could ; but, on arriving at the wished-for haven, great was his disappointment to find his friend had mistaken the point of rendezvous. Owing to this, he had to stop outside the town all night ; to try and scale the walls without help was the height of folly. Overcome with fatigue and hunger, he continued for a long time in a sort of stupor, until daylight roused him to a deeper sense of

his helpless condition. He was completely at a loss what course to pursue. If he was much longer in his present destitute state, he must perish from hunger ; if he surrendered, the horrors of a dungeon awaited him. . In this desponding mood, his attention was drawn to the approach of some waggons loaded with hay, proceeding towards the entrance gate. Suddenly a new means of deliverance flashed across his brain. His plan was instantly formed, of cautiously drawing near to, and walking by the side of one of them, shaded by its bulky freight from the driver's view. Strange to say, in this simple manner he safely passed the barrier without arresting the notice of the officials employed to demand passports: their usual vigilance being at fault on this occasion. He quickly hurried to the residence of Sir Stephen May, who gave him a hearty welcome, although little expecting his arrival, having given up all hopes of his succeeding to elude the watchfulness of the gendarmes. He related to his friend the history of all the sufferings he had gone through since their last meeting, not forgetting to tell the sad capture of the poor young midshipman the day before.

L'Estrange had now as much as ever to be on his guard to avoid discovery ; for the French government offered large rewards for his apprehension. Strict orders were given to search in every direction to find him.

had an interview with the Prince De Beauveau, to whom he related his woful story. In his memorial he mentioned M. de Sartine; and though he intimates that he said nothing offensive, we may doubt whether he manifested much forbearance. The ministers now gave him peremptory orders to quit Paris; it is obvious that they were acquainted with his memorial, and were irritated by it beyond measure. He had proceeded forty-three leagues on his journey to the south of France, when he was overtaken by an officer of police, who carried him back a prisoner to the capital.

Latude was now taught that hitherto he had not reached the lowest depth of misery; he was doomed to experience 'a bitter change, severer for severe.' Till this time, his companions in suffering had been men with whom it was no disgrace to

with quest-
beries and
mitted, be
numerous
at his prete
'I was con
endure the
ing langua
unprinciple
to breathe
of vice.' It
procure his
den of infam
friends who
from Chare
were silenc
hood that
madman, ar
ated by bei
broken into
of rank, a
terrified her
large sum o
calumny stu
and he wro
to demand
produced n
the inquiry

He was unexpectedly surprised by a mounted piquet of the enemy, who, upon observing him, caused their trumpeter to blow the charge; his horse became instantly unmanageable, the well-known martial sound completely fascinated the animal, so that all his efforts to spur him on proved fruitless. From this unlucky event he was surrounded and made prisoner. The officer in command coming up at the moment in full gallop, made a cut at him with his sabre, which, however, L'Estrange dexterously parried, and then forced him to surrender. The lieutenant was now taken under escort to Verdun, in the east of France, a station selected by their government for English prisoners of war. The journey occupied some time, and was tedious and fatiguing. He arrived at his destination in March 1809, and was detained for a considerable period at that place on parole.

At first he became reconciled in a measure to his position, in consequence of the hospitality evinced by the French residents at Verdun to the English prisoners. Balls and parties succeeded each other, and a variety of amusements introduced, to all of which they were invited. At a *bal masqué* L'Estrange appeared in female costume, where the following adventure occurred to him, which unfortunately resulted in a duel, and he was severely wounded. His partner in the dance, a naval

officer of the British service, was not aware of the deception; his attentions being encouraged, a flirtation ensued, which gave no little amusement to those in the secret. During the course of the evening, the officer in question discovered the imposition; but instead of taking it in good part, his anger was aroused. An apology was freely offered, and every exertion made by friends on both sides to subdue his resentment. All their efforts were unavailing; nothing would satisfy him but a hostile meeting, which accordingly took place the next morning. L'Estrange fired in the air; his opponent's shot, passing through his right side, seriously wounded him; but he ultimately made a perfect recovery. His adversary expressed deep regret for what had happened, and was particularly kind to him during his illness. They afterwards became great friends.

This incident created no little sensation in the various circles of Verdun. The police were much censured on account of the duel, and the authorities dismissed some from office; this naturally gave rise to increased animosity towards the English. Some time after the duel, he had a disagreement with a tradesman, who exacted payment of his bill over again, the receipt for which could not at first be found amongst L'Estrange's papers. Refusing to wait till further search had been made, the man hurried to the prefect to lodge a com-

to deliver myself from the myriads of these noxious animals that assailed me at once ; the dreadful irritation made me tear my flesh with my teeth and nails, until my whole body became covered with ulcers ; insects generated in the wounds, and literally devoured me alive. It was impossible to sleep : I was driven mad with agony, my sufferings were drawing to a close, and death in its most horrid shape awaited me.'

Gloomy as appearances were, the dawn of a brighter day was at hand. A providential occurrence, which seemed calculated to destroy his last hope, was the cause of his redemption. In 1781, the President de Gourgue visited the Bicêtre, heard the story of Latude, desired that the captive would draw up a memorial, and promised to exert himself in his behalf. Latude wrote the memorial, and entrusted it to a careless

was shocked
protracted
prisoner
After she
the memor
participate
ried it to th
magistrate
by the fals
tive was a
lunatic, and
desist from
be fruitless
however, w
sense and
believe tha
mad ; she
morial att
perceive in
disordered
firmly convi
victim of p
resolved to
and facultie
Never, perh
of benevol
played as by

never paused for a moment from the pursuit of her object, never uttered a sentence of regret that she had engaged in it. Her husband, too, though less personally active, has the merit of having entirely coincided with her in opinion, and aided her as far as he had the power.

It is delightful to know that her noble labours were crowned with success. Her toils, and the result of them, are thus summed up by Latude, who has also narrated them at great length: 'Being thoroughly convinced of my innocence, she resolved to attempt my liberation; she succeeded, after occupying three years in unparalleled efforts and unwearied perseverance. Every feeling heart will be deeply moved at the recital of the means she employed, and the difficulties she surmounted. Without relations, friends, fortune, or assistance, she undertook everything, and shrank from no danger and no fatigue. She penetrated to the levées of ministers, and forced her way to the presence of the great; she spoke with the natural eloquence of truth, and falsehood fled before her words. They excited her hopes and extinguished them, received her with kindness and repulsed her rudely; she reiterated her petitions, and returned a hundred times to the attack, emboldened by defeat itself. The friends her virtues had created trembled for her liberty, even for her life. She resisted all their entreaties, dis-

regarded their remonstrances, and continued to plead the cause of humanity. When seven months pregnant, she went on foot to Versailles, in the midst of winter; she returned home, exhausted with fatigue, and worn out with disappointment; she worked more than half the night to obtain subsistence for the following day, and then repaired again to Versailles. At the expiration of eighteen months she visited me in my dungeon, and communicated her efforts and her hopes. For the first time I saw my generous protectress; I became acquainted with her exertions, and I poured forth my gratitude in her presence. She redoubled her anxiety, and resolved to brave everything. Often on the same day she has gone to Montmartre to visit her infant, which was placed there at nurse, and then came to the Bicêtre to console me and inform me of her progress. At last, after three years, she triumphed, and procured my liberty.'

In the first instance, the boon of liberty could not be said to be more than half granted, Latude being ordered to fix his abode at Montagnac, and not to leave the town without the permission of the police officer of the district. As his fortune was entirely lost, a miserable pension of four hundred livres (about £16) was assigned for his subsistence. By the renewed exertions of Madame Legros, however, the decree of exile

the dreadful irritation made me
tear my flesh with my teeth and
nails, until my whole body be-
came covered with ulcers; in-
sects generated in the wounds,
and literally devoured me alive.
It was impossible to sleep: I
was driven mad with agony. my
sufferings were drawing to a
close, and death in its most
horrid shape awaited me.

Gloomy as appearances were,
the dawn of a brighter day was
at hand. A providential occur-
rence, which seemed calculated
to destroy his last hope, was
the cause of his redemption. In
1751, the President de Gourgue
visited the Bicêtre, heard the
story of Latude, desired that the
captive would draw up a me-
morial, and promised to exert
himself in his behalf. Latude
wrote the memorial, and en-

After
the
part
ried
mag
by
tive
lun:
des
be
hov
sen
bel
ma
mo
per
dis
firm
vic
res
anc
Ne
of
pla

CHAPTER IX.

HOW COUNT LAVALETTE ESCAPED FROM THE CONCIERGERIE.

'ON the 18th of June 1815,' says Lavalette in his *Memoirs*, 'I was at dinner with my wife and a friend, when an officer came to request me to speak to Monsieur de Cayes, the prefect of police. I was set down by a hackney coach, with two or three officers of police mounted behind it for footmen, in the outer office of the prefecture, where for some time (the turnkey being busy assigning lodgings to various new-comers) nobody took any notice of me; and seeing among them a gentleman long secretary to the Duke de Rovigo, whom I knew well, looking very sad and sorrowful at seeing me there, I naturally experienced a reciprocal feeling, and was condoling with him on his misfortune, when, suddenly averting his head as he pointed to me, and rushing out of the place, he said to the turnkey, "Take that gentleman to No. 17." "Yonder goes a man who has turned his coat quickly!" thought I, as, a little ashamed of my blunder, I followed my conductor.

'It was a filthy garret, whose only window was in the roof, at a height of twelve feet, my only means of opening which was by an iron bar, so heavy that I was never able to move it a single notch. I suppose every one's first impulse on being put in prison, after the surprise

is over, is to be very angry, and I launched out in pretty strong invectives against the head of the establishment for not having condescended to see one whom he had sent for to speak with him. I was not yet *au fait* as to the code of politeness of prefects of police. There being no bell, I had to wait for three hours till the arrival of the jailor, who brought my sorry prison dinner, and I could not help asking him who were my next neighbours, as I had seen through the keyhole men carrying bottles and all the apparatus of a feast. "They are two aides-de-camp of General Labedoyère," said he. "What!" I exclaimed, "is he then arrested?" "I believe so," was the reply. Little did I then know that these two wretches, who had denounced their late commander, when that ill-advised young man insisted on revisiting Paris and his family, before proceeding to take refuge in America, were thus carousing with the rewards of their treachery.

'Towards ten at night I was sent for to go down to the chief of the division, whose business it was to interrogate me; and as an examination was a relief from my own thoughts, I readily obeyed. The functionary, after a few pages of questions and answers, amused himself by telling me anecdotes, almost too

being separated by several miles from the enemy's boats when the chase began. The enemy continued firing every now and then, the shots fortunately only whistling harmlessly in the air. Providentially the wind lulled, and a dead calm set in. His servant, by this time becoming more reconciled to his position, thinking it probably wisest to make the best of a bad bargain, took to the oars, and they both pulled lustily as for their lives.

It was nearly dusk ere they lost sight of the persevering *chasse-marées*. All night they continued in this way, now rowing, now resting to recruit their weary frames. But towards morning, the wind freshening, L'Estrange shaped his course by compass for the Basque Roads, where he knew the British fleet was at anchor on the look-out for the enemy. Thus the day passed anxiously on. However, about noon his fondest hopes were realized by coming in sight of the English squadron. With boundless joy, and fervent thanks to God for his great mercies, he bore direct for them. As he approached the fleet, a boat was despatched from the flag-ship, with orders to board and search the stranger. During this process, L'Estrange lost but little time in apprising the crew that he was an English officer, who had escaped from *France, where he had been more than three years a prisoner.* Upon hearing this, the honest

sailors welcomed him with loud and hearty cheers.

In this rapturous manner he was conducted to the flag-ship, amidst the cheers of the gallant tars. When he came to the quarter-deck, the cheers and hurrahs were repeated by all the officers and seamen on board each vessel. He was then presented to the admiral, who received him with the utmost kindness, had a cabin prepared for his accommodation, providing him with every comfort. He related the outlines of his adventures to the admiral, who listened to his story with profound attention, and afterwards highly complimented him on his ability and tact in making such a remarkable escape. It would be difficult to describe his feelings of happiness in finding himself at last safely on board a British man-of-war. After all the hardships and difficulties he had gone through, it graciously pleased the Almighty to crown his efforts in the end with success. Before many days elapsed he was landed at Plymouth, where the mayor and corporation of that borough gave him a public dinner, on which occasion his health was drunk with all the honours. He proceeded from Plymouth forthwith to London, and obtained an interview with His Royal Highness the Duke of York, who gave him a most gratifying reception. — *By permission, from 'Recollections of Sir George L'Estrange.'*

CHAPTER IX.

HOW COUNT LAVALETTE ESCAPED FROM THE CONCIERGERIE.

'ON the 18th of June 1815,' says Lavalette in his *Memoirs*, 'I was at dinner with my wife and a friend, when an officer came to request me to speak to Monsieur de Cayes, the prefect of police. I was set down by a hackney coach, with two or three officers of police mounted behind it for footmen, in the outer office of the prefecture, where for some time (the turnkey being busy assigning lodgings to various new-comers) nobody took any notice of me; and seeing among them a gentleman long secretary to the Duke de Rovigo, whom I knew well, looking very sad and sorrowful at seeing me there, I naturally experienced a reciprocal feeling, and was condoling with him on his misfortune, when, suddenly averting his head as he pointed to me, and rushing out of the place, he said to the turnkey, "Take that gentleman to No. 17." "Yonder goes a man who has turned his coat quickly!" thought I, as, a little ashamed of my blunder, I followed my conductor.

'It was a filthy garret, whose only window was in the roof, at a height of twelve feet, my only means of opening which was by an iron bar, so heavy that I was never able to move it a single notch. I suppose every one's first impulse on being put in prison, after the surprise

is over, is to be very angry, and I launched out in pretty strong invectives against the head of the establishment for not having condescended to see one whom he had sent for to speak with him. I was not yet *au fait* as to the code of politeness of prefects of police. There being no bell, I had to wait for three hours till the arrival of the jailor, who brought my sorry prison dinner, and I could not help asking him who were my next neighbours, as I had seen through the keyhole men carrying bottles and all the apparatus of a feast. "They are two aides-de-camp of General Labedoyère," said he. "What!" I exclaimed, "is he then arrested?" "I believe so," was the reply. Little did I then know that these two wretches, who had denounced their late commander, when that ill-advised young man insisted on revisiting Paris and his family, before proceeding to take refuge in America, were thus carousing with the rewards of their treachery.

'Towards ten at night I was sent for to go down to the chief of the division, whose business it was to interrogate me; and as an examination was a relief from my own thoughts, I readily obeyed. The functionary, after a few pages of questions and answers, amused himself by telling me anecdotes, almost too

inflammatory illness, to which I owed my removal and the hastening on of my trial, lest I should escape by a natural death the one intended for me.

'On the 24th of July I was abruptly put in a coach, and transferred to the too famous *Conciergerie*, of the very existence of whose dungeons, beneath the noble halls of the *Palais de Justice*, many even in Paris have not an idea. A tall and insolent turnkey, after reading aloud my description, marshalled me along a dark passage to my new abode. It was a long narrow slip of a place, having at one end a window so overhung by *jalousies* as to afford one a glimpse of about a foot square of sky, and its bare walls blackened with prisoners' names and effusions of despair. A wretched pallet

of taking me up the hole, he led me to a floor room, which had a fire-place, and a door into a smaller cell from that of the pretty high wall. He put you here," said he, "because Labedoyère was in the door; but he is in the *Abbaye*." Next day to show me the cell was still more incensed that I had left, the poor fellow had no total solitude for without books or recreation, seeing only twice in the hours, and despite the narrowness of his even such exercise its length would be

'I too was to

ladders, which these tid-
 were not likely to render
 ler, were broken at all
 by the vicinity to my cell
 huge iron door, the in-
 at opening and shutting of
 , when the sentries were
 ing, shook me in my bed,
 often made me start up in
 ; while the cold and
 obliged me, even at mid-
 er, to keep a fire night
 lay.

ime in prison passes slowly,
 to the evils of my own
 ion were added deep anxie-
 about my wife, whom I
 von upon to promise not
 me and see me till after
 recovery, well knowing the
 view would be enough to
 er. On her account and
 of my family, I succeeded
 ersuading myself that I
 d get off with a few years'
 sonment, during which I
 watch over and occasion-
 ee them; and though the
 of the scaffold would in-
 , it was as yet but as a
 threat, scarce likely, I
 red myself, to be realized.
 a such thoughts became
 ppressive, I escaped from
 by mentally following the
 which bore Napoleon over
 ide waters to St Helena.

ne of the worst features of
 omicile was the vicinity to
 ght opposite, though sepa-
 by a wall, of the women's
 , whence, from eight in the
 ing till seven at night,
 t a perfect torrent of stun-
 xilation, couched in the

lowest and coarsest and most
 depraved terms to be found in
 our own or any language, and
 sounds of riot, which the jailors
 were often obliged to rush in to
 quell. On this same court, be
 it remembered, had looked out
 the two windows of the prison
 of the unfortunate Queen Marie
 Antoinette! This chamber,
 which I had daily to pass
 through during my sojourn, was
 a large waste place, divided by
 a sort of pillar forming two
 arches, with a brick floor, whose
 obsolete designs indicated ex-
 treme antiquity. How often
 did I walk up and down this
 prison when about to become a
 prey to despondency! How
 often did I blush there for com-
 plaining of a lot which, be it
 what it might, could not trans-
 cend in horror that endured
 by a queen of France!

'I had denied myself since my
 imprisonment the visits of my
 daughter, now nearly fourteen,
 from the dread of deepening her
 sorrows by the sad realities of a
 dungeon. But my wife having
 sent her to receive my blessing
 on the eve of her first com-
 munion, it was in vain that I
 strove to keep within bounds my
 long repressed affections. On
 seeing before me my only child,
 adorned with all the charms of
 youth, first drowned in tears in
 my arms, and then stretched in
 a deep swoon at my feet, my
 heart was torn with inexpressible
 parental anguish, and for the
 first time awakened to the full
 extent of my misfortunes. I was

wholly unable to control my grief; my silent tears mingled with the sobs of my child; and when I laid my hands on her head, the words of blessing died away on my lips.

'This scene, as I have said, first roused me to a true sense of my situation, and my kind and zealous legal defenders drew aside, in their consultations, a part at least of the veil which had hitherto blinded me to it. My chief adviser, Monsieur Tripier, a clear, logical-headed man, prepared me for my defence by first attacking me on every vulnerable point of my case. My answers appeared to him candid and straightforward, but insufficient to secure my acquittal. Yet up to the eve of my sentence, his opinion was, that I should be condemned to five years' imprisonment for my unauthorized resumption of office. What, however, engrossed far more of my thoughts than even my trial, was the situation of my wife, whose newborn infant had been taken from her suddenly, after an illness of a few short hours. My anxieties on her account, in the event of my condemnation, grew quite dreadful,—the calamities attendant on revolutions having deprived her of nearly all her near relations. Her father indeed survived, and had returned to France, but bringing with him a second wife and family; and residing, as he did, at a distance from Paris, could offer little in *the way of present protection.*

'It was amid these dismal reflections that my trial began, the first day of which was marked by animosity, and was stormy and unfavourable; though, towards its close, prejudices seemed giving way. On the second, matters appeared taking a more favourable turn. Just as the jury, about six in the evening, were going to retire to consider their verdict, a question arose, on which its fate turned, between my counsel and that for the crown, as to the order of putting the questions—"Was I guilty of conspiracy, or only of usurpation of power?" If put in this order, and separately, no act of conspiracy having been proved, the capital offence and consequent penalty fell to the ground, and the misdemeanour, carrying imprisonment, alone remained. But this was not the aim of my prosecutors, and they prevailed to have the questions joined in one, thus working partly on the timidity and partly on the humanity of the jury, by assuring them that an example of clemency was alone now wanted by the government, and the opportunity of pardoning in my person the third great state offender.

'During the deliberation I was taken back to prison, and a kind young friend volunteered to keep me company. After a very melancholy dinner, wishing to keep up his hopes, though my own were at an end, I proposed to him our usual game at chess, and won it, contrary to my cus-

aid he. "At four o'clock in the afternoon, generally?" asked he. "Sometimes in the morning," he replied, hastily running out, without even remembering to shut the door behind him. A female turnkey from the woman's ward happening to pass by, and observing this, slipped into my room, and passionately kissing my cross of the legion of honour, rushed out again drowned in tears; and thus it was to a woman I had scarcely seen, and never spoken to, I owed the certain knowledge of my impending fate.

'My wife came as usual at six o'clock to dine with me, accompanied by a female relation. When we were alone, she said, "There no longer remains hope for us, but in one plan, which I am going to propose. You must leave this at eight o'clock in my clothes, along with my cousin, and go in my sedan-chair to such a street; Monsieur Baudus will have a cabriolet in waiting, to conduct you to a retreat he has secured for you, where you will remain in safety till you can quit the country." I listened and looked at her in silence. Her voice was so firm, and her aspect so calm, she seemed so persuaded of success, that I hesitated to reply; and yet her project appeared to me sheer madness, and I was obliged at last to tell her so. At the first word she interrupted me. "No objections," said she. "Your death will be mine; so do not reject

my proposal. My conviction of its success is deep, for God, I feel, sustains me." In vain did I urge the innumerable jailors who surrounded her every night when she left, the turnkey who always handed her to her chair, the impossibility of so disguising myself as to deceive them, and above all, my invincible reluctance to leave her in the hands of miscreants who, in their first rage at my escape, might actually maltreat her. I was forced to leave off, her increasing paleness and agitation precluding all remonstrance. I could only pacify her by a seeming consent, remarking, however, that if success could be looked for in such a wild scheme, it could only be by stationing the cabriolet much nearer to the prison, as in course of nearly an hour's journey, a sedan-chair could not fail to be overtaken, nor could I perform the distance on foot in woman's garb without similar danger. These considerations induced her to defer till next day—the last I had to call my own—the execution of her plan; and exacting my solemn promise then to make the attempt, she left me, in some degree quieted and comforted.

'The more I reflected on the scheme suggested for my escape by my wife, the more hopeless did it appear. Not only was she taller than myself, but her figure was slight and agile; while I, greatly as confinement had reduced me, was still too much the reverse for the jailors, who

word. At length she slowly came to herself, and I drew from her the particulars of her interview with the king. For her sake, and that of my child, I assented to appeal, as I had the right of doing, against my sentence to the Court of Cassation, though my first impulse had been to shrink from the torturing suspense of the month, perhaps, which might intervene before its decision. During this period I strove to familiarize myself, by means of closely interrogating the jailors, with all the horrible minutiae of the scaffold and its preliminaries; and though at first the very marrow in my bones seemed frozen at the cold, circumstantial recitals, by degrees I got wonderfully hardened, and could listen without blenching. The mode of execution alone revolted and

extinction of all the royal clemency, and actually led to court, by introducing her once more to the monarch. Repulsed in all her attempts, she remained sitting hour on the steps of the court, without other resources or resources to bestow on her a token of recognition; and at last, worn out in body and deprived of all hope, she returned, broken, to my dungeon.

‘My hours, I literally numbered; eight remaining days allowed for me to apply for a pardon; my friends were in prison; the jailors then

now called back her daughter. "Listen well, my child," said she, "to what I am going to say, as I shall ask you to repeat it. I shall leave this evening at seven instead of eight o'clock. Keep behind me in going out, as you know the doors are narrow ; but when we come into the outer hall, take care to be on my left, the side the turnkey comes on to hand me out, which I hate. When we are beyond the grating, and going up the outer stairs, then come to my right, that the odious gendarmes at the guard-house may not come and stare under my bonnet, as they always try to do. Do you understand me?" The dear child rehearsed her lesson faithfully.

'One or two friends who had dropped in with the kindest intentions, but whose emotions would have been fatal to the firmness of the parties, had to be got rid of ere dinner was served ; and more perplexing still, a poor old nurse of Madame Lavalette's, who had been left waiting outside, but whom grief and the heat of the stove had upset, was to be allowed to sit in the room, and yet be kept in ignorance of the scheme, which the slightest alarm or indiscretion on her part might have betrayed. This dinner, which might prove my last upon earth, was very frightful. The morsels stuck in our throats, and not a word was exchanged. Three-quarters past six at length struck, and my wife rang for the faith-

ful valet, whose services I had dispensed with, that he might attend her. She spoke a few words to him in a whisper, and then added aloud, "Take care that the chairmen are at hand ; I am just coming." And when he was gone, turning to me, "Now you must be dressed."

'For want of a dressing-room, I had luckily made them place a large screen in my apartment, behind which we now retired, and while my dear wife made my toilet, with equal quickness and dexterity she kept saying, "Mind you stoop your head at the doors ; be sure and walk slowly through the hall, like a person worn out with suffering." In three minutes my disguise was complete, and we were back into the room ; and Emilie said to her daughter, "What do you think of your papa?" An incredulous smile was the poor child's only answer. "But seriously, my dear, will he do?" "Not very badly," said she on seeing me walk a few steps before her ; but her head sank on her breast, and her dejected tone betrayed her apprehensions. Not a word more was spoken till I was close to the door. I then said to Emilie, "The turnkey looks in every evening as soon as he has seen you off. Take care and remain until then behind the screen, and make a noise by moving about some of the things. He will conclude all right, and give me the few minutes indispensable for my getting clear away." She un-

my wife had put on over her dress a marino pelisse, richly lined with fur, which she used to wear in coming home from balls and had brought in her bag a black silk petticoat. Having sent the child out of hearing, she said to me rapidly in a whisper, "These will suffice to disguise you perfectly. I should have wished to add a veil, but having unfortunately not been in the habit of wearing one, it is out of the question now. Be sure, before going into the outer room, to draw on these gloves and put my handkerchief to your face. Walk very slowly, leaning on Josephine, and take care to stoop as you go out at these low doors, for if they should catch the feathers of your bonnet, all would be lost. The jailors will be as usual in the ante-room, and remember the turnkey always binds me out. The chair to-day will be drawn up close to the staircase. Monsieur Baudus will meet you very soon, and point out your hiding-place. God guide and protect you, my dearest husband! But oh! be sure and mind my directions, and keep calm! Give me your hand; I wish to feel your pulse. Now feel mine, and see how quietly it beats; there is not the slightest quickness. And above all, no giving way to our feelings; we should be ruined." I could not, however, forbear giving her my wedding ring, on the pretext that, if stopped, it might help to betray me. She

As for myself, she looked with a deep sigh of exhaustion. "I feel I have just strength left for four-and-twenty hours, and not one moment longer. I am so thoroughly worn out!" Poor thing! Her hours of energy and consciousness were indeed numbered! I had gone through a sad scene in leave-taking, as I thought, of my daughter, when, to my surprise, she reappeared along with her mother. "I have bethought me," said she, "that you had better have our child to accompany you. She will do most punctually as I desire."

My wife had put on over her dress a marino pelisse, richly lined with fur, which she used to wear in coming home from balls and had brought in her bag a black silk petticoat. Having sent the child out of hearing, she said to me rapidly in a whisper, "These will suffice to disguise you perfectly. I should have wished to add a veil, but having unfortunately not been in the habit of wearing one, it is out of the question now. Be sure, before going into the outer room, to draw on these gloves and put my handkerchief to your face. Walk very slowly, leaning on Josephine, and take care to stoop as you go out at these low doors, for if they should catch the feathers of your bonnet, all would be lost. The jailors will be as usual in the ante-room, and remember the turnkey always binds me out. The chair to-day will be drawn up close to the staircase. Monsieur Baudus will meet you very soon, and point out your hiding-place. God guide and protect you, my dearest husband! But oh! be sure and mind my directions, and keep calm! Give me your hand; I wish to feel your pulse. Now feel mine, and see how quietly it beats; there is not the slightest quickness. And above all, no giving way to our feelings; we should be ruined." I could not, however, forbear giving her my wedding ring, on the pretext that, if stopped, it might help to betray me. She

o make to the president." out, and he pointed to a let which stood a short ff down a little dark street. ing into it, and the driver o me, "Hand me my whip." ght it in vain ; it had fallen. er mind," said my com- n, giving the reins a shake, set off the horses at a trot. As I passed I caught of my daughter Josephine ing on the quay, with her : joined, praying for me all her soul before getting he chair ; which, as I had cted, was quickly overtaken, inding her only in it, was ed to proceed.

ginning to breathe at length, we had driven a long way, time to look at my coach- and what was my astonish- to recognise the Count de senon, whom I little thought eing in that capacity. "Is ou?" asked I in unfeigned ise. "Yes ; and you have our back four well-loaded s, which I hope you will a case of need." "Not I, d ; I have no mind to in- you in ruin." "Well, then, pose I must show you the ple, and woe to whoever pts to stop us !" We drove the Boulevard Neuf, where opped, and I displayed my kerchief, as agreed, on the of the cab ; having, by the got rid of all my female hernalia, and slipped on a n's frock, with a round laced hat. Monsieur Baudus joined us. I took leave of

the good count, and modestly followed in the wake of my new master. It was now past eight, the rain fell in torrents, the night was dark, and nothing could be more lonely than this part of the town. It was with the greatest difficulty I could keep pace with Monsieur Baudus before I lost one of my shoes, which did not mend matters. We met several gendarmes at full gallop, little aware that he whom they were probably in quest of was so near them ! At length, after an hour's march, worn out with fatigue, and with one foot bare, we came to a large mansion. "I am going in here," said Monsieur Baudus ; "and while I engage the porter in conversation, slip into the courtyard. You will find a staircase on the left ; go up it to the highest storey. At the end of a dark passage to the right is a pile of firewood ; stand behind it, and wait." I grew dizzy, and almost sank on seeing Monsieur Baudus knock at the very door of the minister for foreign affairs, the Duke de Richelieu ! But while the porter let him in, I passed on quickly. "Where is that man going?" cried the porter. "Oh, 'tis only my servant." I found the staircase and everything else as directed, and was no sooner on the appointed spot than I heard the rustling of a gown. My arm was gently taken ; I was pushed into a room, and the door closed upon me.

'The room was rendered faintly visible by a fire in a

derstood me ; and as I put forth my hand to ring the bell, I gently pressed her arm : we exchanged looks : " Adieu ! " said she, lifting up her eyes to heaven. Had we ventured on an embrace, all would have been lost.

'The jailor's step was now heard. Emilie sprang behind the screen—the door opened : I passed out first, next my daughter, then the old nurse. On coming to the door leading from the passage to the outer room, I had at the same time to lift my foot and stoop my head, to prevent the catching of my feathers—no easy matter, but I succeeded ; and had now to face in this large room a file of five seated jailors ranged along the wall. I held my handkerchief to my eyes, of course, and expected my daughter to come, as directed, on my left ; but in her flurry the poor child took the right, thus leaving the jailor at liberty to hand me out as usual. He laid his hand on my arm, evidently much moved, and said, " You leave early to-night, Madame ? " It has been said that my child and I gave way to screams and sobs. So far from that, we dared not so much as indulge in a sigh. At length I got to the farther end, where, night and day, sat a jailor in a large arm-chair, in a space sufficiently contracted to allow him to place his two hands on the keys of two doors,—one an iron grating, the other, the outer one, called the first wicket. *This man* looked at me, but did

not open. I had to put my hand through the bars to hurry him. At length he turned his two keys, and we were out ! And now, recollecting herself, my daughter took my right arm. We had twelve steps of a stair to go up to get at the court where the chair waited ; and at the foot of them was the guard-house, where twenty soldiers, with an officer at their head, stood within three steps of me, to see Madame Lavalette pass ! My foot was at length on the last step, and I got into the sedan, which was close by. But not a chairman was there—not a servant ! only my daughter and the old woman standing beside it, and a sentry not six feet off, immovable on his post, staring at me. My first surprise was giving way to violent agitation. I felt my eyes fixed like a basilisk's on that sentry's musket, which, at the smallest noise or difficulty, I should certainly have sprung on, and used it against any one who offered to take me. This dreadful suspense may have lasted some two minutes, which to me appeared the length of a night. At length I heard the voice of Bonneville, my valet, whispering to me, " One of the bearers has failed me, but I have found another."

'I then felt myself caught up, the chair crossed the court, and we went down a street or two. When it was set down, the door opened, and my friend Baudus, offering me his arm, said aloud, " Madame, you know you have a

the general learned that the fugitive was Lavalette, the dread of Siberia became so overpowering, that he drew back. The next project was, that he should join a Bavarian battalion, which was about to leave France ; and as he was related by marriage to the King of Bavaria, the project appeared feasible, till it was discovered that the police, conceiving this might be attempted, kept so close a watch upon every movement of the battalion and its officers, that all correspondence with them was impracticable.

The prospect was now beginning to look gloomy. Fortunately, at the moment when any longer delay might have been fatal, the desired assistance was found. The gratification of snatching the victim from impending death was reserved for three British subjects ; and it rather singularly happened that a native of each of the three kingdoms bore a part in the enterprise. There were in France at this time many British, not a few of whom were officers. Among these were Major-General Sir Robert Wilson, Captain Hutchinson, and Mr. Bruce, a Scotch gentleman of fortune. Bruce was the person to whom a friend of Lavalette appealed, and he consulted Sir Robert on the subject, who readily promised to lend his aid. Bruce would gladly have been one of the party, but it was desirable that the persons who accompanied

the fugitive should be military men. Captain Hutchinson was, in consequence, selected to be the coadjutor of Sir Robert, another officer, named Allister, not being able to obtain leave of absence. He, however, had no share in the preliminary proceedings.

It was arranged that Lavalette should travel as an English military officer, under the name of Colonel Losack. Wilson was to assume that of General Wallis. The first step was to obtain passports for these two individuals, and this was accomplished without difficulty. They were to pass the barriers of the city in Bruce's cabriolet, and Hutchinson was to ride on horseback by the side of the vehicle, talking to them, as far as Compiègne, where Wilson's travelling carriage was to meet them. Wilson's servant was also to follow the cabriolet on his master's horse. In case any stoppage should unfortunately happen, his master and Lavalette were to mount the two horses, and make the best of their way onward. The road to the Netherlands by the way of Cambray and Valenciennes being in possession of the British army, that route was chosen as being likely to offer the fewest obstacles to their journey.

Instructions with regard to his dress were now given to Lavalette. A brown wig, no mustachios, a chin shaved very clean, and a hat with a white feather, were to disguise his face.

My chambers were provided for
by a bottle of excellent claret,
several volumes of Molière and
Rabelais and a basket filled with
the materials of a gentleman's
dressing-box.

While Lafayette was racking
his brains with conjecture as
to the reason of his being un-
der the roof of the minister for
foreign affairs, M. Brodus re-
turned, and soon solved the
enigma. He was now under
the protection of M. Bresson,
the treasurer for the foreign de-
partment. Bresson was one of
the members of the Convention
who, in 1793, spoke and voted
against the execution of Louis
xvi. He was consequently out-
lawed, and, with his wife, found
a safe retreat.

sea
hid
one
son
the
seve
shou
knew
were
cross
they
be sti
all hi
watch
getting
upon
that
female
a seap
convey
glers.

the general learned that the fugitive was Lavalette, the dread of Siberia became so overpowering, that he drew back. The next project was, that he should join a Bavarian battalion, which was about to leave France; and as he was related by marriage to the King of Bavaria, the project appeared feasible, till it was discovered that the police, conceiving this might be attempted, kept so close a watch upon every movement of the battalion and its officers, that all correspondence with them was impracticable.

The prospect was now beginning to look gloomy. Fortunately, at the moment when any longer delay might have been fatal, the desired assistance was found. The gratification of snatching the victim from impending death was reserved for three British subjects; and it rather singularly happened that a native of each of the three kingdoms bore a part in the enterprise. There were in France at this time many British, not a few of whom were officers. Among these were Major-General Sir Robert Wilson, Captain Hutchinson, and Mr. Bruce, a Scotch gentleman of fortune. Bruce was the person to whom a friend of Lavalette appealed, and he consulted Sir Robert on the subject, who readily promised to lend his aid. Bruce would gladly have been one of the party, but it was desirable that the persons who accompanied

the fugitive should be military men. Captain Hutchinson was, in consequence, selected to be the coadjutor of Sir Robert, another officer, named Allister, not being able to obtain leave of absence. He, however, had no share in the preliminary proceedings.

It was arranged that Lavalette should travel as an English military officer, under the name of Colonel Losack. Wilson was to assume that of General Wallis. The first step was to obtain passports for these two individuals, and this was accomplished without difficulty. They were to pass the barriers of the city in Bruce's cabriolet, and Hutchinson was to ride on horseback by the side of the vehicle, talking to them, as far as Compiègne, where Wilson's travelling carriage was to meet them. Wilson's servant was also to follow the cabriolet on his master's horse. In case any stoppage should unfortunately happen, his master and Lavalette were to mount the two horses, and make the best of their way onward. The road to the Netherlands by the way of Cambray and Valenciennes being in possession of the British army, that route was chosen as being likely to offer the fewest obstacles to their journey.

Instructions with regard to his dress were now given to Lavalette. A brown wig, no mustachios, a chin shaved very clean, and a hat with a white feather, were to disguise his face.

officer met them in the suburbs, and conducted them to the inn which had been fixed upon. While Lavalette was waiting at this inn, a traveller for a mercantile house entered into conversation with him, and narrated in the most ridiculous style the whole story of his hearer's escape from prison. In the evening the carriage came, Hutchinson took his leave, and Sir Robert and Lavalette proceeded on their way. They met no obstruction till they reached Cambray, where they were retarded for three hours by the obstinacy of an English sentry, who would not call the gatekeeper, he having received no order to do so. Valenciennes was their last stage on French ground, and that they reached about seven o'clock the next morning. There they were thrice examined with extreme strictness, but the firmness and presence of mind of Sir Robert carried them triumphantly through their difficulties. They were now on the Brussels road, and speedily reaching the frontier, were soon on Belgian territory. Shortly after they arrived at Mons, where, after furnishing Lavalette with letters of recommendation, Sir Robert bade him farewell, and returned to Paris.

Leaving Lavalette for a while, let us return to the Conciergerie, and see how fared his noble-minded wife. His late prisoner had scarcely passed the outer door before the jailor went into the room ; but *he retired on*

hearing some one behind the screen. In five minutes he went back, and this time, though he heard the same noise, he removed one side of the screen. A loud exclamation burst from him at the sight of Madame Lavalette, and he ran towards the door. She ran after him, caught hold of his coat, and said, 'Wait a minute ; let my husband get off !' He cried out in a fury, 'You will ruin me, Madame !' burst from her, leaving a piece of his coat in her tenacious grasp, and darted into the street, tearing his hair, and calling out as he hurried towards the prefect's abode, 'The prisoner has escaped ! the prisoner has escaped !' Gendarmes and turnkeys were instantly in pursuit in all directions. In the course of the night a systematic search was made ; every house inhabited by a friend or acquaintance of the fugitive, and even every person with whom his office could have given him the slightest connection, was subjected to a rigorous examination. She, meanwhile, was exposed to the foulest abuse from the turnkeys, who did not fail also to assure her that her husband must speedily be retaken. Their abuse was suspended by the arrival of the attorney-general to interrogate her. He questioned the poor lady severely, but could draw nothing from her, and he reproached her for her conduct. By order of this minister of justice, she was treated with extreme harshness.

hearing the clamours and the brutal and obscene discourse of the refuse of the capital. No one except a female turnkey was allowed to come near her; no letters were admitted, and none were allowed to be sent by her. Her feelings were in perpetual agitation, especially at night; for when the sentries were relieved, she always imagined that it was her husband they were bringing back. For five-and-twenty days and nights she never slept. At the expiration of six weeks some little remains of shame induced her persecutors to set her free. But they had consummated their revenge; they had not, indeed, destroyed the body of their victim; they had only destroyed her mind.

From Mons, Lavalette proceeded to Germany, his passage through which country was

wife who had saved her from whom he long separated, saw without manifesting emotion; she knew her reason was gone; he had been in this state since his departure. At the time of her first fall, a lamentable condition of years elapsed before he recovered her intelligence; then she was still in a state of deep melancholy. But even in her worst moods she was always mild, amiable, and lived in retirement. He lavished on her all the cares which she so much needed. He did not, however, withdraw her from society more than after the amendment of her mental health; he was taken off by a sudden ill

and his colleagues and the whole Assembly had been driven out by the mob, and that the Extreme Left and the mob had gone to the Hôtel de Ville to proclaim a republic, and themselves its ministers, with General Trochu for president and commander-in-chief. The count declared his willingness to see what could be done, if a reasonable number of troops could be found who might be depended upon to make a stand for her. The Empress replied promptly and firmly, that not one drop of blood should be shed for her or for her family. She resolved to depart at once, if it were still possible. By this time it was about 3.30 in the afternoon, and the crowd which had gathered round the palace already filled the palace grounds. The old Tuileries resembled a gigantic ship in a heavy sea. The roar of the human billows echoed through the deserted halls and apartments. Voices could be heard on the main staircase, and the clatter of muskets on the stones below. The flag on the cupola had been hauled down, perhaps in the hope of diverting the attention of the mob by suggesting that the Empress had already got away. But it had no such effect; the voices and tramp of footsteps came nearer and nearer. There was not a moment to lose. Accompanied by Madame le Breton, sister to General Bourbaki, Prince Metternich, M. Nigra, and a few

members of her household, the Empress began her attempt to escape.

To reach the street through the courtyard, which was divided by an iron fence from the Place du Carrousel, was impossible, for the place was full of people. They were obliged to return, and to hurry along the whole length of the gallery of the Louvre. The party by this time had dwindled down to the Empress, Madame le Breton, and the two foreign ministers; the others had dispersed to seek safety in their own way. The Empress and her friends reached the door opening into the Place St. Germain Auxerrois, opposite the church of that name. Outside the gate there is a short passage, with a tall iron railing on each side, leading to the street. But that street was full of people crying '*Déchéance!*' and '*Vive la République!*' The little party paused and hesitated before they ventured to open the door; but there was nothing to be done, except to go forward. The crowd could be heard behind them; to return would have been to fall into their hands. The venture must be made. The gentlemen opened the door cautiously, looked out into the street with dismay, and the two ladies stepped forwards. They were not studiously disguised; indeed, they were too thinly veiled, for one of the inevitable *gamins*, catching sight of the ladies, cried out, either in jest or mischief, 'The Empress!'

...and the ...
...a narrow ...
...and ...
...the ...

The ... of the ...
...not ... as they
...down the ...
...the ...
...I ...
...not ...
...Breton ...
...that I ...
...that they
...not have enough to pay
the ... They decided to
light it ... to avoid all
danger of a dispute, and they pur-
sued their way on foot to the
house of Dr. Thomas W. Evans,
the celebrated American dentist.
They had to wait, like all other

... it was ...
...the ...
...related ...
...gallant ...
...to ...
...the ...
...until ...
...comp ...
...of ...
...two ... (s ...
...were ...
...the ...
The ...
Breton were ...
ladies — ...
Mrs. Evans ...
and the ...
kept her room ...
As soon as

He announced his name and profession. One of the guards recognised him, and said he ought to be allowed to pass without question or passport. The doctor begged them to look at him well, that they might recognise him, as he would probably have occasion to pass and repass the barrier frequently. He drove on, and returned after a while without hindrance. The Empress and Madame le Breton remained at the doctor's house. The doctor put his wife's wardrobe at their disposal, as they had escaped without any provision of necessities. When Dr. Evans considered that the barrier might be passed by him with tolerable safety, he informed his guests of his plan. The Empress was to be a highly nervous patient, whom he was taking to a *maison de santé*; Madame le Breton was the friend who had charge of her. On reaching the barrier, the carriage was stopped, to account for the doctor's companions. He pointed to the Empress, and made a sign that she was a person of unsound mind, who must not be excited or alarmed. The guards, who recognised Dr. Evans, courteously drew back, and made amicable signs of wishing him a safe journey. This first danger passed, the carriage proceeded to St. Germain and Maunt. There the doctor drove to an hotel, and having told the proprietor that one of the ladies in the carriage was a

patient whom he was taking to a *maison de santé*, requested him to find a room that could not be overlooked, and furnished with shutters to the window and locks to the door,—a request which was very willingly obeyed; and here the Empress and her companion gladly took refuge, while the doctor and the friend who accompanied him went out to make arrangements for continuing the journey. He sent his own carriage and horses back to Paris.

After their departure, he engaged another carriage and pair, with a careful driver, to be ready to start in an hour for a certain château, belonging, as the doctor said, to a relative of the afflicted lady. While the fresh carriage was being prepared, he returned to his charges, and made them take some refreshment. The Empress was told of the destination of the carriage, and she was desired to show a great objection, and to become so angry and restive, that the route would have to be changed for another, which the doctor would give at the proper time. After they had left the hotel and proceeded some distance on their road, the Empress began a lively quarrel with the doctor, and the altercation between the 'insane lady' and her friends became so violent, that the doctor desired the carriage to stop, and tried to persuade the lady to alight and walk a little, which she refused to do, and objected vehemently to going in the direction of the

ordered the horses' heads to be turned and driven to the town on the next stage, where the carriage was sent back.

The same precautions were used at the hotel as before. Another carriage and driver were procured, and the party proceeded on their journey towards their real destination, which was Déanville, where Mrs. Evans was then staying for the benefit of sea air. At each stage a fresh driver and carriage were hired, and the other sent back. The party had one or two narrow escapes, but the Empress was more fortunate than Marie Antoinette and the royal family in their attempt to escape. She was never recognised, and at the end of two days, fatigued and harassed, and with dangers and difficulties still before them, but so far safe, the little party arrived at Déanville, and drove to the apartment.

Emp.
first
mixed
possib
some
nation
perilou
was un
that al
perform
humani
consent
the En
should
the last
the vess
order to
the yac
attention
passenge

It was
for vagu
in the t
received
welcome
was on l
owner at

storm that the fine new ship the *Captain* went down with her commander and all her men,—a catastrophe which moved the heart of England more than the loss of a battle. The commander who then perished was the son of the venerable Field-Marshal Sir John Burgoyne.

The little *Gazelle* behaved gallantly, but the peril was fearful. The ladies were lashed in their berths, and there remained during the whole passage. At midnight, all hope of saving either the vessel or the crew was given up. But the storm that destroyed the *Captain* spared the *Gazelle*, a little craft not more than thirty-five feet in length. Seldom have those in 'perils of the great deep' had a more wonderful or un hoped-for deliverance. The *Gazelle* rode out the storm, and reached the harbour of Ryde about three o'clock on Thursday afternoon, the 8th of September.

That afternoon the party went to Brighton. There Dr.

Evans learned that the Prince Imperial was at Hastings; and thither the Empress insisted on going that same evening. For many days the mother and the son had been ignorant of what had become of each other. Not one sympathetic heart but must sympathize in that meeting of the mother and child, after events in which all their grandeur and pomp, and the very empire of France itself, had been broken to pieces and vanished away.

As soon as possible, Dr. Evans endeavoured to find a suitable residence for the Empress and her son. Finally, Camden House, at Chiselhurst, was agreed upon. The owner, on learning for whom it was desired, offered very generous terms, and at Camden House the Empress and the Prince Imperial found a haven of rest; and the hazardous task which Dr. Evans had undertaken was successfully completed.

CHAPTER XI.

STORY OF COMMUNISTIC PRISONERS.

'We were political prisoners,—300 of us,—in the fortress of Port Louis, a part of that line of fortifications which was built by Sully to defend the French coast from Brest to La Rochelle. At high tide the fortress is entirely surrounded by the sea, and communicates with the land

only by a bridge. Round its circuit runs a rampart, on which the casemates abut. The entrance is opposite the bridge,—that is to say, facing the peninsula on which stands the little town of Port Louis. On the left are the offices of the prison authorities, and the residence of

...to the prisoners. The building consists in a terrace running along above the casemates. A road, known as the Round road, goes round the citadel, and separates the casemates from the building in which the prisoners are confined. The ground floor, occupied by the prisoners, is divided into twenty dormitories of unequal size, containing from seven to thirty prisoners each.

‘The dormitories are lighted by windows looking out on one side on the Round road, and on the other side on the inner court, and these windows are protected by strong iron bars. Having observed that the floorboards were badly joined, the idea occurred to us of working out the nails by which they were fastened with our finger-nails; and having done this, we discovered under our room large excavations without any out

used in fixing arms, these formerly been
We had worked with our hands had cost us and no little
We then commenced excavating at the cellar to that we were the Round road served as a waggons load and for all the provisions at the citadel necessary, by a tunnel, to sink about thirteen order that the weight of the might not fall in.

‘Digging’ loosened the then scooped

six of us to carry on this work, for the numberless difficulties which stood in the way of our escape had discouraged the others. We followed to the last the same method of disposing of the earth and the stones, which we worked out one by one, after incredible efforts. Having finished this shaft of thirteen feet in depth, we commenced the horizontal tunnel. We had in the first place to pass under the Round road, which is twenty-two or twenty-three feet in width. As the earth was much easier of excavation than stone, we excavated our gallery with a downward slope, in order that we might be able to pass underneath the foundation-wall of the casemate facing our dormitory. Thanks to this slope, we succeeded so well, that for a space of about forty-six feet,—that is to say, until we reached the wall of the rampart,—we had only to work through earth. This tunnel was just large enough for one man to creep along in it. We therefore took our turns at the excavation, lying flat on our faces.

‘Unforeseen accidents occurred to increase the difficulties, already great, which we had to surmount. The part of the tunnel passing under the Round road, notwithstanding the depth below the surface at which it was excavated, and notwithstanding the care we took to construct it arch-shaped, so that it might be better able to support the heavy weights passing above,

threatened entirely to fall in. Heavy rains had loosened the soil, and pretty large masses of earth fell every day. It was necessary that this part of the tunnel should be propped up. How could it be done? One of our number, who had been a sailor, and who was a resolute, enterprising man, as sailors usually are, conceived the idea of supporting the earth by packing against the sides of the tunnel the stones which we had removed from the walls. This was done; and the downfall from above being thereby effectually prevented, we were able to continue our labours. A second accident, which seemed at first much more serious, then occurred, threw us into a fever of anxiety, and delayed the accomplishment of our project. When our tunnel had attained a length of about thirty-three feet, we could not get our light to burn. We thought this phenomenon was caused by want of air, and this is what we did to remedy the defect. While one of our number was kept constantly at work excavating, another, standing in the shaft at the entrance of the tunnel, and making a sort of fan of his jacket, forced a strong current of air into the tunnel. However, after some few days, when the length of the passage had been increased by a little more than a yard, there was no longer any need of our improvised ventilator, as the light burnt of itself. There doubtless occurred in this part

...moments we had encountered,—difficulties which we should never have overcome but by dint of sheer energy, and thanks to that incredible patience with which prisoners only are endowed,—we reached the wall of the rampart.

‘A few more days of labour and suffering, and we shall be free. Free! The reader will understand what courage and hope that word must have given us, to induce us to undertake, and enable us to accomplish, a work which under any other circumstances would have appeared to us as simple madness. Alas! it was at the very moment when we seemed to be approaching the end of our fatigues, that the obstacles became more difficult to surmount. Some of our number seemed ready to abandon the task which for more than three—

only
had
loos
With
had
the
purp
musk
shelv
our
imple
do to
Our f
away:
steads
this we
took w
about
thumb
ends
stone,
could
But th
and to
hent 1:

‘At length the bright thought occurred to one of us of making the very things which had been intended to secure our confinement contribute towards our escape. We determined to remove one of the iron bars which guarded the window. These bars were five feet and a half in length, and an inch and a half thick. But in order that the warders might not perceive that one of them had been taken away, we first of all made an imitation bar of a piece of wood cut from one of the bread shelves, and which we coloured with ink and blacking. When this was finished and dry, we succeeded in unfastening with nails one of the bars of the window. We watched for a moment when the sentinel on the rampart opposite our window had his back towards us, and little by little loosened the stones in which the bar was set. When this was done, taking advantage of one very lucky moment, we gave the bar a wrench, got it out, and instantly replaced it by the imitation bar of wood. We then took the precaution of stopping up the hole made in loosening the bar with bread crumbs, which we kneaded so as to look like mortar, and afterwards threw a handful of dust over the whole, that the different shades of colour might not betray our device. This bar of iron became in our hands a formidable weapon. Without it we must inevitably have lost all the fruit of our labours.

‘When we were in possession of this formidable tool, as we had now to attack stone, it was impossible for us to continue lying flat on our faces, as we had done when it was a simple question of burrowing in the earth. It was absolutely necessary that we should have complete control over all our movements. We were obliged, therefore, before resuming our attack on the wall, to enlarge this part of our tunnel, and to excavate in front of the wall a little chamber, high enough for two men to work there on their knees, and large enough for us to use the iron bar to advantage. Of this bar we made, as occasion required, a crowbar or ram. Then, and not till then, did we make any real impression on the wall. The scraps of information which we had been able to gather from the unguarded talk of the warders, had given us a false idea with respect to the thickness of this rampart. We thought it was only about six feet or six feet and a half thick, whereas in reality it was more than sixteen feet. When, therefore, after indescribable labour, we had worked away the stone bit by bit, and made our hole six feet and a half in depth, we were disconcerted to see no sign that we were approaching the end of our labours. Far from being discouraged by this, however, we redoubled our efforts, and our astonishment increased as the hole became deeper. Still

it, and after being dazzled for a moment by the sudden entry of the light, saw the sea stretching out in front of him. He immediately stopped up the aperture, and came to impart the welcome news to his comrades.

'We took counsel together, and decided that our escape should be attempted that very night. And here I must interrupt the course of my narrative for a moment, in order to give the reader a few necessary explanations. How was it, he will say, that the officials did not perceive the destruction of the woodwork, which we had been obliged to break up to make the handles of our tools, and the bar of wood with which we had replaced the iron bar of the window? To this question I have a very simple answer to give. The officials of the prison had very little to do with us. The warders never came into

selves about going on. wishing to opinion of spoke to the latter, finding isolated, so with the *pretention* being tical punish subjected to within the cell in our room free. Another the reader this: How keep your seeing these four his curiosity There was no could not have was impossible into our cell to remount to the being seen fellow-prisoners to be in our dormitories.

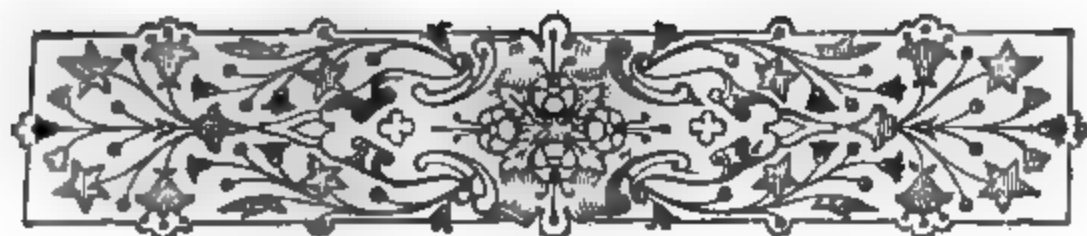
work having lasted so long, the officials had got scent of it, and were letting us go on, because they intended to have soldiers stationed ready to shoot us when we attempted to make our escape. We allowed our comrades to talk thus, and only asked one thing of them—that they would not betray our project. This they all promised; and, as the reader will see, they kept their word. I must, however, add, that we had deceived them as to the time of our departure. When they inquired as to the condition of our work, we carefully guarded ourselves from revealing the stage at which we had arrived. Several times I gave them to understand that our work would not be finished before the end of January; and on the very day when everything was finished, we had given no sign of our approaching departure until we were about to set out.

‘We had nothing more to do but to enlarge the hole we had made in the day, and to get out through that aperture. The rampart which we had pierced is on the left of the citadel, and therefore faces seawards; when the tide is low, the sea retires, and leaves the rocks dry for a distance of sixty or seventy feet around. On the night of our escape, the evening muster-roll was called as usual, and we were shut up in our dormitories. Almost immediately, two of our number went down to complete the enlargement of the hole;

and this labour occupied them two hours. On their return, we informed our companions that the moment for our escape had arrived. Their emotion was certainly greater than ours. Before setting out, we took the precaution of placing in our beds our bolsters, made to look as much as possible like a man’s body, and with our night-caps stuck at the top. We also spread our prison clothes on our beds, as we were in the habit of doing every evening. Our object in adopting these precautions was to deceive the warder when he came in the morning to call over the muster-roll. The stratagem succeeded; and the officials did not know of our flight until six o’clock the next evening. This was very fortunate for us, as otherwise we should not have been able to get away any great distance from the citadel, and we should infallibly have been retaken.

‘It was the 14th of November 1871, at nine o’clock in the evening, the tide being out, and the rocks at the foot of the ramparts left bare. We had been able to find out the times of the tides in the almanac at the canteen. Our precautions had been carefully taken, and thanks to the depth of the shaft we had sunk at the entrance of the tunnel, and to the slope given to the tunnel itself, the hole which we had made in the wall of the rampart was only ten feet above the rocks. One after another

In like manner we passed along if
over the beach, keeping as near as
as possible to the little town st
situated about a thousand yards ha
from the fortress; and thus at ha
length, after creeping silently br
between the huts of the coast- shi
guardsmen, we reached the dry shc
land, opposite a little village our
called Loe Malo. The tide cea
was now coming in. It had up,
been our intention to divide, as best
soon as we were clear of the day
fortress, into two groups of three at t
men each, only six prisoners clear
having ventured to escape. We, have
however, marched on together near
and without resting during all away
the rest of the night, in order and
as quickly as possible to put as to g
great a distance as we could trav
between us and the fortress. railw
Our object was to reach some genc
little port of Brittany, and then gun
endeavour to take ship for
England.



BOOK II.

CHAPTER I.

THE WINTERING OF JACOB HEMSKIRK AND WILLIAM BARENTZ
WITH THEIR CREW IN NOVA ZEMBLA, AND HOW THEY LEFT
IN AN OPEN BOAT.

TOWARDS the close of the 16th century, the spirit for commercial adventure made rapid progress in Holland, and various companies were formed to promote the interest of traffic. With the individuals composing them, some members of the Dutch Government were associated, who, by their power and influence, could accomplish what was denied to the exertions of simple merchants. But the desire of new discoveries being conjoined with mercantile enterprise, led to the foundation of colonies in remote regions of the world, which vied for centuries with the flourishing establishments originating from the island of Britain. Sensible of the great advantages that would result from shortening the voyage from Europe to the distant climates of the East, the Dutch were at an early period occupied in searching for a passage by the north, which, according to the geographical opinions prevailing in that age, would conduct their fleets to China, Japan, and other places in half the usual time. Though their attempts in this respect ultimately proved abortive, they were not void of utility, and led to some interesting incidents, which are partly contained in the following narrative :—

Three ships sailed from the Texel, in 1594, accompanied by a fishing barque, for the purpose of discovering the northern passage, and reached as far as $77^{\circ} 45'$ of north latitude, when a vast surface of ice, extending to the utmost limits of the horizon, obstructed their progress. Their commanders, after betaking to the boats, and examining those creeks and shores which they were able to gain, considered it impracticable to proceed, and returned to Holland in about fourteen weeks from their departure. Notwith-

clothes; and as the chimney was not completed, the smoke in the hut was intolerable. In the next place, the launch was dragged ashore with incredible difficulty; and as the absence of the sun was about to leave the seamen in perpetual night, they made all possible haste to land the remainder of the provisions required. They had no hopes of the vessel floating, on which account the rudder was also carried away for preservation, until the ice might thaw in the succeeding year.

The preparations for wintering in Nova Zembla were completed while the sun was still visible from the surface of the earth. On the 30th of October, a lamp was fitted to burn all night, and supplied with melted fat of bears, which had been killed for oil. On the 2d of November, only part of the sun was seen in the horizon; and on the fourth, he had sunk entirely under it. At this time the surgeon contrived a bath for the people in a cask, which was found extremely salutary and beneficial from their confinement. Setting traps in the neighbourhood, they caught white foxes, which were beginning to be quite common, the bears having entirely left as the sun disappeared; and their flesh, resembling that of a rabbit, was much relished by the people. A device was soon adopted of placing the traps, so that the captured animal could immediately be drawn into the hut.

On distributing the bread, each man's allowance was restricted to four pounds five ounces in eight days; and as the strength of the beer brought ashore had been destroyed by successive freezing and thawing, each had two small cups of wine daily. A large Dutch cheese was eaten by the whole in company, and sixteen remaining delivered to the people, each being left to his own economy. Repeated storms of snow at this period began to block up the hut without; and within the cold was almost insupportable. While the people washed their linen, it froze immediately when taken out of warm water; nay, one side began to freeze while the other was next the fire. They were almost suffocated from the closeness of the hut not allowing proper vent to the smoke; but the fire falling rather lower than usual for some days, ice formed two inches thick on the floor, and the beds were even covered with it. Except when cooking their provisions, the people lay constantly in bed, and then they heard such explosions among the ice at sea, as could only be occasioned by huge mountains bursting asunder, and tumbling down into a confused heap of fragments. Intense cold having stopped their clock, though additional weights were hung to it, they prepared a twelve hour sand-glass, to enable them to ascertain how the time passed.

The cold was so intense on the 6th of December, that they

... snow water, a beverage
not very suitable to their con-
dition. Before this time, the day
was so dark, that the mariners
could not distinguish it from
night; so that on one occasion,
when perplexed by the stopping
of the clock, they continued in
bed, believing it was still night;
and on another occasion, they
only knew that it was night by
the moon shining brightly, and
remaining constantly above the
horizon.

On the 7th of December, they
considered it necessary to repair
to the vessel for some coal that
had been left in her; and with
this, made a good fire in the
evening, which revived them
greatly. To enjoy its comfort
as much as possible, they sat up
late, and closed all the apertures
of their hut to keep in the heat.
But a seaman, already
nosed

i
t
s
o.
ou
we
sh
inc
bei
ney
get
M
clea
serv
159
of r
time
hut
beg
on t
whi

gretted that they could not catch them. But the intense cold almost absorbed all other sensations, and they had recourse to hot stones laid on their feet and bodies to keep them warm. However, they comforted themselves, that, as the sun was now at the lowest, he would not be long of returning to gladden them with his view. While sitting before the fire, their backs would be quite white with the frost; and on stretching their feet towards it for warmth, their stockings would be burnt before they began to feel its influence. A cloth hoisted on a pole, thrust up through the chimney to show the direction of the wind, immediately became stiff and inflexible. In this manner did the year 1596 terminate, and 1597 begin.

Though it proved necessary to diminish the allowance of wine, when Twelfth Night arrived, the seamen requested the captain to permit them all to make merry with some savings of the wine, which several, instead of consuming, had stored up. Therefore they made pancakes with meal and oil, and soaking biscuit among wine, drank to the three kings of Cologne. They also drew lots, and that to be king of Nova Zembla fell to the gunner. The whole, in short, were as jovial as if they had been at home in their own houses in Holland.

Again visiting the ship, it was evident to them that bears of

different sizes had been there, and on striking a light and going below, they found the ice a foot higher than formerly. Almost despairing that the ship would ever float again, they thought it prudent to spare the remaining coal, lest they might find themselves obliged to attempt navigating homewards in the open launch. The foxes, in the next place, beginning to disappear, indicated the return of bears; for so long as the latter retreated, the former came out, and were but little seen when the bears were numerous.

On the 24th of January, the day being clear, with a west wind, Gerard de Veer, Jacob Hemskirk, and another sailor went to the sea-side, towards the south of Nova Zembla, from whence they unexpectedly saw the edge of the sun above the horizon. They hastened to impart the welcome tidings to Barentz and their other companions; but their report was discredited, for Barentz affirmed that it was too early for his return by fourteen days. The two following days being dark and cloudy, doubts of the fact were still further entertained, and many of the people positively affirmed that it was impossible. On the 26th, a man died who had been some time sick, and next morning his comrades, with great difficulty, owing to the excessive cold, dug a grave for him in the snow, seven feet deep. Having performed the last offices to him, attended

up by it, they should find a way of climbing out through the chimney. Accordingly, the captain tried the experiment, while another, going out of the hut to ascertain whether he succeeded, saw the complete orb of the sun above the horizon. The weather still remained uncertain, though the people, relieved from the tedium of perpetual night, took exercise to strengthen them. But their hut was repeatedly blocked up by snow; and to avoid the labour of always clearing it away from the door, they, on those occasions, found an exit by the chimney.

Bears began to return along with the sun; and one which was killed afforded at least a hundred pounds of grease, which the seamen melted for their lamp. But a number of foxes coming to devour the carcase, the apprehension of other bears being

the weather, their fire, whereupon they down steps cut and boldly ran again. The captain, confounded, was unable to find a piece of wood for the purpose, but held the animal could not retire. Again in short time, it entered the hut, roaring frightfully while; then getting the people believing it would have been killed by its fury, the sailors had hoisted boards over the pieces. No other success followed, and the day night precluded attempting to shoot the bear.

At last the sea opened, though the mariners of disengaging themselves rendering her sea voyage. Still shut in by ice, sometimes

sist in the launch and boat; but the 29th of May arrived before the people attempted to dig either out of the snow. However willing, their reduced strength rendered their progress slow, and after they had laboured hard, compelled them to desist; and on another trial, they were put to flight by a bear. Six days' work at length enabled them to put the launch in a condition to be dragged over the hard ice and snow to the ship. There they sawed off the stern, which was narrow, and built one broader and higher, so that it might be better adapted to stand the sea. The boat was in the same way got out of the snow, and dragged to the ship, as also several sledges laden with articles from the hut. These operations occupied a long time; they were frequently interrupted, and ultimately accomplished with great difficulty, from the state of the weather and repeated dangers. Nevertheless, on the 12th of June, nothing remained but to smooth the way for the launch and boat down to the water's edge, and drag them along on the 13th.

This being done, William Barentz, the pilot, wrote a brief recital of what had happened: that he and his companions had left Holland for the purpose of sailing to China by the north; but their ship being frozen up by ice, they were compelled, amidst many hardships, to winter ashore. *This narrative he put into a musket barrel, hung up in the chimney of the hut, lest*

any mariners in future might experience a like adventure. The captain also thought it proper to obtain the subscription of his company to a narrative of their dangers and distresses, and of the necessity to which they were at last reduced of hazarding a voyage homewards in two open boats. Eleven loads of goods were, in the next place, dragged to the water's edge, and then William Barentz and Claes Andrisz, who had long been sick, were drawn on a sledge from the hut to the boats. The whole company was equally divided, and one of the sick attached to each; and on the 14th of June 1597, after ten months' dreary residence, the mariners set sail with a westerly wind from Nova Zembla.

But their dangers were not yet at a close; for, on the 17th, the ice drifted violently against the boats, and crushed them so forcibly among loose flakes, that they were nearly destroyed. The captain earnestly wished to reach a solid field, whereby the boats might be drawn up in security. No one, however, would attempt to carry out a rope, until Gerard de Veer, being the lightest of all, ventured to make his way from piece to piece, at the hazard of his life, and threw one over a projection, which enabled the others to pull themselves close to it. The sick were then carried out, and laid on clothes and blankets spread over the ice, while the two boats were hauled

the launch to tell the captain that Claes Andrisz was almost expiring, on which Barentz said that he could not survive him long. But the people observing that he was occupied in examining a chart of all the places seen in the voyage, which had been made by De Veer, entertained no apprehensions concerning him. They remained around him, engaged in conversation, until Barentz, putting the chart aside, desired De Veer to give him something to drink. Having drunk, he found himself extremely ill; his eyes rolled in his head, and he died so suddenly, that there was not time to call the captain, who was in the launch. His death was a grievous affliction to his comrades, for their chief confidence rested in his skill in the navigation of so perilous a voyage.

nigl
give
disc
load
whic
the l
to re
by b
away
one o
bear i
able
upon
from a
when
place,
animal
were
strengt
alone
case,
could
remain
cessive

the ice to the water, and making slow progress, several of the mariners reached *St. Lawrence Island*, where they got a number of eggs. These proved salutary refreshment; and at the same time, all the remaining wine was shared among the people, affording three glasses each. The open sea was unobstructed; whence it was necessary, on the 18th of June, to unlade the boats, though this operation as well as others afterwards became more and more troublesome to the mariners from their decreasing strength; and so they were obliged to drag over no less than a thousand sledges over the solid ice.

In a few days they came to *Cape Caut*, where they were so fortunate as to collect a great number of eggs, and to kill many birds. Twenty-two in one cliff were killed with stones, and they were so tame, never having had mankind to dread before, that they suffered themselves to be caught in their nests. Each had only a single egg deposited on the bare rock, without any straw or feathers to promote heat; and the mariners were surprised how they could breathe in such rigorous cold. At another cape they killed 125 birds. At length they reached *St. Lawrence Bay*, where two Russian barques lay at anchor; and they recognised the crew to be the same individuals whom they had seen the preceding year. Ignorant of each other's language, they could communicate

only by signs, and the Russians expressed much concern at learning the loss of the Dutch ship, where they reminded the company that they had drunk good wine. During thirteen months,—that is, ever after the time that *Cornelisz* had separated from them,—the Dutchmen had never seen a human being, excepting those of their own party.

It was indispensable, however, to prosecute the voyage; therefore they quickly left their Russian acquaintances, and endeavoured to gain the coast of Russia. But having met other vessels belonging to the same country, they discovered that they were steering a different course from what was intended; and on narrower investigation, saw that the error arose from their compass being affected by the magnetism of iron hoops binding a chest on which it stood. Nevertheless they made *Kildwyn*, on the coast of Lapland, on the 25th of August, where they were civilly received at a Russian settlement.

The Russians told the mariners that some other Dutch vessels lay at *Cola*, not far distant, on the opposite side of a mountain; and a Laplander being procured for a guide, one of their own company was despatched thither for intelligence. But it was not without great astonishment that along with the emissary they saw *John Cornelisz Ryp* return, who had separated from them so long before, and whom they concluded

from the water upon it. Two days before, Barentz, on passing Icy Cape, inquired whether the boats had reached it; and having been answered in the affirmative, requested to be lifted up that he might see it once more. At nine in the morning of the 20th, the mate came into the launch to tell the captain that Claes Andrisz was almost expiring, on which Barentz said that he could not survive him long. But the people observing that he was occupied in examining a chart of all the places seen in the voyage, which had been made by De Veer, entertained no apprehensions concerning him. They remained around him, engaged in conversation, until Barentz, putting the chart aside, desired De Veer to give him something to drink. Having drank, he found himself extremely ill; his eyes rolled in his head, and he died so suddenly, that there was not time to call the captain, who was in the launch. His death was a grievous affliction to his comrades, for their chief confidence rested in his skill in the navigation of so perilous a voyage. Andrisz expired just about the same time.

The boats now underwent some repair, and were dragged by main force, first fifty paces over the ice, and then, being taken a second time out of the water, a hundred more. They were again involved among drift ice, and driven out to sea by a tempest, in which the mizen-

mast of the launch was broken asunder in two places, and was almost sunk. But time elapsed before solid ice again closed upon them; and the mariners were visited by ice as they had been on the coast of Nova Zembla. Three cetaceous animals approached about night, and the sentinel, on giving the alarm, the men discharged their pieces loaded only with swan-shot, which made no impression on the bears, except inducing them to retreat. One was then killed by bullets, and the other was carried away; but, returning near one of them carried off the bear in its mouth to a considerable distance, where he was upon it. Another discharge from a musket frightened the bear when the seamen went to that place, where they found the animal half devoured; but they were much surprised at the strength of the bear, as one alone could carry off the case, while four of them could scarce lift up the remaining from the ice. The successive injuries sustained by the launch, and the dangerous situation of the crew, obliged them once more to haul upon the ice for repairs. The work so was attended with more and hazard than before, as pieces of brittle ice gave way and independent of the men and arms being repeatedly endangered, their lives were in jeopardy. The boat now dragged above 34-

Cornelisz set sail on the 17th the foreigh ann
of September 1597, and reached Hague with a
Holland in safety in the end of had befallen the

CHAPTER II.

**‘GOD’S POWER AND PROVIDENCE SHOWED IN T
PRESERVATION AND DELIVERANCE OF EIGH
LEFT BY MISCHANCE IN GREENLAND, AN
MONTHS AND TWELVE DAYS ;**

*‘ With a true relation of all their miseries, the shi
they were put to, their food, such as neither heat
ever before endured. Faithfully reported by Ed
of the eight men aforesaid.*

‘To the Right Worshipful Sir John Merick, Governor of the Worshipful Company of Mus- covy Merchants ; Sir Hugh Ha- mersley, Knight and Alderman of the City of London ; and to the Worshipful Mr. Alderman Freeman, Captain William Goodler, and to all the rest of the Worshipful assistants and adventurers in the said famous	for us to enc hard, we have and if ever afte of it, as the w the Dutchmen Nova Zembla, voyage shall honours—that your servants. return to our that if the fir
---	--

ever will) inhabit there. Many a rich return may your Worships in general, and the brave adventurers in particular, receive from this and all other places; and may your servants be ever hereafter warned to take heed by our harms. God send your Worships long life and much honour, and sufficient wealth to maintain both. This is the hearty prayer of your Worships' poor servant,

‘EDWARD PELHAM.

‘*To the Reader.*

‘COURTEOUS READER,—That God may have the only glory of this our deliverance, give me leave to look back unto that voyage which the Dutchmen made into Nova Zembla, in the year 1596. In which place they have been, like ourselves, overtaken with the winter, were there forced to stay it out, as we were; which, being an action so famous all the world over, encouraged me both to publish this of ours, as also now to draw out some comparisons with them, that so our deliverance and God's glory may appear both the more gracious and the greater.

‘This Nova Zembla stands in the degree 76, north latitude; our wintering place is in 77 degrees and 40 minutes,—that is, almost two degrees nearer the North Pole than they were, and so much therefore the colder. The Dutch were furnished with all things necessary both for life and health : had no want of any-thing. Bread, beer, and wine

they had good, and good store. Victuals they had in plenty; and apparel both for present clothing, and for shift too : and all this they brought with them in their ship. We, God knows, wanted all these; bread, beer, and wine we had none. As for meat, our greatest and chiefest feeding was the whale fritters, and those mouldy too; the loathsomest meat in the world. For our venison, 'twas hard to find, but a great deal harder to get; and for our third sort of provision, the bears, 'twas a measuring cast which should be eaten first, we or the bears, when we first saw one another; and we perceived by them that they had as good hopes to devour us as we to kill them. The Dutch killed bears, 'tis true, but 'twas for their skins, not for their flesh. The Dutch had a surgeon in their company; we none but the great Physician to take care of and cure us. They had the benefit of bathing and purging; we of neither. They had their ship at hand to befriend them; we had here perished, had not other ships fetched us off. They had card and compass; we no direction.

‘If the Dutch complained there of the extremity of the cold, as well they might, and that when, in building their house, they, as carpenters use to do, put the iron nails into their mouths, they there froze, and stuck so fast, that they brought off the skin, and forced blood; how cold think you

men's clothes froze upon their backs, and their shoes were like horns upon their feet, but that was their own ignorance; for they had sea coals enough with them, if they had known how to use them. If their drink and sack were so hard frozen into lumps of ice, that they were forced to cut it out; how much harder was it for us, that were forced to make hot irons our best toasts to warm the snow withal, for our morning draughts! They used heated stones and billets to their feet and bodies to warm them, which, though a hard shift, yet was it better than we had any.

'Lay now all these together: the distance of place, we being many miles more into the cold than they; the want both of meat and clothes; and that the house we lived in we had but

*the dead.
great a dea
whom we tr
us."*—2 Cor

'Greenland
far north
degrees as
is, within
minutes of
itself. The
mountain
all the year
snow; the
in summer
neither tree
cept scurvy
The sea is
affording
sea-horses,
small fish.

is a yearly
'We ei
being emp
of the Rig
pany of M

shores behind us. After which, setting our comely sails to this supposed prosperous gale, and ranging through the boisterous billows of the rugged seas, by the help and gracious assistance of Almighty God, we safely arrived at our desired port in Greenland, the 11th day of June following. Whereupon, having moored our ships and carried our casks ashore, we with all expedition fell to the fitting up of our shallops with all things necessary for our intended voyage. We were in company three ships, all which were then appointed by the order of our captain, Captain William Goodler, to stay at the Foreland until the 15th of July; with resolution, that if we could not by that time make a voyage according to our expectation, then to send one ship to the eastward, unto a fishing place some fourscore leagues from thence, whither, at the latter end of the year, the whales use more frequently to resort. A second of the three ships was designed for Green Harbour, a place some fifteen leagues distant to the southward, there to try her skill and fortune, if it were possible there to make a voyage. The third ship, which was the same wherein we were, was appointed to stay at the Foreland until the 20th of August. But the captain, having made a great voyage at Bell Sound, *despatches a shallop towards our ship, with a command unto us to come to him at Bell*

Sound aforesaid, his purpose being both to have us take in some of his train oil, as also, by joining our forces together, to make the fleet so much the stronger for the defence of the merchants' goods homeward bound, the Dunkirkers being very strong and rife at sea in those days. Upon the 8th day of August, thereupon, leaving the Foreland, we directed our course to the southward, towards Green Harbour, there to take in twenty of our men, which had out of our ship's company been sent into the lesser ship, for the furtherance of our voyage.

' But the wind being now contrary, our ship would no way lie our course. The fifteenth day being calm and clear, and our ship now in the offing some four leagues from Black Point, and about five from Maidenpaps, which is famous both for very good and for great store of venison, our master sent us eight men altogether in a shallop, for hunting and killing of some venison for the ship's provision. We thus leaving the ship, and having taken a brace of dogs along with us, and furnished ourselves with a snaphance, two lances, and a tinder-box, we directed our course towards the shore, where in four hours we arrived, the weather being at that time fair and clear, and every way seasonable to the performance of our present intentions. That day we laid fourteen tall and nimble deer

the weather falling out something
thick, and much ice in the offing
between the shore and the ship,
by reason of a southerly wind
driving along the coast, our ship
was forced to stand off into the
sea, to be clear of the ice, that
we had quite lost sight of her.
Neither could we assure our-
selves whether she were enclosed
in the drift of ice or not;
and the weather still growing
thicker and thicker, we thought
it our best course to hunt along
the shore, and so to go for
Green Harbour, there to stay
aboard the ship with the rest of
our men, until our ship should
come into the port.

‘Coasting thus along towards
Green Harbour, we killed eight
deer more, and so at last, having
well loaded our shallop with
venison, we still kept on our
course to Green Harbour—’

out
it or
possi
Soun
that
a gre
the li
shallo
the l
waters
overbc
the sea
Green
desire
from tl
teen le
that nig
about t
or poir
Nesse;
misty f
us, it w
get furl
two roc
sevente

dark, as it were, like a blind man for his way, and so overshoot Bell Point at least ten leagues to the southward, towards Horn Sound.

'Some of us in the meantime, knowing that it was impossible to be so long a rowing and sailing of eight leagues, for we did both row and sail, made inquiry "How the harbour lay in?" whereunto there was a ready answer made, "That it lay east in." Taking the matter therefore into our better consideration, some of us judged that it could not possibly be further to the southward, our reason being our observation of the land's rounding away and trending towards the eastward, and resolved thereupon to row no further on that course for the finding of Bell Sound. And though we were again persuaded by William Fakely, our gunner (a proper seaman, though no skilful mariner, who had been in the country five or six times before, which none of our seamen had been), that it was further to the southward, yet we, trusting better to our own reason than to his persuasions, again returned towards the northward, which was our best and directest course, indeed, for the finding of Bell Sound. Steering of which course, we were now come within two miles of Bell Point; and the weather being fair and clear, we presently descried the tops of the lofty mountains. William Fakely thereupon looking about him,

presently cries out unto us, "That we were all this while upon a wrong course." Upon hearing of which words, some of our company (yea, the most) were persuaded to wend about the boat's head the second time unto the southward, which one action was the main and only cause of our too late repentance; though for mine own part, as it is well known, I never gave consent unto their counsel.

'And thus upon the fatal 20th day of August, which was the utmost of our limited time for staying in the country, we again returned quite the contrary way, namely, to the southward. Thus, utterly uncertain when and where to find the Sound, a thousand sad imaginations overtook our perplexed minds, all of us assuredly knowing that a million of miseries would of necessity ensue, if we found not the ships whereby to save our passage. In this distracted time of our thoughts, we were now again the second time run as far to the southward as at first; and finding, by all reason thereupon, how that there was no likelihood at all of finding any such place further to the southward, we wended the shallop the second time unto the northward. William Fakely hereupon, being unwilling to condescend unto our argument, still persuaded us that that could not possibly be our course; but we, not trusting any longer unto his unskilful persuasions (though all in him was out of good-will, and

weather all this while continued
fair and clear: and it pleased
God at that very instant of time
to send the wind easterly, which
advantage we thankfully appre-
hending, presently set sail. The
wind increased fresh and large,
and our shallop swiftly running,
we arrived the one-and-twentieth
day at Bell Point, where we
found the wind right out of the
Sound, at east-north-east, so
fiercely blowing that we could
not possibly row to windwards;
but being forced to take in our
sail, we were fain to betake our-
selves unto our oars, by help of
which we recovered some two
miles within the shore, where
we were constrained for that
time to cove, or else drive to
leewards.

‘Thus finding this to be the
very place we had all this while
sought for (he also now agreeing

with this sad news.
of wind hitherto
about midnight fell
whereupon we, unw
our first opportunity
wards Bottle Cove,
and fear finding the
Winter coming, t
twentieth, and find
departed, we, ha
pilot, plan, nor co
directors to the ea
ourselves (God, H
have little hope of
out of that appe
Our fears increas
even whilst we cons
it were safest for u
or stay. If we go, th
upon the dangers
reason of so muc
way; as also of
in finding the ph
shou’
we 1

tian nor heathen people had ever before inhabited those desolate and untemperate climates. This also, to increase our fears, had we certainly heard: how that the merchants, having in former times much desired, and that with proffer of great rewards for the hazarding of their lives, and of sufficient furniture and provision of all things, that might be called necessary for such an undertaking, to any that would venture to winter in those parts, could never yet find any so hardy as to expose their lives to so hazardous an undertaking. Yea, notwithstanding these proffers had been made, both unto mariners of good experience and of noble resolutions, and also unto divers other bold spirits, yet had the action of wintering in those parts never by any been hitherto undertaken. This also had we heard: how that the company of Muscovy Merchants, having once procured the reprieve of some malefactors, that had here at home been convicted by law for some heinous crimes committed; and that both with promise of pardon for their faults, and with addition of rewards also, if so be they would undertake to remain in Greenland but one whole year, and that every way provided for, too, both of clothes, victuals, and all things else that might any way be needful for their preservation. These poor wretches, hearing of this large proffer, and fearing present execution at home, resolved to make trial of the adventure. *The time*

of year being come, and the ships ready to depart, these condemned creatures are embarked; who after a certain space there arriving, and taking a view of the desolateness of the place, they conceived such a horror and inward fear in their hearts, as they resolved rather to return for England, to make satisfaction with their lives for their former faults committed, than there to remain, though with the assured hope of gaining their pardon. Insomuch as the time of the year being come, that the ships were to depart from these barren shores, they made known their full intent to the captain, who, being a pitiful and merciful man, would not by force constrain them to stay in that place, which was so contrary to their minds; but having made his voyage by the time expired, he again embarked, and brought them over with him to England, where, through the intercession and means of the Worshipful Company of Muscovy Merchants, they escaped that death which they had before been condemned unto.

‘The remembrances of these two former stories, as also of a third more terrible than the former, for that was likely to be our own case, more miserably now affrighted us: and that was, the lamentable and unmanly ends of nine good and able men left in the same place heretofore by the self-same master that now left us behind,

these resolution.

‘All these fearful examples presenting themselves before our eyes, at this place of Bottle Cove aforesaid, made us, like amazed men, to stand looking one upon another, all of us, as it were, beholding in the present the future calamities both in himself and of his fellows. And thus, like men already metamorphosed into the ice of the country, and already passed both our senses and reason, stood we with the eyes of pity beholding one another.

‘Nor was it other men’s examples, and miscarriages, and fears alone that made us amazed, but it was the consideration of our want of all necessary provision for the life of man, that already struck us to the heart ; for we were not only unprovided both of clothes to keep us warm, and of food to

nope of
into Engla
frustrate.

fore, all ch
fears, it ple
hearts like
with a reso
for the resis
of desperati
thereupon,
of the whol
entered into
tunity of th
and go for
hunt and k
of our winte

‘Having t
ourselves, th
the weather a
fair, we direc
wards Gree
sixteen leagu
you, distant
and the win
fair, within t

e had, and the next
return again to our hunt-
the weather that night
fair and clear, we made
the shorter; and, alas!
could sleep in that
y! and fitting ourselves
lop the best we might,
Park we went, a place
o leagues distant from
well known to Thomas
at was one of our com-
be well stored with

Coming ashore at
lace, though we found
many deer as we indeed
l, yet seven we killed the
y, and four bears to boot,
e also intended to eat.
the weather beginning
vercast, and not likely to
good for hunting, we
ht returned again into
harbour, where, making
t of our sail and oars,
fore described, we fell
ich meat as God had
and betook ourselves
rest upon it. Having
rselves awhile, and now
he weather to clear up,
off our sleep for that
ing ourselves and two
ain to go a hunting,
William Fakely and
wes behind us in the
Green Harbour, as our
or the time, to dress
at that we had, for our
ent at our return.

urting thus from the tent,
d towards Cole's Park.
way thither, upon the
hill by the sea-side,
seven deer feeding;

whereupon presently ashore we
went, and with our dogs killed
six of them; after which, the
weather overcasting, we thought
it to little purpose to go any
further at that time, but re-
solved to hunt all along the
side of that hill, and so at night
return to our tent. Going thus
along, we killed six deer more,
which we had no sooner done,
but it began to blow and rain,
and to be very dark. Where-
upon we hasted towards the
tent, there intending to refresh
ourselves with victuals and with
rest for that night, and the next
day return again to our hunting.
This purpose of ours was, by
the foul weather next day, hin-
dered; for it fell so black, so
cold, and so windy, that we
found it no way fitting for our
purpose. Lading, therefore,
our own shallop with bears and
venison, and another shallop
which we there found nailed up,
and left by the ship's company,
as every year they used to do;
lading this other shallop, I say,
with greaves of the whales that
had been there boiled this pre-
sent year, which we there found
in heaps flung upon the ground,
we, dividing ourselves into two
equal companies,—that is to
say, William Fakely, with one
seaman and two landmen with
him, betaking themselves into
one shallop, and Edward Pel-
ham, with another seaman and
two landmen more with him,
going into the other shallop,
we all committed ourselves un-
to the sea, intending with the

...the matter again,
to try if it were possible for us
there to provide ourselves of
some more venison for our
winter provision. Having thus
laden both shallops, appointed
our company, and all ready
now for our departure, we were
overtaken with the night, and
there forced to stay upon the
place. The next day was Sun-
day; wherefore we thought fit
to sanctify the rest of it, and to
stay ourselves there till Monday,
and to make the best use we
could of that good day. Taking
the best course we could for
the serving of God Almighty,
although we had not so much
as a book amongst us all the
whole time that we stayed in
that country.

‘The Sabbath day being shut
up by the approaching night, we
betook ourselves to rest, sleep-
ing until the sun awakened us

forced to
for that r
were made
with a rop
of the one
other; and
nel or anch
them riding

‘But se
chance, fo
patience, a
us to rely
vidence, th
ward mean
now suffere
being now
west blew
into the Co
sea go high
coming hom
both our sh
the shore, s
sea, wetting
whole prov
withal beati

we had taken such pains, and run such adventures in getting. In this our misery we saw no way but one, and that a very desperate one, namely, to run presently into the high-wrought sea, getting by that means into our shallops to save the remainder of our provisions, ready now to be washed quite away by the billows. A hawser thereupon we got, which, fastening unto our shallops, we, with a crab or capstan, by main force of hand, heaved them out of the water upon the shore. This done, along the sea-side we go, seeking there, and taking up such of our provisions as were swam away from our shallops. Having by this means gleaned up all that could be gotten together, we resolved from thenceforth to let our boats lie upon the shore, till such time as the weather should prove fair and better, and then to go over unto Bell Sound.

'The 3d of September, the weather proving fair and good, we forthwith launched our shallops into the water, and in them we got that day into Bell Sound. Thither as soon as we were come, our first business was to take our provision out of our shallops into the tent. Our next, to take a particular view of the place, and the great tent especially, as being the place of our habitation for the ensuing winter. This which we call the tent was a kind of house, indeed, built of timber and boards very substantially, and

covered with Flemish tiles, by the men of which nation it had, in the time of their trading thither, been built; fourscore feet long it is, and in breadth fifty. The use of it was for the coopers employed for the service of the company to work, lodge, and live in all the while they make casks for the putting up of the train oil. Our view being taken, we found the weather beginning to alter so strangely, and the nights and frost so to grow upon us, that we durst not venture upon another hunting voyage unto Green Harbour, fearing the Sound would be so frozen that we should never be able to get back to our tent again. By land it was, we knew, in vain for us to think of returning; for the land is so mountainous, that there is no travelling that way.

'Things being at this pass with us, we bethought ourselves of building another smaller tent with all expedition. The place must of necessity be within the greater tent. With our best wits, therefore, taking a view of the place, we resolved upon the south side, taking down a lesser tent, therefore, — built for the landmen hard by the other, wherein in time of year they lay whilst they made their oil,—from which we fetched our materials. That tent furnished us with a hundred and fifty deal boards, beside posts or stanchions, and rafters. From three chimneys of the furnaces, wherein they used to boil their

made very excellent, good mortar for the laying of our bricks : falling to work whereupon, the weather was so extremely cold, as that we were fain to make two fires to keep our mortar from freezing. William Fakely and myself undertaking the masonry, began to raise a wall of one brick thickness against the inner planks of the side of the tent. Whilst we were laying of these bricks, the rest of our company were otherwise employed, every one of them : some in taking them down, others in making of them clean, and bringing them in baskets into the tent ; some in making mortar, and hewing of boards to build the other side withal ; and two others, all the while, in flaying our venison. And thus having built the two uttermost sides of the tent with bricks

cent
or s
of c
shut
coul
for c
ing :
coul
with
there,
the o
As fo
at all
broug
tent b
tiles i
came t
our chi
'Ou
four c
two an
beds w
which
ordina
fortable

ums in manner of a floor. ing also to store the rest firing over them, so to be outer tent the warmer, keep the snow from driving through the tiles into the which snow would otherwise covered everything, we hindered us from at what we wanted.

on the weather was now cold, and the days short, per no day at all, we sold to stave some empty that were left the year to the quantity of one d ton at least; we also use of some planks, and old coolers wherein they their oil, and of what might be well spared with-ailing the voyage for xt year. Thus having gether all the firing that ld possibly make, except uld make spoil of the s and coolers that were which might easily have own the next year's voy- the great hindrance of the ipful Company, whose ts we being, were every areful of their profit. ring, therefore, the small ty of our wood, together e coldness of the weather, e length of time that there e likely to abide, we cast to husband our stock as y as we could, devising a new conclusion. Our ras this: when we raked r fire at night, with a good ty of ashes and of embers, into the midst of it a

piece of elm-wood, where, after it had lain sixteen hours, we at our opening of it found a great store of fire upon it; whereupon we made a common practice of it ever after. It never went out for eight months together, or thereabouts.

‘Having thus provided both our house and firing, upon the 12th of September a small quantity of drift ice came driving to and fro in the sound. Early in the morning, therefore, we arose; and looking everywhere abroad, we at last espied two sea-horses lying asleep upon a piece of ice: presently there-upon taking up an old harping-iron that there lay in the tent, and fastening a grapnel rope unto it, out launched we our boat to row towards them. Coming something near them, we perceived them to be fast asleep; which myself, then steering the boat, first perceiving, spake to the rowers to hold still their oars, for fear of awaking them with the crashing of the ice; and I, sculling the boat easily along, came so near at length unto them, that the shallop's end touched one of them. At which instant, William Fakely, being ready with his harping-iron, heaved it so strongly into the old one, that it quite disturbed her of her rest; after which she, receiving five or six thrusts with our lances, fell into the sounder sleep of death. Thus having despatched the old one, the younger, being loath to leave her dam, continued swim-

the weather being cold, they desired not to sleep so much as before ; and therefore could we kill but one of them, of which we being right glad, we returned again into our tent.

‘ At this time, the nights and the cold weather increased so fast upon us, that we were out of all hopes of getting any more food before the next spring ; our only hope was to kill a bear now and then, that might by chance wander that way. The next day, therefore, taking a more exact survey of our victuals, and finding our proportion too small by half, for our time and company, we agreed among ourselves to come to an allowance : that is, to stint ourselves to one reasonable meal a day, and to keep Wednesdays and Fridays fasting days, excepting from the fitters or greaves¹ of the whale,

clothes waxing with both of intense, together,—wished to have secured rest time, our and nothing our minds began then a thousand times. The more that of our probable condition time to the children imagine what miscarriages them. The parents also corrosive to hear of of their children

and in our bodies with cold, and want, that monster desperation now to present his ugliest unto us. He now perceived he now laboured to upon us. Thus finding us in a labyrinth, as of a perpetual misery, thought it best not to give such way unto our griefs, they also would most have wrought upon our souls. Our prayers we now led unto the Almighty strength and patience in our miseries; and the graciously listened unto granted these our petitions. By His assistance, there-shook off these thoughts, covered ourselves up again the best means for our salvation.

as banished men, not only from our friends, but from all other company. Then thought we of the pinching cold, and of the pining hunger; these were our thoughts, this our discourse, to pass the time withal. But as if all this misery had been too little, we presently found another increase of it; for, examining our provisions once more, we found that all our fitters of the whale were almost spoiled with the wet they had taken; after which, by lying so close together, they are now grown mouldy; and our bear and venison we perceived again not to amount to such a quantity as to allow us five meals a week. Whereupon we were fain to shorten our stomachs of one meal more; so that, for the space of three months after,

it is true, is very much troubled
 with thick and black weather all
 the winter time ; so that then
 we could not see the moon, nor
 could discern from what point
 of the compass she bore upon
 us. A kind of daylight we had,
 indeed, which glimmered some
 eight hours a day unto us,—in
 October time, I mean ; for from
 thence until the 1st of Decem-
 ber, even that light was short-
 ened ten or twelve minutes a
 day constantly ; so that from
 the 1st of December until the
 20th there appeared no light
 at all, but all was one continued
 night. All that we could per-
 ceive was, that in a clear season,
 now and then there appeared a
 little glare of white, like some
 show of day, towards the south,
 but no light at all ; and this
 continued until the 1st of Janu-
 ary. by which time we might

some, in
 for son
 light a
 therefor
 over a se
 that we
 three la
 taining
 the cool
 serving
 wicks, w
 burning
 comfort
 Thus di
 serve ou
 could n
 in our o
 ourselves
 that our
 some du
 wait our
 to know
 or die.
 so many

cast down ourselves before
n in prayer two or three
es a day ; which course we
stantly held all the time of
misery.

The New Year now began.
he days began to lengthen,
e cold began to strengthen ;
h cold at last came to that
mity, as that it would raise
ers in our flesh as if we
been burnt with fire ; and
e touched iron at any time,
uld stick to our fingers like
lime. Sometimes, if we went
ut of doors to fetch a little
r, the cold would nip us in
sort, that it made us as
as if we had been beaten
me cruel manner. All the
days of the winter we found
r under the ice, that lay
the beach on the sea-
e ; which water issued out
high bay or cliff of ice,
ran into the hollow of the
h, there remaining with a
ice over it ; which ice,
at one certain place daily
ng through with pickaxes,
so much water as served
ur drinking. This continued
us until the 10th of Janu-
and then we were fain to
e shift with snow water,
h we melted by putting
irons into it ; and this was
drink until the 20th of May
wing.

By the last of January the
were grown to some seven
ight hours long ; and then
again took another view of
victuals, which we now
' to grow so short, that it

could no way last us above six
weeks longer ; and this bred a
further fear of famine amongst
us. But our resource was, in this
as in our other extremities, unto
Almighty God, who had helps
we knew, though we saw no
hopes ; and thus spent our time
till the 3d of February. This
proved a marvellous cold day,
yet a fair and clear one. About
the middle thereof, all clouds
now quite dispersed, and night's
sable curtain drawn, Aurora with
her golden face smiled once
again upon us, at her rising out
of her bed. For now the
glorious sun with his glittering
beams began to gild the highest
tops of the lofty mountains.
The brightness of the sun, and
the whiteness of the snow, both
together were such, as that it
was able to have revived a
dying spirit ; but to make a
new addition to our new joy,
we could perceive two bears, a
she one and her cub, now com-
ing towards our tent. Where-
upon, straight arming ourselves
with our lances, we issued out
of our tent to await her coming.
She soon cast her greedy eyes
upon us, and with full hope
of devouring us, she made the
more haste unto us ; but with
our hearty lances we gave her
such a welcome, as that one
fell down upon the ground,
tumbling up and down, and
biting the very snow for anger.
Her cub seeing this, by flight
escaped us. The weather was
now so cold, that longer we
were not able to stay abroad.

son. This only mischance we had with her, that upon eating of her liver, our very skins peeled off. For my own part, I, being sick before, by eating of that liver, though I lost my skin, recovered my health upon it. She being spent, either we must seek some other meat, or else fall aboard our roast venison in the cask, which we were very loth to do, for fear of famishing, if so be that should be spent before the fleet came out of England. Amidst these our fears, it pleased God to send divers bears into our tent, some forty at least as we accounted, of which number we killed seven; that is to say, the 2d of March one, the 4th another, and the 10th a wonderful great bear, six feet high at least: all which we flayed, and roasted upon wooden spits, hav-

tent from but from never more could we become I before use even unto the breed the their for small fish abundant the foxe winter kill the come abundance: three traps baited the these fow upon the there in hill, where wards the being abundant

I made these traps, and set them apart one from another in the snow, we caught fifty geese in them. Then took we the bear's skin, and laying the shy side upward, we made rings of whalebone; therewith we caught about sixty of those geese, about the bigness of a geon.

Thus continued we until the end of May; and the weather began growing warm, we were now pretty able to go abroad to seek for more provisions. Every day, therefore, abroad we went; but nothing could we counter withal, until the 24th of May, when, espying a buck, we thought to have killed him with our dog, but he was grown so fat and lazy, that he could not pull down the deer. Seeking further out, therefore, we found abundance of willocks' geese, which is a fowl about the bigness of a duck, of which there were great numbers, though there were great numbers, yet we being but two of us together, brought about thirty of them to the tent that day, thinking the next day to fetch a thousand more of them; but the day proved so cold, with so much easterly wind, that we could not stir out of our tent.

Staying at home, therefore, on the 25th of May, we for that day omitted our ordinary custom. Our order of late, since the fair weather, was every day, every second day, to go up to the top of a mountain, to spy if we could discern the water in the sea, which until the day

before we had not seen. At which time, a storm of wind coming out of the sea, brake the main ice within the Sound; after which, the wind coming easterly, carried all the ice into the sea, and cleared the Sound a great way, although not near the shore at first, seeing the clear water came not near our tent by three miles at least.

This 25th of May, therefore, we all day staying in the tent, there came two ships of Hull into the Sound; who knowing that there had been men left there the year before, the master, full of desire to know whether we were alive or dead, manned out a shallop from the ship, with orders to row as far up the Sound as they could; and then to haul up their shallop, and travel overland upon the snow unto our tent. These men, at their coming ashore, found the shallop which we had hauled from our tent into the water with a purpose to go and seek some sea-horses the next fair weather, the shallop being then already fitted with all necessaries for that enterprise. This sight brought them into a quandary; and though this encounter made them hope, yet their admiration made them doubt that it was not possible for us still to remain alive. Taking, therefore, our lances out of the boat, toward the tent they came, we never so much as perceiving them; for we were all gathered together, now about to go to prayers in the inner tent, only

answer almost amazed them all, causing them to stand still, half afraid at the matter. But we within, hearing of them, joyfully came out of the tent, all black as we were with smoke, and with our clothes all tattered with wearing. This uncouth sight made them further amazed at us; but perceiving us to be the very men left there all the year, with joyful hearts embracing, and we them again, they came with us into our tent. Coming thus unto us, we showed them the courtesy of the house, and gave them such victuals as we had, which was venison roasted four months before, and a cup of cold water, which, for novelty's sake, they kindly accepted of us.

'Then we fell to ask them what news, and of the state of land at home, and when the London fleet would come, to all which they returned us the best answers they could. And

our friends
dren.

'The 28th
don fleet ca
our great co
Admiral w
right noble
William Go
to be honou
for his cou
This is the
every year c
this fleet; a
is to be, bei
and an expe
be in Engla
Unto this ge
come we we
him receive
that we sho
that was in t
do us good,
strength. H
of his own c
value of twer

'Thus after
refreshment.

" " "

ring so much misery, which though his means partly they had undergone, no sooner came aboard his ship, but he most kindly called them runaways, with other harsh and unchristian terms, far enough from the civility of an honest man. Noble Captain Goodler understanding these passages, was right sorry for them, resolving to send for them again, but that the weather proved so bad and uncertain. I, for mine own part, remained with the captain till at Bottle Cove, according to mine own desire. As for the rest of us that stayed with him, he preferred the landsmen, to sit in the shallops for the killing of the whales, freeing them thereby from their toilsome labour ashore, bettering their means besides. And all these favours did this worthy gentleman for us.

‘Thus were we well contented

now to stay there till the 20th of August, hoping then to return unto our native country. Which day of departure being come, we embarked with joyful hearts, and set sail through the foaming ocean; and though crossed sometimes with contrary winds homeward bound, yet our proper ships came at last safely to an anchor in the river Thames, to our great joy and comfort, and the merchants’ benefit. And thus, by the blessing of God, came we, all eight of us well, home safe and sound, where the Worshipful Company, our masters the Muscovy Merchants, have since dealt wonderfully well by us. For all which most merciful preservation, and most wonderfully powerful deliverance, all honour, and praise, and glory be unto the great God, the sole Author of it, He granting us to make a right use of it. Amen.’

CHAPTER III.

THE ADVENTURES OF SEVEN POOR SAILORS, WHO WINTERED ON THE ISLAND OF MAURICE IN GREENLAND, WHERE THEY DIED IN THE YEAR 1634.

THE Greenland Company in Holland, having determined to push their discoveries as far as possible in that part of the world from whence they derived their name, particularly with respect to the variation of the weather, and other curious matters that might tend to the improvement of astronomy and

the advancement of trade; seven resolute sailors freely offered to winter there, and keep an exact journal of their observations.

Accordingly, these men were left on the island of St. Maurice in Greenland, on the 26th of August 1633, the ship bearing away for Holland with the wind at north-east, and a hol-

... they shared
nall a pound of tobacco to each
man, which was to be a week's
allowance. They walked out
in the evening to make observa-
tions, but saw nothing remark-
able. The 29th was a clear
sunshiny day ; and from a high
hill, which they often climbed
when the weather would permit,
they discovered the Bear moun-
tain very plainly.

The night of the 30th was
cloudy, but that of the 31st
was clear and starlight, and the
wind blew fresh from the north-
east. The weather was pretty
good, with some flying showers
of snow and rain, from the 1st
to the 7th of September ; but
on the 8th, the wind changing
to the south-east, it rained very
heavily. However, it cleared
up in the afternoon, and in the
beginning of the night, which
was bright and starlight, they
were alarmed with a very dread-
ful noise, as if something of
prodigious

ing
18
ma
bra
last
230
and
they
the
thei
but
fast,
ing
same
tunit
On ti
cold .
at eas
found
rains
tinues
varior
it in t
On
disco
water
island

by a rough, hollow sea, kept them all night from sleeping. The wind veered from north to north-east, and was so fierce, that they apprehended no ship could have been able to outride the violence of the storm. The severity of the cold now forced them to make fires and to keep close to them; and they were obliged to hang their clothes to dry under cover near the fire, for if left without doors, they froze as hard as a board in a minute. Their health likewise was by this time considerably impaired, and they were greatly troubled with vertigoes.

On the 12th they had high winds, hard frost, and heavy snow, and a barrel of bears' flesh froze within two yards of the fire. On the 15th they sallied out to two whales that were thrown ashore, armed with lances, hangers, harpoons, and other offensive weapons; but the tide suddenly rising, the whales were carried off with it, after having received several wounds. On the 19th they saw some ice to the north of the shore; and though the sun rose, it did not appear above the hill under the shelter of which they pitched their tents. On the next day they saw a bear, but could not catch him, though they strove hard to overtake him. The ice now seemed to increase at sea, the wind continued at east, and the night was very cold. On the 25th, a bear coming almost close to their tents, they immediately

pursued him, but he got away from them. It now continued to snow daily, with small intermissions of sun and fair weather; but the cold gradually increased, and on the 31st was so severe as to split several vessels that held their liquids. There was now no appearance of water, the bay and sea being covered with ice as far as the eye could possibly reach.

On the 2d of November, six or seven bears came down towards their tents in a body, one of which they killed; but the rest, seeing their companion fall, fled, and saved themselves upon the ice, where it was dangerous to follow them. These animals began now to assemble in such numbers about the tents after it was dark, that the sailors did not think it safe to stir out. They were now obliged to keep good fires in their buttery cellar, to preserve their beer and other liquors from being spoiled by the frost. On the 3d, the weather being somewhat moderate, they went abroad, and shot a bear on the ice, and then drew the body home with a strong rope. On the 5th, the snows were so heavy and the weather so tempestuous, that they could not stir abroad. As there was no water to be come at, the sea-gulls were by this time all gone, and our adventurers were obliged to use melted snow instead of water. By the 19th, the days were grown so short, that they had not light sufficient to read or

the body. On the 26th, the wind being at south, and the day tolerably mild, the ice drove out of the bay very fast into the ocean. The latter end of this month, and the beginning of December, the weather was so very moderate, that they began to flatter themselves that the winter would not be much more severe than it commonly was in Holland; but on the 8th of December the frost returned with a north-east wind, and the ice began again to increase everywhere.

They had for some days past endeavoured to catch bears, but in vain, as they were so shy, that it was not possible to come very near them; and though many of them had been wounded, they escaped on the ice. However, on the 12th, one of the men had the good fortune to

now only
the weat
for the gr
of Decer
obliged t
whole d.
daring to

They b
cheerfully
would per
to prayers
very inter
tions of ic
large, that
of their te
pearance

On the 1
saw a whit
tents, and
brought hi
discharge
drew him
ropes; and
and dresse
a most wel
the ship

time, the bears, as if dreading the fate of their companions, became so shy, that they fled at the most distant sight of a man. During the course of this month the weather underwent various changes, sometimes freezing hard, with the wind at north-east, and sometimes thawing, with the wind at south.

On the 1st of March the sun shone a little upon their tents, and it rained in the evening. The weather was cold and stormy till the 11th, on which day it became calm and pleasant, which continued for a few days, the wind being at south, and the sun affording an agreeable heat. On the 15th they shot a bear, and hung up his skin to dry, sprinkling with salt as much of the flesh as they could not immediately eat. Fresh meat of any kind was now of great service, as most of them were afflicted with the scurvy to a very great degree; and this disorder made some foxes, which they caught in traps, very acceptable. The weather was tolerably good, and the days fine, all this month; but the increase of the scurvy, and their want of fresh provisions, dejected them, and made them quite spiritless. On the 28th and 29th they saw prodigious large whales in the bay, and those in such numbers, that if their strength had enabled them to hunt them, and they had been furnished with proper tools, *they might have been considerable gainers; but in their pre-*

sent weakly condition, nothing was to be done; besides, there were plenty of other fish. On the 31st they saw a she-bear with three cubs, at which they fired, but in vain. There were also four or five whales in the bay, which were nearly being stranded with the ebb; but even if this had been the case, it would have been of little comfort to our unhappy adventurers, as they were now too weak to have attacked them.

By the 3d of April they were so disabled by the scurvy, that there were only two of them that were able to walk, and these killed the two last pullets they had (a part of the store that had been left them), which they gave to their sick companions, hoping that with this little refreshment they might be somewhat recruited. During the greater part of this month they saw plenty of whales every day; but the wind changing to the north-east, and the weather growing again colder, while their disorder continued to gain upon them hourly, they found it very difficult to move out of their tents. On the 16th, died the person whom they called their clerk, and who wrote the journal to that day. On the 23d, the wind being at south, they had a little rain; and their wretchedness now began to be very great, for they were so reduced, that they were unable to assist each other, there being only one among them who could move, at any rate, and even he

... out to sea,
and the bay was left quite clear.
The day was cloudy on the 29th,
and the wind pretty high from
the north ; and at night it blew
hard from the north-east. The
31st was a clear, sunshiny day.

At this period ends the jour-
nal, which was found by the
crew of some Zealand ships,
which went thither with the
Greenland fleet the same year ;
and it is very probable that the
poor man who wrote, continued
the account till, being no longer
able to hold the pen (and he
scrawled most wretchedly), he
retired to his cabin, where he
resigned his soul into the hands
of the God who gave it. As
soon as the fleet came in sight
of the island of St. Maurice,
which was on the 4th of June
1634, the sailors strove who
should get first on shore to visit
their companions.

tion
wh
mu
anc
tha
nati
by t
the

most
Th
death
sione
meat
came
rende
such
to ke
they
conqu
howev
but th
thered
have l
as tha
disord

CHAPTER IV.

'A SMALL MONUMENT OF GREAT MERCY,

miraculous deliverance of five persons from slavery at Algiers, canvas boat; with an account of the great distress and calamities which they endured at sea: by William Oakely, 1644.

month of June 1639, in consequence of a commission from the Earl of Warwick, Lord Brook, we embarked at Gravesend, in the London, carrying six chiefly laden with linen,ollen cloth, and boundle of Providence in the dies. Her company of and passengers were sixty in number. We lay weeks in the Downs for a fair wind, which at last obtained, we set sail and came to an anchor off the coast of Wight. By this time our beer had spoiled; we were forced to throw it overboard and to take in vinegar with the water for our use.

Next Sunday we again sailed but got ashore on the coast between the island and the mainland; however, the force of the tide bore us off. Our ships were in company, which carried nine guns, and was commanded by Mr. . . . At dawn of the sixth day after leaving the Isle of . . . we discovered three ships to the leeward, about four or five leagues. The captains of our ships consulted whether it was more prudent to stay and speak

with them, or to make the best of our way; and at last it was determined, but for what reason I know not, that we should remain.

'It was not long before we found the strangers to be Turkish men-of-war, which, viewing us as prey, endeavoured to come up, and effected it about night. While approaching, our captains, apparently determined to fight, made preparations for their reception. But during the night, the counsels of those with whom I was, I was wavering, their resolution forsook them, and they agreed on flight. Uncertain counsels never produce better success. Had we either at first resolved not to fight the strange ships, or, like men of courage, done the reverse, we might have avoided the danger, or conquered it. The Turks, observing the commencement of our flight, sent one of their number in chase, while the other two lay by our companions until morning. At daybreak they began to fight us, and after a short encounter we were all boarded and taken. Six were killed in the *Mary*, and many wounded. For a number of weeks our captors kept us close prisoners at sea. We found many Englishmen in

or six weeks.

Algiers is a city pleasantly situated on the side of the hills overlooking the Mediterranean, and lies to the north, rising imperiously, as if it challenged the sovereignty of the seas, and claimed a tribute of all who ventured to penetrate within the straits. It is of considerable size, being above three miles in circuit, ornamented and fortified with five gates: Porta Marine towards the north, Porta Piscadore in its vicinity, and Porta Nova towards the south, which is said to have been built by the Spaniards while in their possession. The western gate is called *Beb a Wyt* in the Moorish language, and the eastern one *Beb Azun*. There are several strong castles, besides one on the extremity of the Mole; and it is altogether a strong place. It is

religio
and th
their d
also ma
the me
and the
To this
—fair it
and def
as the
is no su
prison.
for a jai
that eve
diately c
were lock
cellar, a
rather dri
Bashaw's
to their
to every
arrival of
we were a
so many

and those that cannot eat are unable to work. Next the limbs are closely examined, to discover whether there has been any fracture or dislocation of the bones; and if a man is strong and clean made, that also will advance his price very much. The age of the slave is material. The owner either endeavours to discover it from himself, or to ascertain it from the appearance of the beard, face, or hair. But in nothing is their inspection more minute than of the hands. Should these be callous and large, they judge that the slave has been inured to labour; if delicate and tender, they suppose him a gentleman or merchant, whence the hope of a large ransom makes him valuable. After the sale, the slaves are conducted to the viceroy, who has the privilege of selecting any for himself, at the price which they brought. For my part, I was sold the first market day to a Tagareen. In explaining this name, the reader must understand, that when the Moors were driven out of Spain, they, on returning to Africa, assumed names that might indicate their rank, from the places of their former residence, and are thence called Tageen, Jarbeen, and the like.

'My first adventure in my patron's house had nearly cost me my life. His father, wishing to see his son's purchase, ordered me up into a gallery which overlooked the court; and then began to insult me with in-

supportable scorn, reviling me because I was a Christian. My neck was not yet bowed to the yoke of bondage; and because I could not express myself either in the Morisco tongue or in *Lingua Franca*, I supplied the defect with signs, intimating as well as I was able that their prophet Mahomet was but a cobbler. This instantly drew down his wrath upon me, and whatever his hands and feet could inflict was unsparingly bestowed. My entreaties only inflamed him the more, whence, as the last resort, I laid my hands on the railing, and threatened to leap over into the court. His anger, or at least the execution of it, was immediately appeased; for the old gentleman was well aware that his son's profit depended on my surviving, as little is to be made of a dead man's skin. However, what passed was reported to my patron, who, being a very passionate man, without further inquiry, drew the long knife constantly worn at the sides of these people, and would doubtless have ended my captivity and life together, had not his wife taken him in her arms and modified his wrath. This incident taught me two lessons: first, that while the body is enslaved the reason must not expect to be free, nor where the whole person is in bondage can the tongue plead exemption; and secondly, that slaves may be well content with the freedom of conscience.

... from Spain, and after a hot action, took her. Elated with this success, the adventurers resolved on again fitting out the vessel with more guns; and my occupation was converted to attendance on the carpenters and smiths, for which my patron made me a more ample allowance than to the common porters. But when she was finished, he told me that I must go to sea in her. It was in vain that I pleaded I was no seaman and understood nothing of the mariner's art, whence he could have no expectations from me, though I might look for maltreatment on account of my ignorance. However, he promised that I should not be wronged, and, in fact, spoke to the captain and officers of the ship to treat me civilly, that is, less cruelly than other slaves were treated. He also gave me some money in my pocket, bought me clothes and

alternativ
not main
compelle
maintena
bated lo
what plan
projects v
the longer
did my di
at last, co
guidance
paired to
men, also
tailor. He
me to sta
would tea
for my pa
base that
hopes wer
at the pro
capacity to
demands,
However,
day to the
his silence
changed;
from pride
him first

were to levy the
of it. Pitying my
invited me to sit
him in his shop.
," said he, "I here
own trade ; I sell
ot, strong waters,
any other things ;"
his willingness that
him in his traffic.
was far too advan-
e rejected. I ac-
patron with my
pleaded the want
et up with ; where-
e a small portion,
l to another pit-
ad reserved of my
e commencement

That very night
antity of tobacco ;
we cut and dressed
red it for sale.
n seemed to smile
during the time
ip continued, we
profits weekly, in
o the respective
ngth we ventured,
oney, and partly
uy a butt of wine,
r gains were con-
but as it is very
eserve moderation
l state, so did my
ted with our good
lect his business,
himself to drinking,
the whole concern
lers.

ned that another
Randal, who, with
child, had been
same ship with
duced to similar

necessities by a monthly tax
imposed on him by his patron.
Straggling up and down in search
of relief, he found his way to
my shop. His condition made a
great impression upon me ; and
I could not but consider God's
goodness to me, that I should
now be in a state to advise and
help another, who so lately
wanted both myself. I desired
him to come in ; and knowing
him to be a glover by trade, I
counselled him to make canvas
clothes for seamen who were
slaves, and with respect to me,
he should sit rent free ; only,
if my partner insisted on his
moiety, he must be satisfied, as
I had no power to determine
another's rights.

' It would be tedious to narrate
how I spent three or four irk-
some years in this way of trading.
All that time there was no
dawning of our deliverance from
bondage ; and our condition,
already bad, was daily in danger
of becoming worse, according
to the mutable disposition of
our patrons. We were under
perpetual temptation to deny
Christ, and in making our souls
slaves to recover the liberty of
our bodies. How many have
made a shipwreck of their faith,
to escape being chained to the
galleys !

' Some Algerine pirates had
taken an English ship with Mr.
Devereux Sprat, a clergyman, on
board, whom some of us observ-
ing to be sober, grave, and of re-
ligious deportment, we desired
to have the privilege of his mini-

the number of sometimes three
or four score. And notwith-
standing this cellar, which I had
hired at some distance from our
shop for goods, was next the
street, we never met with the
smallest interruption either from
Turks or Moors. Mr. Sprat
was at length ransomed by Cap-
tain Wildy of Ratcliffe, with the
assistance of the Leghorn mer-
chants. John Randal worked
busily along with me in my shop,
for my former partner had now
entirely forsaken it. Slaves were
indulged with the liberty of
walking about a mile from the
city; and one day, John Randal
being somewhat indisposed, we
walked out together. After
reaching the limits of our dis-
tance, I was desirous of going
a little further, to survey the
sea-coast, lest there might be
any future chance of

l
s
n
ti
ai
cc
in
sl
Bu
of
tin
spe
hai
tha
to
to
I
mo
lay
ha

to my shop, and con-
everything into ready
to bring it to him. The
there indeed, but the
gone; for poor John
being unable to work,
er absent, and myself
er occupation, some
had broken into my
d carried off the best
oods. My cellar was
ly still safe, and some
rticles which I heard
vered: besides, all my
as hid in the earth, ac-
o my constant practice.

Dutchman and myself
to our patron, telling
we could sell nothing,
he remanded me to my
trade there, and pay
dollars a month as

here was no prospect of
ice, nor could I even
yself with the hope of

However, the for-
my patron had been
considerable time, and
ship which he put to sea
m. Thus he was forced
ll his slaves to pay his
It was of little conse-
to me whither I was
ed; though I might
my jailor and my jail,
till likely to be a pri-

Yet it was one con-
that the last instru-
my bondage had come
ery as well as myself.
ioning his slaves, it was
and that of another to
aged to two persons
r a sum of money:

the one a cap-maker, and the
other a grave old gentleman,
who among his own people
had the repute of being a good-
natured, moderate person. The
money not being produced when
the day of payment came, he
and the cap-maker seized on
us in common. They agreed
to cast lots for us; only, as I
was in the way of trade, he to
whom I might fall should pay
the other a sum equal to about
fifty shillings sterling. Happily
I fell to the old gentleman's
share. And if I were silent here,
I should be the most ungrateful
person living, for I found not
only pity and compassion, but
love and friendship, from my
new patron. Had I been his
son, I could not have met with
more respect, or been treated
with greater tenderness. In-
deed, the freedom which I en-
joyed under my bonds was so
great, that it almost blunted the
edge of my desire to make any
vigorous attempts for liberty,
which would be attended with
hazard, until roused by the fol-
lowing occasion.

'My patron had a farm about
twelvemiles from the city, whither
he conducted me along with him;
he also carried me to the mar-
kets, and explained how they
were held; and on my return
home, loaded me with all manner
of good provisions, that I might
make merry with my fellow-
Christians. From his great
kindness, I had reason to con-
clude that he meant to send
me thither to manage the farm

jazet's cage been of gold instead of iron, it was still a cage ; and that was enough to make his haughty spirit dash his brains out against its bars.

'After setting my fancy to work, I at last hit on a stratagem, which I first intimated to Mr. Sprat, our minister, who, it has been already mentioned, was delivered from his patron, and now in a fair way to be regularly released. He judged it practicable ; and I next acquainted one John Lake, a very wise and religious person, who bestowed his blessing on it, and wished me all good success ; and lastly, I told John Randal, by whom it was also approved ; yet none of all these persons either could or would run the risk of its failure. Before disclosing my plan, I administered an oath of secrecy to some others. which ---

a
j
l
ti
n
d
cl
of
ra
ha
bo
pie
get
our
gra
coo
diff
of t
the
the
rule
'

pieces each, and jointed in two pieces. The flat side of one of two pieces was laid over the other, and two holes bored in every joint to receive nails, so that, when united, each joint would make an obtuse angle, and approach towards a semicircular figure, as we required. In the formation of an external covering we had to avoid hammering and nailing, which would have made such a noise in the city as to attract the notice of the Algerines, who are insufferably suspicious about their slaves and slaves. We therefore provided as much canvas as would cover the boat twice; and as much pitch, tar, and tallow as would make a kind of tarpaulin; also seven pots, in which to melt the materials. The two carriers and myself were appointed to this service in the city. We stopped up all cracks and crevices, that the seepage of these substances might betray us. But we had not long at work when the chief of the melting materials came me, and obliged me to go into the streets gasping for breath, where, meeting with cool air, I swooned away, and broke my face in the fall. My companions, finding me in plight, carried me back, exceedingly sick and unserviceable. Ever long I heard one of them complain of sickness, and thus could proceed no further; before I saw, if we abandoned our project this night,

it might not be resumed, which made me resolve to set the cellar door wide open, while I stood sentinel to give notice of approaching danger. In this way we finished the whole, and then carried it to my shop, which was about a furlong distant.

‘Everything was fitted in the cellar,—the timbers to the keel, the canvas to the timbers, and the seats to the whole, and then all were taken to pieces again. It was a matter of difficulty, however, to get the pieces conveyed out of the city; but William Adams carried the keel, and hid it at the bottom of a hedge; the rest was carried away with similar precautions. As I was carrying a piece of canvas which we had bought for a sail, I looked back, and discovered the same spy who had formerly given us so much trouble following behind. This gave me no small concern; but observing an Englishman washing clothes by the sea-side, I desired his help in washing the canvas. Just as we were engaged with it, the spy came up, and stood on a rock exactly over our heads, to watch us. Therefore, to delude him, I took the canvas and spread it before his face on the top of the rock to dry; he stayed his own time, and then marched off. Still I was jealous of his intentions, which induced me to carry the canvas, when dry, straight back to the city, an incident that greatly discouraged my comrades. We also procured a small quantity

Mr. Sprat, who faithfully preserved it for me.

‘The place which we chose for joining the boat together, was a hill about half a mile from the city, thinking by that means the better to descry the approach of danger. When the pieces were united, and the canvas drawn on, four of our number carried the boat down to the sea, where, stripping ourselves naked, and putting our clothes within, we carried it as far as we could wade, lest it might be injured by the stones or rocks near the shore. But we soon discovered that our calculations of landing were erroneous; for no sooner had we embarked, than the water came in over the sides, and she was like to sink; so that some new device became necessary. At last, one whose heart most failed him

we launched
June 1644
remembered
consisted
William A
John the c
We now
helm, tackl
of us cont
the oars;
the fifth v
water that
canvas. W
first night
reach of o
when day
within sigh
the harbor
Yet, our bc
lying close
sea, either
at all, or els
that was n
On all occas
want of for

death can be painted, began to stare us in the face. The expedients on which we fell to assuage our thirst rather inflamed it, and several things added to our distress. For some time the wind was right against us; our labour was incessant; for although much rowing did not carry us forward, still cessation of it drove us back: and the season was raging hot, which rendered our toil insupportable. One small alleviation we had in the man whose province it was to bale the water out of the boat; he threw it on our bodies to cool them. However, what with the scorching of the sun and cooling of the water, our skin was blistered all over. By day we were stark naked, by night we had on shirts or loose coats; for we had left our clothing ashore, on purpose to lighten the boat.

‘One of our number had a pocket dial, which supplied the place of a compass—and to say the truth, was not ill-befitting such a vessel and such mariners. By its aid we steered our course by day, while the stars served as a guide by night; and if they were obscured, we guessed our way by the motion of the clouds. In this woful plight we continued four days and nights. On the fifth day we were at the brink of despair, and abandoned all hope of safety. Thence we ceased our labour, and laid aside our oars; *for either we had no strength left to use them, or were reluctant to waste the*

little we had to no purpose. Still we kept emptying the boat, loth to drown, loth to die, yet knowing no means to avoid death. They that act least, commonly wish the most; and when we had forsaken useless labour, we resorted to fruitless wishes—that we might be taken up by some ship, if it were but a ship, no matter what country.

‘While we lay pulling up and down, our hopes at so low an ebb, we discovered a tortoise, not far from us, asleep in the sea. Had the great Drake discovered the Spanish Plate Fleet, he could not have been more rejoiced. Once again we bethought ourselves of oars, and silently rowing to our prey, took it into the boat in great triumph. Having cut off its head, and let it bleed into a vessel, we drank the blood, ate the liver, and sucked the flesh. Our strength and spirits were wonderfully refreshed, and our work was vigorously renewed. Leaving our fears behind us, we began to gather hope, and about noon discovered, or thought that we discovered, land. It is impossible to describe our joy and triumph on this occasion. It was new life to us; it brought fresh blood into our veins, and fresh vigour into our pale cheeks: we looked like persons raised from the dead. After further exertion, becoming more confident, we were at last fully satisfied that it was land. Now, like distracted persons, we all leaped into the sea, and being

was fortunately of such short duration, that the leaking of the boat occasioned no danger.

‘Refreshed by sleep, we found new strength for our work, and tugged hard at the oar, in hopes of reaching a more stable element before night. But our progress was very slow. Towards evening an island was discovered, which was Fromentère, having already seen Majorca; at least, some of our company, who had navigated these seas, declared that it was so. We debated long to which of the two our course should be directed; and because the last discovered was much infested with venomous serpents, we all resolved to make for Majorca. The whole of that night we rowed very hard, and also the next, being the sixth from our putting to sea. The island was

land,
awak
could
great
no for
John
out in
rest
Before
oursel
create
My co
way,
other.
a bei
whom
had ur
about
land!
gave
and it
come
my ow
resolut
led to

cake, and directed us to a well close at hand. We drank a little water, and ate a bit of the cake, which we had difficulty in swallowing, and then hastened to return to our companions in the boat, to acquaint them with our success. Though now necessary to leave the boat, we did not do it without regret; but this was lulled by the importunate cravings of hunger and thirst; therefore, making her fast ashore, we departed. Advancing, or rather crawling, towards the well, another quarrel arose among us, the remembrance of which is so ungrateful, that I shall bury it in silence, the best tomb for controversies. One of our company, William Adams, in attempting to drink, was unable to swallow the water, and sank to the ground, faintly exclaiming, "I am a dead man!" After much straining and forcing, he at length got a little down; and when we were all refreshed with the cake and water, we lay down by the side of the well to wait for morning.

'When it was broad day, we once more applied to the sentinel to point out the way to the nearest house or town, which he did, directing us to a house about two miles distant; but our feet were so raw and blistered by the sun, that it was long before we could get this short journey over; and then the owner of the house, concluding from our garb that we came with a pilfering design, presented a fowling-piece, charg-

ing us to stand. The first of our number, who could speak the language of the country, mildly endeavoured to undeceive him, saying we were a company of poor creatures whom the wonderful providence of God had rescued from the slavery of Algiers, and hoped that he would show mercy to our afflictions. The honest farmer, moved with our relation, sent out bread and water and olives. After refreshing ourselves with these, we lay down and rested three or four hours in the field; and having given him thanks for his charity, prepared to crawl away. Pleased with our gratitude, he called us into his house, and gave us good, warm bean pottage, which to me seemed the best food ever I had ate. Again taking leave, we advanced towards Majorca, which was about ten miles distant.

'Next morning we arrived in the suburbs, where the singularity of our attire, being bare-foot and bare-legged, and having nothing on except loose shirts drawn over our coats, attracted a crowd of inquirers. We gave a circumstantial account of our deliverance; and as they were willing to contribute to our relief, they supplied us with food, wine, strong waters, and whatever else might renovate our exhausted spirits. They said, however, that we must remain in the suburbs until the viceroy had notice of our arrival. We were called before him; and when he had heard the account

seldom trade, we requested the viceroy to allow us a passage in the king of Spain's galleys, then in the road, bound for Spain. The cold reception which we there experienced from some of our own country I would willingly conceal. One merchant, taking compassion on us, conducted us to an Englishman's house, where we lodged, and gave us half a dollar to defray our expenses. Next day, understanding that there was an English vessel in the road homeward bound, we went aboard in quest of a passage. The master told us that he had but little provision; yet, if we would be content with bread and beverage, we might go. That we accounted royal fare, and waited until he set sail, which was a few days afterwards.

'While at sea, we were closely chased by two Turkish galleys; however, being near Gibraltar.

vessel, and enough for
We stayed
was gone, and
travel with
to Cadiz, and
miles distant
two companions
inquire for
on the shore
Spanish vessel
Malaga, but
master freely
at my request
early next
Cadiz Road
vessel there
and hearing
at St. Luca
twelve miles
thither by
commander was
Redriff. We
age in her, and
the merchant
sion for us.
trary winds
which lasted

wealth which, with so much trouble and care, I had amassed together, it should be no source of pleasure recalling to my memory the disasters that befell me previous to the close of the last expedition. But the desire of serving both the public and individuals, and of showing the king my attachment to his service, induced me to communicate my observations to M. de Philipeaux. There he might likewise discover with what eagerness I penetrated to the most remote colonies of our enemies, in order to destroy them, and ruin their trade. I am unwilling to swell this relation with all the voyages I have made, and my adventures on various coasts of America, during twenty years. To these I could add my expedition in 1691, when I ravaged the coast of Guinea, went up the river Sierra Leone, and took a fort from the English mounting twenty-four pieces of cannon, which I burst, to render them unserviceable. But I shall here confine myself to the particulars immediately preceding and subsequent to the explosion of my vessel.

'In the year 1694, after having ravaged the coast of Caragua, I stood to the windward towards St. Croix, where I had information of an English fleet of merchantmen, homeward bound, with a convoy. In the latitude of Bermuda Islands they appeared, bearing directly toward me, without any apprehensions

of danger; whereupon I speedily attacked their convoy, called the *Wolf*, and took her, as also two merchantmen; but the rest made their escape during the engagement. While carrying my prizes to France, I fell in with an English ship of sixteen guns, bound from Spain for England, which, after a short encounter, struck her colours. She was sold at Rochelle, and I then carried my three other prizes to Bordeaux, in September 1694, and presently sought out purchasers for them. Meantime, my crew, who had been long absent from France, indulged themselves in every extravagance, as some compensation for the fatigues they had undergone. Both the merchants and their hosts advanced them money without hesitation on the reputation of their wealth, and their share of such valuable prizes. They spent the night in such amusements as best pleased their fancy, and the whole day in traversing the town in masquerade. They caused themselves to be carried in chairs with lighted torches at noon-day; and the consequence of their indiscretion and debauchery was the death of several of their number.

'Having replaced my crew with young men, whom I trained to arms with constant care and practice, and re-victualled my ship, which carried thirty-four guns, I left Bordeaux in February 1695, intending to make a voyage to the coast of Guinea.

I therefore resolved to board them, and for that purpose stood nearer in: but they, suspecting my design, did not think fit to wait for my arrival, but making all ready, cut their cables, and made their escape. I pursued them all day; and having lost sight of them on the approach of night, returned to the road from which they departed, to take up their anchors and cables left behind, and to sink their boats also lying there.

'We sailed for St. Vincent, one of the Cape de Verd Islands, to caulk the vessel, and likewise to take in wood and water. Here I learnt that there were two English vessels carrying between twenty and thirty guns each at the Isle of Fuego. I sailed in quest of them, but they were gone. Then I steered for the

to
chi
ves
ven
the
fort
othe
of fo
eigh
thre
me,
whol
withi
they
rever
decli
gues
that
Fren
'S
enem
deem
them
forte

of a prince who has extensive dominions. There he had taken in five hundred and fifty negroes; but some had been killed because others mutinied against him, and made their escape to land in his boat. In sight of Prince's Isle I took a small Brandenburg vessel, mounting eight guns, and carrying sixty men. She cruised about this latitude, taking all the barquesshe could fall in with, and without distinction of nation or colours. I afterwards went into port to clean my ship, which greatly required it, and to free myself of the English prize. Here I sent her to be condemned at St. Domingo in the West Indies; but I understood that she was re-taken by some English men-of-war before Little Goava. Meantime, that my men might not be idle, I ordered my officers to employ them in careening the vessel, while I myself embarked in the Brandenburg ship with ninety men, and went on a cruise for six weeks on the coast of Guinea.

'Meeting with no enemy, I returned to Prince's Isle, and got my own vessel victualled, after which I weighed anchor, and sailed for the island of St. Thomas, there designing either to sell or barter the Brandenburg. I exchanged her for some provisions, because I had not enough to serve me during a cruise on the coast of Angola, where I meant to spend five or six months, to avoid three English men-of-war fitting out at

the same town in Guinea. Their purpose was to come in quest of me about the island of St. Thomas, where they thought I was cruising. Leaving St. Thomas, I saw a ship at anchor, and then chased her a long time. But I could not prevent her getting ashore on the Isle of St. Omers, and being staved to pieces, by which I lost a hundred and fifty pounds of gold dust.

'We next sailed for the coast of Angola, two hundred and fifty leagues on the other side of the line, and arrived there on the 22d of September. When within three leagues of the port of Cabinda, we understood there were two English ships with negroes in that place; therefore, being leeward of the port, I bore out to sea, in hopes of recovering it next day by the south-west wind, which usually blows to the land. When day broke, I saw a ship with English colours bearing down upon me, which I did not immediately suppose a man-of-war. Some time after, however, I discovered that she carried no less than fifty-four guns. I used all my art to deceive her; and with that view, hoisted Dutch colours, that I might approach her the more easily, while she, on her part, was not behind hand in deluding me, and endeavoured to come up with me by firing guns from time to time to assure me of her friendship. When I became sensible of the enemy's design, I made a show

... from day-break until
ten in the forenoon. The Eng-
lish vessel still continued to fire
a gun from time to time, to assure
me that she was my friend.
But finding at last that I did not
answer her in the same manner,
and now being within cannon-
shot, she gave me one with ball,
which made me instantly hoist
French colours, and return the
salutation.

‘The English captain on this,
without further hesitation, gave
me two broadsides, which I re-
ceived, and did not return a
shot—though they killed seven
men—because I was in hopes, if
it was possible to get nearer, to
disable him from leaving me.
Thus I endeavoured to get with-
in musket-shot, desirous that he
might have an opportunity of
showing his courage by board-
ing me, as I could not so well do
the same by him, being to lee-
ward. At last, having approached
by degrees within musket-shot

small an
an hour a
a great n
driven be
sently aft
with their
quarter.
men to c
manded t
their boat
while I m
men leap
seize her,
a surprise.

‘I alread
self in capt
a prize; a
after havin
was the gu
and the lan
English in
be in a cor
man-of-war
and make
My crew w
than mysel
their work
D... ..

beheld it or not, and so confounded as to be unable to judge of what was passing. The reader must figure to himself our horror at two ships blowing up above two hundred fathoms into the air, where there was formed, as it were, a mountain of fire, water, and wreck. The awfulness of the explosion below, and the cannon going off in the air; the rending of the masts and planks; the tearing of the sails and cordage, added to the cries of the men;—these things I say, must be left to the imagination of the reader, and I shall only describe what befell myself.

‘When the ship first took fire, I was on the fore-castle giving orders; and was thus so far up on the deck, that it was the height alone, as I conceive, that saved me from being involved in the wreck of the ships, where I must have infallibly perished. I fell back into the sea, and remained a considerable time under water, without being able to gain the surface. At last, struggling like one afraid of being drowned, I got up and seized a piece of a mast which I found near at hand. I called to some of my men, whom I saw swimming around me, and exhorted them to take courage, as we might yet save ourselves, if we could fall in with any of the boats. What gave me more distress at this moment than even my own misfortune, was seeing two half bodies, still with *some remains of life, rising from time to time to the surface of the*

water, and then disappear, leaving the place dyed with blood. It was equally deplorable to behold many limbs and fragments of bodies, spitted, for the greater part, on fragments of wood. At last, one of my men, having met with a boat, almost entire amidst all the wreck, swimming in the water, informed me that we must stop some holes which were in it, and endeavour to take out the yawl lying on board. Fifteen or sixteen of us, each supported by a piece of wood, nearly reached the boat, and attempted to disengage the yawl; which we at length effected. All then went on board, and after getting there, saved the principal gunner, who had his leg broken in the engagement. Then, taking up three or four oars, or pieces of board for the purpose of oars, we sought out something to make a small mast and a sail; and having prepared all things as well as we possibly could, committed ourselves to the protection of Divine Providence, who could alone give us life and deliverance.

‘Whenever I had done working, I found myself entirely besmeared with blood, flowing from a wound which I had received in my fall. Having washed the wound, we made a dressing out of my handkerchief, and a bandage from my shirt to bind it on. The same was done to the others, who had been also wounded; and, meanwhile, our boat sailed on without making

quantities of water swallowed by them when in the sea. As for myself, I suffered long, and swelled to a surprising degree ; but I ascribe the recovery of my health to a quartan ague which seized me soon after. All my hair, face, and one side of my body were burnt with powder ; and I bled at the mouth, nose, and ears. I know not whether this was the effect of the powder, by swelling up the vessels containing the blood of our bodies, to such an extraordinary extent, that the ends of the veins open and let it out, or whether it is occasioned by the great noise and violent motion in the same organs. But let it happen which way it will, there was no room here for a consultation of physicians, considering that we were dying of hunger ; neither had we time to inquire what became

us with p
‘ One
landed in
eat, and
some oy
branches
of which
us notice.
days, and
three par
the count
and hous
turn the
boat. B
find habit
tions of
We saw n
of buffalo
that we c
near the
spending
ner unsucc
to the bog
resolved to
on the de

a distance from the sea, because all the coast is marshy.

'As soon as we reached Cape Corso, we heard a great noise from the negroes, who came thither to sell wood to the ships lying at anchor in the port. I looked for some one among them whom I might recognise; they having often brought me wood and refreshments in the course of my former voyages, I was in hopes to find some of them who should know me again. But though acquainted with several, it was impossible to persuade them that I was Captain Montauban, so much had my late misfortune disfigured me; and the whole supposed me an impostor. Understanding a little of their language, I told them I was ready to die with famine, and prayed them to give me something to eat; but my requests were vain; so I solicited them to conduct me to Prince Thomas, who was son to the king of the country, in hopes that he might recollect the favours I had formerly shown him. I carried all my people along with me, and first reached the dwellings of negroes, who gave us bananas to eat; and next day arrived at the prince's dwelling. But I was in so poor a condition, that I could not make him recognise me, either by signs or by speaking in his own language, and also Portuguese, which he understood perfectly well. *Formerly, going together to battle, he observed a scar on my thigh, from a wound*

by a musket-ball; and now he said that he must know whether I were truly Captain Montauban; that if I were not, he would cut off my head. He then asked whether I ever had a scar from a musket-shot in my thigh, and on my showing it to him, he embraced me, expressing his sorrow to see me in this condition. He immediately caused victuals to be distributed among my men, and divided them into several habitations, with strict orders to the negroes with whom they were quartered, to treat them with the greatest care; and as for myself, I always lived with him. When I was a little recovered, he promised to conduct me to the king his father, who lived five or six leagues off, that is, ten or twelve from the sea-side. I signified my sense of his consideration, and requested his permission to take my people along with me, and likewise some pieces of clothing, that we might put ourselves in decent attire to appear before so great a prince.

'Three days thereafter we departed in a large canoe, and passed by the river of Cape Lopez; for the country is so full of marshes, that the journey cannot be made by land. The king lived in a village consisting of three hundred huts, covered with palm leaves, where he kept his wives and kindred, and also some other negro families whom he favoured. I was lodged with Prince Thomas, and my men were distributed into other habitations. We found all the people

and veneration, and looked on as a holy man. As the king is in mourning during the whole funeral ceremony, he sees nobody while it lasts; and Prince Thomas desired me not to leave my dwelling to visit him, this being the custom of the nation. Nevertheless, I went to inspect the funeral ceremony, where I beheld nothing except a great concourse of people standing round the dead body. Meantime I was well fed by the orders of the prince, who had gone to visit his father; and so were my people. I was supplied with bananas, elephant's flesh, and river fish. At the termination of the eight days, Prince Thomas returned to carry us before his father, whom I found to be a well-made negro, of large stature, and about fifty years old. To do me the greater honour, he advanced some steps out of his house to meet me, supported by four or five women, and guarded

son the several q greatness my master that he against t whom he Cape Lo Germans were mor the Engli pressed h account, the king o was imma wives with crystal gl began to and wome arm, and that postu drinking. trumpets fl kets, or fusees, we
'On info at his own of France

being very desirous that he should be brought up according to the custom of the country and the court of so great a prince. I also engaged, on my part, that I should not fail to remind him of his promise, the first time I came to the coast of Guinea, that on my return to France I might be able to make the greatest present that could be made to the king, in presenting him with the son of Prince Thomas. "And assure him," said Prince Thomas, "that I am his friend, and that, if he has occasion for my services, I shall myself repair to France, with all the lances and musketry belonging to the king my father;" which was as much as to say, "with the whole force of the kingdom." The king then taking up the discourse, assured me that he would go thither in person if there was need for it; and the whole negro men and women gave a loud shout, which was followed by a general discharge of fire-arms, and a flourish of drums and trumpets, and a kind of sham fight. The meaning of all this I could not comprehend, and it excited some alarm, until I saw the king drink the French king's health, with the same ceremonies as at first; his example was imitated by his son, and all the strangers ordered to do the like. He then ordered two cakes of wax to be brought, which he desired me to accept as a token of his friendship, and retired to his house.

'We visited several villages in

the vicinity, and most of the people, who had never beheld white men, crowded from all quarters to see us, bringing more fruit, and also the flesh of elephants and buffaloes, than we could eat; it was a mark of the greatest consideration to supply us with elephants' flesh, as it is used by themselves at their feasts. Unable to comprehend what occasioned the difference of colour between our faces and their own, they frequently tried whether the white would rub off; and their anxiety in making this experiment was so great as sometimes to hurt us by it. When Prince Thomas observed their proceedings, he commanded that his attendants should suffer none of the rest to rub and scrape us with their fingers in that manner, and told those who came to see us that all strangers were as white as we were; and if negroes went into another country, that their colour would there seem as strange as ours did in Guinea. He was entertained by seeing the people running after us, as if we had been some strange animals, and I know not whether his distress to behold us thus incommoded with their importunities, or his amusement at their folly, predominated.

'At last, after three days' travelling and diversion, the prince carried me back to take leave of his father. The king caressed me greatly, and made me promise to visit him on my first return to Guinea. We then embarked in canoes, and next

... a Portuguese priest, who came in two days. The prince named him Louis le Grand, as he had before declared his intention of doing. A negro woman, one of his relations, stood godmother, and I stood godfather. This woman was called Antonia, and I was told that she had been so named at her baptism by the wife of a Portuguese captain. The ceremony was performed with all the magnificence possible, and such as negroes alone could display.

‘Two or three days afterwards, information came of the arrival of an English ship at Cape Lopez; and I requested the prince’s permission to go on board, that I might return to my own country; but he was unwilling that I should commit myself to the hands of my enemies, and desired me patiently to await the arrival of some Portuguese vessels, in which I should sail. Meantime he went to C-

taken
embark
sailed f
riving t
guese c
whom I
in the
Three d
we reac
vernor c
my men
month t
remain
lish ship
the Gok
and on
with the
offers as
requeste
his ship, a
find very
in Barba
my ailme
with all
notwithst
the island
for being
...

nately lost our rudder in a storm, and were obliged to fit a spare topmast instead of it, which proved very detrimental to a voyage continuing no less than three months. Provisions began to be scarce before our arrival at Barbadoes, so that the allowance was reduced to three-fourths, and they were within three days of being quite exhausted. On reaching the island, the English captain waited on Colonel Russel, the governor, and related my engagement with the man-of-war at Angola, and the consequences attending it; whereupon he was much blamed for carrying me to Barbadoes. When he returned on board, he told me that the governor had prohibited him from allowing me to go on shore, under pain of death. The latter part, however, I did not at first learn from him, and he contented himself with only desiring me not to go ashore, lest it might excite the governor's suspicions. With this I promised punctual compliance, having little desire to see a place which I had known so long ago, and being unwilling to bring the captain into any trouble. Next day, several Jews who had been expelled from Martinique, having heard of my arrival, came on board, and finding me very much indisposed, sent some physicians of their tribe to me, who said that I could not be cured without being *carried ashore*. They offered to solicit the governor's permission for me to live in the

town, and I drew up a petition to him for the same purpose, promising not to stir out of my apartment until embarking again for Martinique. The Jewish physicians were themselves obliged to be security for me, and I was then conducted to the house of Mr. Jacob Lewis, where I was well attended to all the time of my residence.

'Three days after my arrival, Colonel Russel sent a major to see me. He very civilly offered me his protection, and whatever could be conducive to the restoration of my health. Both the major and a captain of the garrison came to visit me from time to time, though, I apprehended, less with the design of learning the state of my health, than to ascertain when I should be in a condition to leave the island. Colonel Russel himself also visited me ten or twelve days after my arrival, to know whether I was as ill as had been reported; and seven or eight days subsequent to that, he came again, and caused me to be conveyed from the Jew's house to that of an English merchant, where, he said, I should find better accommodation. But I thought his design was that I might be more narrowly watched, and prevented from conversing with so many people. He came to see me the day following, when I returned him thanks for the civilities he had shown me; and that he might have no occasion to suspect my men, I prayed

myself fortunate in having fallen
into his hands, adding, however,
that the English captain who
had brought me to Barbadoes,
engaged that neither I nor any
of my men should be detained;
that it was from reliance on his
faith so given, and the tenders
of service he made, I had em-
barked. Then I requested the
governor to grant me and my
men our liberty, promising that
I should ever be mindful of the
favour, either by restoring such
prisoners as I might take, or by
paying him such a ransom as
he required. "No," replied the
governor, "I will neither have
your ransom nor your prisoners;
you are too brave a man for
me not to compassionate your
numerous misfortunes; and I
desire that you will accept of
these forty pistoles to supply
your present necessities."

l
l
t
w
a
h
u
m
en
bu
tw
go
me
kne
bec
'
late
Ble
livin
peri
and
give
gag
of-v

to serve every one, and felt for the misfortunes of those who were persecuted by fate, as I had been ; who offered a favour before it was asked, who was endowed with courage, and skilful in maritime affairs, and in high esteem with the king for his integrity, wisdom, justice, as also the service he had rendered to his country.

‘The day after the death of M. Blenac, I embarked in the *Virgin*, a vessel belonging to Bordeaux, and had a quick passage thither. I arrived, impressed with many and contradictory sentiments. I know not whether I have bid adieu

to the sea, or whether I shall go out again to be revenged on the English, who have done me so much mischief ; whether I shall traverse the ocean in quest of a little wealth, or rest in quiet, and consume what my relations have left me. Men have a strange propensity to undertake voyages, just as they have to gaming. Whatever adversity befalls them, they trust that at length prosperity will come, and therefore they continue to play on ; so it is with us at sea ; for whatever accident we meet with, we hope for some opportunity to indemnify our losses.’

CHAPTER VI.

ADVENTURES OF NINE MEN IN AN OPEN BOAT IN THE ARCTIC SEAS.

‘We sailed from Plymouth under convoy of his Majesty’s ship *St. Alban’s*, and two other ships of war, together with a fleet of merchantmen bound to the Mediterranean, having a fresh gale at north-east. The wind still continuing, we kept company with the fleet until reaching 120 leagues to the westward : then judging ourselves clear of privateers, we proceeded on our voyage. But before gaining 300 leagues, on the 17th of March 1706, we came up with an English-built ship of about 200 tons, carrying twelve guns, and sailing under a jury mainmast. On our approach she hoisted

English colours ; and on being hailed, told us she belonged to London, and was now bound from Virginia homewards ; which seemed probable, as many tame fowl were on board ; and a red bird flew from her to us.

‘Our captain seeing the vessel disabled, desired her to bring to ; saying, if anything was wanted on board we would hoist out our boat and carry it thither ; but this was obstinately refused. The captain declared that our boat should not approach, and unless we kept farther off, he would fire into us. This induced suspicion on our part ; therefore we ran up

creasing, raised a great sea, which forced our ship under reefed mainsail, whence we could not hoist out our boat without endangering our own lives. However, by means of a light which she carried, we kept close to her, intending to hoist out our boat when it became practicable. But towards midnight her light became very low; and by a loud cry, which was heard about one o'clock, we judged that she had foundered. When the vessel struck, she told us that she had fourteen Frenchmen on board, whence we conjectured her to be an English Virginian taken by the French, and that she had lost her mainmast in the engagement. We followed her, chasing and fighting, about thirty leagues; and when she struck, we were

we must submit patiently to it. But amidst this disaster, it pleased God to put it into the thoughts of some of us, that several might be preserved in the boat; whence the captain was entreated to hoist her out, and permit a few to venture in her. The captain answered, that although God could work wonders, it was improbable that so small a boat could preserve us; that it was but living a few days longer in misery; and seeing God had cast this calamity to his lot, he resolved to take his chance, and die with his men. Nevertheless, being much importuned, he ordered the boat out, and William Saunders and five others into her; and that the men might not suspect their design, it was given out that the boat should go ahead to tow the ship clear of the ice. How likely that was the reader may judge, there being but one oar, as all the rest were broken by defending the ship from the ice. However, the purpose advanced. The boat being out, and finding no effect produced in towing the ship, fell astern, intending to take in the captain and as many as it could safely carry, while some were preparing necessities for a miserable voyage. A compass, and other things ready, were conveyed into it.

‘The captain, doctor, and several others got out at the cabin windows and galleries, myself among the rest, intending, if possible, to get into

the boat; but being discovered by the men, they took small arms, and kept off the boat, resolving, as she could not preserve all, that the whole should perish together. This design being frustrated, every one, except myself and William Langmead, got into the ship again; but we were so low, that we could not recover ourselves. No person coming to relieve us, we were at length forced to let go our hold, and trust to the mercy of those in the boat, who, seeing us swimming towards them, hove out a rope, and took us in.

‘We were now eight in number in the boat; and willing to save our captain, lay hovering about the ship till night; but the men persisting in their resolution, fired at the boat, and kept her off. We began to seek shelter as night approached; and having gone among the shattered ice, made fast our boat to a small lump, and drove with it; and as we came foul of great ice, we removed and made fast to another piece, and so continued during the remainder of the night. Looking around in the morning, the ship was seen about three leagues to the eastward, in the same position as we had left her; whereon a consultation was held whether or not we should return, and make another attempt to save the captain, and as many more as possible. This proposal, however, was negatived, every one alleging that the men would

... to persuade them that the ship still swam buoyantly, that I hoped the leak was stopped, and that we might proceed on our voyage; but this was unavailing. When I saw myself unable to prevail thus, I desired them to row up and set me on that part of the ice next the ship, whence I could walk to her, and die with my commander. This being unanimously agreed to, we rowed to the ice; but when we reached it, I was loth to go out. However, on calling the captain to us, Mr. John Maddick came instead, and after him the doctor and some others, which the captain perceiving, came also. The captain having left the ship, the multitude crowded so eagerly after him, that we had like to have spoiled all; but by chance the boat was got off. with
twenty-one

we lay eleven days without once seeing the sea. As the ice was thick, we caught as many seals as we chose ; for they were in great abundance. Our fire was made of the skin, and the fat melted so easily, that we could boil the lean with it. But by lying so long in this cold region, the men began to complain of their feet; and our boat being too small to afford room for us all, there was always a hideous cry among us of hurting each other, though for this there was no remedy. We kept watch six and six, both for convenience of obtaining room, and to guard against the ice breaking under our boat, which often happened, and then it was necessary to launch, or carry her to a place which we thought strong enough to bear her weight. In eleven days we saw the sea, and with great difficulty got out the boat. We sailed about ten or twelve leagues north-north-west as before, when we were again enclosed ; and this was repeated five several times. The last ice, however, was worse than any before ; and although it was so thick that we could not force the boat through it, yet it was not so solid as to bear the weight of a man ; therefore, notwithstanding we daily saw enough of seals, we could take none. It fortunately happened that, when we parted from the hard ice, we had seven seals in store, and one that we took dead, which was consumed without consulting how it had died.

We were next reduced to short allowance, having only one among us to serve two days, which, with about three ounces of flour, mixed with water, and boiled in the fat of the seal, was all our provision. At length we were obliged to share both feet and skin, each of us allowing a little fat to make a fire. But being constrained to eat the whole, skin and bone also, scarcely boiled, it injured our stomachs so much, that some of our number died, and I myself suffered severely.

‘ On getting clear of the loose ice, when the wind was so adverse as to prevent our rowing, we made fast the boat to an island of ice until better weather. Although this sheltered us, we were often in great danger from the islands driving foul of us, so that it was wonderful we escaped. We drank the ice mixed with brandy ; and our provisions, with good management, lasted until coming ashore ; for it pleased God to save some of us by taking others to Himself. Our companions began to die two or three in a day, until we were at last reduced to nine. The feet of several who died were bit in such a manner by the frost, that on stripping them,—which was done to give the clothes to the survivors,—their toes came away with the stockings. The last that died was the boatswain, who lived until the day before we saw land. Our compass was broken by the last field of ice through

boat

On the 24th of April we arrived at Baccalew, and thence repaired to the Bay of Verds, in Newfoundland; here we found three men providing for a fishing voyage, who carried us to their house, and gave us such things as they had. But they being indifferently stored, and unable to maintain us, we determined to go to St John's, notwithstanding some of us were so much frost-bitten as to be obliged to be carried to the boat. Before getting to Cape St. Francis, however, the wind veered to the south-west, which compelled us to row all night. In the morning we reached Portugal Cove, where, to our

on deck, and suddenly drawing out pistols and brandishing cutlasses, demanded the surrender both of ourselves and our vessel. All remonstrance was vain; nor, indeed, had we known who they were before boarding us, could we have made any effectual resistance, being only five men and a boy, and were thus under the necessity of submitting at discretion. We were not single in misfortune, as thirteen or fourteen fishing vessels were in like manner surprised the same evening.

'When carried on board the brigantine, I found myself in the hands of Ned Low, an infamous pirate, whose vessel had two great guns, four swivels, and about forty-two men. I was strongly urged to sign the articles of agreement among the pirates, and to join their number, which I steadily refused, and suffered much bad usage in consequence. At length, being conducted along with five of the prisoners to the quarter-deck, Low came up to us with pistols in his hands, and loudly demanded, "Are any of you married men?" This unexpected question, added to the sight of the pistols, struck us all speechless; we were alarmed lest there was some secret meaning in his words, and that he would proceed to extremities; therefore none could reply. In a violent passion he cocked a pistol, and clapping it to my head, cried out, "*You dog! why don't you answer?*" swearing vehemently

at the same time that he would shoot me through the head. I was sufficiently terrified by his threats and fierceness; but rather than lose my life in so trifling a matter, I ventured to pronounce, as loud as I durst speak, that I was not married. Hereupon he seemed to be somewhat pacified, and turned away. It appeared that Low was resolved to take no married men whatever, which often seemed surprising to me, until I had been a considerable time with him. But his own wife had died lately, before he became a pirate, and he had a young child at Boston, for whom he entertained such tenderness, that at every lucid interval from drinking and revelling, on mentioning it, I have seen him sit down and weep plentifully. Thus I concluded that his reason for taking only single men, was probably that they might have no ties such as wives and children to divert them from his service, and render them desirous of returning home.

'The pirates finding force of no avail in compelling us to join them, began to use persuasion instead. They tried to flatter me into compliance, by setting before me the share I should have in their spoils, and the riches which I should become master of, and all the time eagerly importuned me to drink along with them. But I still continued to resist their proposals; whereupon Low, with equal fury as before, threatened

They changed the Privateer, as they called their vessel, and went into a new schooner belonging to Marblehead, which they had captured. They then put all the prisoners whom they designed sending home, on board of the brigantine, and sent her to Boston; this induced me to make another unsuccessful attempt for liberty; but though I fell on my knees before Low, he refused to let me go. Thus I saw the brigantine depart with all the captives, excepting myself and seven more. A short time before she departed I had nearly effected my escape; for a dog belonging to Low being accidentally left on shore, he ordered some hands into a boat to bring it off. Thereupon two young men, captives, both belonging to Marblehead, readily leaped into the boat; and I, considering that if I could once get on shore, means might be

c
n
k
s

to
la
of
sai
gun
int
nec
the
the
leag
nam
pink
men
that
got
rush
the
cabi
serv
leap
port
to fo

what above the water. As the ship overset, the people got from the shrouds and yards upon the hull; and as the hull went down, they again resorted to the rigging rising a little out of the sea. Being an indifferent swimmer, I was reduced to great extremity; for along with other light lads, I had been sent up to the maintop-gallant yard; and the people of a boat, who were now occupied in preserving the men, refusing to take me in, I was compelled to attempt reaching the buoy. This I luckily accomplished, and as it was large, secured myself there until the boat approached. I once more requested the people to take me in, but they still refused, as the boat was full. I was uncertain whether they designed leaving me to perish in this situation; however, the boat being deeply laden, made way very slowly, and one of my own comrades, captured at the same time with myself, calling to me to forsake the buoy and swim towards her, I assented, and reaching the boat, he drew me on board. Two men, John Bell and Zana Gourdon, were lost in the pink. Though the schooner in company was very near at hand, her people were employed mending their sails under an awning, and knew nothing of the accident until the boat full of men got alongside.

'The pirates having thus lost their principal vessel, and the greatest part of their provisions and water, were reduced to great

extremities for want of the latter. They were unable to get a supply at the Triangles, nor, on account of calms and currents, could they make the island of Tobago. Thus they were forced to stand for Grenada, which they reached, after being on short allowance for sixteen days together. Grenada was a French settlement; and Low on arriving, after having sent all his men below, except a sufficient number to manœuvre the vessel, said he was from Barbadoes, that he had lost the water on board, and was obliged to put in there for a supply. The people entertained no suspicion of his being a pirate; but afterwards supposing him a smuggler, thought it a good opportunity to make a prize of his vessel. Next day, therefore, they equipped a large sloop of seventy tons and four guns, with about thirty hands, as sufficient for the capture, and came alongside, while Low was quite unsuspecting of their design. But this being evidently betrayed by their number and actions, he quickly called ninety men on deck; and having eight guns mounted, the French sloop became an easy prey. Provided with these two vessels, the pirates cruised about in the West Indies, taking seven or eight prizes, and at length arrived at the island of Santa Cruz, where they captured two more. While lying there, Low thought he stood in need of a medicine chest; and in order to

and burn the vessels. In little more than twenty-four hours the Frenchmen returned with the object of their mission, and Low punctually performed his promise by restoring the vessels.

‘Having sailed for the Spanish American settlements, the pirates descried two large ships, about half way between Cartagena and Portobello, which proved to be the *Mermaid*, an English man-of-war, and a Guineaman. They approached in chase, but discovering the man-of-war’s great range of teeth, they immediately put about, and made the best of their way off. The man-of-war then commenced the pursuit, and gained upon them apace: and I confess that my terrors were now equal to any that I had previously suffered; for I concluded that we should cer-

g
e
s
c
tl
tu
la
ir
a
li
p
tc
ot
tc
P
th

isl
or
th
B
bc
cl
tw
an

and then deliver ourselves up to government. Although our plot was carried on with all possible privacy, Spriggs had somehow or other got intelligence of it; and having fallen in with Low on the voyage, went on board his ship to make a furious declaration against us. But Low made little account of his information, otherwise it might have been fatal to most of our number. Spriggs, however, returned raging to the schooner, exclaiming that four of us should go forward to be shot; and to me in particular he said, "You dog, Ashton, you deserve to be hanged up to the yard-arm for designing to cut us off." I replied, that I had no intention of injuring any man on board, but I should be glad if they would allow me to go away quietly. At length this flame was quenched, and through the goodness of God I escaped destruction.

'Roatan harbour, like all about the Bay of Honduras, is full of small islands, which pass under the general name of "keys;" and having got in here, Low, with some of his chief men, landed on a small island, which they called "Port Royal Key." There they erected huts, and continued carousing, drinking, and firing, while the different vessels of which they now had possession were repairing. On Saturday, the 9th of March 1723, the cooper and six hands were going ashore in the long-boat for water; and coming alongside of

the schooner, I requested to be of the party. The cooper hesitated; I urged that I had never hitherto been ashore, and thought it hard to be so closely confined, when every one besides had the liberty of landing when there was occasion. Low had before told me, on requesting to be sent away in some of the captured vessels which he dismissed, that I should go home when he did, and swore that I should never previously set my foot on land. But now I considered, if I could possibly once get on *terra firma*, though in ever so bad circumstances, I should count it a happy deliverance, and resolved never to embark again. The cooper at length took me into the long-boat; Low and his chief people were on a different island from Roatan, where the watering-place lay. My only clothing was an Osnaburgh frock and trousers, a milled cap, but neither shirt, shoes, stockings, nor anything else.

'When we first landed, I was very active in assisting to get the casks out of the boat, and in rolling them to the watering-place. Then, taking a hearty draught of water, I strolled along the beach, picking up stones and shells; on reaching the distance of musket-shot from the party, I began to withdraw towards the skirts of the woods. In answer to a question by the cooper, as to whither I was going, I replied, "For coconuts," as some cocoa-trees were

loudly, and I therefore hid in a thicket where I knew they could not find me. After my comrades had filled their casks and were about to depart, the cooper called on me to accompany them; however, I lay snug in the thicket, and gave him no answer, though his words were plain enough. At length, after hallooing, I could hear them say to one another, "The dog is lost in the woods, and cannot find the way out again;" then they hallooed once more, and cried, "He has run away, and won't come to us;" and the cooper observed, that had he known my intention, he would not have brought me ashore. Satisfied of their inability to find me among the trees and bushes, the cooper at last, to show his kindness, exclaimed, "If you do not come away

north latitude. But I soon found that my only companions would be the beasts of the earth and the fowls of the air; for there were no indications of any habitations on the island, though every now and then I found some shreds of earthenware scattered in a lime walk, said by some to be the remains of Indians formerly dwelling here.

‘The island was well watered, full of high hills and deep valleys. Numerous fruit trees, such as figs, vines, and coconuts, are found in the latter; and I found a kind larger than an orange, oval-shaped, of a brownish colour without, and red within. Though many of these had fallen under the trees, I could not venture to take them, until I saw the wild hogs feeding with safety, and then I found them very delicious fruit. Stores of provisions abounded here, though I could avail myself of nothing but the fruit; for I had no knife or iron implement, either to cut up a tortoise on turning it, or weapons wherewith to kill animals; nor had I any means of making a fire to cook my capture, even if I were successful. Sometimes I entertained thoughts of digging pits, and covering them over with small branches of trees, for the purpose of taking hogs or deer; but I wanted a shovel and every substitute for the purpose, and I was soon convinced that my hands were insufficient to make a cavity deep

enough to retain what should fall into it. Thus I was forced to rest satisfied with fruit, which was to be esteemed very good provision for any one in my condition. In process of time, while poking among the sand with a stick in quest of tortoises’ eggs,—which I had heard were laid in the sand,—part of one came up adhering to it; and on removing the sand, I found nearly a hundred and fifty, which had not lain long enough to spoil. Therefore, taking some, I ate them, and strung others on a strip of palmetto, which, being hung up in the sun, became thick and somewhat hard, so that they were more palatable. After all, they were not very savoury food; yet, having nothing but what fell from the trees, I remained contented. Tortoises lay their eggs in the sand, in holes about a foot or a foot and a half deep, and smooth the surface over them, so that there is no discovering where they lie. According to the best of my observation, the young are hatched in eighteen or twenty days, and then immediately take to the water.

‘Many serpents are on this and the adjacent islands; one, about twelve or fourteen feet long, is as large as a man’s waist, but not poisonous. When lying at length, they look like old trunks of trees covered with short moss, though they more usually assume a circular position. The first time I saw one of these serpents, I had

his life would be oppressive to him, unless for the possibility of retiring to some small key, destitute of wood and bushes, where multitudes are dispersed by the wind.

‘To this place, then, was I confined during nine months, without seeing a human being. One day after another was lingered out, I know not how, void of occupation or amusement, except collecting food, rambling from hill to hill and from island to island, and gazing on sky and water. Although my mind was occupied by many regrets, I had the reflection that I was lawfully employed when taken, so that I had no hand in bringing misery on myself; I was also comforted to think that I had the approbation and consent of my parents in going to sea; and I trusted that it would please God, in His own time and manner, to provide for my return.

largest :
that I
those hu
me, gen
with the
sea to h
and the
breeze,
and the
the insect
that I th
to get
adjacent
joying re
as already
swimmer
any near
length, h
bamboo,
a reed, a
ventured,
with it u
arms, to j
about a
I reached

‘My ne
only about

obliged to be much on Roatan, to procure food and water, and at night, on account of my hut. When swimming backward and forward between the two islands, I used to bind my frock and trousers about my head; and if I could have carried over wood and leaves whereof to make a hut with equal facility, I should have passed more of my time on the smaller one. Yet these excursions were not unattended with danger. Once I remember, when passing from the larger island, the bamboo, before I was aware, slipped from under me, and the tide or current set down so strong, that it was with great difficulty I could reach the shore. At another time, when swimming over to the small island, a shovel-nosed shark—which, as well as alligators, abound in those seas—struck me in the thigh just as my foot could reach the bottom, and grounded itself, from the shallowness of the water, as I suppose, so that its mouth could not get round towards me. The blow I felt some hours after making the shore. By repeated practice, I at length became a pretty dexterous swimmer, and amused myself by passing from one island to another among the keys.

‘I suffered very much from being barefoot, so many deep wounds being made in my feet from traversing the woods, where the ground was covered with sticks and stones, and on the

hot beach, over sharp, broken shells, that I was scarce able to walk at all. Often, when treading with all possible caution, a stone or shell on the beach, or a pointed stick in the woods, would penetrate the old wound, and the extreme anguish would strike me down, as suddenly as if I had been shot. Then I would remain for hours together, with tears gushing from my eyes from the acuteness of the pain. I could travel no more than absolute necessity compelled me in quest of subsistence; and I have sat, my back leaning against a tree, looking out for a vessel during a complete day. Once, while faint from such injuries, as well as smarting under the pain of them, a wild boar rushed towards me. I knew not what to do, for I had not strength to resist his attack; therefore, as he drew nearer, I caught the bough of a tree, and half suspended myself by means of it. The boar tore away part of my ragged trousers with his tusks, and then left me. This, I think, was the only time that I was attacked by any wild beast; and I considered myself to have had a very great deliverance. As my weakness continued to increase, I often fell to the ground insensible, and then, as also when I laid myself to sleep, I thought I should never wake again or rise in life. Under this affliction I first lost count of the days of the week: I could not distinguish Sunday; and as

neither had I fire; for though I had heard of a way to procure it by rubbing two sticks together, my attempts in this respect, continued until I was tired, proved abortive. The rains having come on, attended with chill winds, I suffered exceedingly. While passing nine months in this lonely, melancholy, and irksome condition, my thoughts would sometimes wander to my parents; and I reflected, that notwithstanding it would be consolatory to myself if they knew where I was, it might be distressing to them. The nearer my prospect of death, which I often expected, the greater my penitence became.

'Some time in November 1723, I descried a small canoe approaching with a single man; but the sight excited little emotion. I kept my seat on the beach, thinking I could not expect a friend, and knowing that I had no arms.

me. I be a n he was of a gra and of a name I not disc inquired our acq formed i two yea who no him, the what cri fled hith ing his c tion, as a pork, alo signed sp of his day he could hunting. kindness was alwa any civil in whate he spoke

which I now enjoyed, and dressed provisions, my weakness, and the soreness of my feet, prevented me; therefore he set out alone, saying he would return in a few hours. The sky was serene, and there was no prospect of any danger during a short excursion, seeing he had come nearly twelve leagues in safety in his canoe. But when he had been absent about an hour, a violent gust of wind and rain arose, in which he probably perished, as I never heard of him more. Thus, after having the pleasure of a companion almost three days, I was reduced to my former lonely state as unexpectedly as I had been relieved from it. Yet through God's goodness I was myself preserved, from having been unable to accompany him, and I was left in better circumstances than those in which he had found me; for now I had about five pounds of pork, a knife, a bottle of gunpowder, tobacco, tongs, and flint, by which means my life could be rendered more comfortable. I was enabled to have fire, extremely requisite at this time, being the rainy months of winter: I could cut up a tortoise, and have a delicate broiled meal. Thus, by the help of the fire and dressed provisions, through the blessing of God I began to recover strength, though the soreness of my feet remained. But I had, besides, the advantage of being able now and then to catch a dish of *cray-fish*, which when roasted

proved good eating. To accomplish this I made up a small bundle of old broken sticks, nearly resembling pitch-pine or candle-wood, and having lighted one end, waded with it in my hand up to the waist in water. The *cray-fish*, attracted by the light, would crawl to my feet, and lie directly under it, when, by means of a forked stick, I could toss them ashore.

'Between two and three months after the time of losing my companion, I found a small canoe while ranging along the shore. The sight of it revived my regret for his loss; for I judged that it had been his canoe, and from being washed up here, a certain proof of his having been lost in the tempest. But on examining it more narrowly, I satisfied myself that it was one which I had never seen before. Master of this little vessel, I began to think myself admiral of the neighbouring seas, as well as sole possessor and chief commander of the islands. Profiting by its use, I could transport myself to the places of retreat, more conveniently than by my former expedient of swimming. In process of time I projected an excursion to some of the larger and more distant islands, partly to learn how they were stored or inhabited, and partly for the sake of amusement. Laying in a stock of figs and grapes, therefore, as also some tortoise to eat, and carrying my implements for fire, I put off to steer for the island of Bonacco, which is

rocks ran far into the sea, beyond which I did not care to venture in the canoe, as was necessary to come ahead of the sloop, and because I wished to ascertain something concerning her people before I was discovered. Even in my worst circumstances, I never could brook the thoughts of returning on board of any piratical vessel, and resolved rather to live and die in my present situation. Hauling up the canoe, and making it fast as well as I was able, I set out on the journey. My feet were yet in such a state, that two days and the best part of two nights were occupied in it. Sometimes the woods and bushes were so thick, that it was necessary to crawl half a mile together on my hands and knees, which rendered my progress very slow. When within a mile or two of the place where I supposed the sloop might lie, I made for the water.

large ca
upon m
I soon
among t
sore fee
the mer
cried aft
we will g
Howeve
so great,
roused fi
no self-c
their offe
may be, i
cooler m
done. I
woods, a
tinued fir
number o
many of
off the bu
Having
thicket b
shot, I la
until, obs
of their o
were depa

or seven shot in the trunk, within a foot or less of my head. Yet, through the wonderful goodness of God, though having been as a mark to shoot at, I was preserved.

‘After this I travelled to recover my canoe at the western end of the island, which I reached in three days, but suffering severely from the soreness of my feet and the scantiness of provision. This island is not so plentifully stored as Roatan, so that, during the five or six days of my residence, I had difficulty in procuring subsistence; and the insects were, besides, infinitely more numerous and harassing than at my old habitation. These circumstances deterred me from further exploring the island; and having reached the canoe very tired and exhausted, I put off for Roatan, which was a royal palace to me compared with Bonacco, and arrived at night in safety. Here I lived, if it may be called living, alone for about seven months after losing my North British companion. My time was spent in the usual manner, hunting for food, and ranging among the islands.

‘Some time in June 1724, while on the small key, whither I often retreated to be free from the annoyance of insects, I saw two canoes making for the harbour. Approaching nearer, they observed the smoke of a fire which I had kindled, and at a loss to know what it meant, they hesitated to advance.

What I had experienced at Bonacco was still fresh in my memory; and loth to run the risk of such another firing, I withdrew to my canoe, lying behind the key not above 100 yards distant, and immediately rowed over to Roatan. There I had places of safety against an enemy, and sufficient accommodation for any ordinary number of friends. The people in the canoes observed me cross the sea to Roatan, the passage not exceeding a gunshot over; and being as much afraid of pirates as I was of Spaniards, approached very cautiously towards the shore. I then came down to the beach, showing myself openly; for their conduct led me to think that they could not be pirates, and I resolved, before being exposed to the danger of their shot, to inquire who they were. If they proved such as I did not like, I could easily retire. But before I spoke, they, as full of apprehension as I could be, lay on their oars, and demanded who I was, and whence I came; to which I replied, “that I was an Englishman, and had run away from pirates.” On this they drew somewhat nearer, inquiring who was there besides myself; when I assured them in return that I was alone. Next, according to my original purpose, having put similar questions to them, they said they had come from the Bay of Honduras. Their words encouraged me to bid them row ashore, which they

took me by the hand, and we began embracing each other, he from surprise and wonder, and I from a sort of ecstasy of joy. When this was over, he took me in his arms, and carried me down to the canoes, where all his comrades were struck with astonishment at my appearance; but they gladly received me, and I experienced great tenderness from them.

‘I gave the strangers a brief account of my escape from Low, and my lonely residence for sixteen months, all excepting three days, the hardships I had suffered, and the dangers to which I had been exposed. They stood amazed at the recital. They wondered I was alive, and expressed much satisfaction at being able to relieve me. Observing me very weak and depressed, they gave me about a spoonful of rum to recruit my fainting spirits; but even this small quantity, from my long disuse of strong

cause of them. An alarm at a time by the Spaniards while the Indian descent by land bay; thus they had On a former occasion persons above the like reason among these is four years at a one named Bar leagues from they had two they called the brought two with other prodogs for hunting tortoises; and woman to dress Their principal small key, about mile round, ly barat, and nar “Castle of Cor cause it was l wood and bus free circulation

sides having company, the strangers treated me with a great deal of civility in their way; they clothed me, and gave me a large wrapping-gown as a defence against the nightly dews, until their houses were covered; and there was plenty of provisions. Yet, after all, they were bad society; and as to their common conversation, there was little difference between them and pirates. However, it did not appear that they were now engaged in any such evil design as rendered it unlawful to join them, or be found in their company. In process of time, and with the assistance afforded by my companions, I gathered so much strength as sometimes to be able to hunt along with them. The islands abounded with wild hogs, deer, and tortoise; and different ones were visited in quest of game. This was brought home, where, instead of being immediately consumed, it was hung up to dry in smoke, so as to be a ready supply at all times: I now considered myself beyond the reach of danger from an enemy; for independent of supposing that nothing could bring any one here, I was surrounded by a number of men with arms constantly in their hands. Yet, at the very time that I thought myself most secure, I was very nearly again falling into the hands of pirates.

'Six or seven months after the strangers joined me, three of them along with myself took

a four-oared canoe, for the purpose of hunting and killing tortoise on Bonacco. During our absence the rest repaired their canoes, and prepared to go over to the Bay of Honduras, to examine how matters stood there, and bring off their remaining effects, in case it were dangerous to return. But before they had departed, we were on our voyage homewards, having a full load of pork and tortoise, as our object was successfully accomplished. While entering the mouth of the harbour in a moonlight evening, we saw a great flash, and heard a report, much louder than that of a musket, proceed from a large periagua which we observed near the "Castle of Comfort." This put us in extreme consternation, and we knew not what to consider; but in a minute or two we heard a volley from eighteen or twenty small arms discharged towards the shore, and also some returned from it. Satisfied that an enemy, either Spaniards or pirates, was attacking our people, and being intercepted from them by periaguas lying between us and the shore, we thought the safest plan was trying to escape. Therefore, taking down our little mast and sail, that they might not betray us, we rowed out of the harbour as fast as possible, towards an island about a mile and a half distant, trusting to retreat undiscovered. But the enemy, having either seen us before lowering our sail, or heard the noise of the oars, followed with

canoe: nevertheless, we contrived to reach the shore before being completely within the range of small arms, which our pursuers discharged on us while landing. They were now near enough to cry aloud that they were pirates, and not Spaniards, and that we need not dread them, as we should get good quarter, thence supposing that we should be the easier induced to surrender. Yet nothing could have been said to discourage me more from putting myself in their power. I had the utmost dread of a pirate; and my original aversion was now enhanced by the apprehension of being sacrificed for my former desertion. Thus, concluding to keep as clear of them as I could, and the Honduras Bay men having no great inclination to do otherwise, we made the best of our way to the woods. Our pursuers carried off the canoe and all its contents, except the five

kept a good look-out, but were exposed to some difficulties from not daring to kindle a fire to dress our victuals, lest our residence should be betrayed. Thus we lived for five days on raw provisions. As soon as they sailed, however, Hope, little regarding the oath extorted from him, came and informed us of what had passed; and I could not, for my own part, be sufficiently grateful to Providence for escaping the hands of the pirates, who would have put me to a cruel death.

‘Hope, and all his people, except John Symonds, now resolved to make their way to the Bay. Symonds, who had a negro, wished to remain some time, for the purpose of trading with the Jamaica men on the main. But thinking my best chance of getting to New England was from the Bay of Honduras, I requested Hope to take me with him. The old man, though he would have gladly done so, advanced many objections, such as the insufficiency of the flat to carry so many men seventy leagues; that they had no provision for the passage, which might be tedious, and the flat was, besides, ill calculated to stand the sea; as also, that it was uncertain how matters might turn out at the Bay. Thus he thought it better for me to remain; yet, rather than I should be in solitude, he would take me in. Symonds, on the other hand, urged me to stay and bear him company, and gave seve-

ral reasons, why I should more likely obtain a passage from the Jamaica men to New England, than by the Bay of Honduras. As this seemed a fairer prospect of reaching my home, which I was extremely anxious to do, I assented; and having thanked Hope and his companions for their civilities, I took leave of them, and they departed. Symonds was provided with a canoe, fire-arms, and two dogs, in addition to his negro, by which means he felt confident of being able to provide all that was necessary for our subsistence. We spent two or three months after the usual manner, ranging from island to island; but the prevalence of the winter rains precluded us from obtaining more game than we required.

‘When the season for the Jamaica traders approached, Symonds proposed repairing to some other islands, to obtain a quantity of tortoise-shell, which he could exchange for clothes and shoes; and being successful in this respect, we next proceeded to Bonacco, which lies nearer the main, that we might thence take a favourable opportunity to run over. Having been a short time at Bonacco, a furious tempest arose, and continued for three days, when we saw several vessels standing in for the harbour. The largest of them anchored at a great distance, but a brigantine came over the shoals opposite to the watering-place, and sent her boat ashore with casks. Recognising three

who I was, I put the same ques-
 tion, saying they might come
 ashore with safety. They did
 so, and a happy meeting it was
 for me. I now found that the
 vessels were a fleet under convoy
 of the *Diamond* man-of-war,
 bound for Jamaica; but many
 ships had parted company in
 the storm. The *Diamond* had
 sent in the brigantine to get
 water here, as the sickness of
 her crew had occasioned a great
 consumption of that necessary
 article. Symonds, who had kept
 at a distance, lest the three
 men might hesitate to come
 ashore, at length approached to
 participate in my joy, though,
 at the same time, testifying con-
 siderable reluctance at the pros-
 pect of my leaving him. The
 brigantine was commanded by
 Captain Dove, with whom I was
 acquainted, and she belonged to

me
 bo.
 the
 tak
 she
 can
 tine
 ' *Dia*
Jan
Ma
 unt
 prov
 safe
 and
 the
 mon
 was
 two
 after
 them
 same
 fathe
 ceive
 dead

eight successive days after they had sailed the wind was fair; but on the ninth it changed, so that, instead of getting to the west of Spitzbergen, the usual place of rendezvous for the Dutch ships, and those of other nations annually employed in the whale fishery, they were driven eastward from those islands; and after some days, they found themselves at a short distance from one of them, called East Spitzbergen.

Having approached this island within about three versts, or two English miles, their vessel was suddenly surrounded by ice, and they found themselves in an extremely dangerous situation. In this alarming state, a consultation was held, when the mate, Alexis Himkof, declared he recollected he had heard that some of the people of Meseu, having some time before formed a resolution of wintering on this island, had accordingly carried from that town timber proper for building a hut, and had actually erected one at some distance from the shore. This information induced the whole company to resolve on wintering there, if, as they hoped, the hut still existed; for they clearly perceived the imminent danger in which they were, and that they must inevitably perish if they continued in the ship. They therefore despatched four of the crew in search of the hut, or any other succour they could meet with. These were Alexis Himkof the mate, *Ivan Himkof his god-son, Stephen Scharapof, and Feoder Weregin.*

As the shore on which they were to land was uninhabited, it was necessary that they should make some provision for their expedition. They had almost two miles to travel over loose bridges of ice, which, being raised by the waves, and driven against each other by the wind, rendered the way equally difficult and dangerous. Prudence, therefore, forbade their loading themselves too much, lest, being overburdened, they might sink between the pieces of ice, and perish. Having thus maturely considered the nature of their undertaking, they provided themselves with a musket, a powder-horn containing twelve charges of powder, with as many balls, an axe, a small kettle, a bag with about twenty pounds of flour, a knife, a tinder-box and tinder, a bladder filled with tobacco, and every man his wooden pipe. Thus equipped, these four sailors arrived on the island, little suspecting the misfortune that was about to befall them. The first thing they did was to explore the country; and they soon discovered the hut they were in search of, about a mile and a half from the shore. It was thirty-six feet in length, eighteen in breadth, and as many high. It contained a small ante-chamber, about twelve feet broad, which had two doors, one to shut out the exterior air, the other to communicate with the inner room. This contributed greatly to keep the larger room warm when once heated. In the large room was an earthen stove, con-

sleep upon.

This discovery gave our adventurers great joy. The hut had, however, suffered much from the weather, having now been built a considerable time. They passed the night in it, and early the next morning hastened to the shore, impatient to inform their comrades of their success, and also to procure from the vessel such provisions, ammunition, and other necessities as might better enable the crew to winter on the island. Their astonishment and agony of mind when, on reaching the place where they had landed, they saw nothing but an open sea free from ice, which but the day before had covered the ocean, may more easily be conceived than described. A violent storm which had arisen during the preceding night, had been the cause of this disastrous event. But they could not tell

t
t
s
e
in
o
n
c
h
p
d
is

th
sa
ag
m
of
fr
in
ea
ar
so
m
ve
gr
ov

those climates habitable to so few species of animals, renders them equally unfit for the production of vegetables. No species of tree or even shrub is found on any of the islands of Spitzbergen, a circumstance of the most alarming nature to our sailors. Without fire it was impossible to resist the severity of the climate, and without wood, how was that fire to be produced & supported? Providence has, however, so ordered it, that in this particular the sea supplies the defects of the land. In wandering along the beach they collected plenty of wood, which had been driven ashore by the waves. It consisted at first of the wrecks of ships, and afterwards of whole trees with their roots, the produce of some more hospitable, but to them unknown country.

During the first year of their exile, nothing proved of more essential service to these unfortunate men, than some boards they found on the beach, having a long iron hook, some nails about five or six inches in length and proportionably thick, together with other pieces of old iron fixed in them, the melancholy relics of vessels cast away in those remote parts. These were thrown on shore by the waves, at a time when the want of powder gave our men reason to apprehend that they must fall a prey to hunger, as they had nearly consumed the reindeer they had killed. This circumstance was succeeded by

another equally fortunate: they found on the shore the root of a fir-tree, which nearly approached to the figure of a bow.

As necessity has ever been the mother of invention, they with the help of a knife soon converted this root into a good bow; but they still wanted a string and arrows. Not knowing how to procure these at present, they resolved upon making a couple of lances to defend themselves against the white bears, the attacks of which animals, by far the most ferocious of their kind, they had great reason to dread. Finding they could not make the heads of their lances or of their arrows without the help of a hammer, they contrived to form the large iron hook, mentioned above, into one by heating it, and widening a hole it happened to have about its middle, with the assistance of one of the largest nails. This received the handle, and a round nob at one end of the hook served for the face of the hammer. A large stone supplied the place of an anvil, and the tongs were formed of a couple of reindeer's horns. With these tools they made two spear-heads, and after polishing and sharpening them on stones, they tied them as fast as possible, with thongs of reindeer skin, to sticks about the thickness of a man's arm, which they got from some branches of trees that had been cast on shore. Thus equipped with spears, they resolved to

with little or no trouble, be
divided into filaments as fine
as they pleased. This was per-
haps the most fortunate dis-
covery these men could have
made ; for, besides other advan-
tages, they were thus furnished
with strings for their bow.

The success our unfortunate
islanders had experienced in
making the spears, and the great
utility of the latter, encouraged
them to proceed, and to forge
some pieces of iron into heads
of arrows of the same shape,
though somewhat smaller than
those of the spears. Having
ground and sharpened these
like the former, they tied them
with the sinews of the white
bears to pieces of fir, to which,
by means of the sinews of the
white bear, they fastened feathers
of sea-fowl, and thus became
possessed of a complete bow

se
at
de
th
fo
ve
of
th
it
of
we
we
dis
ent
toc
fir
dri
of
thn
anc
alm
dev
blu
whi
tha

the fat of the animals they might kill. To have been destitute of light, in a country where in winter darkness reigns for several months together, would have greatly increased their other calamities. Having, therefore, fashioned a kind of lamp, they filled it with reindeer's fat, and stuck in it some linen twisted into the shape of a wick. But they had the mortification to find, that as soon as the fat melted, it not only soaked into the clay, but fairly ran through it on all sides. It was therefore necessary to contrive some method of preventing this inconvenience, which did not proceed from cracks, but from the substance of which the lamp was made being too porous. They now made a new one, dried it thoroughly in the air, then heating it red-hot, they afterwards quenched it in their kettle, in which they had boiled down a quantity of flour to the consistence of starch. The lamp being then dried and filled with melted fat, they now found to their great joy that it did not leak. But for greater security, they dipped linen rags in their waste, and plastered them all over the outside. Having succeeded in this attempt, they immediately made another lamp, for fear of an accident, that at all events they might not be destitute of a light; upon which they determined to reserve the remainder of their wax for similar purposes.

As they had carefully collected whatever happened to be cast on shore, to supply themselves with fuel, they had found among the wreck of vessels some cordage and a small quantity of oakum, which served them to make wicks for their lamps. When these stores began to fail, their shirts and trousers were employed to make good the deficiency. By this means, they kept their lamp burning without intermission from the day they first made it, which was soon after their arrival on the island, until that of their embarkation for their native country.

The necessity of converting the most essential parts of their clothing, such as their shirts and drawers, to the use above specified, exposed them the more to the rigour of the climate. They also found themselves in want of shoes, boots, and other articles of dress; and as winter was approaching, they were again obliged to have recourse to that ingenuity which necessity suggests, and which seldom fails in the trying hour of distress. They had abundance of fox and reindeer skins, which had hitherto served them for bedding, and which they now thought of employing in some more essential service; but they were at a loss how to tan them. After some deliberation, they resolved to adopt the following method: they soaked the skins for several days in fresh water, till they could pull off the hair

were designed for furs they soaked only one day, to prepare them for being wrought, and then proceeded in the manner before mentioned, excepting only that they did not remove the hair. Thus they soon provided themselves with the necessary materials for all the parts of dress they wanted. They made a curious needle out of a piece of wire; and the sinews of the bear and reindeer, which they split into several threads, served them to sew with.

Excepting the uneasiness which generally accompanies an involuntary solitude, these sailors, having thus by their ingenuity so far overcome their wants, might have had reason to be contented with what Providence had done for them in their distressing situation. But the melancholy reflection, to

dread
who
in a
after s
during
life.
lieved
troubl
the p
being
and hi
a little
dimini
surviv
to foll
winter
snow
which
then c
their p
bears
melanc
sioned
comra
minds,

for our poor exiles, the director of the whale fishery proposed to the merchant to let his vessel winter at West Spitzbergen, to which, after many objections, he at length agreed.

The contrary winds they met with on their passage, made it impossible for them to reach the place of their destination. The vessel was driven towards East Spitzbergen, directly opposite to the residence of our mariners; who, as soon as they perceived her, hastened to light fires upon the hills nearest their habitation, and then ran to the beach, waving a flag made of reindeer's skin fastened to a pole. The people on board perceiving these signals, concluded that there were men upon the island who implored their assistance, and therefore came to an anchor near the shore. It would be in vain to attempt to describe the joy of these poor people at seeing the moment of their deliverance so near. They soon agreed with the master of the ship to work for him during the voyage, and to pay him eighty rubles on their arrival, for taking them on board with all their riches, which consisted of fifty pud, or 2000 pounds weight, of rein-

deer fat, besides many hides of those animals, skins of blue and white foxes, and those of the ten white bears they had killed. They took care not to forget their bow and arrows, their spears, their knife and axe, which were almost worn out; their awls and their needles, which they carefully kept in a bone-box, very ingeniously made with their knives only, and which contained everything they possessed.

Our adventurers arrived safe at Archangel on the 28th of September 1749, having spent six years and three months in their dreary solitude. The moment of their landing was nearly proving fatal to the loving and beloved wife of Alexis Himkof, who, being present when the vessel came into port, immediately knew her husband, and ran with such eagerness to his embraces, that she slipped into the water, and very narrowly escaped being drowned. All three on their arrival were strong and healthy; but having lived so long without bread, they could not reconcile themselves to the use of it, and complained that it filled them with wind; nor could they bear any spirituous liquors, and therefore drank nothing but water.

CHAPTER IX.

REMARKABLE BOAT VOYAGE.—THE FROZEN SHIP.

THE narrative which we are about to give, is taken from a statement drawn up and authenticated by the signature of

in the county. When only fourteen years of age he went to sea, and after serving ten years in the navy, embarked as second mate in the ship *Luxborough Galley*, of 340 tons and 26 guns, employed by the South Sea Company for supplying Spanish America with slaves and European goods, under the Assiento contract. After escaping in the manner we are about to narrate from the wreck of this vessel, he again entered the royal navy, and was constantly employed at sea during nearly thirty years, passing through different gradations of rank, until he was commissioned to wear his broad pennant as commodore, on board the *Royal Sovereign*, of 100 guns, and was appointed commander-in-chief of his Majesty's ships in the Thames and Medway. In 1761 he was made Lieu-

the
the
but
sen
whi
shi
tha
sen
roo
and
the
curi
were
wate
put
insta
Find
extin
the
The
carpe
ward
the
hatch
lazar

a scuttle to be cut through the deck of the fore-castle, with a view to pour water directly on the fire; but this made the flames rage with redoubled violence, and the whole fore-castle was soon in a blaze. We who were below, finding the fire to increase very much upon us, desired the people on deck to get out the boats while we would still endeavour to quench the flames, which they promised to do; but when we could stay no longer below for the great heat, and came upon deck, we found not the least preparation made to hoist out the boats, the captain and greatest part of the crew being on the quarter-deck crying to God for help, without using any means to save themselves. When I afterwards questioned the captain, in the boat, as to the cause of this inactivity, he told me they expected every moment the powder would take fire, and blow up the ship. This powder was directly under the scuttle where the fire was raging, a circumstance we did not think of, or we might have done as they did. I immediately endeavoured to persuade the people that the boats were our only resource, and proceeded myself to prepare and apply the tackle to the yawl. I was hoisted out in this boat by desire of the chief mate, for fear, when she should be in the water, the men should run away with her before the long-boat could be got out. *As she was lowering down, he handed me the oars, one of*

which fell overboard, so we had but three. By the time she was in the water, there were seven or eight men in her, whom I entreated to return to the ship again, in order to get out the long-boat; but they were unwilling to go back unless I would accompany them, upon which I took hold of a rope, and was stepping into the ship, when I observed the captain dropping into the boat. I pressed him to go back with me, but he told me the long-boat's bow was on fire, and at that instant, by a roll of the ship, I perceived the flames coming up the fore-hatchway above the long-boat's bow. At the same time, it became necessary to put off the boat, as the people were crowding into her, and there were then in her twenty-two men and boys. As we passed under the ship's quarter, the captain called to the chief mate, who was his brother, entreating him to jump into the water and swim to the boat; but he declined it, saying it was impossible the boat could swim many minutes, she having then her gunnel nearly even with the water, and the wind blowing very fresh.

'We left sixteen men and boys in the ship, who all perished. They attempted to get out the long-boat, and had in part succeeded; but before they could get her over the side, we saw her bow fall on the deck; probably they could not stand near her for the flames, or the tackle was burnt, and gave way. In some-

off from time to time as the metal grew hot, but her upper works were wholly destroyed, and nearly three hours elapsed before the gunpowder took fire. The explosion rent her to pieces, and we saw no more of her. Could we have stayed by the ship, we probably might have saved some provisions after she blew up; but we were obliged from the first to put the boat right before the sea with two oars, to prevent her filling.

'As soon as our attention was disengaged from the ship, and our comrades on board, we began to reflect on the horrors of our own situation. I came into the boat in my shirt and drawers, having thrown the rest of my clothes upon the fire. We had not time to take with us a morsel of victuals or a drop of drink; we had neither mast, sail, nor compass, and were at least 120 leagues from the nearest land.

served
entert.
ance;
sail by
frocks
needle
fortuna
of one
broker
in the
yard.
for a n
formed
were c
tack a
ripped
under
nails.
likewis
enable
the gur
straight
and wh
nailed
all whic
'Thu
our sail
we cor

watch, which went pretty well ; but afterwards it proved foggy, and we could not then judge which way we went.

‘On the fifth day it blew a storm ; and about noon, when the gale was at its height, and our little boat in the utmost jeopardy, it was proposed to throw overboard the two black boys who set the ship on fire, in order to lighten the boat, which I opposed strongly ; but at the same time thought it expedient to cast lots, and give all an equal chance, which the captain would not consent to. However, we continued to talk of these measures till the evening, when John Horn, who had been delirious with terror from the time we entered the boat, and one of the negro boys both died ; and then, the boat being lightened, and the wind abating, we had no further occasion to consider the subject. The next day, in the afternoon, three more died raving, and calling out incessantly for water, as was the case with all who died afterwards ; and it was no small fatigue to us to restrain the poor wretches from jumping overboard, to cool and refresh themselves in the sea. Our thirst now became intolerable. Every one but the captain, surgeon, and myself, drank sea-water, which by a false taste they thought to be quite fresh. We washed our mouths with it, but swallowed none. The sail was frequently lowered and drained of every drop of moisture we could wring

from it ; then we sucked it all over, as we did every one his neighbour’s clothes when wet with fogs or rain. Twice we saved some water, to the quantity, on the whole, of about three-quarters of a pint a-piece ; but these sparing and irregular supplies availed but little to alleviate the torments of thirst under which we languished.

‘The sensation of hunger was not so urgent, but we all saw the necessity of recruiting our bodies with some more substantial nourishment, if we ever hoped to gain the land, or if we did not wish to find ourselves growing gradually weaker and weaker as day succeeded day, and at length finally dying from starvation. However refreshing the little water we drank, it did not serve the same purpose as food ; it could not impart strength, and strength was what we greatly needed to enable us to bear up beneath the dreadful calamity that had overtaken us, and give us stout hearts to endure what other evils might fall to our lot. We therefore held a council among ourselves, if haply we might hit upon some plan whereby to procure the much desired food. Those officers and men who, in the course of their former lives and the vicissitudes of a sailor’s lot, had been in similar situations to that in which we now found ourselves, narrated many and ingenious expedients to which they had resorted, to satisfy the cravings of hunger ; but each and all of

sailor's lot. At length our surgeon, a most humane man, resolved our fear into words, and made the terrible suggestion to us, which we finally, but with much reluctance, adopted.

'We often saw birds flying over our heads, and fish playing round the boat's stern, which we strove to catch with our handbands knotted together, and a pin for a hook, baited with a piece of the dead men's bodies; but with all our contrivance, could catch neither fish nor bird. On the seventh day our number was reduced to twelve. At night the wind came up moderately at S.S.E. as we judged, and increased till it blew a storm, which continued with very thick weather till about four the next morning; when it cleared up, and we found the wind to be about N.N.E., still blowing hard

t
l
o
s.
s.
c.
f
it
lu
fe
be
or
ar
th
ou

th
O
fo
gr
ate
for
tio
jec
T...

After a while, finding myself uneasy, and wanting to change my posture, about one in the afternoon I laid my hand on the gunnel to raise myself a little, and in the act of turning thought I saw land, but said nothing till I was perfectly satisfied of its reality, having frequently suffered the most grievous disappointments in mistaking fog-banks for land. When I cried out, "Land! land!" and we were all convinced that it was so, imagine how great were our emotions and exertions! From the lowest state of desponding weakness we were at once raised to ecstasy, and a degree of vigour that was astonishing to ourselves. We hoisted the sail immediately. The boatswain, who was the strongest man in the boat, crawled to the stern, and took the tiller. Two others found strength to row, from which we had desisted the four preceding days through weakness. At four o'clock another man died, and we managed to throw both the bodies overboard.

'The land, when I first discovered it, was about six leagues off. The wind was favourable, and with sail and oars we went three or four knots. About six o'clock we perceived some shallows in with the land. We steered for the nearest, and came up with her about half-past seven, just as she was getting under sail to carry in her fish. We hallooed to them as loud as we could, and they lowered their sail to wait for

us; but when we were close on board, to our great grief and astonishment, they hoisted their sail again, and were going to leave us. Our moans, however, were so piteous and expressive, that they soon brought to, and took us in tow. They mistook us for Indians, or rather, as they told us, did not know what to think of us, our whole aspect was so unaccountably dismal and horrible. They gave us biscuit and water; but the latter only was acceptable, having totally lost our appetite for solid food.

'About eight in the evening we got on shore in Old St. Lawrence Harbour, on the western side of Placentia Bay, in Newfoundland, and were most kindly treated. They made chowder (a mess made with the heads of cod-fish) for us, and gave us beer made of the tops of juniper, fermented with molasses. We lay all night before a large fire, expecting a good night's rest, but could get very little sleep on account of the violent pains all over us. Captain Killaway died about three o'clock in the morning, having been speechless thirty-six hours before. Our bodies were soon covered over with boils and sores, and it was eleven days before any of us could walk abroad.

'On the 20th of July we left St. Lawrence Harbour, and got to Placentia on the 24th, with our little boat astern, in which we went on board the *Ludlow Castle*, a man-of-war commanded

tain St. Loo of the number of persons who came from the *Laxborough* in one boat, he knew not how to give credit to my story; and one calm morning he ordered as many men as could be safely stowed in her to be carried on shore, when they could crowd no more than twenty into her with any prospect of working the boat. But, alas! we were forced to lie on one another at first, in the most uneasy situation, till death made room for us. On the 4th of September, five of us (one went to New England) sailed for Biddeford, and arrived safely there on the 1st of October, after escaping great danger from the crazy state of the vessel. At Barnstable the mayor paid our horse-hire to Ilfracombe, from whence we went by water to Bristol, where the merchants on 'Change collected money for

by P

ONE
midd
Warr
land
becal
numb
77° 0
side,
vessel
heigh
gethet
snow-
hind e
could
ocean
up in
had pe
period
Cap
altoge
sion.

ing noises gave fearful evidence that the ice was in motion. The vessel received violent shocks every moment ; for the haziness of the atmosphere prevented those on board from discovering in what direction the open water lay, or if there actually was any at all on either side of them. The night was spent in tacking as often as any case of danger happened to present itself ; in the morning the storm abated, and Captain Warrens found to his great joy that his ship had not sustained any serious injury. He remarked with surprise that the accumulated icebergs, which had the preceding evening formed an impenetrable barrier, had been separated and disengaged by the wind, and that in one place a canal of open sea wound its course among them as far as the eye could discern.

It was two miles beyond the entrance of this canal that a ship made its appearance about noon. The sun shone brightly at the time, and a gentle breeze blew from the north. At first, some intervening icebergs prevented Captain Warrens from distinctly seeing anything but her masts ; he was struck with the strange manner in which her sails were disposed, and with the dismantled aspect of her yards and rigging. She continued to go before the wind for a few furlongs, and then, grounding upon the *low icebergs*, remained motionless.

Captain Warren's curiosity was

so much excited, that he immediately leaped into his boat with several seamen, and rowed towards her. On approaching, he observed that her hull was miserably weather-beaten, and not a soul appeared on the deck, which was covered with snow to a considerable depth. He hailed her crew several times, but no answer was returned. Previous to stepping on board, an open port-hole near the main chains caught his eye, and looking into it, he perceived a man reclining back in a chair, with writing materials on a table before him ; but the feebleness of the light made everything very indistinct.

The party went on deck, and having removed the hatchway, which they found closed, they descended to the cabin. They first came to the apartment which Captain Warrens viewed from the port-hole ; a tremor seized him as he entered it. Its inmate retained his former position, but seemed to be insensible to strangers. He was found to be a corpse ; and a green, damp mould had covered his cheeks and forehead, and veiled his eyeballs. He had a pen in his hand, and a log-book lay before him, the last sentence in whose unfinished pages ran thus :— ‘ November 11th, 1762. We have now been enclosed in ice seventeen days. The fire went out yesterday, and our master has been trying ever since to kindle it again without success. His wife died this morning. There is no relief—’

Captain Warren and his sea-

her countenance retained the freshness of life, and a contraction of the limbs alone showed that her form was inanimate. Seated on the floor was the corpse of an apparently young man, holding a steel in one hand and a flint in the other, as if in the act of striking fire upon some tinder which lay beside him. In the forepart of the vessel several sailors were found lying dead in their berths, and the body of a boy was crouched at the bottom of the gangway stairs. Neither provision nor fuel could be discovered anywhere ; but Captain Warrens was prevented, by the superstitious prejudices of his

CHAPTER

CAPTAIN INGLEFIELD'S NARRATIVE
 'CENTAUR,' AND THE PERILOUS
 OF HIMSELF AND ELEVEN COME

AFTER the decisive engagement

ing noises gave fearful evidence that the ice was in motion. The vessel received violent shocks every moment ; for the haziness of the atmosphere prevented those on board from discovering in what direction the open water lay, or if there actually was any at all on either side of them. The night was spent in tacking as often as any case of danger happened to present itself ; in the morning the storm abated, and Captain Warrens found to his great joy that his ship had not sustained any serious injury. He remarked with surprise that the accumulated icebergs, which had the preceding evening formed an impenetrable barrier, had been separated and disengaged by the wind, and that in one place a canal of open sea wound its course among them as far as the eye could discern.

It was two miles beyond the entrance of this canal that a ship made its appearance about noon. The sun shone brightly at the time, and a gentle breeze blew from the north. At first, some intervening icebergs prevented Captain Warrens from distinctly seeing anything but her masts ; he was struck with the strange manner in which her sails were disposed, and with the dismantled aspect of her yards and rigging. She continued to go before the wind for a few furlongs, and then, grounding upon the low icebergs, remained motionless.

Captain Warren's curiosity was

so much excited, that he immediately leaped into his boat with several seamen, and rowed towards her. On approaching, he observed that her hull was miserably weather-beaten, and not a soul appeared on the deck, which was covered with snow to a considerable depth. He hailed her crew several times, but no answer was returned. Previous to stepping on board, an open port-hole near the main chains caught his eye, and looking into it, he perceived a man reclining back in a chair, with writing materials on a table before him ; but the feebleness of the light made everything very indistinct.

The party went on deck, and having removed the hatchway, which they found closed, they descended to the cabin. They first came to the apartment which Captain Warrens viewed from the port-hole ; a tremor seized him as he entered it. Its inmate retained his former position, but seemed to be insensible to strangers. He was found to be a corpse ; and a green, damp mould had covered his cheeks and forehead, and veiled his eyeballs. He had a pen in his hand, and a log-book lay before him, the last sentence in whose unfinished pages ran thus :— ' November 11th, 1762. We have now been enclosed in ice seventeen days. The fire went out yesterday, and our master has been trying ever since to kindle it again without success. His wife died this morning. There is no relief—'

Captain Warren and his sea-



A STORM AT SEA—*Adventure and Peril*, p. 305.



'left Jamaica in rather a y condition, keeping two l-pumps going; and when it fresh, sometimes a spell a chain-pump was necessary. I had no apprehension that ship was not able to enter a common gale of wind. The evening of the 16th of September, when the fatal gale came on, the ship was prepared for the worst weather usually in those latitudes, the main-mast was reefed and set, the gallant masts struck, and the mizen-yard lowered down, though at that time it did not blow very strong. Towards midnight it blew a gale of wind, and the ship made so much water, that I was obliged to turn all hands to take a spell at the pumps. The leak still increasing, I had thoughts to try the ship before the sea. Happy I should have been, perhaps, had I in this been determined. The impropriety of leaving the convoy except in the last extremity, and the hopes of the weather growing moderate, weighed against the opinion that it was right.

'About two in the morning the wind lulled, and we flattered ourselves the gale was breaking. Soon after we had much thunder and lightning from the south-east, with rain, when it began to blow strong in gusts of wind, which obliged me to haul the main-sail up, the ship being then under bare poles. This was scarcely done, when a gust of wind, exceeding in violence anything of the kind I had ever

seen or had any conception of, laid the ship on her beam ends. The water forsook the hold and appeared between decks, so as to fill the men's hammocks to leeward; the ship lay motionless, and to all appearance irrecoverably overset. The water increasing fast, forced through the cells of the ports, and scuttled in the ports from the pressure of the ship. I gave immediate directions to cut away the main and mizen masts, hoping, when the ship righted, to wear her. The mainmast went first, upon cutting one or two of the lanyards, without the smallest effect on the ship; the mizen-mast followed, upon cutting the lanyard of one shroud; and I had the disappointment to see the foremast and bowsprit follow. The ship upon this immediately righted, but with great violence; and the motion was so quick, that it was difficult for the people to work the pumps. Three guns broke loose upon the main deck, and it was some time before they were secured. Several men being maimed in this attempt, every moveable was destroyed, either from the shot thrown loose from the lockers, or the wreck of the deck. The officers, who had left their beds naked when the ship overset in the morning, had not an article of clothes to put on, nor could their friends supply them.

'The masts had not been over the sides ten minutes before I was informed the tiller

ing came on (the 17th), the weather grew more moderate, the wind having shifted in the gale to north-west. At daylight I saw two line-of-battle ships to leeward; one had lost her foremast and bowsprit, the other her main-mast. It was the general opinion on board the *Centaur*, that the former was the *Granada*, the other the *Glorieux*. The *Ramillies* was not in sight, nor more than fifteen sail of merchant ships. About seven in the morning I saw another line-of-battle ship ahead of us, which I soon distinguished to be the *Ville de Paris*, with all her masts standing. I immediately gave orders to make the signal of distress, hoisting the ensign on the stump of the mizen-mast, union downwards, and firing one of the fore-castle guns. The ancient

‘As the evening came on, it grew hazy, and blew strong in squalls. We lost sight of the *Ville de Paris*; but I thought it a certainty that we should see her the next morning. The night was passed in constant labour at the pumps. Sometimes the wind lulled, the water diminished; when it blew strong again, the sea rising, the water again increased. Towards the morning of the 18th I was informed there was seven feet of water upon the keelson, that one of the winches was broken, that the two spare ones would not fit, and that the hand-pumps were choked. These circumstances were sufficiently alarming; but upon opening the after-hold, to get some rum up for the people, we found our condition much more so.

‘It will be necessary to mention, that the *Centaur’s* after-hold was enclosed by a bulk-head at the after part of the well. Here all the dry provisions and the ship’s rum were stowed upon twenty chaldron of coals, which unfortunately had been started on this part of the ship, and by them the pumps were continually choked. The chain-pumps were so much worn as to be of little use; and the leathers, which, had the well been clear, would have lasted twenty days or more, were all consumed in eight. At this time it was observed that the water had not a passage to the well; for here *there was so much, that it washed against the orlop deck.* All the

rum,—twenty-six puncheons,—all the provisions, of which there was sufficient for two months, in casks, were staved, having floated with violence from side to side, until there was not a whole cask remaining; even the staves that were found upon clearing the hold, were most of them broken into two or three pieces. In the fore-hold we had a prospect of perishing; should the ship swim, we had no water but what remained in the ground tier; and over this all the wet provisions, and butts filled with salt water, were floating, and with so much motion, that no man could with safety go into the hold. There was nothing left for us to try, but baling with buckets at the fore-hatchway and fish-room; and twelve large canvas buckets were immediately employed at each. On opening our fish-room, we were so fortunate as to discover that two puncheons of rum, which belonged to me, had escaped. They were immediately got up, and served out at times in drams; and had it not been for this relief, and some lime-juice, the people would have dropped.

‘We soon found our account in baling. The spare pump had been put down the fore-hatchway, and a pump shifted to the fish-room; but the motion of the ship had washed the coals so small, that they reached every part of the ship, and the pumps were soon choked. However, the water by noon had considerably diminished by work-

set up a jury foremast; but as the evening came on, the gale again increased. We had seen nothing this day but the ship that had lost her main-mast, and she appeared to be as much in want of assistance as ourselves, having fired guns of distress; and before night I was told her fore-mast was gone. The *Centaur* laboured so much, that I had scarcely a hope she could swim till morning. However, by great exertion of the chain-pumps, and baling, we held our own; but our sufferings for want of water were very great, and many of the people could not be restrained from drinking salt water.

'At daylight (the 19th) there was no vessel in sight; and flashes from guns having been seen in the night, we feared the ship we had seen the preceding

th
sh
m.
mi
we
pu
ho
201
of
cor
day
det
wit
div
offi
par
mas
dec
the
part
the
By
clea
laur
mas

the ship, were thrown overboard, that if the water should again appear in the hold, we might have no impediment in baling. All the guns were overboard, the fore-mast secured, and the machine, which was to be similar to that with which the *Ipswich* was steered, was in great forwardness, so that I was in hopes, the moderate weather continuing, that I should be able to steer the ship by noon the following day, and at least save the people on some of the Western Islands. Had we any other ship in company with us, I should have thought it my duty to have quitted the *Centaur* this day.

‘This night the people got some rest by relieving the watches; but on the morning of the 21st we had the mortification to find that the weather again threatened, and by noon it blew a storm. The ship laboured greatly, and the water appeared in the fore and after hold, and increased. The carpenter also informed me that the leathers were nearly consumed, and likewise that the chains of the pumps, by constant exertion and the friction of the coals, were considered as nearly useless.

‘As we had now no other resource but baling, I gave orders that scuttles should be cut through the deck to introduce more buckets into the hold; and all the sailmakers were employed night and day in making canvas buckets; and

the orlop deck having fallen in on the larboard side, I ordered the sheet-cable to be tossed overboard. The wind at this time was at west, and being on the larboard tack, many schemes had been practised to wear the ship, that we might drive into a less boisterous latitude, as well as approach the Western Islands, but none succeeded; and having a weak carpenter’s crew, they were hardly sufficient to attend to the pumps, so that we could not make any progress with the steering machine. Another sail had been thrummed and got over, but we did not find its use; indeed, there was no prospect but in a change of weather. A large leak had been discovered and stopped in the fore-hold, and another in the lady’s hold; but the ship appeared so weak from her labouring, that it was clear she could not last long. The after cockpit had fallen in, the fore cockpit the same, with all the store-rooms down; the stern-post was so loose, that as the ship rolled the water rushed in on either side in great streams, which we could not stop.

‘Night came on with the same dreary prospect as on the preceding, and was passed in continual efforts of labour. Morning came without our seeing anything, or any change of weather, and the day was spent with the same struggles to keep the ship above water, pumping and baling at the hatchways and scuttles. Towards night another of the

chain-pumps was rendered quite useless, by one of the rollers being displaced at the bottom of the pump, and this was without remedy, there being too much water in the well to get to it; we also had but six leathers remaining, so that the fate of the ship was not far off. Still the labour went on without any apparent despair, every officer taking his share of it; and the people were always cheerful and obedient. During the night the weather increased; but about seven in the morning of the 23d, I was informed that an unusual quantity of water appeared all at once in the fore-hold, which, upon my going forward to be convinced, I found but too true. The stowage of the hold ground tier was all in motion, so that in a short time there was not a whole cask to be seen. We were convinced the ship had sprung a fresh leak. Another sail had been thrumming all night, and I was giving directions to place it over the bows, when I perceived the ship settling by the head, the lower deck bow ports being even with the water. At this period the carpenter acquainted me the well was staved in, destroyed by the wreck of the hold, and the chain-pumps displaced and totally useless. There was nothing left but to redouble our efforts in baling; but it became difficult to fill the buckets, from the quantity of staves, anchor stocks, planks, and yard-arm pieces which were now washed from the wings, and floating from side to side with

the motion of the ship. The people till this period had laboured as if determined to conquer their difficulties, without a murmur, or without a tear; but now, seeing their efforts useless, many of them burst into tears, and wept like children. Every time that I visited the hatchway I observed the water increased, and at noon washed even the orlop deck. The carpenter assured me the ship could not swim long, and proposed making rafts to float the ship's company, whom it was not in my power to encourage any longer with a prospect of their safety. Some appeared perfectly resigned, went to their hammocks, and desired their messmates to lash them in; others were lashing themselves to gratings and small rafts; but the most predominant idea was that of putting on their best and cleanest clothes.

'The weather about noon had been something moderate; and as rafts had been mentioned by the carpenter, I thought it right to make the attempt, though I knew our booms could not float half the ship's company in fine weather; but we were in a situation to catch at a straw. I therefore called the ship's company together, told them my intention, recommending them to remain regular and obedient to their officers. Preparations were immediately made for this purpose; the booms were cleared; the boats, of which we had three, viz. cutter, pinnace, and five-

oared yawl, were got over the side; a bag of bread was ordered to be put in each, and any liquor that could be got at, for the purpose of supplying the rafts. I had intended myself to go in the five-oared yawl, and the coxswain was desired to get anything from my steward that might be useful. Two men, captains of the tops, of the forecastle, or quarter-masters, were placed in each of them, to prevent any person from forcing the boats, or getting into them till an arrangement was made. While these preparations were making, the ship was gradually sinking, the orlop decks having been blown up by the water in the hold, and the cables floated to the gun-deck. The men had for some time quitted their employment of baling, and the ship was left to her fate. In the afternoon the weather again threatened, and blew strong in squalls; the sea ran high, and one of the boats (the yawl) was staved alongside and sank. As the evening approached, the ship appeared little more than suspended in water. There was no certainty that she would swim from one minute to another; and the love of life, which I believe never showed itself later on the approach of death, began now to level all distinctions. It was impossible, indeed, for any man to deceive himself with a hope of being saved upon a raft in such a sea; besides, it was probable that the ship, in sinking, would carry everything down

with her in a vortex, to a certain distance.

'It was near five o'clock, when, coming from my cabin, I observed a number of people looking very anxiously over the side; and looking myself, I saw that several men had forced the pinnace, and that more were attempting to get in. I had immediate thoughts of securing this boat before she might be sunk by numbers. There appeared not more than a moment for consideration: to remain and perish with the ship's company, to whom I could not be of use any longer, or seize the opportunity which was the only way of escape, and leave the people, with whom I had been so long satisfied on a variety of occasions, that I thought I could give my life to preserve them. This, indeed, was a painful conflict, such as I believe no man can describe, nor any have a just idea of, who has not been in a similar situation. The love of life prevailed. Calling to Mr. Rainy, the master, the only officer upon deck, I desired him to follow me, and immediately descended into the boat at the after part of the chains, but not without great difficulty got the boat clear of the ship, twice the number that the boat would carry pushing to get in, and many jumping into the water. Mr. Baylis, a young gentleman about fifteen years of age, leaped from the chains after the boat had got off, and was taken in. The boat falling astern, became

exposed to the sea, and we endeavoured to pull her bow round to keep her to the break of the sea, and to pass to windward of the ship; but in the attempt she was nearly filled, the sea ran too high, and the only probability of living was in keeping her before the wind. It was then that I became sensible how little, if any, better our condition was, than that of those who remained in the ship; at the best, it appeared to be only a prolongation of a miserable existence. We were altogether twelve in number, in a leaky boat, with one of the gunwales staved, in nearly the middle of the Western Ocean, without a compass, without quadrant, without sail, without greatcoat or cloak, all very thinly clothed, in a gale of wind, with a great sea running. It was now five o'clock in the evening, and in half an hour we lost sight of the ship. Before it was dark a blanket was discovered in the boat. This was immediately bent to one of the stretchers, and under it as a sail we scudded all night, in expectation of being swallowed up by every wave, it being with great difficulty that we could sometimes clear the boat of the water, before the return of the next great sea; all of us half drowned, and sitting, except those who baled, at the bottom of the boat; and without having really perished, no people ever endured more. *In the morning the weather grew moderate, the wind having*

shifted to the southward, as we discovered by the sun. Having survived the night, we began to recollect ourselves, and to think of our future preservation.

'Upon examining what we had to subsist on, I found a bag of bread, a small ham, a single piece of pork, two quart bottles of water, and a few French cordials. The wind continued to be southward for eight or nine days, and providentially never blew so strong but that we could keep the side of the boat to the sea; but we were always most miserably wet and cold. We kept a sort of reckoning; but the sun and stars being sometimes hidden from us for twenty-four hours, we had no very correct idea of our navigation. We judged at that period that we had made nearly an E.N.E. course since the first night's run, which had carried us to the S.E., and expected to see the island of Corvo. In this however, we were disappointed and we feared that the southerly wind had driven us far to the northward. Our prayers were now for a northerly wind. Our condition began to be truly miserable, both from hunger and cold; for on the 5th we had discovered that our bread was nearly all spoiled by seawater, and it was necessary to go on allowance. One biscuit divided into twelve morsels for breakfast, and the same for dinner; the neck of a bottle broke off with the cork in served for glass, and this filled with water.

the allowance of twenty-four
rs for each man. This was
e without any sort of par-
ty or distinction; but we
st have perished ere this,
we not caught six quarts of
-water; and this we could
have been blessed with, had
not found in the boat a pair
beets, which by accident had
n put there. These were
eaten when it rained, and when
roughly wet wrung into the
with which we baled the
it. With this short allowance,
ich was rather tantalizing than
taining in our comfortless con-
on, we began to grow very
ble; and our clothes being
continually wet, our bodies were
many places chafed with
es.

On the 13th day it fell calm,
l soon after a breeze of wind
ung up from the S.S.W., and
w to a gale, so that we ran
ore the sea at the rate of five
six miles an hour under our
nket, till we judged we were
the southward of Fayal, and
the westward sixty leagues;
t the wind blowing strong,
could not attempt to steer
it. Our wishes were now
the wind to shift to the
stward. This was the fif-
nth day we had been in the
at, and we had only one day's
ead, and one bottle of water
naining of a second supply of
n. Our sufferings were now
great as human strength
uld bear, but we were con-
viced that good spirits were a
ter support than any great

bodily strength; for on this day
Thomas Matthews, quarter-mas-
ter, the stoutest man in the boat,
perished from hunger and cold;
on the day before he complained
of want of strength in his throat,
as he expressed it, to swallow his
morsel, and in the night drank
salt water, grew delirious, and
died without a groan. As it
became next to a certainty that
we should all perish in the same
manner in a day or two, it was
somewhat comfortable to re-
flect that dying of hunger was
not so dreadful as our imagina-
tion had represented. Others
had complained of these symp-
toms in their throats; and
some, indeed all but myself,
had drunk salt water. As yet
despair and gloom had been
successfully prohibited; and as
the evening closed in, the men
had begun by turns to sing a
song, or relate a story instead
of supper; but this evening I
found it impossible to raise
either. As the night came on
it fell calm, and about midnight
a breeze of wind sprang up, we
guessed from the westward by
the swell; but there not being
a star to be seen, we were afraid
of running out of the way, and
waited impatiently for the rising
sun to be our compass.

'As soon as the dawn appeared,
we found the wind to be exactly
as we had wished, at W.S.W.,
and immediately spread our sail,
running before the sea at the
rate of four miles an hour. Our
last breakfast had been served
with the bread and water re-

(who were extravagantly elated), that they might not feel the effects of disappointment; till at length one of them broke into a most immoderate swearing fit of joy, which I could not restrain, and declared he had never seen land in his life, if what he now saw was not land. We immediately shaped our course for it, though on my part with very little faith. The wind freshened, and the boat went through the water at the rate of five or six miles an hour, and in two hours' time the land was plainly seen by every man in the boat, at a great distance, so that we did not reach it till ten at night. It was at least twenty leagues from us when first discovered, and I cannot help remarking with much thankfulness, the providential favour shown to us in this instance.

'In every part of the horizon, except where the land was dis-

car
sor
sau
two
isla
sho
circ
muc
flatt
mee
first
appi
poin
incre
degn
were
to la
boat
piece
we d
which
road
but a
port
till e
cers;
much

kindness and humanity both to myself and my people; for I believe it was the whole of his employment for several days to contrive the best means of restoring us to health and strength. It is true, I believe, there never were more pitiable objects. Some of the stoutest men belonging to the *Centaur* were obliged to

be supported through the street of Fayal. Mr. Rainy, the master, and myself were, I think, in better health than the rest; but I could not walk without being supported; and for several days, with the best and most comfortable provisions of diet and lodging, we grew rather worse than better.'

CHAPTER XI.

THE MUTINY OF THE BOUNTY, AND VOYAGE OF CAPTAIN BLIGH AND SEVENTEEN OF HIS CREW IN AN OPEN BOAT.

On December 23d, 1787, the *Bounty*, commanded by Lieutenant Bligh, sailed from Spithead; on the 26th it blew a severe storm from the eastward, which continued until the 29th, during which the ship suffered severely. One sea carried away the spare yards and spars out of the starboard main-chains, while another heavy sea broke into the ship, and staved all the boats; and besides other damage, a large quantity of bread was rendered totally useless, the sea having stove in the stern, and filled the cabin with water. This made it desirable for them to touch at Teneriffe, where they arrived in January of the year 1788; and having refitted, sailed again on the 10th of the same month. On March 23d they made the coast of Terra del Fuego, and encountered heavy weather off *Cape Horn*. After nine days of incessant gales, accompanied

with hail and sleet, the ship suffered so much, that they were obliged to keep pumping; and the decks were so leaky, that the great cabin was appropriated for those who had wet berths to hang their hammocks in. But finding that they were losing ground, and the hopelessness of obtaining a passage to the Society Islands by this route, it was determined, after thirty days' struggling in this tempestuous ocean, to bear away for the Cape of Good Hope. The helm was accordingly put a-weather, to the great joy of every person on board. On May 23d they arrived at the Cape, where they remained for thirty-eight days to replenish their stock of provisions and water. From thence they sailed on July 1st, and anchored in Adventure Bay, Van Diemen's Land, on the 20th of August. Here they remained taking in wood and water till the commencement

friendly intercourse
 with the natives, and having
 secured a considerable number
 of plants, they set sail on the
 4th of April 1789; and after
 touching at various other islands,
 found themselves on the 27th
 between those of Tofoa and
 Kotoo. On the following morn-
 ing, about four o'clock, Mr.
 Stewart called upon Fletcher
 Christian, who had just fallen
 asleep, to relieve the deck; but
 observing him to be much out
 of order, he strenuously advised
 him to abandon his previously
 expressed intention of leaving
 the ship on a small raft which
 he had constructed. But Chris-
 tian, as soon as he had taken
 charge of the deck, observing
 Mr. Hayward, the mate of his
 watch, lie down on the arm-chest
 to take a nap, and finding that
 Mr. Hallet, the other midship-
 man, did not make his appear-
 ance, formed the resolution of
 seizing the ship. He imme-

a s
 asl
 ma
 and
 No
 und
 ing
 aw
 dir
 sha
 just
 wat
 con
 hat
 mer
 dem
 The
 of ti
 arm
 now
 fact
 Blig
 the
 voya
 " "
 sun-
 sets.

the officers who were not of their party by placing sentinels at their doors. There were three men at my cabin door, besides the four within; Christian had only a cutlass in his hand, the others had muskets and bayonets. I was hauled out of bed and forced on deck in my shirt, suffering great pain from the tightness with which they had tied my hands. I demanded the reason of such violence, but received no other answer than abuse for not holding my tongue. The master, the gunner, the surgeon, Mr. Elphinstone, master's mate, and Nelson, were kept confined below, and the fore-hatchway was guarded by sentinels. The boatswain and carpenter, and also the clerk, Mr. Samuel, were allowed to come upon deck, where they saw me standing abaft the mizen-mast, with my hands tied behind my back, under a guard, with Christian at their head. The boatswain was ordered to hoist the launch out, with a threat, if he did not do it instantly, *to take care of himself*. When the boat was out, Mr. Hayward and Mr. Hallet, two of the midshipmen, and Mr. Samuel, were ordered into it. I demanded what their intention was in giving this order, and endeavoured to persuade the people near me not to persist in such acts of violence; but it was to no effect. "Hold your tongue, sir, or you are dead this instant," was constantly repeated to me. The master by this

time had sent to request that he might come on deck, which was permitted; but he was soon ordered back again to his cabin. I continued my endeavours to turn the tide of affairs, when Christian changed the cutlass which he had in his hand for a bayonet that was brought to him, and, holding me with a strong gripe by the cord that tied my hands, he with many oaths threatened to kill me immediately, if I would not be quiet; the villains round me had their pieces cocked and bayonets fixed. Particular people were called on to go into the boat, and were hurried over the side, whence I concluded that with these people I was to be set adrift. I therefore made another effort to bring about a change, but with no other effect than to be threatened with having my brains blown out.

'The boatswain and seamen who were to go in the boat were allowed to collect twine, canvas, lines, sails, cordage, an eight-and-twenty gallon cask of water; and Mr. Samuel got 150 pounds of bread, with a small quantity of rum and wine, also a quadrant and compass; but he was forbidden, on pain of death, to touch either map, ephemeris, book of astronomical observations, sextant, time-keeper, or any of my surveys or drawings. The mutineers having forced those of the seamen whom they meant to get rid of into the boat, Christian directed a dram to be served

kept apart from every one abaft the mizen mast, Christian, armed with a bayonet, holding me by the bandage that secured my hands. The guard round me had their pieces cocked; but on my daring the ungrateful wretches to fire, they uncocked them. Isaac Martin, one of the guard over me, I saw had an inclination to assist me, and as he fed me with shaddock (my lips being quite parched), we explained our wishes to each other by our looks; but this being observed, Martin was removed from me. He then attempted to leave the ship, for which purpose he got into the boat; but with many threats, they obliged him to return. The armourer, Joseph Coleman, and two of the carpenters, M'Intosh and Norman, were

ship had had cha pec a pi fenc with guar He keep surv for fi num away you have Chri dout the lengt latter order perm oppo

helpless situation of the boat, being very deep, and so little room for those who were in her. As for Christian, he seemed as if meditating destruction on himself and every one else. I asked for arms; but they laughed at me, and said I was well acquainted with the people among whom I was going, and therefore did not want them; four cutlasses, however, were thrown into the boat after we were veered astern. The officers and men being in the boat, they only waited for me, of which the master-at-arms informed Christian, who then said, "Come, Captain Bligh, your officers and men are now in the boat, and you must go with them; if you attempt to make the least resistance, you will instantly be put to death;" and without further ceremony, with a tribe of armed ruffians about me, I was forced over the side, where they untied my hands. Being in the boat, we were veered astern by a rope. A few pieces of pork were thrown to us, and some clothes, also the cutlasses I have already mentioned; and it was then that the armourer and carpenters called out to me to remember that they had no hand in the transaction. After having undergone a great deal of ridicule, and been kept some time to make sport for these unfeeling wretches, we were at length cast adrift in the open ocean; in all, twenty-five hands, and the most able men of the ship's

company. Having little or no wind, we rowed pretty fast towards Tofoa, which bore N.E. about ten leagues from us. While the ship was in sight, she steered to the W.N.W., but I considered this only as a feint; for when we were sent away, "Huzza for Otaheite" was frequently heard among the mutineers.

'Christian, the chief of the mutineers, was of a respectable family in the north of England. This was the third voyage he had made with me; and as I found it necessary to keep my ship's company at three watches, I had given him an order to take charge of the third, his abilities being thoroughly equal to the task; and by this means the master and gunner were not at watch and watch. Heywood was also of a respectable family in the north of England, and a young man of abilities, as well as Christian. These two had been objects of my particular regard and attention, and I had taken great pains to instruct them, having entertained hopes that, as professional men, they would have become a credit to their country. Young was well recommended, and had the look of an able, stout seaman; he, however, fell short of what his appearance promised. Stewart was a young man of creditable parents, in the Orkneys; at which place, on the return of the *Resolution* from the South Seas in 1780, we received so many civilities, that on that

account only I should gladly have taken him with me; but independent of this recommendation, he was a seaman, and had always borne a good character. Notwithstanding the roughness with which I was treated, the remembrance of past kindnesses produced some signs of remorse in Christian. When they were forcing me out of the ship, I asked him if this treatment was a proper return for the many instances he had received of my friendship? He appeared disturbed at my question, and answered with much emotion, "That,—Captain Bligh,—that is the thing;—I am in hell—I am in hell."

'As soon as I had time to reflect, I felt an inward satisfaction which prevented any depression of my spirits; conscious of my integrity, and anxious solicitude for the good of the service in which I had been engaged, I found my mind wonderfully supported, and I began to conceive hopes, notwithstanding so heavy a calamity, that I should one day be able to account to my king and my country for the misfortune. A few hours before, my situation had been peculiarly flattering. I had a ship in the most perfect order, and well stored with every necessary both for service and health. By early attention to those particulars, I had, as much as lay in my power, provided against any accident in case I could not get through Endeavour Straits, as well as against what might

befall me in them; add to this, the plants had been successfully preserved in the most flourishing state; so that, upon the whole, the voyage was two-thirds completed, and the remaining part, to all appearance, in a very promising way; every person on board being in perfect health, to establish which was ever amongst the principal objects of my attention.

'It will very naturally be asked, What could be the reason for such a revolt? In answer to which, I can only conjecture that the mutineers had flattered themselves with the hopes of a more happy life among the Otaheiteans than they could possibly enjoy in England; and this, joined to some female connections, most probably occasioned the whole transaction. The women at Otaheite are handsome, mild, and cheerful in their manners and conversation, possessed of great sensibility, and have sufficient delicacy to make them admired and beloved. The chiefs were so much attached to our people, that they rather encouraged their stay among them than otherwise, and even made them promises of large possessions. Under these, and many other attendant circumstances equally desirable, it is now perhaps not so much to be wondered at, though scarcely possible to have been foreseen, that a set of sailors, most of them void of connections, should be led away; especially when, in addition to

such powerful inducements, they imagined it in their power to fix themselves in the midst of plenty, on one of the finest islands in the world, where they need not labour, and where the allurements of dissipation are beyond anything that can be conceived. The utmost, however, that any commander could have supposed to have happened is that some of the people would have been tempted to desert. But if it should be asserted that a commander is to guard against an act of mutiny and piracy in his own ship, more than by the common rules of the service, it is as much as to say that he must sleep locked up, and when awake, be girded with pistols. Desertions have happened, more or less, from most of the ships that have been at the Society Islands; but it has always been in the commander's power to make the chiefs return their people. The knowledge, therefore, that it was unsafe to desert, perhaps, first led mine to consider with what ease so small a ship might be surprised, and that so favourable an opportunity would never offer to them again. The secrecy of this mutiny is beyond all conception. Thirteen of the party who were with me, had always lived forward among the seamen; yet neither they, nor the messmates of Christian, Stewart, Heywood, and Young, had ever observed any circumstance that made them in the least suspect what was going on. To such a close-

planned act of villany, my mind being entirely free from any suspicion, it is not wonderful that I felt a sacrifice. Perhaps, if there had been marines on board, a sentinel at my cabin door might have prevented it; for I slept with the door always open, that the officer of the watch might have access to me on all occasions, the possibility of such a conspiracy being ever the furthest from my thoughts. Had their mutiny been occasioned by any grievances, either real or imaginary, I must have discovered symptoms of their discontent, which would have put me on my guard; but the case was far otherwise. Christian, in particular, I was on the most friendly terms with: that very day he was engaged to have dined with me; and the preceding night he excused himself from supping with me on pretence of being unwell; for which I felt concerned, having no suspicions of his integrity and honour.

'My first determination was to seek a supply of bread-fruit and water at Tofoa, and afterwards to sail for Tongataboo, and there risk a solicitation to Poulaho, the king, to equip our boat, and grant us a supply of water and provisions, so as to enable us to reach the East Indies. The quantity of provisions I found in the boat was 150 lbs. of bread, sixteen pieces of pork, each piece weighing 2 lbs., six quarts of rum, six bottles of wine, with twenty-eight gallons of water, and four

empty barrecoes. Fortunately it was calm all the afternoon, till about four o'clock, when we were so far to windward, that, with a moderate easterly breeze which sprung up, we were able to sail. It was nevertheless dark when we got to Tofoa, where I expected to land; but the shore proved to be so steep and rocky, that we were obliged to give up all thoughts of it, and keep the boat under the lee of the island with two oars; for there was no anchorage. Having fixed on this mode of proceeding for the night, I served to every person half a pint of grog, and each took to his rest as well as our unhappy situation would allow.

'Wednesday, April 29th.—In the morning, at dawn of day, we rowed along shore in search of a landing place, and about ten o'clock we discovered a cove with a stony beach, at the N.W. part of the island, where I dropped the grapnel within twenty yards of the rocks. A great surf ran on the shore; but as I was unwilling to diminish our stock of provisions, I landed Mr. Samuel and some others, who climbed the cliffs, and got into the country to search for supplies. The rest of us remained at the cove, not discovering any other way into the country than that by which Mr. Samuel had proceeded. It was a great consolation to me to find that the spirits of my people did not sink, notwithstanding our miserable and almost hopeless situation. To-

wards noon, Mr. Samuel returned, with a few quarts of water which he had found in holes; but he had met with no spring, nor any prospect of a sufficient supply in that particular, and had seen only the signs of inhabitants. As it was uncertain what might be our future necessities, I only issued a morsel of bread and a glass of wine to each person for dinner. The weather was fair, but the wind blew so strong from the E.S.E. that we could not venture to sea. Our detention made it absolutely necessary to endeavour to obtain something towards our support; for I determined, if possible, to keep our first stock entire. We therefore weighed, and rode along shore to see if anything could be got, and at last discovered some cocoa-nut trees; but they were on the top of high precipices, and the surf made it dangerous landing; both one and the other we, however, got the better of. Some of the people, with much difficulty, climbed the cliffs, and got about twenty cocoa-nuts, and others slung them to ropes, by which we hauled them through the surf into the boat. This was all that could be done here; and as I found no place so safe as the one we had left to spend the night at, I returned to the cove, and having served a cocoa-nut to each person, we went to rest again in the boat.

'Thursday, 30th. — At daylight we attempted to put to

sea ; but the wind and weather proved so bad, that I was glad to return to our former station ; where, after issuing a morsel of bread and a spoonful of rum to each person, we landed ; and I went off with Mr. Nelson, Mr. Samuel, and some others into the country, having hauled ourselves up the precipice by long vines, which were fixed there by the natives for that purpose, this being the only way into the country. We found a few deserted huts, and a small plantain walk, but little taken care of ; from which we could only collect three small bunches of plantains. After passing this place, we came to a deep gully that led towards a mountain near a volcano ; and as I conceived that in the rainy season very great torrents of water must pass through it, we hoped to find sufficient for our use remaining in some holes of the rocks ; but after all our search, the whole that we collected was only nine gallons. We advanced within two miles of the foot of the highest mountain in the island, on which is the volcano that is almost constantly burning. The country near it is covered with lava, and has a most dreary appearance. As we had not been fortunate in our discoveries, and saw nothing to alleviate our distresses, except the plantains and water above mentioned, we returned to the boat exceedingly fatigued and faint. When I came to the precipice

whence we were to descend into the cove, I was seized with such a dizziness in my head that I thought it scarce possible to effect it : however, by the assistance of Nelson and others, they at last got me down, in a weak condition. Every person being returned by noon, I gave about an ounce of pork and two plantains to each, with half a glass of wine. The people who remained by the boat I had directed to look for fish, or what they could pick up about the rocks ; but nothing eatable could be found ; so that, upon the whole, we considered ourselves on as miserable a spot of land as could well be imagined. I could not say positively, from the former knowledge I had of this island, whether it was inhabited or not, but I knew it was considered inferior to the other islands ; and I was not certain but that the Indians only resorted to it at particular times. I was very anxious to ascertain this point ; for in case there had been only a few people here, and those could have furnished us with but very moderate supplies, the remaining in this spot to have made preparations for our voyage, would have been preferable to the risk of going amongst multitudes, where perhaps we might lose everything. A party, therefore, sufficiently strong, I determined, should go another route, as soon as the sun became lower ; and they cheerfully undertook it. About two

Since across the
 stony beach was about 100
 yards, and from the country in-
 to the cove there was no other
 way than that which I have
 already described. The situa-
 tion secured us from the danger
 of being surprised, and I deter-
 mined to remain on shore for
 the night with a part of my
 people, that the others might
 have more room to rest in the
 boat, with the master, whom I
 directed to lie at a grapnel, and
 be watchful, in case we should
 be attacked. I ordered one
 plantain for each person to be
 boiled ; and having supped on
 this scanty allowance, with a
 quarter of a pint of grog, and
 fixed the watches for the night,
 those whose turn it was laid
 down to sleep in the cave, be-
 fore which we kept up a good
 fire ; yet, notwithstanding, we
 were much troubled with flies
 and mosquitoes.

'Friday, May 1st.—At dawn

a
 q
 m
 ol
 re
 br
 pa
 th
 sta
 ho
 sis
 bu
 wh
 of
 pla
 no
 sett
 for
 to
 the
 and
 put
 in
 the
 ship
 sent
 that

were made about the ship, and they seemed readily satisfied with our account ; but there did not appear the least symptom of joy or sorrow in their faces, although I fancied I discovered some marks of surprise. Some of the natives were coming and going the whole afternoon, and we got enough of bread-fruit, plantains, and cocoa-nuts for another day ; but of water they only brought us about five pints. A canoe also came in with four men, and brought a few cocoa-nuts and bread-fruit, which I bought as I had done the rest. Nails were much inquired after, but I would not suffer any to be shown, as they were wanted for the use of the boat. Towards evening, I had the satisfaction to find our stock of provisions somewhat increased ; but the natives did not appear to have much to spare. What they brought was in such small quantities, that I had no reason to hope we should be able to procure from them sufficient to stock us for our voyage. At sunset all the natives left us in quiet possession of the cove. I thought this a good sign, and made no doubt that they would come again the next day with a better supply of food and water, with which I hoped to sail without further delay ; for if, in attempting to get to Tongataboo, we should be driven to leeward of the islands, there would be a larger quantity of provisions to support us against such a misfortune. At night I served a

quarter of a bread-fruit and a cocoa-nut to each person for supper ; and a good fire being made, all but the watch went to sleep.

‘Saturday, 2d.—At daybreak the next morning, I was pleased to find every one’s spirits a little revived, and that they no longer regarded me with those anxious looks which had constantly been directed towards me since we lost sight of the ship : every countenance appeared to have a degree of cheerfulness, and they all seemed determined to do their best. As there was no certainty of our being supplied with water by the natives, I sent a party among the gullies in the mountains with empty shells, to see what could be found. In their absence the natives came about us, as I expected, and in greater numbers ; two canoes also came in from round the north side of the island. In one of them was an elderly chief called Macca-ackavow. Soon after, some of our foraging party returned, and with them came a good-looking chief called Egi-jeefow, or perhaps more properly Eefow, Egij, or Eghee, signifying a chief. To each of these men I made a present of an old shirt and a knife, and I soon found they had either seen me, or had heard of my being at Annamooka. They knew I had been with Captain Cook, whom they inquired after, and also Captain Clerk. They were very inquisitive to know in what

me thither, if I would wait till the weather moderated. The readiness and affability of this man gave me much satisfaction. This, however, was but of short duration; for the natives began to increase in number, and I observed some symptoms of a design against us. Soon after they attempted to haul the boat on shore, on which I brandished my cutlass in a threatening manner, and spoke to Eefow to desire them to desist; which they did, and everything became quiet again. My people who had been in the mountains, now returned with about three gallons of water. I kept buying up the little bread-fruit that was brought to us, and likewise some spears to arm my men with, having only four cutlasses, two of which were in the boat. As we had no means of impro-

ending it down to the boat, it was nearly snatched away, but for the timely assistance of the runner. The sun was near setting when I gave the word, in which every person who was on shore with me boldly took up his proportion of things and carried them to the boat. The chiefs asked me if I would not stay with them all night. I said, "No, I never sleep out of my boat; but in the morning we will again trade with you, and I shall remain till the weather is moderate, that we may go, as we have agreed, to see Poulaho at Tongataboo." Macca-ackavow then got up, and said, "You will not sleep on shore? then Mattie" (which directly signifies, We will kill you), and he left me. The onset was now preparing: every one, as I have described before, kept knocking stones together, and Eefow quitted me. All but two or three things were in the boat, when I took Nageete by the hand, and we walked down the beach, every one in a silent kind of horror. While I was seeing the people embark, Nageete wanted me to stay to speak to Eefow; but I found he was encouraging them to the attack, and it was my determination, if they had then begun, to have killed him for his treacherous behaviour. I ordered the carpenter not to quit me till the other people were in the boat. Nageete, finding I would not stay, loosed himself from my hold and went off, and we all

got in the boat, except one man, who, while I was getting on board, quitted it, and ran up the beach to cast the sternfast off, notwithstanding the master and others called to him to return, while they were hauling me out of the water. I was no sooner in the boat than the attack began by about two hundred men; the poor unfortunate man who had run up the beach was knocked down, and the stones flew like a shower of shot. Many Indians got hold of the stern rope, and were near hauling the boat on shore, which they would certainly have effected, if I had not had a knife in my pocket, with which I cut the rope. We then hauled off to the grapnel, every one being more or less hurt. At this time I saw five of the natives about the poor man they had killed, and two of them were beating him about the head with stones in their hands. We had no time to reflect; for, to my surprise, they filled their canoes with stones, and twelve men came off after us to renew the attack, which they did so effectually as nearly to disable us all. Our grapnel was foul; but Providence here assisted us; the fluke broke, and we got to our oars, and pulled to sea. They, however, could paddle round us, so that we were obliged to sustain the attack without being able to return it, except with such stones as lodged in the boat, and in this I found we were very in-

...and returned towards the shore, leaving us to reflect on our unhappy situation. The poor man killed by the natives was John Norton; this was his second voyage with me as a quarter-master, and his worthy character made me lament his loss very much. He has left an aged parent, I am told, whom he supported.

'I once before sustained an attack of a similar nature, with a smaller number of Europeans, against a multitude of Indians: it was after the death of Captain Cook on the Morai at Owyhee, where I was left by Lieutenant King. Yet, notwithstanding this experience, I had not an idea that the power of a man's arm could throw stones, from two to eight pounds' weight, with such force and exactness as these people did. Here un-

provisions, and recommending to them in the most solemn manner not to depart from their promise, we bore away across a sea where the navigation is but little known, in a small boat, twenty-three feet long from stem to stern; deeply laden with eighteen men. I was happy, however, to see that everyone seemed better satisfied with our situation than myself. Our stock of provisions consisted of about one hundred and fifty pounds of bread, twenty-eight gallons of water, twenty pounds of pork, three bottles of wine, and five quarts of rum. The difference between this and the quantity we had on leaving the ship was principally owing to our loss in the bustle and confusion of the attack. A few cocoa-nuts were in the boat, and some bread-fruit; but the latter was trampled to pieces. It was about eight o'clock at night when we bore away under a reefed lug foresail; and having divided the people into watches, and got the boat in a little order, we returned God thanks for our miraculous preservation; and fully confident of His gracious support, I found my mind more at ease than it had been for some time past.

'Sunday, 3d.—At daybreak the gale increased; the sun rose very fiery and red, a sure indication of a severe gale of wind. At eight it blew a violent storm, and the sea ran very high, so that between the seas the sail was becalmed, and when on the

top of the sea it was too much to have set; but we could not venture to take in the sail, for we were in very imminent danger and distress, the sea curling over the stern of the boat, which obliged us to bale with all our might. A situation more distressing has, perhaps, seldom been experienced. Our bread was in bags, and in danger of being spoiled by the wet; to be starved to death was inevitable if this could not be prevented. I therefore began to examine what clothes there were in the boat, and what other things could be spared; and having determined that only two suits should be kept for each person, the rest was thrown overboard, with some rope and spare sails, which lightened the boat considerably, and we had more room to bale the water out. Fortunately the carpenter had a good chest in the boat, in which we secured the bread the first favourable moment. His tool chest also was cleared, and the tools stowed in the bottom of the boat, so that this became a second convenience. I served a tea-spoonful of rum to each person (for we were very wet and cold), with a quarter of a bread-fruit, which was scarcely eatable, for dinner. Our engagement was now strictly to be carried into execution; and I was fully determined to make our provisions last eight weeks, let the daily proportion be ever so small. The weather continued very severe, the wind

spect. But among the hardships we were to undergo, that of being constantly wet was not the least. The night was very cold, and at daylight on Monday the 4th, our limbs were so benumbed that we could scarce find the use of them. At this time I served a tea-spoonful of rum to each person, from which we all found great benefit.

'Wednesday, the 6th.—The weather was fair, and the wind moderate all day from the E.N.E. At daylight a number of other islands were in sight from S.S.E. to the W., and round to N.E. by E.; between those in the N.W. I determined to pass. At noon a small sandy island or key, two miles distant from me, bore from E. to S. $\frac{1}{4}$ W. I had passed ten islands, the largest of which I judged to be six or eight leagues in circuit

from W.S.W. to W.N.W., and another island N.N.W., the latter a high, round lump of but little extent ; the southern land that we had passed in the night was still in sight. Being very wet and cold, I served a spoonful of rum and morsel of bread for breakfast. The land in the west was distinguished by some extraordinary high rocks, which, as we approached them, assumed a variety of forms. The country appeared to be agreeably interspersed with high and low land, and in some places covered with wood. Off the N.E. part lay some small rocky islands, between which and an island four leagues to the N.E. I directed my course ; but a lee current very unexpectedly set us very near to the rocky isles, and we could only get clear of it by rowing, passing close to the reef that surrounded them. At this time we observed two large sailing canoes coming swiftly after us along shore ; and being apprehensive of their intentions, we rowed with some anxiety, fully sensible of our weak and defenceless state. All the afternoon we had light winds at N.N.E. ; the weather was very rainy, attended with thunder and lightning. Only one of the canoes gained upon us, which by three o'clock in the afternoon was not more than two miles off, when she gave over chase. *If I may judge from the sail of these vessels, they are of a similar construction with those*

at the Friendly Islands, which, with the nearness of their situation, gives reason to believe that they are the same kind of people. Whether these canoes had any hostile intention against us must remain a doubt. Perhaps we might have benefited by an intercourse with them ; but in our defenceless situation, to have made the experiment would have been risking too much. I imagine these to be the islands called Fiji, as their extent, direction, and distance from the Friendly Islands answer to the description given of them by those islanders. Heavy rain came on at four o'clock, when each person did his utmost to catch some water, and we increased our stock to thirty-four gallons, besides quenching our thirst for the first time since we had been at sea ; but an attendant consequence made us pass the night very miserably ; for being extremely wet, and having no dry things to shift or cover us, we experienced cold shiverings scarcely to be conceived. Most fortunately for us, the forenoon, Friday the 8th, turned out fair, and we stripped and dried our clothes. The allowance I issued to-day was an ounce and a half of pork, and a tea-spoonful of rum, half a pint of cocoanut milk, and an ounce of bread. The rum, though so small in quantity, was of the greatest service. A fishing line was generally towing from the stern of the boat ; but though we saw

25 of which weighed one pound, or 16 ounces, I adopted one as the proportion of weight that each person should receive of bread at the times I served it. I also amused all hands with describing the situation of New Guinea and New Holland, and gave them every information in my power, that in case any accident happened to me, those who survived might have some idea of what they were about, and be able to find their way to Timor, which at present they knew nothing of more than the name, and some not even that. At night I served a quarter of a pint of water, and half an ounce of bread, for supper.

'Saturday, 9th.--In the morning a quarter of a pint of cocoanut milk, and some of the decayed bread, was served for breakfast; and for dinner I

wat
col
tea
abl
ties
con
the
a ve
sleep
got
day
light
so n
no c
oblig
for fe
allow
to ea
fifth
quart
eight
and
about
for d

morning, at daybreak, I served to every person a tea-spoonful of rum, our limbs being so cramped that we could scarcely move them. Our situation was now extremely dangerous, the sea frequently running over our stern, which kept us baling with all our strength. At noon the sun appeared, which gave us as much pleasure as in a winter's day in England. I issued the twenty-fifth of a pound of bread, and a quarter of a pint of water, as yesterday. In the evening it rained hard, and we again experienced a dreadful night. At length the day (Tuesday the 12th) came, and showed to me a miserable set of beings, full of wants, without anything to relieve them. Some complained of great pain in their bowels, and every one of having almost lost the use of his limbs. The little sleep we got was no ways refreshing, as we were covered with sea and rain. I served a spoonful of rum at day-dawn, and the usual allowance of bread and water for breakfast, dinner, and supper. At noon it was almost calm, no sun to be seen, and some of us shivering with cold. The direction of our course was to pass to the northward of the New Hebrides. The wet weather continued, and in the afternoon the wind came from the southward, blowing fresh in squalls. As there was no prospect of getting our clothes dried, I recommended to every one to strip, and wring them through the salt water, by which means

they received a warmth that, while wet with rain, they could not have. This afternoon we saw a kind of fruit on the water, which Nelson told me was the *Barringtonia* of Forster; and as I saw the same again in the morning, and some men-of-war birds, I was led to believe that we were not far from land. We continued constantly shipping seas and baling, and were very wet and cold in the night; but I could not afford the allowance of rum at daybreak.

‘Wednesday, 13th.—All this day we were constantly shipping water, and suffered much cold and shiverings in the night.—Thursday, 14th.—Fresh gales at S.E., and gloomy weather, with rain and a high sea. At six in the morning we saw land from S.W. by S. eight leagues to N.W. by W. $\frac{3}{4}$ W. six leagues, which soon after appeared to be four islands, one of them much larger than the others, and all of them high and remarkable. At noon we discovered a small island and some rocks bearing N.W. by N. four leagues, and another island W. eight leagues, so that the whole were six in number, the four I had first seen bearing from S. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. to S.W. by S., our distance three leagues from the nearest island. At four in the afternoon we passed the western most island.—Friday, 15th.—At one in the morning another island was discovered, bearing W. N. W. five leagues' distance: and at eight we saw it for the last time, bearing N.E. seven leagues. A

great numbers of fish, we could never catch one. In the afternoon we cleaned out the boat, and it employed us till sunset to get everything dry and in order. Hitherto I had issued the allowance by guess, but I now made a pair of scales with two coconut shells; and having accidentally some pistol balls in the boat, 25 of which weighed one pound, or 16 ounces, I adopted one as the proportion of weight that each person should receive of bread at the times I served it. I also amused all hands with describing the situation of New Guinea and New Holland, and gave them every information in my power, that in case any accident happened to me, those who survived might have some idea of what they were about, and be able to find their way to Timor, which at present they knew nothing of more than the name, and some not even that. At night I served a quarter of a pint of water, and half an ounce of bread, for supper.

'Saturday, 9th.—In the morning a quarter of a pint of coconut milk, and some of the decayed bread, was served for breakfast; and for dinner I divided the meat of four coconuts, with the remainder of the rotten bread, which was eatable only by such distressed people. In the afternoon I fitted a pair of shrouds for each mast, and contrived a canvas weather cloth round the boat, and raised the quarters about nine inches, by nailing on the seats of the stern-

sheets, which proved of great benefit to us. The wind had been moderate all day in the S.E. quarter, with fine weather; but about nine o'clock in the evening the clouds began to gather, and we had a prodigious fall of rain, with severe thunder and lightning. By midnight we caught about twenty gallons of water. Being miserably wet and cold, I served to the people a tea-spoonful of rum each, to enable them to bear with their distressed situation. The weather continued extremely bad, and the wind increased: we spent a very miserable night, without sleep, except such as could be got in the midst of rain. The day brought no relief but its light. The sea broke over us so much that two men were constantly baling, and we had no choice how to steer, being obliged to keep before the waves for fear of the boat filling. The allowance now regularly served to each person was one twenty-fifth of a pound of bread, and a quarter of a pint of water, at eight in the morning, at noon, and at sunset. To-day I gave about half an ounce of pork for dinner, which, though any moderate person would have considered only as a mouthful, was divided into three or four. The wind continued strong from S.S.E. to S.E., with very squally weather and a high breaking sea, so that we were miserably wet, and suffered great cold in the night.

'Monday, 11th. — In the

morning, at daybreak, I served to every person a tea-spoonful of rum, our limbs being so cramped that we could scarcely move them. Our situation was now extremely dangerous, the sea frequently running over our stern, which kept us baling with all our strength. At noon the sun appeared, which gave us as much pleasure as in a winter's day in England. I issued the twenty-fifth of a pound of bread, and a quarter of a pint of water, as yesterday. In the evening it rained hard, and we again experienced a dreadful night. At length the day (Tuesday the 12th) came, and showed to me a miserable set of beings, full of wants, without anything to relieve them. Some complained of great pain in their bowels, and every one of having almost lost the use of his limbs. The little sleep we got was no ways refreshing, as we were covered with sea and rain. I served a spoonful of rum at day-dawn, and the usual allowance of bread and water for breakfast, dinner, and supper. At noon it was almost calm, no sun to be seen, and some of us shivering with cold. The direction of our course was to pass to the northward of the New Hebrides. The wet weather continued, and in the afternoon the wind came from the southward, blowing fresh in squalls. As there was no prospect of getting our clothes dried, I recommended to every one to strip, and wring them through the salt water, by which means

they received a warmth that, while wet with rain, they could not have. This afternoon we saw a kind of fruit on the water, which Nelson told me was the *Barringtonia* of Forster; and as I saw the same again in the morning, and some men-of-war birds, I was led to believe that we were not far from land. We continued constantly shipping seas and baling, and were very wet and cold in the night; but I could not afford the allowance of rum at daybreak.

‘Wednesday, 13th.—All this day we were constantly shipping water, and suffered much cold and shiverings in the night.—

Thursday, 14th.—Fresh gales at S.E., and gloomy weather, with rain and a high sea. At six in the morning we saw land from S.W. by S. eight leagues to N.W. by W. $\frac{3}{4}$ W. six leagues, which soon after appeared to be four islands, one of them much larger than the others, and all of them high and remarkable. At noon we discovered a small island and some rocks bearing N.W. by N. four leagues, and another island W. eight leagues, so that the whole were six in number, the four I had first seen bearing from S. $\frac{1}{2}$ E. to S.W. by S.; our distance three leagues from the nearest island. At four in the afternoon we passed the westernmost island.—Friday, 15th.—At one in the morning another island was discovered, bearing W.N.W. five leagues’ distance; and at eight we saw it for the last time, bearing N.E. seven leagues. A

we were very little better than starving, with plenty in view yet to attempt procuring any relief was attended with so much danger, that prolonging of life, even in the midst of misery, was thought preferable, whilst there remained hopes of being able to surmount our hardships. For my own part, I considered the general run of cloudy and wet weather to be a blessing of Providence. Hot weather would have caused us to have died with thirst; and probably being so constantly covered with rain or sea protected us from that dreadful calamity. As I had nothing to assist my memory, I could not then determine whether these islands were a part of the New Hebrides or not. I believed them to be a new discovery, which I have since found true; but though they were not seen

ed. Our situation was
rable ; always wet, and suf-
g extreme cold in the night,
out the least shelter from
weather. Being constantly
ged to bale to keep the boat
filling was, perhaps, not to
eckoned an evil, as it gave
ercise. The little rum we
was of great service ; when
nights were particularly dis-
ing, I generally served a
spoonful or two to each per-
; and it was always joyful
igs when they heard of my
otions. At noon, a water-
it was very near on board
is. I issued an ounce of
k in addition to the allow-
e of bread and water ; but
re we began to eat, every
ion stripped, and having
ng their clothes through the
water, found much warmth
refreshment. The night
dark and dismal, the sea
stantly breaking over us, and
hing but the wind and waves.
irect our steerage. It was
intention, if possible, to
re New Holland, to the
thward of Endeavour Straits,
ng sensible that it was neces-
to preserve such a situation
ould make a southerly wind
ir one ; that we might range
ng the reefs till an opening
uld be found into smooth
er, and the sooner be able
pick up some refreshments.
Monday, 18th.—In the morn-
the rain abated, when we
pped, and wrung our clothes
ough the sea-water as usual,
th refreshed us greatly.

Every person complained of
violent pain in his bones ; I
was only surprised that no one
was yet laid up. The customary
allowance of one twenty-fifth of
a pound of bread, and a quarter
of a pint of water, was served at
breakfast, dinner, and supper.
Saw many boobies and noddies,
a sign of being in the neighbour-
hood of land. In the night we
had very severe lightning, with
heavy rain, and were obliged to
keep baling without intermis-
sion. — Tuesday, 19th.—Very
bad weather, and constant rain.
With the allowance of bread
and water, served half an ounce
of pork to each person for din-
ner.—Wednesday, 20th.—Fresh
breezes E.N.E., with constant
rain ; at times a deluge. Always
baling. At dawn of day some
of my people seemed half dead ;
our appearances were horrible,
and I could look no way but I
caught the eye of someone in dis-
tress. Extreme hunger was now
too evident ; but no one suffered
from thirst, nor had we much
inclination to drink, that desire,
perhaps, being satisfied through
the skin. The little sleep we
got was in the midst of water,
and we constantly awoke with
severe cramps and pains in our
bones. This morning I served
about two tea-spoonfuls of rum
to each person, and the allow-
ance of bread and water as usual.
At noon the sun broke out, and
revived every one. All the
afternoon we were so covered
with rain and salt water that we
could scarcely see. We suffered

extreme cold, and every one dreaded the approach of night. Sleep, though we longed for it, afforded no comfort; for my own part, I almost lived without it. About two o'clock in the morning (Thursday, 21st) we were overwhelmed with a deluge of rain. It fell so heavily that we were afraid it would fill the boat, and were obliged to bale with all our might. At dawn of day I served a larger allowance of rum. Towards noon the rain abated, and the sun shone; but we were miserably cold and wet, the sea constantly breaking over us; so that, notwithstanding the heavy rain, we had not been able to add to our stock of fresh water.

'Friday, 22d.—Strong gales from E.S.E. to S.S.E., a high sea, and dark, dismal night. Our situation this day was extremely calamitous. We were obliged to take the course of the sea, running right before it, and watching with the utmost care, as the least error in the helm would in a moment have been our destruction. At noon it blew very hard, and the foam of the sea kept running over our stern and quarters. The misery we suffered this night exceeded the preceding. The sea flew over us with great force, and kept us baling with horror and anxiety. At dawn of day (Saturday, 23d) I found every one in a most distressed condition, and began to fear that *another* such night would put an *end to the lives* of several, who *seemed* no longer able to sup-

port their sufferings. I served an allowance of two tea-spoonfuls of rum, after drinking which, having wrung our clothes and taken our breakfast of bread and water, we became a little refreshed. Towards noon the weather became fair, but with very little abatement of the gale, and the sea remained equally high. The wind moderated in the evening, and the weather looked much better, which rejoiced all hands, so that they ate their scanty allowance with more satisfaction than for some time past. The night also was fair; but being always wet with the sea, we suffered much from the cold.—Sunday, 24th.—A fine morning I had the pleasure to see produce some cheerful countenances, and the first time for fifteen days past we experienced comfort from the warmth of the sun. We stripped and hung our clothes up to dry, which were by this time become so threadbare that they would not keep out either wet or cold. With the usual allowance of bread and water for dinner, I served an ounce of pork to each person. This afternoon we had many birds about us which are never seen far from land, such as boobies and noddies. As the sea began to run fair, and we shipped but little water, I took the opportunity to examine into the state of our bread, and found that, according to the present mode of issuing, there was a sufficient quantity remaining for twenty-nine days' allowance, by

ch time I hoped we should be able to reach Timor. But this was very uncertain, and as possible that, after all, we might be obliged to go to Java, determined to proportion the allowance so as to make our stock hold out six weeks. I was apprehensive that this would be received, and that it would give me my utmost resolution to persevere in it; for small as the quantity was which I intended to take away for our future good, it might appear to my people as robbing them of life; and as those who were less patient than their companions, I expected they would very ill brook it. However, on my representing the necessity of guarding against disaster that might be occasioned in the voyage by contrary winds or other causes, and promising to enlarge upon the allowance we got on, they cheerfully assented to my proposal. It was accordingly settled, that every man should receive one twenty-fifth of a pound of bread for breakfast, and the same quantity for dinner; so that, omitting the proportion for supper, we had forty-three days' allowance.

Monday, 25th. — At noon, the noddies came so near to us that one of them was caught by hand. This bird was about the size of a small pigeon. I divided it, with its entrails, into eighteen portions, and by a well-known method at sea of *"Who shall have this?"* it was distributed with the allowance

of bread and water for dinner, and eaten up, bones and all, with salt water for sauce. In the evening, several boobies flying very near to us, we had the good fortune to catch one of them. This bird is as large as a duck: like the noddy, it has received its name from seamen, for suffering itself to be caught on the masts and yards of ships. They are the most presumptive proofs of being in the neighbourhood of land of any sea-fowl we are acquainted with. I directed the bird to be killed for supper, and the blood to be given to three of the people who were the most distressed for want of food. The body, with the entrails, beak, and feet, I divided into eighteen shares, and with an allowance of bread, which I made a merit of granting, we made a good supper compared with our usual fare. — Tuesday, 26th. — Fresh breezes from the S.E., with fine weather. In the morning we caught another booby, so that Providence appeared to be relieving our wants in an extraordinary manner. Towards noon we passed a great many pieces of the branches of trees, some of which appeared to have been no long time in the water. The people were overjoyed at the addition to their dinner, which was distributed in the same manner as on the preceding evening, giving the blood to those who were the most in want of food. To make the bread a little savoury, most of the people frequently dipped

not without its inconveniences
for we began to feel distress of
a different kind from that which
we had lately been accustomed
to suffer. The heat of the sun
was so powerful, that several of
the people were seized with a
languor and faintness, which
made life indifferent. We were
so fortunate as to catch two
boobies in the evening; their
stomachs contained several fly-
ing fish and small cuttle fish, all
of which I saved, to be divided
for dinner the next day.—Wed-
nesday, 27th.—A fresh breeze
at E.S.E., with fair weather. We
passed much drift-wood this
forenoon, and saw many birds;
I therefore did not hesitate to
pronounce that we were near
the reefs of New Holland.
From my recollection of Cap-
tain Cook's survey of this coast,
I considered the

kept my people's spirits up; their joy was very great after we had got clear of the breakers, to which we had approached much nearer than I thought was possible without first discovering them. In the morning, at daylight, we could see nothing of the land or of the reefs. We bore away again, and at nine o'clock saw the reefs. The sea broke furiously over every part; and we had no sooner got near to them than the wind came at E., so that we could only lie along the line of the breakers, within which we saw the water so smooth, that every person already anticipated the heartfelt satisfaction he should receive as soon as we could get within them. I now found we were embayed; for we could not lie clear with sails, the wind having backed against us; and the sea set in so heavy towards the reef, that our situation was become unsafe. We could effect but little with the oars, having scarce strength to pull them; and I began to apprehend that we should be obliged to attempt pushing over the reef. Even this I did not despair of effecting with success, when, happily, we discovered a break in the reef, about one mile from us, and at the same time an island of a moderate height within it, nearly in the same direction, bearing W. $\frac{1}{2}$ N. I entered the passage with a strong stream running to the westward, and found it about a quarter of a mile broad, with every appear-

ance of deep water. On the outside, the reef inclined to the N.E. for a few miles, and thence to the N.W.; on the south side of the entrance, it inclined to the S.S.W. as far as I could see it; and I conjecture that a similar passage to this which we now entered, may be found near the breakers that I first discovered, which are twenty-three miles S. of this channel. Being now happily within the reefs, and in smooth water, I endeavoured to keep near them to try for fish; but the tide set us to the N.W. I therefore bore away in that direction; and having promised to land on the first convenient spot we could find, all our past hardships seemed already to be forgotten. We now returned God thanks for His gracious protection, and with much content took our miserable allowance of a twenty-fifth of a pound of bread, and a quarter of a pint of water, for dinner. As we advanced within the reefs, the coast began to show itself very distinctly, in a variety of high and low land, some parts of which were covered with wood. In our way towards the shore, we fell in with a point of a reef which is connected with that towards the sea; and here we came to a grapnel, and tried to catch fish, but had no success. Two islands lay about four miles to the W. by N., and appeared eligible for a resting-place, if for nothing more; but on our approach to the nearest island, it proved to be only a heap of stones, and its

size too inconsiderable to shelter the boat. We therefore proceeded to the next, which was close to it, and towards the main. On the N.W. side of this I found a bay, and a fine sandy point to land at. Our distance was about a quarter of a mile from a projecting part of the main, which bore from S.W. by S. to N.N.W. $\frac{3}{4}$ W. We landed, to examine if there were any signs of the natives being near us. We saw some old fire-places, but nothing to make me apprehend that this would be an unsafe situation for the night. Every one was anxious to find something to eat, and it was soon discovered that there were oysters on these rocks, for the tide was out; but it was nearly dark, and only a few could be gathered. I determined therefore to wait till the morning, when I should better know how to proceed; and I directed that one half of our company should sleep on shore, and the other half in the boat. We would gladly have made a fire; but as we could not accomplish it, we took our rest for the night, which happily was calm and undisturbed.

'Friday, 29th.—The dawn of day brought greater strength and spirits to us than I expected; for, notwithstanding every one was very weak, there appeared strength sufficient remaining, to make me conceive the most favourable hopes of our being able to surmount the difficulties we had yet have to encounter.

As there were no appearances to make me imagine that any of the natives were near us, I sent out parties in search of supplies, while others of the people were putting the boat in order, that we might be ready to go to sea, in case any unforeseen cause should make it necessary. One of the gudgeons of the rudder had come out in the course of the night, and was lost. This, if it had happened at sea, might have been attended with the most serious consequences, as the management of the boat could not have been so nicely preserved as these very heavy seas required. I had been apprehensive of this accident, and had in some measure prepared for it by having grummetts fixed on each quarter of the boat for oars; but our utmost readiness in using them would not probably have saved us. It appears, therefore, a providential circumstance that it happened in a place of safety, and that it was in our power to remedy the defect; for, by great good luck, we found a large staple in the boat, which answered the purpose. The parties returned, highly rejoiced at having found plenty of oysters and fresh water. I had also made a fire by the help of a small magnifying glass; and what was still more fortunate, we found, among the few things which had been thrown into the boat and saved, a piece of brimstone and a tinder box, so that I secured fire for the future. One of the people had been so provident, as to bring

th him from the ship a pot; by being in pos- of this article, we were to make a proper use apply we now obtained; a mixture of bread and pork, we made a stew ght have been relished le of far more delicate s, and of which each received a full pint. The

complaints of disease us were a dizziness in l, great weakness of the and violent tenesmus; f us, in a greater or degree, suffered thus. onstantly a severe pain stomach; but none of nplaints were alarming.

contrary, every one re- marks of strength, that, mind possessed of a e share of fortitude, able to bear more fa- m I imagined we should undergo in our voyage r. As I would not allow le to expose themselves heat of the sun, it being on, every one took his it of earth where it was by the bushes, for a rep.

oysters which we found fast to the rocks, that ith difficulty they could en off; and at length overed it to be the most ous way to open them hey were fixed. They a good size, and well d. To add to this happy ance, in the hollow of there grew some wire-

grass, which indicated a moist situation. On forcing a stick about three feet long into the ground, we found water, and with little trouble dug a well, which produced as much as our occasions required. It was very good; but I could not determine if it was a spring or not. We were not obliged to make the well deep, for it flowed as fast as we emptied it; which, as the soil was apparently too loose to retain water from the rains, renders it probable to be a spring. On the south side of the island, likewise, we found a small run of good water. Besides places where fires had been made, there were other signs of the natives sometimes resorting to this island. I saw two ill-constructed huts or wigwams, which had only one side loosely covered; and a pointed stick was found, about three feet long, with a slit in the end of it, to sling stones with; the same as the natives of Van Diemen's land use. The track of some animal was very discernible, and Nelson agreed with me that it was the kangaroo; but whether these animals swim over from the mainland, or are brought here by the natives to breed, it is impossible to determine. The latter is not improbable, as they may be taken with less difficulty in a confined spot like this than on the continent. The island is about a league in circuit: it is a high lump of rocks and stones covered with wood;

but the trees are small, the soil, which is very indifferent and sandy, being barely sufficient to produce them. The trees that came within our knowledge were the manchineel and a species of purow; also some palm trees, the tops of which we cut down; and the soft interior part or heart of them was so palatable, that it made a good addition to our mess. Nelson discovered some fern roots, which I thought might be good roasted as a substitute for bread; but in this I was mistaken: it, however, was very serviceable in its natural state to allay thirst, and on that account I directed a quantity to be collected to take into the boat. Many pieces of cocoa-nut shells and husk were found about the shore, but we could find no cocoa-nut trees, neither did I see any on the main. I had cautioned the people not to touch any kind of berry or fruit that they might find; yet they were no sooner out of my sight, than they began to make free with three different kinds, that grew all over the island, eating without any reserve. The symptoms of having eaten too much began at last to frighten some of them; but on questioning others, who had taken a more moderate allowance, their minds were a little quieted. The others, however, became equally alarmed in their turn, dreading *that such symptoms would come on, and that they were all poisoned*, so that they regarded

each other with the strongest marks of apprehension, uncertain what would be the issue of their imprudence. Fortunately the fruit proved wholesome and good. One sort grew on a small delicate kind of vine; they were the size of a large gooseberry, and very like in substance, but had only a sweet taste: the skin was a pale red, streaked with yellow the long way of the fruit: it was pleasant and agreeable. Another kind grew on bushes, like that which is called the sea-side grape in the West Indies; but the fruit was very different, being more like elder berries, and grew in clusters in the same manner. The third sort was a blackberry; this was not in such plenty as the others, and resembled a bullace, or large kind of sloe, both in size and taste. When I saw that these fruits were eaten by the birds, I no longer doubted of their being wholesome; and those who had already tried the experiment not finding any bad effect, made it a certainty that we might eat of them without danger.

‘Wild pigeons, parrots, and other birds were about the summit of the island; but having no fire-arms, relief of that kind was not to be expected, unless we should find some unfrequented spot, where the birds were so tame, that we might take them with our hands. The shore of this island is very rocky, except the place at which we landed, and here I picked up many

pieces of pumice-stone. On the part of the main nearest to us were several sandy bays, which at low water became an extensive rocky flat. The country had rather a barren appearance, except in a few places where it was covered with wood. A remarkable range of rocks lay a few miles to the S.W., and a high peaked hill seemed to terminate the coast towards the sea, with islands to the southward. A high fair cape showed the direction of the coast to the N.W., about seven leagues distant; and two small isles lay three or four leagues to the northward of our present station. I saw a few bees or wasps, and several lizards; and the blackberry bushes were full of ants' nests, webbed like a spider's, but so close and compact as not to admit the rain. A trunk of a tree, about 50 feet long, lay on the beach, from which I conclude that a heavy sea sets in here, with a northerly wind. This day being the anniversary of the restoration of King Charles the Second, and the name not being inapplicable to our present situation (for we were restored to fresh life and strength), I named this Restoration Island; for I thought it probable that Captain Cook might not have taken notice of it. The other names which I have presumed to give the different parts of the coast, are meant only to show my route more distinctly. *In the afternoon I sent parties out again to gather oysters,*

with which, and some of the inner part of the palm top, we made another good stew for supper, each person receiving a full pint and a half; but I refused bread to this meal, for I considered that our wants might yet be very great, and was intent on saving our principal support whenever it was in my power. After supper we again divided, and those who were on shore slept by a good fire.

'Saturday, 30th.—In the morning I discovered a visible alteration in our company for the better, and I sent them away again to gather oysters. We had now only two pounds of pork left. This article, which I could not keep under lock and key as I did the bread, had been pilfered by some inconsiderate person; but every one denied having any knowledge of this act. I therefore resolved to put it out of their power for the future, by sharing what remained for our dinner. While the party was out picking up oysters, I got the boat in readiness for sea, and filled all our water vessels, which amounted to nearly 60 gallons. The party being returned, dinner was soon ready, which was as plentiful a meal as the supper on the preceding evening; and with the pork I gave an allowance of bread. As it was not yet noon, I sent the people once more to gather oysters for a sea-store, recommending them to be as diligent as possible, for that I

was determined to sail in the afternoon. At noon I again observed the latitude $12^{\circ} 39'$ S.; it was then high water: the tide had risen three feet, but I could not be certain whence the flood came. I deduce the time of high water at full change to be ten minutes past seven in the morning. Early in the afternoon, the people returned with the few oysters that they had collected, and everything was put into the boat. I then examined the quantity remaining, and found 38 days' allowance, according to the last mode of issuing a twenty-fifth of a pound at breakfast and at dinner. Fair weather, and moderate breezes at E.S.E. and S.E. Being ready for sea, I directed every person to attend prayers. At four o'clock we were preparing to embark, when about twenty of the natives appeared, running and hallooing to us, on the opposite shore. They were each armed with a spear or lance, and a short weapon which they carried in their left hand: they made signs for us to come to them. On the top of the hills we saw the heads of many more: whether these were their wives and children, or others who waited for our landing, meaning not to show themselves lest we might be intimidated, I cannot say; but as I found we were discovered to be on the coast, I thought it prudent to *make the best of our way, for fear of being pursued by canoes; though, from the accounts of*

Captain Cook, the chance was that there were very few, if any, of consequence on any part of the coast. I passed these people as near as I could with safety: they were naked, and apparently black, and their hair or wool bushy and short. I directed my course within two small islands that lie to the north of Restoration Island, passing between them and the mainland, towards Fair Cape, with a strong tide in my favour; so that I was abreast of it by eight o'clock. The coast we passed was high and woody. As I could see no land without Fair Cape, I concluded that the coast inclined to the N.W. and W.N.W. I therefore steered more towards the W.; but by eleven o'clock at night we met with low land, which inclined to the N.E., and at three o'clock in the morning I found that we were embayed, which obliged us to stand back for a short time to the southward.

'Sunday the 31st.—At day-break I was exceedingly surprised to find the appearance of the country entirely changed, as if in the course of the night we had been transported to another part of the world; for we had now a low sandy coast in view, with very little verdure, or anything to indicate that it was at all habitable to a human being, except a few patches of small trees or brushwood. Many small islands were in sight to the N.E., about six miles distant. The E. part of the main

. four miles, and Fair S.E. five or six leagues. The channel between the island and the mainland, were about one mile apart, all the islands on the west side. Some of these very pretty spots, covered with coral, and well situated for large shoals of fish were there, but we could not catch any. On passing this strait we met another party of Indians, a large number, running towards us, shouting and making signs for us to land. Some of them waved green branches of trees which were near them, in token of friendship; but some other motions were less friendly. A little farther off we met a larger party, who likewise were running towards us. I therefore determined not to land, though I wished to have had some intercourse with these people. Unless I laid the boat close to the rocks, and beckoned them to approach; but none would come within two hundred yards of us. They behaved in the same manner as the people we had seen from Motion Island; they were dark-skinned, their colour black, short bushy hair or wool, and their appearance were very different to them in every respect. One of a good height bore a spear, four miles from us, at which I resolved to land, and to take a look at the island. At this isle we arrived about eight o'clock in the morning. The shore was rocky, but

the water was smooth, and we landed without difficulty. I sent two parties out, one to the northward and the other to the southward, to seek for supplies; and others I ordered to stay by the boat. On this occasion fatigue and weakness so far got the better of their sense of duty, that some of the people expressed their discontent at having worked harder than their companions, and declared that they would rather be without their dinner than go in search of it. One person in particular went so far as to tell me, with a mutinous look, that he was as good a man as myself. It was not possible for me to judge where this might have an end if not stopped in time; therefore, to prevent such disputes in future, I determined either to preserve my command or die in the attempt; and seizing a cutlass, I ordered him to take hold of another and defend himself, on which he called out that I was going to kill him, and immediately made concessions. I did not allow this to interfere further with the harmony of the boat's crew, and everything soon became quiet. The parties continued collecting what they could find, which were some fine oysters and clams, and a few small dog-fish that were caught in the holes of the rocks. We also found some rain-water in the hollow of the rocks on the north part of the island, so that of this essential article we were again so fortunate as to obtain a full supply.

full of sand hills, bearing W. by N about three leagues. Except the isles to the E.S.E. and S. that we had passed, I could only discover a small key N.W. by N. As this was considerably farther from the main than the spot on which we were at present, I judged it would be a more secure resting-place for the night; for here we were liable to an attack if the Indians had canoes, as they undoubtedly must have observed our landing. My mind being made up on this point, I returned, after taking a particular look at the island we were on, which I found only to produce a few bushes and some coarse grass; the extent of the whole not being two miles in circuit. On the north side, in a sandy bay, I saw an old canoe, about thirty-three feet long, lying bottom upwards, and half buried in the beach. It was made of three pieces, the bottom entire.

of lit
this
able
could
day
breez
fair
in the
prev
half o
thick
which
a spe
eaten
our w
the ti
found
the ri
feet.
high
chang
nine i
the flo
ward,
Island
the n
tain C

‘Monday, June 1st. — At dawn of day we got on shore, and tracked the boat into shelter; for the wind blowing fresh without, and the ground being rocky, it was not safe to trust her at a grapnel, lest she should be blown to sea; I was therefore obliged to let her ground in the course of the ebb. From appearances, I expected that if we remained till night we should meet with turtle, as we discovered recent tracks of them. Innumerable birds of the noddy kind made this island their resting-place, so that we had reason to flatter ourselves with hopes of getting supplies, in greater abundance than it had hitherto been in our power. Our situation was at least four leagues distant from the main. We were on the north-westernmost of four small keys, which were surrounded by a reef of rocks connected by sandbanks, except between the two northernmost, and there likewise it was dry at low water, the whole forming a lagoon island, into which the tide flowed: at this entrance I kept the boat. As usual, I sent parties away in search of supplies, but to our great disappointment, we could only get a few clams and some dolichos; with these and the oysters we had brought from Sunday Island, I made up a mess for dinner, with the addition of a small quantity of bread. Towards noon, Nelson and some others who had been to the

easternmost key returned; but Nelson was in so weak a condition, that he was obliged to be supported by two men. His complaint was a violent internal heat, a loss of sight, much drought, and an inability to walk. This I found was occasioned by his being unable to support the heat of the sun, and that, when he was fatigued and faint, instead of retiring into the shade to rest, he had continued to attempt more than his strength was equal to. I was glad to find that he had no fever; and it was now that the little wine which I had so carefully saved became of real use. I gave it in very small quantities, with some pieces of bread soaked in it; and he soon began to recover. The boatswain and carpenter also were ill, and complained of headache and sickness of the stomach. Several others of the men also soon became shockingly distressed with the tenesmus; so that there were but few without complaints. An idea prevailed that the sickness of the boatswain and carpenter was occasioned by eating the dolichos. Myself, however, and some others, who had taken the same food, felt no inconvenience; but the truth was, that many of the people had eaten a large quantity of them raw; and Nelson informed me that they were constantly teasing him, whenever a berry was found, to know if it was good to eat; so that it would not have been surprising

... glass of wine, and he continued to mend. In my walk round the island I found several cocoa-nut shells, the remains of an old wigwam, and the backs of two turtles, but no sign of any quadruped. One of the people found three sea-fowl's eggs. As is common on such spots, the soil is little other than sand ; yet it produced small toa-trees, and some others that we were not acquainted with. There were fish in the lagoon, but we could not catch any. Our wants, therefore, were not likely to be supplied here, not even with water for our daily expense ; nevertheless, I determined to wait till the morning, that we might try our success in the night for turtle and birds. A quiet night's rest also, I conceived, would be of essential service to those who were un-

well
s
tl
e
a
ol
u
ol
of
st
se
se
sal
on
all
bet
con
to
tha
imp
one
aba
a
wh
nei

ing of the tide, that we might proceed to sea. After eight o'clock, Mr. Samuel and Mr. Peckover went out to watch for turtle, and three men went to the east key to endeavour to catch birds. All the others complaining of being sick, took their rest, except Mr. Hayward and Mr. Elphinston, whom I directed to keep watch. About midnight the bird party returned, with only twelve noddies, birds which I have already described to be about the size of pigeons; but if it had not been for the folly and obstinacy of one of the party, who separated from the other two, and disturbed the birds, they might have caught a great number. I was so much provoked at my plans being thus defeated, that I gave this offender a good beating. I now went in search of the turtling party, who had taken great pains, but without success. This did not surprise me, as it was not to be expected that turtle would come near us, after the noise which had been made at the beginning of the evening in extinguishing the fire. I therefore desired them to come back, but they requested to stay a little longer, as they still hoped to find some before daylight; however, they returned by three o'clock, without any reward for their labour. The birds we half dressed, that they might keep the better; and these, with a few clams, made the whole of the supply procured here. I tied a few gilt buttons and

some pieces of iron to a tree, for any of the natives that might come after us; and finding my invalids much better for their night's rest, we embarked, and departed by dawn of day.

'Tuesday, 2d.—When we had run two leagues to the northward, the sea suddenly became rough, which not having before experienced since we were within the reefs, I concluded to be occasioned by an open channel to the ocean. Soon afterwards we met with a large shoal, on which were two sandy keys. Between these, and two others four miles to the west, I passed on to the northward, the sea still continuing to be rough. Towards noon I fell in with six other keys, most of which produced some small trees and brushwood. These formed a pleasing contrast with the mainland we had passed, which was full of sand-hills. The country continued hilly, and the northernmost land, the same we had seen from the lagoon island, appeared like downs sloping towards the sea. Nearly abreast of us was a flat-topped hill, which, on account of its shape, I called Pudding-pan Hill; and a little to the northward were two other hills, which we called the Paps; and here was a small tract of country without sand, the eastern part of which forms a cape, whence the coast inclines to the N.W. by N. I divided six birds, and issued one twenty-fifth of a pound of bread with half a pint of water,

the twenty-four hours of which
henceforward I can speak with
certainty as to time. The wind
blew fresh from the S.S.E. or
S.E. all the afternoon, with fair
weather. As we stood to the
N. by W., we found more sea
which I attributed to our re-
ceiving less shelter from the
reefs to the eastward. It is pro-
bable they do not extend so far
north as this; at least it may
be concluded that there is no
a continued barrier to prevent
shipping having access to the
shore. I observed that the
stream set to the N.W., which
I considered to be the flood.
In some places along the coast
we saw patches of wood. At
five o'clock, steering to the
N.W., we passed a large and
fair inlet, into which, I imagine,
there is a safe and commodious
entrance.

after praying to God for a continuance of His most gracious protection, I served an allowance of water for supper, and directed our course to the W.S.W., to counteract the southerly winds, in case they should blow strong. We had been just six days on the coast of New Holland, in the course of which we found oysters, a few clams, some birds, and water. But perhaps a benefit nearly equal to this we received, by having been relieved from the fatigue of being constantly in the boat, and enjoying good rest at night. These advantages certainly preserved our lives; and small as the supply was, I am very sensible how much it alleviated our distresses. By this time nature must have sunk under the extremes of hunger and fatigue. Some would have ceased to struggle for a life that only promised wretchedness and misery; and others, though possessed of more bodily strength, must soon have followed their unfortunate companions. Even in our present situation we were most deplorable objects, but the hopes of a speedy relief kept up our spirits. For my own part, incredible as it may appear, I felt neither extreme hunger nor thirst. My allowance contented me, knowing that I could have no more.

—Thursday, 4th.—I served one twenty-fifth of a pound of bread and an allowance of water for breakfast, and the same for dinner, with an addition of six

oysters to each person. This day we saw a number of water snakes, that were ringed yellow and black, and towards noon we passed a great deal of rock-weed. Though the weather was fair, we were constantly shipping water, which kept two men always employed to bale the boat.

‘Friday, 5th.—At noon, six oysters were, as yesterday, served to each man, in addition to the usual allowance of bread and water. In the evening a few boobies came about us, one of which I caught in my hand. The blood was divided among three of the men who were weakest, but the bird I ordered to be kept for our dinner the next day. Served a quarter of a pint of water for supper, and to some, who were most in need, half a pint. In the course of the night, being constantly wet with the sea, we suffered much cold and shiverings.—Saturday, 6th.—At daylight I found that some of the clams, which had been hung up to dry for sea-store, were stolen; but every one solemnly denied having any knowledge of it. This forenoon we saw a gannet, a sand lark, and some water snakes, which in general were from two to three feet long. The usual allowance of bread and water was served for breakfast, and the same for dinner, with the bird, which I distributed in the usual way of “Who shall have this?” I proposed to make Timor about the

latitude of $9^{\circ} 30'$ or 10° S. In the afternoon I took an opportunity of examining our store of bread, and found remaining nineteen days' allowance, at the former rate of serving one twenty-fifth of a pound three times a day; therefore, as I saw every prospect of a quick passage, I again ventured to grant an allowance for supper, agreeable to my promise at the time it was discontinued. We passed the night miserably wet and cold, and in the morning I heard heavy complaints. The sea was high, and breaking over us. I could only afford the allowance of bread and water for breakfast; but for dinner I gave out an ounce of dried clams to each person, which was all that remained. At noon I altered the course to the W.N.W., to keep more from the sea, as the wind blew strong. The sea ran very high all this day, and we had frequent showers of rain, so that we were continually wet, and suffered much cold in the night. Mr. Ledward, the surgeon, and Lawrence Lebogue, an old hardy seaman, appeared to be giving way very fast. I could only assist them by a tea-spoonful or two of wine, which I had carefully saved, expecting such a melancholy necessity.

'Monday, 8th.—Wind at S.E. The weather was more moderate than it had been for some days past. A few gannets were seen. The sea being smooth, I steered W. by S. At four in the after-

noon we caught a small dolphin, which was the first relief of the kind that we obtained. I issued about two ounces to each person, including the offals, and saved the remainder for dinner the next day. Towards evening the wind freshened, and it blew strong all night, so that we shipped much water, and suffered greatly from the wet and cold.—Tuesday, 9th.—At daylight, as usual, I heard much complaining, which my own feelings convinced me was too well founded. I gave the surgeon and Lebogue a little wine, but I could afford them no further relief, except encouraging them with hopes that a very few days longer, at our present fine rate of sailing, would bring us to Timor. Gannets, boobies, men-of-war and tropic birds, were constantly about us. Served the usual allowance of bread and water, and at noon we dined on the remains of the dolphin, which amounted to about an ounce per man. This afternoon I suffered great sickness, from the nature of the part of the stomach of the fish, which had fallen to my share at dinner. At sunset I served an allowance of bread and water for supper.—Wednesday, 10th.—In the morning, after a very comfortable night, there was a visible alteration for the worse in many of the people, which gave me great apprehensions. An extreme weakness, swelled legs, hollow and ghastly countenance, a more than common inclination

dep, with an apparent de-
of understanding, seemed
the melancholy presages
approaching dissolution.
surgeon and Lebogue, in
cular, were most miserable
ts. I occasionally gave
a few tea-spoonfuls of
out of the little that re-
ed, which greatly assisted
. The hopes of being able
accomplish the voyage was
principal support. The
wain very innocently told
that he really thought I
d worse than any one in
boat. The simplicity with
he uttered such an opinion
ed me, and I returned him
ter compliment. Birds and
weed showed that we were
r from land; but I expected
signs here, as there are
islands between the east
of Timor and New Guinea.
night was more moderate
the last.—Thursday, 11th.
very one received the cus-
ry allowance of bread and
; and an extra allowance
ter was given to those who
most in need. At noon I
rved in latitude $9^{\circ} 41' S.$;
e $S. 77^{\circ} W.$, distance 109
; longitude made $13^{\circ} 49'$
I had little doubt of having
passed the meridian of the
rn part of Timor, which is
down in $128^{\circ} E.$ This
ed universal joy and satis-
m. In the afternoon we
gannets, and many other
; and at sunset we kept a
anxious look-out. In the
ig we caught a booby,

which I reserved for our dinner
the next day.

'Friday, 12th.—At three in
the morning, with an excess of
joy, we discovered Timor bear-
ing from W.S.W. to W.N.W.,
and I hauled on a wind to the
N.N.E. till daylight, when the
land bore from S.W. by S. to
N.E. by N. Our distance from
the shore, two leagues. It is
not possible for me to describe
the pleasure which the blessing
of the sight of this land diffused
among us. It appeared scarce
credible to ourselves that, in an
open boat, and so poorly pro-
vided, we should have been
able to reach the coast of Timor
in forty-one days after leaving
Tofoa, having in that time run,
by our log, a distance of 3618
miles; and that, notwithstand-
ing our extreme distress, no
one should have perished on
the voyage. I have already
mentioned that I knew not
where the Dutch settlement was
situated, but I had a faint idea
that it was at the S.W. part of
the island. I therefore, after
daylight, bore away along shore
to the S.S.W., which I was the
more readily induced to do as
the wind would not suffer us to
go towards the N.E. without
great loss of time. The day
gave us a most agreeable pros-
pect of the land, which was
interspersed with woods and
lawns—the interior part moun-
tainous, but the shore low.
Towards noon the coast became
higher, with some remarkable
headlands. We were greatly

were abreast of a high head-land. With the usual allowance of bread and water for dinner, I divided the bird we had caught the night before, and to the surgeon and Lebogue I gave a little wine. The wind blew fresh at E. and E.S.E., with very hazy weather. During the afternoon we continued our course along a low shore covered with innumerable palm trees, called the fan palm, from the leaf spreading like a fan; but here we saw no signs of cultivation, nor had the country so fine an appearance as to the eastward. This, however, was only a small tract, for by sunset it improved again, and I saw several great smokes where the inhabitants were clearing and cultivating their grounds. We had now run twenty-five miles to the W.S.W. since noon, and were

At the same time, high land appeared in the S.W.; but the weather was so hazy, that it was doubtful whether the two lands were separated, the opening only extending one point of the compass. For this reason I stood towards the outer land, and found it to be the island Roti. I returned to the shore we had left, and brought to a grapnel in a sandy bay, that I might more conveniently calculate my situation. In this place we saw several smokes, where the natives were clearing their grounds. During the little time we remained here, the master and carpenter very much importuned me to let them go in search of supplies, to which at length I assented; but not finding any other person willing to be of their party, they did not choose to quit the boat. I stopped here no longer than for the purpose just mentioned, and we continued steering towards shore. We had a view of a beautiful-looking country, as if formed by art into lawns and parks. The coast is low, and covered with woods, in which are innumerable fan palm trees, that look like cocoa-nut walks. The interior part is high land, but very different from the more eastern parts of the island, where it is exceedingly mountainous, and, to appearance, the soil better. At noon the island Roti bore S.W. by W. seven leagues. The usual allowance of bread and water was served for breakfast and dinner, and to

the surgeon and Lebogue I continued to give wine. We had a strong breeze at E.S.E., with hazy weather, all the afternoon. At two o'clock, having run through a very dangerous breaking sea, the cause of which I attributed to be a strong tide setting to windward, and shoal water, we discovered a spacious bay or sound, with a fair entrance about two or three miles wide. I now conceived hopes that our voyage was nearly at an end, as no place could appear more eligible for shipping, or more likely to be chosen for a European settlement. I therefore came to a grapnel near the east side of the entrance, in a small sandy bay, where we saw a hut, a dog, and some cattle; and I immediately sent the boatswain and gunner away to the hut, to discover the inhabitants. I had just time to make some nautical observations, when I saw the boatswain and gunner returning with some of the natives; I therefore no longer doubted of our success, and that our expectations would be fully gratified. They brought five Indians, and informed me that they had found two families, where the women treated them with European politeness. From these people I learned that the governor resided at a place called Coupang, which was some distance to the N.E. I made signs for one of them to go in the boat and show us the way to Coupang, intimating that I would pay him for his trouble:

the man readily complied, and came into the boat. These people were of a dark tawny colour, had long black hair, and chewed a great deal of betel. Their dress was a square piece of cloth round the hips, in the folds of which was stuck a large knife; a handkerchief wrapped round the head; and another hanging by the four corners from the shoulders, which served as a bag for their betel equipage. They brought us a few pieces of dried turtle, and some ears of Indian corn. This last was the most welcome; for the turtle was so hard, that it could not be eaten without being first soaked in hot water. They offered to bring us some other refreshments if I would wait, but as the pilot was willing, I determined to push on. It was about half an hour past four when we sailed. By direction of the pilot, we kept close to the east shore under all our sail; but as night came on the wind died away, and we were obliged to try at the oars, which I was surprised to see we could use with some effect. At ten o'clock, finding we advanced but slowly, I came to a grapnel, and, for the first time, I issued double allowance of bread and a little wine to each person.

'Sunday, 14th. — At one o'clock in the morning, after the most happy and sweet sleep that ever men enjoyed, we weighed, and continued to keep the east shore on board, in very smooth water, when at last I

found we were again in the sea, the whole of the night being passed to the westward till we passed being an island. The pilot called Pt. The northern entrance of the channel is about a half or two miles wide, and we had no ground at the bottom. The report of two cannon were fired gave notice to every one; and soon we discovered two small vessels and a cutter, which we followed to the eastward.

We vowed to work to the eastward, but were obliged to stop at the oars again, having little wind on each tack. We continued to the shore, and rowing till four o'clock, we brought to a grapnel, and issued another allowance of wine to all hands. After we had rested a little, we again, and rowed till light, when we came in sight of a small fort on the shore, which the pilot told us was Coupang. Among the things which the boatswain brought into the boat before we weighed, was a bundle of powder that had been used by the natives to show the depth of the water by sounding; with the grapnel. In the course of the day we made a small jack, which we hoisted in the main, and gave a signal of distress. I did not think proper to leave the boat out leave. Soon after day-break, a soldier hailed us from the land, which I immediately answered among a crowd of

ceably surprised to meet English sailor, who belonged to one of the vessels in the fleet. His captain, he told me, was the second person in command; I therefore desired to be conducted to him, as I learned the governor was unable to then be spoken to. Captain Spikerman received me with great humanity. He informed me of our distressed condition, and requested that permission might be taken of those who were with me without delay, which he gave direct for their immediate reception in his own house, and went to the governor, to know at what time I could be permitted to see him, which was done to be at eleven o'clock.

I desired my people to be landed on shore, which was as soon as some of them could be made scarce able to walk; however, were helped to land, and found tea with bread and butter provided for breakfast. The abilities of the painter, perhaps, could not have been displayed to advantage than in the description of the two groups of people, which at this time presented themselves to each other. A different spectator would have been at a loss which most to pity—the eyes of famine seeking at immediate relief, or the horror of their preservers at the sight of so many spectres, and ghastly countenances, if it had been known, whether have excited terror

than pity. Our bodies were nothing but skin and bones, our limbs were full of sores, and we were clothed in rags; in this condition, with the tears of joy and gratitude flowing down our cheeks, the people of Timor beheld us with a mixture of horror, surprise, and pity. The governor, Mr. William Adrian Van Este, notwithstanding extreme ill health, became so anxious about us, that I saw him before the appointed time. He received me with great affection, and gave me the fullest proofs that he was possessed of every feeling of a humane and good man. Sorry as he was, he said, that such a calamity could ever have happened to us, yet he considered it as the greatest blessing of his life that we had fallen under his protection; and though his infirmity was so great that he could not do the office of a friend himself, he would give such orders as I might be certain would procure us every supply we wanted. A house should be immediately prepared for me; and, with respect to my people, he said that I might have room for them either at the hospital or on board of Captain Spikerman's ship, which lay in the road; and he expressed much uneasiness that Coupang could not afford them better accommodations, the house assigned to me being the only one uninhabited, and the situation of the few families that lived at this place such that they could not conveniently receive

and the cleaning of their persons
had not been less attended to,
several friendly gifts of apparel
having been presented to them.
I desired to be shown to the
house that was intended for me,
which I found ready, with ser-
vants to attend. It consisted
of a hall, with a room at each
end, and a loft over-head, and
was surrounded by a piazza,
with an outer apartment in one
corner, and a communication
from the back part of the house
to the street. I therefore deter-
mined, instead of separating
from my people, to lodge them
all with me; and I divided the
house as follows: one room I
took to myself, the other I
allotted to the master, surgeon,
Mr. Nelson, and the gunner;
the loft to the other officers;
and the outer apartment to the
men. The hall was com-

support and bear such heavy calamities, and had enabled me at last to be the means of saving eighteen lives.

‘In times of difficulty, there will generally arise circumstances that bear particularly hard on a commander. In our late situation, it was not the least of my distresses to be constantly assailed with the melancholy demands of my people for an increase of allowance, which it grieved me to refuse. The necessity of observing the most rigid economy in the distribution of our provisions was so evident, that I resisted their solicitations, and never deviated from the agreement we made at setting out. The consequence of this care was, that at our arrival we had still remaining sufficient for eleven days at our scanty allowance; and if we had been so unfortunate as to have missed the Dutch settlement at Timor, we could have proceeded to Java, where I was certain that every supply we wanted could be procured. Another disagreeable circumstance to which my situation exposed me was the caprice of ignorant people. Had I been incapable of acting, they would have carried the boat on shore as soon as we made the island of Timor, without considering that landing among the natives, at a distance from the European settlement, might have been as dangerous as among any other Indians. *The quantity of provisions with which we left the ship was not*

more than we should have consumed in five days, had there been no necessity for husbanding our stock. The mutineers must naturally have concluded that we could have no other place of refuge than the Friendly Islands; for it was not likely they should imagine that, so poorly equipped as we were in every respect, there could have been a possibility of our attempting to return homewards; much less can they suspect that the account of their villany has already reached their native country. When I reflect how providentially our lives were saved at Tofoa by the Indians delaying their attack, and that, with scarcely anything to support life, we crossed a sea of more than 1200 leagues, without shelter from the inclemency of the weather; when I reflect that in an open boat, with so much stormy weather, we escaped foundering; that not any of us were taken off by disease; that we had the great good fortune to pass the unfriendly natives of other countries without accident, and at last happily to meet with the most friendly and best of people to relieve our distresses;—I say, when I reflect on all these wonderful escapes, the remembrance of such great mercies enables me to bear, with resignation and cheerfulness, the failure of an expedition, the success of which I had so much at heart, and which was frustrated at a time when I was congratulating myself on the

to every one in a similar situation the method we practised, which is, to dip their clothes in the salt water, and wring them out as often as they become filled with rain : it was the only resource we had, and I believe was of the greatest service to

of Di
mount
distres
voyage
hospita
necessa
ministe
liberal

CHAPTER XII.

THE SUFFERINGS OF SIX DESERTERS— AND THE SHARKS—A WONDERFUL

THE following singular and affecting narrative of the sufferings attending six deserters from the artillery of St. Helena, was related before a Court of Inquiry, on oath, by John Brown, one of the survivors :—

‘In June 1799, I belonged to the first company of artillery, in the service of the garrison ; and on the 10th of that month.

playhou
Mr. Qu
company
Brighou
and the
Parr wa
said he
Island c
the hart
could w
out E

gate, and hearing a great noise, thought we were missed and searched for. We immediately embarked in the whale boat, with about twenty-five pounds of bread in a bag, a small keg of water, supposed to contain about thirteen gallons, and a compass given to us by the commanding officer of the *Columbra*. We then left the ship, pulling with two oars only, to get ahead of her; the boat was half full of water, and nothing to bale her out. In this condition we rowed out to sea, and lay off the island a great distance, expecting the American ship hourly. About twelve o'clock the second day, no ship appearing, by Parr's advice we bore away, steering N. by W. and then N.N.W. for the Island of Ascension, using our handkerchiefs as substitutes for sails.

'We continued our course till about the 18th in the morning, when we saw a number of birds, but no land. About twelve that day, Parr said he was sure that we must be past the island, accounting it must be 800 miles from St. Helena. We then each of us took our shirts, and with them made a small sprit sail, and laced jackets and trousers together to the waistband to keep us warm, and then altered our course to W. by N., thinking to make Rio de Janeiro, on the American coast. Provisions running very short, we allowed ourselves one ounce of bread for twenty-four hours, and two mouthfuls of water. We continued till the 26th,

when all our provisions were expended. On the 27th, Mr. Quin took a piece of bamboo in his mouth to chew, and we all followed his example. On that night, it being my turn to steer the boat, and remembering to have read of persons in our situation eating their shoes, I cut a piece off one of mine; but being soaked with salt water, I was obliged to spit it out, and take the inside sole, which I ate part of, and distributed to the rest, but found no benefit from it. On the first of July, Parr caught a dolphin with a gaff that had been left in the boat. We all fell on our knees and thanked God for His goodness to us. We tore up the fish and hung it to dry. About four we ate part of it, which agreed with us pretty well. On this fish we subsisted till the 4th; when, about eleven o'clock, finding the whole expended, bones and all, Parr himself, Brighthouse, and Conway proposed to scuttle the boat, and let her go down to put us out of our misery; the other two objected, observing, that God who had made man always found him something to eat. On the 5th, about eleven, M'Kinnon proposed that it would be better to cast lots for one of us to die, in order to save the rest, to which we consented. The lots were made, William Parr, who had been sick two days before with the spotted fever, being excluded. It was agreed that No. 5 should die; and

more especially do they seem to cling to it when there is every appearance of its speedy termination ; and those who are most familiar with the vicissitudes of a sailor's lot, those who are best acquainted with the frequent calamities which overtake those who spend their lives at sea, know well to what desperate remedies shipwrecked men have resorted to allay the cravings of hunger and thirst, and to prolong for a brief period a most miserable existence. Imagination must now supply the place of facts, and realize as far as possible the dreadful situation of myself and comrades, which lasted till the morning of the 8th, when, it being my watch, and observing the water about break of day to change colour, I called the rest, thinking we were near shore. but saw no land it

about
Belm
the vi
that th
in abc
of the
severa
and P
up by
slingin
stick, &
them 1
very w
some ti
taken.
were E
ately re
mocks
taken in
house, v
bed, an
to eat.
thing fo
were lo
so till th
at

way boatswain's mate ; myself, being sickly, a passenger. In thirteen days we arrived at Rio de Janeiro. I was determined to give myself up the first opportunity, in order to relate my sufferings to the men of this garrison, to deter them from ever attempting so mad a scheme.'

THE SCHOONER'S MEN AND THE SHARKS.

A small schooner, called the *Maggie*, was cruising between the Island of Cuba and the Havannah, in search of pirates. One evening, the sea and the air were so calm, that the vessel lay on the bosom of the water like a huge animal asleep, with her head towards the shore. The crew were engaged in telling those marvellous stories which sailors believe, and never fail to narrate to each other in the hours of idleness ; for such occasionally visit even the mariner afloat. Lieutenant Smith, the commander, who had been on the look-out for the pirate ship as long as twilight allowed him to do so, laid aside his glass and descended into the cabin. All above and below and around was now lulled as in slumber, for the laugh and the voice of the story-teller had become silent ; presently the mate, who was on deck, observed a small black cloud resting over the land. The cloud was gradually increasing ; and although the mate saw no ground to apprehend danger, he thought

it right to communicate the fact to his superior officer, believing that the land breeze was about to set in with unusual strength. Mr. Smith desired him to keep a sharp look-out, and he would join him on deck immediately. A moment after, a squall, as strong as it was sudden, burst from the cloud ; and just as Mr. Smith had ascended to the deck, the schooner was upset, and immediately sunk.

Two of the crew were below, and they went down with her. The others, twenty-two in number, were left struggling with the shipless deep ; for the squall had passed, and sky and sea were again tranquil. It was now discovered that the boat had parted from the vessel, and floated. A rush was made towards her, and several of the men attempted to get into her on the same side. The consequence was that she became half full of water, upset, rolled over and over, and at length lay with her keel upwards. Some got across her keel, others supported themselves by holding on to her with their hands, and thus all were for a time safe.

Mr. Smith now reminded the crew that it was impossible for them to remain long in this predicament, and exhorted them to right the boat and bale out the water from her. He was immediately attended to ; the men on the keel relinquished their seats, the boat was turned over, and two men were ordered into her to bale out the water.

danger. Smith begged them to persevere in attempting to clear the boat of water, and directed those not engaged in baling, to keep splashing with their legs to frighten the sharks. Again he was attended to, four men were in the boat baling, and the water was rapidly decreasing, when a noise was heard, and more than a dozen sharks darted in among them. In the panic which ensued the boat was again upset, and the men were at the mercy of the marine monsters. At first the sharks played about among the men, occasionally rubbing against them; but presently a loud shriek arose from one of them—his leg was bitten from his body. The attack was now general. Shrieks arose from one and another, some were torn from the boat, and several

the exception of two, who succeeded in righting the boat and getting into her. They immediately began baling, and worked until they were nearly exhausted. The sharks swam round the boat and endeavoured to upset her, but failing, and perhaps gorged already, at length departed. The men worked at intervals, until the boat was nearly free from water, and then lay down and slept until after daylight. The morning was fine but sultry. The men were hungry, thirsty, and fatigued. They looked around them. An unbroken ocean, a cloudless sky, and a burning sun were all that were within their view. They began to think of the only resource remaining for either—to kill his comrade and devour his flesh. They were men of equal strength, and both had knives. Each, however, seemed unwilling to resort to this horrible expedient, except in the last extremity. The man at the stern—for they were separated in mutual apprehension by nearly the whole length of the boat—knelt down and prayed, and his comrade followed the example.

As the morning wore on, they suffered intensely from thirst, and aggravated their suffering by attempting to allay it with salt water. The madness of despair was beginning to develop itself in one of them, when a sail appeared in sight, which afterwards proved to be a brig steering towards them. One flung his jacket in the air, while

the other hailed again and again; and sometimes both hailed together, although the brig was at such a distance that it was not possible their cry should be heard. She approached nearer and nearer; and so riveted were their minds on the brig, that hunger and thirst were forgotten in the excitement of hope. The people on board the ship appeared to notice them; but just as they had reason to think this was the case, she changed her course, and hoisted additional sail. Still they attempted to gain her attention, and endeavoured to propel the boat with their hands. But all was in vain. The ship was becoming every moment more distant, and their chance of release from their terrible condition became fainter.

At this moment, one of the sailors conceived the bold project of swimming to the brig, which was by this time two miles and a half from them. His comrade remonstrated with him, so wild and hopeless did the undertaking appear to him, especially as the fins of sharks were again seen here and there above the water. After a little hesitation, caused by the appeal of his shipmate, and a short prayer, he jumped over. The splash occasioned by his doing so caused the sharks to disappear, and the man in the boat well knew that they were in search of his comrade. Immediately after, three of them passed the boat towards him. With the greatest anxiety the

sailor in the boat watched his messmate; he swam well, kicking and splashing as he went to frighten the sharks. Once he beheld one of them close to him; but he only swam the faster, and kicked the more vigorously. The wind had freshened, the brig was sailing more fleetly, his cries were unheard by her crew, and he began to think he must yield himself a prey to the sharks. While this melancholy thought was passing through his mind, he saw a man look over the side of the vessel; to attract his attention, he held up both his hands, jumped up in the water, and used every means in his power likely to attain his end. He was successful; a boat was put out, the brave swimmer was picked up, and was soon joined by his comrade on board the brig. The sharks were defrauded of their prey. The brave survivors of the *Magpie's* crew were tried by court-martial; and as a reward for their perseverance, gallantry, and obedience to their commander in circumstances of such peculiar peril, promoted to be warrant officers.

A WONDERFUL PRESERVATION.

'A number of years ago,' said Captain M——, 'I was bound in a fine stout ship of about four hundred tons burden, from the port of P—— to Liverpool. The ship had a valuable cargo on board, and about ninety
 1400 in specie. I

had been prevented, by other urgent business, from giving much of my attention to the vessel while loading and equipping for the voyage, but was very particular in my directions to the chief mate (in whom I had great confidence, he having sailed with me some years) to avoid entering, if possible, any but native American seamen. When we were about to sail, he informed me that he had not been able to comply with my directions entirely in this particular, but had shipped two foreigners as seamen—one a native of Guernsey, and the other a Frenchman from Brittany. I was pleased, however, with the appearance of the crew generally, and particularly with the foreigners. They were both stout and able-bodied men, and were particularly alert and attentive to orders.

'The passage commenced auspiciously, and promised to be a speedy one, as we took a fine steady westerly wind soon after we lost soundings. To my great sorrow and uneasiness, I soon discovered in the foreigners a change of conduct for the worse. They became insolent to the mates, and appeared to be frequently under the excitement of liquor, and had evidently acquired an undue influence with the rest of the men. Their intemperance soon became intolerable; and as it was evident that they had brought liquor on board with them, I determined upon search-

ing the fore-castle, and depriving them of it. An order to this effect was given to the mates, and they were directed to go about its execution mildly but firmly, taking no arms with them, as they seemed inclined to do, but to give every chest, berth, and locker in the fore-castle a thorough examination, and bring ast to the cabin any spirits they might find.

'It was not without much anxiety that I sent them forward upon this duty. I remained upon the quarter-deck myself, ready to go to their aid should it be necessary. In a few moments, a loud and angry dispute was succeeded by a sharp scuffle around the fore-castle companion-way. The steward, at my call, handed my loaded pistols from the cabin, and with them I hastened forward. The Frenchman had grappled the second mate, who was a mere lad, by the throat, thrown him across the heel of the bowsprit, and was apparently determined to strangle him to death. The chief mate was calling for assistance from below, where he was struggling with the Guernsey man. The rest of the crew were indifferent spectators, but rather encouraging the foreigners than otherwise. I presented a pistol at the head of the Frenchman, and ordered him to release the second mate, which he instantly did. I then ordered *him into the foretop, and the others, who were near, into the maintop,*

none to come down, under pain of death, until ordered. The steward had by this time brought another pair of pistols, with which I armed the second mate, directing him to remain on deck, and went below into the fore-castle myself. I found that the chief mate had been slightly wounded in two places by the knife of his antagonist, who, however, ceased to resist as I made my appearance, and we immediately secured him in irons. The search was now made, and a quantity of liquor found and taken to the cabin. The rest of the men were then called down from the tops, and the Frenchman was made the companion of his coadjutor's confinement. I then expostulated at some length with the others upon their improper and insubordinate conduct, and upon the readiness with which they had suffered themselves to be drawn into such courses by two rascally foreigners, and expressed hopes that I should have no reason for further complaint during the rest of the voyage. This remonstrance I thought had effect, as they appeared contrite, and promised amendment. They were then dismissed, and order was restored. The next day, the foreigners strongly solicited pardon, with the most solemn promises of future good conduct; and as the rest of the crew joined in their request, I ordered that their irons should be taken off. For several days the duties

of the ship were performed to my entire satisfaction; but I could discover in the countenances of the foreigners, expressions of deep and rancorous animosity to the chief mate, who was a prompt, energetic seaman, requiring from the sailors at all times a ready and implicit obedience to his orders.

‘A week perhaps had passed over in this way, when one night, in the mid-watch, all hands were called to shorten sail. Ordinarily, upon occasions of this kind, the duty was conducted by the mate, but I now went upon deck myself and gave orders, sending him upon the fore-castle. The night was dark and squally, but the sea was not high, and the ship was running off about nine knots, with the wind upon the starboard quarter. The weather being very unpromising, the second reef was taken in the fore and main topsails, the mizen handed, and the fore and mizen top-gallant yards sent down. This done, one watch was permitted to go below, and I prepared to betake myself to my berth again, directing the mate, to whom I wished to give some orders, should be sent to me. To my utter astonishment and consternation, word was brought me, after a short time, that he was nowhere to be found. I hastened upon deck, ordered all hands up again, and questioned every man in the ship upon the subject; but they with one accord declared that they had

not seen the mate forward. Lanterns were then brought, and every accessible part of the vessel was unavailingly searched. I then, in the hearing of the whole crew, declared my belief that he must have fallen overboard by accident, again dismissed one watch below, and repaired to the cabin in a state of mental agitation impossible to be described; for, notwithstanding the opinion I had expressed to the contrary, I could not but entertain strong suspicions that the unfortunate man had met a violent death.

‘The second mate was a *protégé* of mine, and as I have before observed, was a very young man, of not much experience as a seaman. I therefore felt that, under critical circumstances, my main support had fallen from me. It is needless to add that a deep sense of forlornness and insecurity was the result of these reflections.

‘My first step was to load and deposit in my state-room all the fire-arms on board, amounting to several muskets and four pairs of pistols. The steward was a faithful mulatto man, who had sailed with me several voyages. To him I communicated my suspicions, and directed him to be constantly on the alert, and should any further difficulty with the crew occur, to repair immediately to my state-room and arm himself. His usual berth was in the steerage, but I further directed that he should on the following morning clear

out, and occupy one in the cabin near my own. The second mate occupied a small state-room opening into the passage which led from the steerage to the cabin. I called him from the deck, gave him a pair of loaded pistols, with orders to keep them in his berth, and during his night watches on deck never to go forward of the main-mast, but to continue as constantly as possible near the cabin companion-way, and call me upon the slightest occasion. After this, I lay down in my bed, ordering that I should be called at four o'clock for the morning watch. Only a few minutes had elapsed, when I heard three or four knocks under the counter of the ship, which is that part of the stern immediately under the cabin windows. In a minute or two they were distinctly repeated. I arose, opened the cabin window, and called. *The mate answered!* I gave him the end of a rope to assist him up, and never shall I forget the flood of gratitude which my delighted soul poured forth to that Being who had restored him to me uninjured. His story was soon told. He had gone forward upon being ordered by me, after the calling of all hands, and had barely reached the fore-castle, when he was seized by the two foreigners, and before he could utter more than one cry, which was drowned in the roaring of the winds and waves, was thrown over the bow. *He was a powerful man, and an*

excellent swimmer. The top-sails of the ship were clewed down to reef, and her way, of course, considerably lessened; and in an instant he found the end of a rope which was accidentally towing overboard within his grasp, by which he dragged in the dead water or eddy that is always created under the stern of a vessel while sailing, particularly if she is full built and deeply laden, as was the case with this. By a desperate effort he caught one of the rudder chains, which was very low, and drew himself by it upon the step or jog of the rudder, where he had sufficient presence of mind to remain without calling out, until the light had ceased to shine through the cabin windows, when he concluded that the search for him was over. He then made the signal to me.

'No being in the ship but myself was apprised of his safety; for the gale had increased, and completely drowned the sounds of the knocking, opening the window, etc., before they could reach the quarter-deck; and there was no one in the cabin but ourselves, the steward having retired to his berth in the steerage. It was at once resolved that the second mate only should be informed of his existence. He immediately betook himself to a large vacant state-room, and for the remainder of the passage all his wants were attended to by me. Even the steward was allowed to enter the cabin as rarely as possible.

'Nothing of note occurred during the remainder of the voyage, which was prosperous. It seemed that the foreigners had only been actuated by revenge in the violence they had committed, for nothing further was attempted by them. In due season we took a pilot in the Channel, and in a day or two entered the port of Liverpool. As soon as the proper arrangements were made, we commenced warping the ship into dock, and while engaged in this operation, the mate appeared on deck, went forward, and attended to his duties as usual! A scene occurred which is beyond description; every feature of it is as vivid in my recollection as though it had occurred but yesterday, and will be to

my latest breath. The war dropped from the paralyzed hands of the horror-stricken sailors; and had it not been taken up by some boatmen on board, I should have been compelled to anchor again and procure assistance from the shore. Not a word was uttered but the two guilty wretches staggered to the mainmast, where they remained petrified with horror, until the officer who had been sent for approached to take them into custody. They then seemed in a measure to be recalled to a sense of their appalling predicament, and uttered the most piercing expressions of lamentation and despair. They were soon tried, and upon the testimony of the mate, capitally convicted and executed.

CHAPTER XIII.

A SUPERCARGO'S NARRATIVE OF THE LOSS OF A RUSSIAN SHIP ON THE NORTH-WEST COAST OF AMERICA, AND THE SUBSEQUENT ADVENTURES OF THE CREW.

'OUR ship was bound for the coast of New Albion. On the 29th of September 1808, we were opposite Vancouver's Cape Flattery, in 48° 25' N. lat. We then followed the coast during several days, for the purpose of sketching it. The natives came out in great numbers, and sometimes we were surrounded by more than one hundred of their boats, which, although small, generally held from three or four to ten people.

We never allowed more than three at a time to come aboard, a caution which seemed the more necessary, as they were all armed. Several of them had muskets, others had arrows pointed with stone antlers, iron lances with bone handles, and bone forks fixed on long poles. Moreover, they had a species of arms made of whale ribs, of the shape of a Turkish sabre, two inches and a half long, a quarter of an

thick, and blunt on both edges ; this weapon we understood they used in their night attacks, so common among these savages, killing their foes while asleep. They offered to us sea otters, reindeer skins, and fish for sale. For a large fish we paid them a string of blue beads a quarter of a yard long, and a few loose glass beads ; but for beaver skins they would take nothing less valuable than broad-cloth.

‘A few days after this we had a violent storm, which lasted for three days, the wind blowing from the south ; at length a sudden calm ensued, but the motion of the waves continued very high. At day-break the fog, which had till then surrounded us, disappeared, and we saw the shore at the distance of about ten or twelve miles. The calm rendered the sails useless, and the high waves would not allow us to have recourse to the oars ; the current, therefore, carried us rapidly towards the shore. We thought ourselves lost, when happily a north-westerly breeze sprang up, by the help of which we got out of our perilous situation. Soon, however, a new storm arose, which was again interrupted by a calm ; and at last, on the 1st of November, after much anxiety, and still more unavailing labour, our ship was cast on shore in 47° 66' N. lat., nearly opposite the *Island of Destruction*. Happily the ship had run on soft ground, and

during high water ; when the tide, therefore, had receded, we found her still entire, although she had been terribly shaken, and was half full of water. There was, however, no possibility of saving her ; we therefore went on shore, taking with us the guns, muskets, ammunition, and every other article which we thought we might find useful in our desolate state. Our first care, when landed, was to clean and load our fire-arms, as we had every moment reason to expect a visit from the natives, against whose cupidity and savage fury we had no other security than our resolution. This being done, we made two tents with our sails, and had scarcely finished, when we saw a host of savages pouring down upon us. The mate, accompanied by four hunters, had gone on board for the purpose of taking down the tackling from the ship. They had taken a burning match with them, there being still a few guns left in the brig. The captain, standing near her, gave the necessary orders, while I had the charge of watching the motions of the enemy and guarding our little camp.

‘Our tent was occupied by Mrs. Bulugin (the captain’s wife), an Aleootskian, from Kadjak, a woman of the same nation, myself, and two natives, who had joined us without any invitation. One of them, a toën (elder), invited me to his hut, which he said was not far off ;

were carrying off our stores. I entreated our people to bear with them as much as possible before they proceeded to hostilities, and represented to the toën the impropriety of the conduct of his party, and begged him to induce them to desist. But, as we could not converse freely, it took me some time to convey my sentiments to him, and in the meanwhile the question was decided without our interference. Our people began to drive the savages away, and they in return pelted them with stones. As soon as I was informed of this I rushed out of the tent, but at the same moment our hunters fired, and I was pierced in the chest with a lance. I ran back for a musket, and on coming out again saw the man who had wounded me; he held a lance in one hand

str
for
vic

an
ex
vie
mi
fou
cor
so
wo
cor
for
the
anc
spr
Ka
coa
tha
for
wer
pos
atel
neit

plied, "Be it as you propose; we shall not disobey you." Thus we entered upon our march, each of us armed with two muskets, one pistol, a quantity of ammunition, besides three barrels of powder, and some provisions which we carried with us. Previously to our departure, however, we had taken care to spike the guns, destroy the muskets, and throw them, together with the remaining gunpowder, pikes, hatchets, and other iron tools, into the sea. We crossed a river in our boat, and after advancing about twelve miles through the forest, we stopped for the night, and having set our watches, passed it without being disturbed.

'In the morning we continued our route, left the forest, and again approached the coast, where we halted in order to clean our fire-arms. About two o'clock P.M. we were overtaken by two savages, one of whom was the toën who had visited us on our first landing. They gave us to understand, that by following the coast we should meet with many impediments, both from its sinuosities and from the rocks, of which latter they reported that some were impassable. They also showed us a beaten track through the forest, which they advised us to follow, after which they prepared to leave us. Before their departure, however, I endeavoured to give them a more formidable idea of the power of our fire-

arms, by firing with a rifle at a small ring marked upon a board at a distance of 120 feet. The ball pierced the board where I had marked it, and the savages, after having examined the aperture and measured the distance, departed. During the night a violent storm arose, accompanied by rain and snow; and the bad weather continuing through the following day, we were obliged to wait in a cave till it was over. During all this time we were beset by the savages, who frequently rolled stones upon us from the top of the hill. The weather clearing up the next morning, we pursued our journey till we reached a stream of some depth, which we followed on a beaten path, in the hope of meeting with a shallow part where we might ford it. Towards evening we arrived at a large hut. The inhabitants had left, but a fire was still burning near it, and it contained a large supply of dried kishutches (a species of salmon), and opposite to it, poles were fixed in the water for the purposes of fishing. We took twenty-five of these fish, for which we left about six yards of beads by way of payment; after which we encamped for the night, about 200 yards from it in the forest.

'In the morning we perceived that we were surrounded by a troop of savages, armed with lances, forks, and arrows. I went forward and fired my piece over their heads, which had the

On the 7th of November, we met with three men and a woman, who gave us some dried fish, speaking at the same time very ill of the tribe among whom we had hitherto suffered so much, and extolling their own. They followed us till the evening, when we reached the mouth of a small river, on the opposite side of which stood a village consisting of six huta. Here they advised us to wait till high-water tide, which would come on during the night, when they would get us boats to pass over, adding that it would not be safe to cross at low water. We felt, however, no inclination to trust ourselves in their hands during the night, and therefore retired to some distance, where we encamped till the next morning. When

crossed over in order to attack us. We, on our part, entrenched ourselves as well as circumstances would admit. After they had placed themselves in a line opposite to our position, they began shooting their arrows at us, and once even fired a musket; luckily, however, we had a few muskets left dry, with which we ultimately succeeded in driving off our enemies, after having wounded several of them and killed two. We, on our side, had one man mortally wounded; and as we would not allow him to fall a victim to those barbarians, we carried him along with us; but before we had advanced one mile, his sufferings became so great, that he begged us to leave him to die in the forest, since our carrying him with us could not save him, and would only impede our flight; we therefore took leave of our dying companion, and proceeded onwards for some distance. At length we encamped in a convenient spot in a hilly part of the forest.

‘Now that our immediate danger was over, we began to reflect on our horrible situation. Our poor captain, in particular, who had lost a wife whom he loved more than himself, suffered an anguish beyond description. We could not conceive whence all the savages we had seen could have come, and how they could possibly *be the inhabitants of those few huts.* But we afterwards learned

they had assembled from all parts of the coast for the purpose of intercepting us, and that there were amongst them above fifty of those who had made the first attack upon us on our being cast on shore. Some had come even from Cape Greville. During the 9th, 10th, and 11th it rained incessantly, and we wandered about the hills, scarcely knowing where, but only anxious to hide ourselves from the natives, whom we dared not meet in such unfavourable weather, our fire-arms having become perfectly useless. We suffered dreadfully from hunger, and were compelled to feed upon sponges, the soles of our boots, our furs, and musket covers. At last, however, even these wretched means failed us, and we again approached the last-mentioned river; but discovering two huts, and fearing to encounter the savages, the weather being still wet, we again retreated into the forest, where we passed the night. On the 12th, the last morsel of bread being consumed, and the quantity of sponges found not proving sufficient for sixteen men, we killed our faithful companion, a dog, and shared his flesh amongst us. Our distress had now arrived at such a pitch, that our captain resigned his command into my hands, with the approbation of the whole crew, declaring himself unable to conduct us any longer.

‘On the 13th the rain con-

tinued. On the 14th the weather cleared up, and we resolved to attack the two huts which we had noticed. We found them deserted by all their inmates, except a lad about thirteen years of age, who was a prisoner. This lad informed us, that the owners of these huts had hastily crossed the river on noticing our footmarks. After taking twenty-five dried fish for each man, we again retreated to the woods. We had not proceeded far, when we saw one of the natives running after us, apparently with the intention of making some communication; but as we were apprehensive lest he should discover our retreat, we aimed at him with our muskets, and thus forced him to retreat. We then advanced until we reached the head of a rivulet, where our party halted. I then went with one of the hunters and an Aleootskian to a neighbouring hill, for the purpose of reconnoitring. The hunter led the way, but scarcely had he reached the summit when I saw an arrow pierce his back. I immediately called out to the Aleootskian to draw the arrow out of the wound, but at the same moment he was wounded himself. I immediately looked round, and perceived a number of savages on a hill on the opposite side, and about twenty others running towards us with the intention of cutting us off from our comrades. The arrows fell about us like hail. I fired my rifle and wounded one of the savages in the leg, which induced the whole party to take to their heels, carrying the wounded man with them on their shoulders. The wound of my two companions proved slight; and we remained on this spot for two days, in order to recruit our strength. Finding it impracticable to reach the harbour this season, having no means of crossing the river, we resolved to follow the stream upwards, till we should reach a convenient spot for fishing, where we intended to entrench ourselves for the winter, after which we might act according to circumstances. This march was a very laborious one, for we were frequently compelled to leave the banks of the river on account of the thick underwood and rugged precipices with which they were lined. The rain, moreover, was incessant. After several days' journey, our progress in a straight line did not exceed twenty versts. We were fortunate enough, however, to meet occasionally with some of the natives fishing in their boats on the river, who consented to sell us a few fish for beads and other trifles. At last, worn out with fatigue and hunger, we reached two huts; and necessity again compelled us to make a forced purchase of fish, as the inhabitants were at first unwilling to sell us any, alleging that the high water allowed the fish to pass over the framework

which they had laid across the river, and had rendered them scarce.

'We encamped at a short distance, and on the following morning were surprised by the arrival of two of the natives, who, after some general conversation, desired to know whether we were not inclined to ransom Anna (Mrs. Bulugin). Mr. B. instantly offered his last cloak, and every one of us adding some part of his clothes, we soon formed a considerable heap, which we cheerfully offered for the ransom of the unfortunate captive. But the savages insisted on having four muskets in addition, declaring that their countrymen would not part with her for a lower price. Not wishing to give them an absolute denial, we demanded that we should be allowed to see the lady before we took further steps. The savages consented, and she soon appeared, attended by a great number of them, on the opposite shore. At our request, two men accompanied her in a boat till within fifteen or twenty fathoms of us, where we again began bargaining for her. It would be in vain to attempt a description of the ensuing scene. The unfortunate couple were melted into tears, and their convulsive sobs almost deprived them of utterance. We also wept; and none but the unfeeling natives remained unmoved. *The lady told her husband that she had been humanely and kindly*

treated, that the other prisoners were also alive, and now at the mouth of the river. In the meantime, the natives persisted in their demand of four muskets; and finding us unyielding on this point, they at length carried their prisoner back again to the opposite shore. Mr. Bulugin, upon this, assuming the air of a commander, ordered me peremptorily to deliver up the muskets. In vain did I urge the impolicy of such an act, representing that, having but one serviceable musket for each man left, the giving up of so many, which would be immediately employed against us, would lead to our certain destruction. He persisted in his demand, till the men all declared that they would not separate themselves from their muskets at any price. In thus determining, we all felt deeply for the distress of the poor man; but when it is considered that our lives or liberty were at stake, our conduct will be judged leniently. After this sad event we pursued our journey for several days, till we were suddenly stopped by a heavy fall of snow; and as there was no appearance of its melting speedily, we began to clear a spot and collect materials to build a house, residing in the meantime in temporary huts. We constantly saw boats with natives on the river; and one day a youth, the son of a toën, with two other men, landed with his canoe and paid us a visit. He told us that their

hut was not far off ; and on our offering to send one of our men with them, for the purpose of purchasing provisions, they seemed highly pleased, expecting, no doubt, to obtain another prisoner ; but in this they were disappointed. The man went with them, but the young toën was detained as a hostage till his return. He came back empty-handed ; for the savages, whom he had found to the number of six men and two women, would not sell him anything. Having thus been cheated by these savages, we now detained them all, and despatched six of our men, armed with muskets, in their boat to the hut, whence they soon returned with all the fish they could find in it. We then made some presents to our prisoners, and dismissed them. Soon after, an old man brought us ninety salmon, for which we paid him with copper buttons.

‘A few days after this we entered upon our new habitation. It was a square hut, with sentry-boxes at the angles. Soon after we were again visited by the young toën, our neighbour. We asked him to sell us some fish ; but receiving a rude answer, we put him under arrest, declaring that he should not be released till he had furnished us with our winter store, viz.—four hundred salmon and four bladders of caviar. He immediately despatched his companions, who returned to him twice in the course of the week, hold-

ing secret conferences with him. At last he asked us for a passage for his boats, which being granted, we soon saw thirteen boats, containing about seventy people of both sexes, going down the river. These people soon returned to us with the articles required. We also obtained from them a boat sufficiently large to carry six persons. We then dismissed the young man, after presenting him with a spoiled musket and a few clothes. We frequently sent our boat up the river, and wherever we found any fish in the huts, seized upon them as lawful prizes. One day, when our boat was absent on one of these excursions, we had occasion to stop several boats full of savages, who were rowing in the same direction. As soon as our boat returned, we allowed them to proceed ; they declined, however, saying that, as our boat had taken away their fish, they had no further business. I endeavoured to make them understand that, having been driven to this spot by their cruelty, we had no other resource for the preservation of our lives, than seizing upon their stores. I assured them, however, that we would content ourselves with what we could find up the river, if they would leave us unmolested for the winter, nor would we ever, in such case, send our boat downwards. This diplomatic point having been agreed to, we remained undisturbed during the

winter, and in possession of abundance of food.

'Being informed that the savages were gathering in large numbers at the mouth of the river, and preparing to obstruct our progress along the coast in every possible manner, it was resolved to build another boat, with which we might in the ensuing spring ascend the river as high as possible, and then, turning towards the south, endeavour to reach the river Columbia, about which the natives are less barbarous. The task was difficult, but it was executed; and we only waited for mild weather to enter upon our hazardous expedition, when an event occurred which frustrated the whole of our plan. Mr. Bulugin resumed his command; and having embarked in our boats, we left our barrack on the 8th of February 1809, and sailed down the river. We stopped at the same spot where the year before Mrs. Bulugin had been produced to us. We now clearly perceived the object of our captain; but so great was our compassion for his sufferings, that we silently resigned ourselves to the dangers to which he was about to expose us.

'Here we were visited by an old man, with a water-tight basket made of branches, full of a species of root of which mariners brew a kind of acid liquor. He showed himself very attentive, and offered to pilot us down the river, the navigation of

which was rather intricate, on account of the many trees that were floating in it; we accepted his offer, and he acquitted himself honourably. Having reached a small island, he ordered us to come to, and went on shore. He returned soon after, informing us that there were many people on the island, who would shoot at us if we attempted to pass; he offered, therefore, to take us through a narrow channel, where we should be safe. We had nothing left but to trust to his honour, and we were not disappointed. We reached the mouth of the river in safety, and landed on a spot opposite an Indian village. Here our guide left us, after we had presented him with a shirt, a neckcloth, and a tin medal, cast for the occasion, and which we requested him to wear suspended round his neck. Next morning we were visited by a great many natives, and among them we recognised the woman who had deceived us, and drawn Mrs. B. and her companions into captivity. We immediately seized her, together with a young man, and having fastened logs of wood to their feet, we declared that they should remain our prisoners till our people were restored to us. Soon after the woman's husband made his appearance, and assured us that they were not among them, having been allotted to another tribe; but that he would go in search of them, and bring them to us in

finding her immovable in
 resolution, I returned, and
 reported her answer to her hus-
 band. The poor man thought
 at first that I was joking, and
 would not believe me; but after
 a little consideration he fell into
 complete fury, took up a mus-
 ket, and swore he would shoot
 me. But he had not gone
 many steps when he relented.
 He stopped, and bursting into
 tears, begged me to go by my-
 self, and try again to bring her
 reason, and even to threaten
 her with death. I
 said as he bade me,
 and the man resolutely re-
 fused to die. I fear it
 was rather die than
 live again through
 such a scene we may fall
 into the hands of some
 cruel man now I live
 among humane people.
 I said that I despise
 death. This cruel answer
 made the unfortunate
 husband of his
 own against a
 rival. In the
 end, he fell upon his
 knees, and ultimately de-
 clined her advice.
 I said my resolution
 was fixed, who at first
 had been against
 his declaring
 to follow my ex-
 ample, and to be al-
 ready for the next

The morning came, and the
 scene appeared again, renew-
 ing the demand for the restora-

tion of the captives. This was immediately agreed to, and at the same time Mr. Bulugin, myself, and three others of our party surrendered ourselves to their discretion. The remainder of our comrades, however, obstinately refused to follow. Having taken, therefore, a hearty farewell of each other, we departed with the tribe to which we now belonged. The next day we reached the village of the Koonishtshati (a tribe in the vicinity of Cape Flattery), where my host, the above-named chief, Yootramaki, had his winter residence. Mr. B. went to the master of his wife, whilst the three others fell into various hands. The remainder of our companions attempted to reach the Island of Destruction, but foundered upon a rock; and after losing all their gunpowder, had some difficulty in escaping with their lives. They tried, therefore, to overtake us; but being intercepted by another tribe, they were all taken prisoners and dispersed along the coast.

‘At the end of about a month, my master returned to his village near Cape Flattery, taking with him myself and Mr. B., whom he had purchased from his master, with a promise of purchasing his wife also. We lived for some time very comfortable; but afterwards our situation frequently changed, the savages sometimes selling, *sometimes giving us to one another.* The fate of poor Mr.

and Mrs. B., who had become reconciled to each other, was truly cruel; sometimes they were united together, sometimes they were separated, and in constant fear of being so for ever. At last death kindly released them. The lady died in August 1809, and in February of the following year her disconsolate husband followed her; but not to the grave, for his wife had been at her death in the hands of such a barbarian, that he would not allow her a burial, but had her exposed in the forest. In the meantime I passed the greater part of my captivity with the good Yootramaki, who treated me like a friend. These people are like children, and pleased with every trifle. I found, therefore, no difficulty in ingratiating myself with them; and the construction of a paper kite and a watchman's rattle spread my reputation, as well as that of the Russian nation in general, far among them. At last their veneration for my abilities was carried so far, that in one of the general assemblies of the toëns, it was resolved that they would henceforward consider me as one of their equals, after which I always enjoyed the same honours as my master or any other chief. They often wondered how Bulugin, who could neither shoot birds flying nor use the hatchet, could have been our chief. During the ensuing winter, so great a dearth of provisions ensued, that one

ensure their immunity for their flight.

'In the month of March, we again removed to our summer village, where I built for myself a hut, with embrasures for defence, and of so novel a construction, that the chiefs came from great distances in order to see and admire it. In the meantime, however, God had heard our prayers, and provided for our deliverance. On the 6th of May, an American brig, the *Lydia*, Captain Brown, visited this coast. I went on board, and found one of our companions, whom the captain had released near the river Columbia. This honest tar immedi-

would detain him till the Russians were delivered him for a moderate price, which several of us had been ransomed. This man had the desired effect, less than two days he had thirteen of us. Seven during our captivity, had been sold to a distant place among whom he remained one was ransomed in another American vessel the river Columbia. On the 10th of May our vessel anchored, and after touching several points of the coast for the purpose of barter, we safely landed on the 15th of June at New Archangel.

CHAPTER XIV.

TIES ON THE MEDICAL PART

by M. de Chaumareys, who appears to have been wholly unworthy of his station. In the course of the voyage the smaller ships parted company, and the *Medusa* was left alone. In consequence of a most disgraceful obstinacy and want of seamanship on the part of the captain, the vessel ran upon the bank of Arguin, which lies off the northern part of the Senegambian coast. The crew were immediately thrown into the most dreadful consternation. But when they had partly shaken off the effects of the first shock, they began to make efforts for getting the vessel off the reef; their exertions, however, were awkward, ill-directed, and consequently ineffectual. They were continued for two days, and were then relinquished in despair. On the night of the third day a heavy gale arose, the sea ran high, and the ship bulged. The keel broke in two, the rudder was unshipped; and as it still held to the stern by the chains, every wave made it act as a battering-ram against the vessel, to the destruction of which it materially contributed. At this critical period, when order and union were so needful, a mutiny broke out, excited by some of the soldiers, who persuaded their comrades that it was intended to leave them in the frigate, while the crew escaped in the boats. The governor and the officers, however, succeeded in bringing back the soldiers to their duty.

As the boats were not sufficiently capacious to contain the sailors and troops, a raft was hastily and unskilfully constructed, while attempts were making to liberate the frigate. When, by the bulging of the frigate, all hope was at an end, it became necessary to resort to this clumsy contrivance. The same carelessness and want of foresight, which had marked all the past proceedings, still prevailed at this important moment. No arrangements for embarking were made, no care was taken to secure a proper supply of provisions; all was confusion and fear. Some boats had not above twenty-four pounds of biscuit, a small cask of water, and very little wine. The raft, which was designed to carry 150 persons, had a tolerably large quantity of wine, and some water, but not a single barrel of biscuit. A bag containing twenty-five pounds of biscuit, which was thrown from the vessel at the instant of departure, and the contents of which were converted into paste by the sea water, was the sole resource of the unfortunate navigators on the raft. On board the six boats were two hundred and thirty persons. On the raft were a hundred and twenty soldiers and officers, twenty-nine sailors and passengers, and one woman. Seventeen were abandoned on the wreck, some too intoxicated to be moved, some despairing of the safety of the boats. The embarkation was

and charts on board the raft, and was told that everything which could possibly be wanted there had been provided, and that a naval officer would be sent to assume the command. The officer, however, Mr. Douglas, a lieutenant, not liking the post assigned him, hastened back again on board the frigate, and returned no more; while neither chart nor compass were ever found.

The ship was quitted on the morning of the 5th of July, the coast being then distant not more than twelve or fifteen leagues. It was settled that the raft should be taken in tow by the boats; and it seems certain that, with proper exertion, the whole might have reached the shore within six-and-thirty hours. But those who navigated the boats, were

ex
an
im
sid
dic
cov
Wi
stu
sol
des
str
ven
glo
the
fir
whi
but
stre
dis
cou
won
then
not
with
Wh

greatly alarmed us, and we uttered cries of rage and vengeance. M. Corréard then recollected that he had seen one in the hands of one of the chief workmen under his command, and inquired of this man about it. "Yes, yes," said he, "I have it with me!" This news transported us with joy, and we thought that our safety depended on this feeble resource. This little compass was about the size of a crown-piece, and far from correct. He who has not been exposed to events in which his existence was in imminent peril, can form but a faint idea of the value which one then sets upon the most common and simple objects; with what avidity one seizes the slightest means that are capable of softening the rigour of the fate with which one has to contend. This compass was given to the commander of the raft; but an accident deprived us of it for ever: it fell, and was lost between the pieces of wood which composed our machine. We had kept it only for a few hours. After this loss, we had nothing to guide us but the rising and setting of the sun.

'We had all left the frigate without taking any food. Hunger began to be severely felt: we mixed our biscuit paste (which had fallen into the sea) with a little wine, and we distributed it thus prepared. Such was our first meal, and the best we had the whole time we were on the raft. An order, accord-

ing to numbers, was fixed for the distribution of our miserable provisions. The ration of wine was fixed at three quarters a day. We shall say no more of the biscuit—the first distribution consumed it entirely. The day passed over pretty quietly. We conversed on the means which we should employ to save ourselves; we spoke of it as a certainty, which animated our courage; and we kept up that of the soldiers, by cherishing the hope of being soon able to revenge ourselves upon those who had so basely abandoned us. This hope of vengeance inspired us all equally, and we uttered a thousand imprecations against those who had left us a prey to so many misfortunes and dangers. The officer who commanded the raft being unable to move, Mr. Savigny took on himself the care of setting up the mast. He caused the pole of one of the frigate's masts to be cut in two; we employed the main top-gallant sail; the mast was kept up by the rope which had served to tow us, of which we made shrouds and stays; it was fixed on the anterior third of the raft. The sail trimmed very well, but the effect of it was of very little use to us; it served only when the wind came from behind, and to make the raft preserve this direction it was necessary to turn the sail, as if the wind came athwart. We think that the cross position which our raft always retained, may be

our prayers the advantage of hoping in our safety. One must have experienced cruel situations to imagine what a soothing charm, in the midst of misfortune, is afforded by the sublime idea of a God, the Protector of the unfortunate. One consoling idea still pleased our imaginations : we presumed that the little division had sailed for the Isle of Arguin, and that, after having landed there, a part of its people would return to our assistance. This idea, which we tried to inspire into our soldiers and sailors, checked their clamours. The night came, and our hopes were not yet fulfilled ; the wind freshened, the sea rose considerably. What a dreadful night ! Nothing but the idea of seeing the boats the next day, gave some consolation to our people, who, being

floating on the enormous sea lifted us even from the raft, and then carry us away. This rendered still more the horrors of a very long night for some moments that we saw fires at a distance. We had taken the precaution to hang at the top of the mast some gunpowder and with which we had armed ourselves on board. We made signals by great many charges of powder, but we even fired some of them ; but it seems that we were only an illusion to eyesight, or perhaps nothing but the dash of the breakers.

'This whole night we tended against death fast by the ropes which were strongly fastened.

moment were heard the lamentable cries of the soldiers and sailors; they prepared themselves for death; they bade farewell to each other, imploring the protection of Heaven, and addressing fervent prayers to God; all made vows to Him, notwithstanding the certainty that they should never be able to fulfil them. Dreadful situation! How is it possible to form an idea of it which is not below the truth! About seven o'clock in the morning, the sea fell a little, and the wind blew with less fury; but what a sight presented itself to our view! Ten or twelve unhappy wretches, having their lower extremities entangled in the openings between the pieces of the raft, had not been able to disengage themselves, and had lost their lives; several others had been carried off by the violence of the sea. At the hour of repast we took fresh numbers, in order to leave no break in the series: we missed twenty men! We will not affirm that this number is very exact, for we found that some soldiers, in order to have more than their rations, took two, and even three, numbers. We were so many persons crowded together, that it was absolutely impossible to prevent these abuses.

'Amidst these horrors, an affecting scene of filial piety forced us to shed tears: two young men raised, and recognised for their father, an unfortunate man who was stretched

senseless under the feet of the people; at first they thought he was dead, and their despair expressed itself by the most affecting lamentations. It was perceived, however, that his almost inanimate body still had breath; we lavished on him all the assistance in our power; he recovered by degrees, and was restored to life and to the prayers of his sons, who held him fast embraced in their arms. While the rights of nature resumed their empire in this affecting episode of our sad adventures, we had soon the afflicting sight of a melancholy contrast. Two young lads, and a baker, did not fear to seek death by throwing themselves into the sea, after having taken leave of their companions in misfortune. Already the faculties of our men were singularly impaired; some fancied they saw the land; others, vessels which were coming to save us: all announced to us by their cries these fallacious visions.

'We deplored the loss of our unhappy companions; we did not presage at this moment the still more terrible scene which was to take place the following night. Far from that, we enjoyed a degree of satisfaction, so fully were we persuaded that the boats would come to our relief. The day was fine, and the most perfect tranquillity prevailed on our raft. The evening came, and the boats did not appear. Despondency began again to seize all

our people, and a mutinous spirit manifested itself by cries of fury ; the voice of the officers was wholly disregarded. When the night came, the sky was covered with thick clouds ; the wind, which during the day had been rather high, now became furious, and agitated the sea, which in an instant grew very rough. If the preceding night had been terrible, this was still more horrible. Mountains of water covered us every moment, and broke with violence in the midst of us. Very happily we had the wind behind us, and the fury of the waves was a little checked by the rapidity of our progress. We drove towards the land. From the violence of the sea, the men passed rapidly from the back to the front of the raft. We were obliged to keep in the centre, the most solid part of the raft ; those who could not get there almost all perished. Before and behind the waves dashed with fury, and carried off the men in spite of all their resistance. At the centre, the crowd was such that some poor men were stifled by the weight of their comrades, who fell upon them every moment. The officers kept themselves at the foot of the little mast, obliged every instant, to avoid the waves, to call to those who surrounded them to go on the one or the other side ; for the waves which came upon us, *nearly athwart*, gave our raft a *position almost perpendicular, so that, in order to counter-*

balance it, we were obliged to run to that side which was raised up by the sea.

'The soldiers and sailors, terrified by the presence of an almost inevitable danger, gave themselves up for lost. Firmly believing that they were going to be swallowed up, they resolved to soothe their last moments by drinking till they lost the use of their reason. We had not strength to oppose this disorder ; they fell upon a cask which was at the middle of the raft, made a large hole at one end, and with little tin cups, which they had brought from on board the frigate, they each took a pretty large quantity. But they were soon obliged to desist, because the sea-water entered by the hole which they had made. The fumes of the wine soon disordered their brains, already affected by the presence of danger and want of food. Thus inflamed, these men became deaf to the voice of reason, desired to implicate, in one common destruction, their companions in misfortune. They openly expressed their intention to rid themselves of the officers, who, they said, wished to oppose their design, and then to destroy the raft by cutting the ropes which united the different parts that composed it. A moment after they were proceeding to put this plan into execution. One of them advanced to the edge of the raft with a boarding axe, and began to strike the cords ; this was the

signal for revolt. We advanced in order to stop these madmen. He who was armed with the axe, with which he even threatened an officer, was the first victim; a blow with a sabre put an end to his existence. This man was an Asiatic, and soldier in a colonial regiment; of colossal stature, short curled hair, extremely large nose, an enormous mouth and a sallow complexion gave him a hideous air. He had placed himself at first in the middle of the raft, and at every blow of his fist he overthrew those who stood in his way; he inspired the greatest terror, and nobody dared to approach him. If there had been half a dozen like him, our destruction would have been inevitable.

‘Some persons desirous of prolonging their existence joined those who wished to preserve the raft, and armed themselves; of this number were some subaltern officers and many passengers. The mutineers drew their sabres, and those who had none armed themselves with knives; they advanced resolutely against us; we put ourselves on our defence; the attack was going to begin. Animated by despair, one of the mutineers lifted his sabre against an officer; he immediately fell, pierced with wounds. This firmness awed them a moment, but did not at all diminish their rage. They *ceased to threaten us, and presenting a front bristling with*

sabres and bayonets, they retired to the back part, to execute their plan. One of them pretended to rest himself on the little railing which formed the sides of the raft, and with a knife began to cut the cords. Being informed by a servant, we rushed upon him. A soldier attempted to defend him, threatened an officer with his knife, and, in attempting to strike him, only pierced his coat. The officer turned round, overpowered his adversary, and threw both him and his comrade into the sea!

‘After this there were no more partial affairs; the combat became general. Some cried, “Lower the sail!” a crowd of madmen instantly threw themselves on the yards and the shrouds, and cut the stays, and let the mast fall, and nearly broke the thigh of a captain of foot, who fell senseless. He was seized by the soldiers, who threw him into the sea; we perceiving it, saved him, and placed him on a barrel, from which he was taken by the seditious, who were going to cut out his eyes with a penknife. Exasperated by so many cruelties, we no longer kept any measures, and charged them furiously. With our sabres drawn, we traversed the lines which the soldiers formed, and many atoned with their lives for a moment of delusion. Several passengers displayed much courage and coolness in these cruel moments.

'M. Corréard had fallen into a kind of trance; but hearing every moment cries of "To arms! To arms, comrades! We are undone!" joined to the cries and imprecations of the wounded and the dying, he was soon roused from his lethargy. The increasing confusion made him sensible that it was necessary to be upon his guard. Armed with his sabre, he assembled some of his workmen on the front of the raft, and forbade them to hurt any one unless they were attacked. He remained almost always with them, and they had several times to defend themselves against the attacks of the mutineers, who, falling into the sea, returned by the front of the raft, which placed M. Corréard and his little troop between two dangers, and rendered their position very difficult to be defended. Every moment men presented themselves armed with knives, sabres, and bayonets; many had carbines, which they used as clubs. The workmen did their utmost to stop them by presenting the point of their sabres; and, notwithstanding the repugnance they felt to combat their unhappy countrymen, they were, however, obliged to use their arms without reserve; for, as many of the mutineers attacked them with fury, it was necessary to repulse them in the same manner. In this action some of the workmen received large wounds; he who

commanded them reckoned a great number, which he received in the various combat they had to maintain. At last their united efforts succeeded in dispersing the masses that advanced furiously against them. During this combat, M. Corréard was informed by one of his workmen who remained faithful, that one of their comrades, named Dominique, had taken part with the mutineers and that he had just been thrown into the sea. Immediately forgetting the fault and the treachery of this man, he threw himself in after him, at the place where the voice of the wretch had just been heard calling for assistance; he seized him by the hair, and had the good fortune to get him on board. Dominique had received in charge several sabre wounds, one of which had laid open his head. Notwithstanding the darkness, we found the wound which appeared to us to be very considerable. One of the workmen gave his handkerchief to bind it up and stanch the blood. Our care revived this wretch but as soon as he recovered his strength, the ungrateful fellow again forgetting his duty and the signal service he had just received from us, went to rejoin the mutineers. So much baseness and fury did not go unpunished; for soon afterwards while combating us anew, he met with his death, from which he, in fact, did not merit to be rescued, but which he was

probably have avoided, if, faithful to honour and to gratitude, he had remained among us.

‘Just when we had almost finished applying a kind of dressing to the wounds of Dominique, another voice was heard. It was that of the unfortunate woman who was on the raft with us, and whom the madmen had thrown into the sea, as well as her husband, who defended her with courage. M. Corréard, in despair at seeing two poor wretches perish, whose lamentable cries, especially those of the woman, pierced his heart, seized a large rope which was on the front of the raft, which he fastened round the middle of his body, and threw himself a second time into the sea, whence he was so happy as to rescue the woman, who invoked with all her might the aid of our Lady of Laux, while her husband was likewise saved by the chief workman, Lavillette. We seated these two poor people upon dead bodies, with their backs leaning against a barrel. In a few minutes they had recovered their senses. The first thought of the woman was to inquire the name of him who had saved her, and to testify to him the warmest gratitude. Thinking, doubtless, that her words did not sufficiently express her sentiments, she recollected that she had in her pocket a little snuff, and immediately offered it to him—it was all that she possessed. Touched by this

present, but not using snuff, M. Corréard, in turn, made a present of it to a poor sailor, who used it three or four days. But a more affectionate scene, which it is impossible for us to describe, was the joy which this unfortunate couple displayed when they had sufficiently recovered their senses to see that they were saved.

‘The mutineers being repulsed, as we have said above, left us at this moment a little repose. The moon with her sad beams illumined this fatal raft, this narrow space, in which were united so many heartrending afflictions, so many cruel distresses; a fury so insensate, a courage so heroic, the most pleasing and generous sentiments of nature and humanity. The man and his wife, who just before had seen themselves attacked with sabres and bayonets, and thrown at the same moment into the waves of a stormy sea, could hardly believe their senses when they found themselves in each other’s arms. They felt, they expressed so fervently, the happiness which they were, alas, to enjoy for so short a time, that this affecting sight might have drawn tears from the most insensible heart. But in this terrible moment, when we were but just breathing after the most furious attack, when we were forced to be constantly on our guard, not only against the attacks of the men, but also against the fury of the waves, few of us had time, if we may say so,

to suffer ourselves to be moved by this scene of conjugal friendship.

‘After this second check, the fury of the soldiers suddenly abated, and gave place to extreme cowardice. Many of them fell at our feet and asked pardon, which we instantly granted them. Thinking that order was restored, we had returned to our post at the centre of the raft; only we took the precaution to retain our arms. It was nearly midnight. After an hour’s apparent tranquillity, the soldiers rose again; their senses were entirely deranged; they rushed upon us like madmen, with their knives or sabres in their hands. As they were in full possession of their bodily strength, and were also armed, we were forced again to put ourselves on our defence. Their revolt was the more dangerous, as in their delirium they were entirely deaf to the cries of reason. They attacked us. We charged them in our turn, and soon the raft was covered with their dead bodies. Those among our adversaries who had no arms attempted to tear us with their teeth; several of us were cruelly bitten; M. Savigny was himself bitten in the legs and shoulder; he received also a wound with a knife in his right arm, which deprived him for a long time of the use of the fourth and little *fingers* of that hand: many *others* were wounded. Our *th*es were pierced in many

places by knives and sabres. One of our workmen was also seized by four of the mutineers, who were going to throw him into the sea. One of them had seized him by the right leg, and was biting him cruelly in the sinew above the heel. The others were beating him severely with their sabres and the butt-end of their carbines; his cries made us fly to his aid. On this occasion, the brave Lavillette, ex-sergeant of the artillery on foot of the Old Guard, behaved with courage worthy of the highest praise. We rushed on these desperadoes, after the example of M. Corréard, and soon rescued the workman from the danger which threatened him. A few moments after, the mutineers, in another charge, seized on the sub-lieutenant Lozach, whom they took in their delirium for Lieutenant Danglas, of whom we have spoken before, and who had abandoned the raft when we were on the point of putting off from the frigate. The soldiers in general bore much ill-will to this officer, who had seen little service, and whom they reproached with having treated them harshly while they were in garrison in the Isle of Rhé. It would have been a favourable opportunity for them to satiate their rage upon him; and in the thirst of vengeance and destruction which animated them, they fancied they had found him in the person of M. Lozach, whom they were going to throw into the sea. In truth, the

soldiers almost equally disliked the latter, who had served only in the Vendean bands of Saint Pol de Leon. We believed this officer lost, when his voice being heard, informed us that it was still possible to save him. Immediately Messrs. Clairet, Savigny, L'Heureux, Lavillette, Coudin, Corréard, and some workmen, having formed themselves into little parties, fell upon the insurgents with so much impetuosity, that they overthrew all who opposed them, recovered M. Lozach, and brought him back to the centre of the raft. The preservation of this officer cost us infinite trouble. Every moment the soldiers demanded that he should be given up to them, always calling him by the name of Danglas. It was in vain we attempted to make them sensible of their mistake, and to recall to their memory that he whom they demanded had returned on board the frigate, as they had themselves seen. Their cries drowned the voice of reason; everything was in their eyes Danglas; they saw him everywhere, and furiously and unceasingly demanded his head; and it was only by force of arms that we succeeded in repressing their rage and in silencing their frightful cries.

'On this occasion we had also reason to be alarmed for the safety of M. Coudin. Wounded and fatigued by the attacks *which we had sustained with the disaffected, and in which he*

had displayed the most dauntless courage, he was reposing on a barrel, holding in his arms a sailor boy, of twelve years of age, to whom he had attached himself. The mutineers seized him with his barrel, and threw him into the sea with the boy, whom he still held fast. Notwithstanding his burden, M. Coudin had the presence of mind to catch hold of the raft, and to save himself from this extreme danger. Dreadful night! thy gloomy veil covered these cruel combats, instigated by the most terrible despair.

'It is almost incredible that a handful of individuals could resist such a considerable number of madmen. There were certainly not more than twenty of us to resist all these furious wretches. Let it, however, not be imagined that we preserved our reason unimpaired amidst all this disorder; terror, alarm, and the most cruel privations had greatly affected our intellectual faculties; but being a little less deranged than the unfortunate soldiers, we energetically opposed their determination to cut the cords of the raft.

'After these different combats, worn out with fatigue, want of food and of sleep, we endeavoured to take a few moments' repose. At length daylight came, and disclosed all the horrors of the scene. A great number had in their delirium thrown themselves into the sea. We found that between sixty and sixty-five men had perished

during the night; we calculated that at least a fourth part had drowned themselves in despair. We had lost only two on our side, neither of whom was an officer. The deepest despondency was painted on every face; every one, now that he was come to himself, was sensible of his situation; some of us, shedding tears of despair, bitterly deplored the rigour of our fate.

‘We soon discovered a new misfortune—the rebels, during the tumult, had thrown into the sea two barrels of wine, and the only two casks of water that we had on the raft. One of the water-casks was recovered, but the mutineers had made a large hole in it, and the sea-water got in, so that the fresh water was quite spoiled. As soon as M. Corréard perceived that they were going to throw the wine into the sea, and that the barrels were almost entirely loose, he resolved to place himself on one of them, where he was continually thrown to and fro by the impulse of the waves; but he did not let go his hold. His example was followed by some others, who seized the second cask, and remained some hours at that dangerous post. After much trouble, they had succeeded in saving these two casks, which being every moment violently driven against their legs, had bruised them severely. Being unable to hold out any longer, they made some representations to those who,

with M. Savigny, employed all their efforts to maintain order and preserve the raft. One of them took his (M. Corréard’s) place; others relieved the rest. But finding this service too difficult, and being assaulted by the mutineers, they forsook this post. Then the barrels were thrown into the sea. Two casks of wine had been consumed the preceding day. We had now only one left, and as we were above sixty in number, it became necessary to put ourselves on half allowance. At daybreak the sea grew calm, which enabled us to put up our mast again; we then did our utmost to direct our course towards the coast. Whether it were an illusion or reality, we thought we saw it, and that we distinguished the burning air of the Sahara Desert. It is, in fact, very probable that we were not very distant from it, for we had had winds from the sea which had blown violently. In the sequel we spread the sail indifferently to every wind that blew, so that one day we approached the coast, on the next ran into the open sea.

‘As soon as our mast was replaced, we made a distribution of wine; the unhappy soldiers murmured and accused us for privations which we bore as well as they; they fell down with fatigue. For forty-eight hours we had taken nothing, and had been obliged to struggle incessantly against a stormy sea; like them, we could hardly sup-

port ourselves; courage alone still made us act. We resolved to employ all possible means to procure fish. We collected all the tags from the soldiers, and made little hooks of them; we bent a bayonet to catch sharks: all this availed us nothing; the currents carried our hooks under the raft, where they got entangled. A shark bit at the bayonet, and straightened it. We gave our project up. Those whom death had spared in the disastrous night which we have just described, were so ravenous with hunger that they fell upon everything within their reach, and attempted to devour it; articles, which in happier and more plentiful days they would have rejected with contempt and loathing, were now struggled and fought for with all the reckless fierceness and wild savage fury which the pangs of starvation seem alone able to excite; yet, in almost every instance, he who was successful in securing the coveted luxury, was compelled to throw it away, after vainly attempting to make it answer the purpose of food. We tried to eat sword-belts and cartouch-boxes. We succeeded in swallowing some little morsels. Some ate linen, others pieces of leather from the hats, on which there was a little grease, or rather dirt. We were obliged to give up these last means.

‘The day was calm and fine. A ray of hope allayed our uneasiness for a moment. We still expected to see the boats

or some vessels; we addressed our prayers to the Eternal, and placed our confidence in Him. The half of our men were very weak, and bore on all their features the stamp of approaching dissolution. The evening passed over, and no assistance came. The darkness of this third night increased our alarm; but the wind was slight, and the sea less agitated. We took some moments’ repose,—a repose which was still more terrible than our situation the preceding day; cruel dreams added to the horrors of our situation. Tormented by hunger and thirst, our plaintive cries sometimes awakened from his sleep the wretch who was reposing close to us. We were even now up to our knees in the water, so that we could only repose standing, pressed against each other to form a solid mass. The fourth morning’s sun at length rose on our disaster, and showed us ten or twelve of our companions extended lifeless on the raft. This sight affected us the more, as it announced to us that our bodies, deprived of existence, would soon be stretched on the same place. We gave their bodies to the sea for a grave; and with eyes that made one shudder to look into them, hungrily watched their gradual disappearance beneath the cruel waves. This day was fine; our minds, longing for more agreeable sensations, were harmonized by the soothing aspect of nature, and admitted a ray of hope. About

...quantity. We took near two hundred, and put them in an empty cask; as we caught them, we opened them to take out what is called the milt. This food seemed delicious to us; but one man would have wanted a thousand. Our first impulse was to address new thanksgivings to God for this unexpected benefit.

'An ounce of gunpowder had been found in the morning, and dried in the sun during the day, which was very fine; a steel, some gun-flints and tinder, were also found in the same parcel. After infinite trouble, we succeeded in setting fire to some pieces of dry linen. We made a large hole in one side of an empty cask, and placed at the bottom of it several things which we wetted; and on this kind of scaffolding we made our fire;

gav
bea
was
app
sign
'
and
neut
som
then
a pk
sea,
sign
Thes
selve
negre
the
and
were
be e
witho
savin
the w
and
out i

for combat was given by a Spaniard, who, placing himself behind the mast, laid fast hold of it, made the sign of the cross with one hand, invoking the name of God, and held a knife in the other; the sailors seized him, and threw him into the sea. The servant of an officer of the troops on board was in the plot. He was an Italian, from the light artillery of the ex-king of his country. When he perceived that the plot was discovered, he armed himself with the last boarding axe that there was on the raft, wrapped himself in a piece of drapery, which he wore folded over his breast, and, of his own accord, threw himself into the sea. The mutineers rushed forward to avenge their comrades, a terrible combat again ensued, and both sides fought with desperate fury. Soon the fatal raft was covered with dead bodies, and flowing with blood which ought to have been shed in another cause, and by other hands. In this tumult, cries, with which we were familiar, were renewed, and we heard the imprecations of those whose rage again demanded the head of Lieutenant Danglas! We again replied, to the cries of the assailants, he whom they demanded was not with us; but we had no more success in persuading them; nothing could make them recollect themselves; we were obliged to continue to combat them, and to oppose force to those over whom reason had lost all its influence. In

this confusion the unfortunate woman was a second time thrown into the sea. We perceived it, and M. Coudin, assisted by some workmen, took her up again to prolong for a few moments her torments and her existence.

‘In this horrible night, Lavillette gave further proofs of the rarest intrepidity. It was to him, and to some of those who have escaped the consequences of our misfortunes, that we are indebted for our safety. At length, after unheard of efforts, the mutineers were again repulsed, and tranquillity restored. After we had escaped this new danger, we endeavoured to take some moments’ repose. The day at length rose upon us for the fifth time. We were now only thirty left; we had lost four or five of our faithful sailors; those who survived were in the most deplorable state; the sea-water had almost entirely excoriated our lower extremities; we were covered with contusions and wounds, which, irritated by the salt water, made us utter every moment piercing cries; so that there were not above twenty of us who were able to stand upright or walk. Almost our whole stock was exhausted; we had no more wine than was sufficient for four days, and we had not above a dozen fish left. In four days, said we, we shall be in want of everything, and death will be unavoidable. Thus arrived the seventh day

since we had been abandoned ; we calculated that, in case the boats had not stranded on the coast, they would want at least three or four times twenty-four hours to reach St. Louis. Time was further required to equip ships, and for these ships to find us ; we resolved to hold out as long as possible. In the course of the day, two soldiers slipped behind the only barrel of wine we had left ; they had bored a hole in it, and were drinking by means of a reed. We had all sworn that he who should employ such means should be punished with death. This law was instantly put in execution, and the two trespassers were thrown into the sea.

‘This same day terminated the existence of a child, twelve years of age, named Leon ; he died away like a lamp which ceases to burn for want of aliment. Everything spoke in favour of this amiable young creature, who merited a better fate. His angelic countenance, his melodious voice, the interest inspired by his youth, which was increased by the courage he had shown, and the services he had performed, for he had already made in the preceding year a campaign in the East Indies,—all this filled us with the tenderest interest for this young victim, devoted to a death so dreadful and premature. Our soldiers, and our people in general, bestowed upon him all the care which they thought calculated to pro-

long his existence. It was in vain ; his strength at last forsook him. Neither the wine, which we gave him without regret, nor all the means which could be employed, could rescue him from his sad fate ; he expired in the arms of M. Coudin, who had not ceased to show him the kindest attention. As long as the strength of this young marine had allowed him to move, he ran continually from one side to the other, calling with loud cries for his unhappy mother, water, and food. He walked without discrimination over the feet and legs of his companions in misfortune, who in their turn uttered cries of anguish, which were every moment repeated. But their complaints were very seldom accompanied by menaces ; they pardoned everything in the poor youth who had caused them. Besides, he was, in fact, in a state of mental derangement, and in his uninterrupted alienation he could not be expected to behave as if he had still retained some use of reason.

‘We were now only twenty-seven remaining ; of this number but fifteen seemed likely to live some days ; all the rest, covered with large wounds, had almost entirely lost their reason ; yet they had a share in the distribution of provisions, and might, before their death, consume thirty or forty bottles of wine, which were of inestimable value to us. We deliberated thus—to put the sick on half

allowance would have been killing them by inches. So, after a debate, at which the most dreadful despair presided, it was resolved to throw them into the sea. This measure, however repugnant it was to ourselves, procured the survivors wine for six days. When the decision was made, who would dare to execute it? The habit of seeing death ready to pounce upon us as his prey, the certainty of our infallible destruction, without this fatal expedient,—everything, in a word, had hardened our hearts, and rendered them callous to all feeling except that of self-preservation. Three sailors and a soldier took on themselves this cruel execution. We turned our faces aside, and wept tears of blood over the fate of these unhappy men. Among them were the unfortunate woman and her husband. Both of them had been severely wounded in the various combats; the woman had a thigh broken between the pieces of wood composing the raft, and her husband had received a deep wound with a sabre on his head. Everything announced their speedy dissolution. We must seek to console ourselves by the belief, that our cruel resolution shortened but for a few moments only the measure of their existence. This dreadful expedient saved the fifteen who remained; for when we were found by the *Argus*, we had very little wine left, and it was the sixth day

after the cruel sacrifice which we have just described. The victims, we repeat it, had not above forty-eight hours to live, and by keeping them on the raft we should absolutely have been destitute of the means of existence two days before we were found. Weak as we were, we considered it as certain that it would have been impossible for us to hold out, even twenty-four hours, without taking some food. After this catastrophe, which inspired us with a degree of horror not to be overcome, we threw the arms into the sea; we reserved, however, one sabre, in case it should be wanted to cut a rope or piece of wood. After all this, we had scarcely sufficient food on the raft to last for the six days, and they were the most wretched imaginable. Our dispositions had become soured; even in sleep we figured to ourselves the sad end of all our unhappy companions, and we loudly invoked death.

‘A new event happened, which happily diverted our attention from the horrors of our situation. All at once a white butterfly, of the species so common in France, appeared fluttering over our heads, and settled on the sail. The first idea which, as it were, inspired each of us, made us consider this little creature as the harbinger which brought us the news of a speedy approach to land, and we snatched at this hope with a kind of delirium of joy. But it was the ninth day

we passed upon the raft; the torments of hunger consumed us; already some of the soldiers and sailors devoured with haggard eyes this wretched prey, and seemed ready to dispute it with each other. Others considered this butterfly as a messenger of heaven, declared that they took the poor insect under their protection, and hindered any injury being done to it. We turned our wishes and our eyes towards the land, which we so ardently longed for, and which we every moment fancied we saw rise before us. It is certain that we could not be far from it; for the butterflies continued on the following days to come and flutter about our sail. And the same day we had another sign equally positive; for we saw a goeland flying over our raft. This second visitor did not allow us to doubt of our being very near to the African shore, and we persuaded ourselves that we should soon be thrown upon the coast by the force of the currents. How often did we then, and in the following days, invoke a tempest to throw us on the coast, which, it seemed to us, we were on the point of touching!

'The hope which had just penetrated the inmost recesses of our souls, revived our enfeebled strength, and inspired us with an ardour and activity of which we should not have thought ourselves capable. We again had recourse to all the means which we had before

employed to catch fish. Above all, we eagerly longed for the goeland, which appeared several times tempted to settle on the end of our machine. The impatience of our desire increased, when we saw several of its companions join it, and keep following us till our deliverance. But all attempts to draw them to us were in vain; not one of them suffered itself to be taken by the snares we had laid for them. Thus our destiny on the fatal raft was to be incessantly tossed between transitory illusions and continued torments, and we never experienced an agreeable sensation without being, in a manner, condemned to atone for it by the anguish of some new suffering, by the irritating pangs of hope always deceived. Another care employed us this day: as soon as we were reduced to a small number, we collected the little strength we had remaining; we loosened some planks on the front of the raft, and with some pretty long pieces of wood, raised in the centre a kind of platform, on which we reposed. All the effects which we had been able to collect were placed upon it, and served to render it less hard; besides, they hindered the sea from passing with so much facility through the intervals between the different pieces of the raft; but the waves came across, and sometimes covered us entirely.

'During the first days and nights of our being abandoned,

her was very cold, but the immersion pretty d during the last nights passed on the raft, every t a wave rolled over us, ced a very disagreeable i, and made us utter cries, so that each of ryed means to avoid it: used their heads by f pieces of wood, and th whatever they could f parapet, against which broke: others sheltered es behind empty casks, re placed across along- ch other; but these ten proved insufficient; nly when the sea was n that it did not break

ging thirst, which was d in the day-time by ms of a burning sun, d us. We tried to our thirst by drinking r. M. Griffon, the go- secretary, used it con- He drank ten or twelve n succession. But by ns our thirst was only ed to render it more t moment after. An f the army found by a little lemon, and it imagined how valuable it was to him; he, reserved it entirely for his comrades, notwith- the most pressing en- could not obtain any ready emotions of rage ng in every heart; and l not partly yielded to o surrounded him, they

would certainly have taken it from him by force, and he would have perished the victim of his selfishness. We also disputed for about thirty cloves of garlic, which had been found accidentally in a little bag. All these disputes were generally accompanied with violent threats; and if they had been protracted, we should perhaps have come to the last extremities. We had found, also, two little phials which contained a spirituous liquor to clean the teeth; he who possessed them kept them carefully, and made many difficulties in giving one or two drops of this liquid in the hollow of the hand. This liquor produced on our tongues a delightful sensation, and removed for a few moments the thirst which consumed us. Some of us found pieces of pewter, which, being put into the mouth, produced a kind of coolness. One of the means generally employed was to put some sea-water into a hat, with which we washed our faces for some time, recurring to it at intervals; we also moistened our hair with it, and held our hands plunged into the water. Misfortune rendered us ingenious, and everyone thought of a thousand means to alleviate his sufferings. Suffering from the most cruel privations, the smallest agreeable sensation was tous a supreme happiness. Thus we eagerly sought a little empty phial which one of us possessed, and which had formerly contained essence of roses; as soon

quenched our thirst much more than if we had drunk it off at once. Even the smell of this liquor was extremely agreeable to us. M. Savigny observed that many of us, after having taken our small portion, fell into a state approaching to intoxication, and that there was always more discord among us after the distribution had been made.

Three days passed in inexpressible anguish; we despised life to such a degree, that many of us did not fear to bathe in sight of the sharks which surrounded our raft; others placed themselves naked on the front part of our machine, which was still submerged: these means diminished a little their burning thirst. A kind of polypus (mollusca), known by seamen under the name of *gallez*.

fi
re
n
d
tr
fa
wi
pe
fix
tra
na
tin
fix
to
ma
wit
ma
rop
sta
cas
clo
the
din
sh

from the front to the back of it, finding the mast in his way, set his foot on one of the cross boards ; the weight of his body made it upset, and this accident proved to us the risk of our enterprise. It was then resolved that we should all await death in our present situation. The cable which fastened the machine to our raft was made loose, and it drifted away. It is very certain that, if we had ventured upon this second raft, weak as we were, obliged to row, and still exposed to the fury of the waves, we should not have been able to hold out six hours. Meantime the night came, and its gloomy shades revived in our minds the most afflicting thoughts ; we were convinced that there were not above twelve or fifteen bottles of wine left in our barrel. We began to feel at our wits' end ; we knew not how to support life until the hoped-for succour should arrive. We gave ourselves up for lost, and regarded each other with terror as we sat bemoaning our horrible condition.

'On the 17th, in the morning, the sun appeared entirely free from clouds ; after having put up our prayers to the Almighty, we divided among us a part of our wine ; every one was taking with delight his small portion, when a captain of infantry, looking towards the horizon, descried a ship, and announced it to us by an exclamation of joy. We perceived

that it was a brig ; but it was at a very great distance. We could distinguish only the tops of the masts. The sight of this vessel excited in us a transport of joy, which it would be difficult to describe ; each of us believed his deliverance certain, and we gave a thousand thanks to God ; yet fears mingled with our hopes. We straightened some hoops of casks, to the end of which we tied handkerchiefs of different colours. A man, assisted by us all together, mounted to the top of the mast and waved these little flags. For above half an hour we were suspended between hope and fear ; some thought they saw the ship become larger, and others affirmed that its course carried it from us ; these latter were the only ones whose eyes were not fascinated by hope. But the brig disappeared ! From the delirium of joy, we fell into profound despondency and grief ; we envied the fate of those whom we had seen perish at our side, and we said to ourselves, "When we shall be destitute of everything, and our strength begins to forsake us, we will wrap ourselves up as well as we can, we will lay ourselves down on this platform, the scene of so many sufferings, and there we will await death with resignation." At last, to calm our despair, we wished to seek some consolation in the arms of sleep. The day before we had been consumed by the fire of a burning sun ; this day,

to avoid the fierceness of his beams, we made a tent with the sails of the frigate : as soon as it was put up, we all lay down under it, so that we could not perceive what was passing around us. We then proposed to inscribe upon a board an account of our adventures, to write all our names at the bottom of the narrative, and to fasten it to the upper part of the mast, in the vain hope that it would reach the government and our families. After we had passed two hours absorbed in the most cruel reflections, the master gunner of the frigate, wishing to go to the front of the raft, went out of our tent ; scarcely had he put his head out, when he turned towards us uttering a loud cry ; joy was painted on his countenance, his hands were stretched towards the sea, he scarcely breathed ; all that he could say was, "*Saved ! see the brig close upon us !*"

'And, in fact, it was, at the most, half a league distant, carrying a press of sail, and steering so as to come extremely close to us. We hurriedly left the tent ; even those whom enormous wounds in the lower extremities had compelled for some days past always to lie down, crawled to the back part of the raft to enjoy the sight of this vessel, which was coming to deliver us from certain death. We all embraced each other with transports that looked like delirium, and tears of joy rolled

down our cheeks, shrunk by the most cruel privations. Every one seized handkerchiefs or pieces of linen to make signals to the brig, which was approaching rapidly. Others, prostrating themselves, fervently thanked Providence for our miraculous preservation. Our joy redoubled when we perceived a great white flag at the foremast-head, and we exclaimed, "It is then to Frenchmen that we shall owe our deliverance." We almost immediately recognised the brig to be the *Argus* : it was then within two musket-shot : we were extremely impatient to see her clue up her sails ; she lowered them at length, and fresh cries of joy rose from our raft. The *Argus* came and lay to on our starboard, within half a pistol-shot. The crew, ranged on the deck and in the shrouds, showed, by waving their hats and handkerchiefs, the pleasure they felt at coming to the assistance of their unhappy countrymen. A boat was immediately hoisted out ; an officer belonging to the brig, whose name was M. Lemaigre, had embarked in it, in order to have the pleasure of taking us himself from this fatal machine. This officer, full of humanity and zeal, acquitted himself of his mission in the kindest manner, and took himself those that were the weakest, to convey them into the boat. After all the others were placed in it, M. Lemaigre came and took

in his arms M. Corréard, whose health was the worst, and who was the most excoriated: he placed him at his side in the boat, bestowed on him all imaginable cares, and spoke to him in the most consoling terms. In a short time we were all removed on board the *Argus*, where we met with the lieutenant of the frigate, and some others of those who had been shipwrecked. Pity was painted on every face, and compassion drew tears from all who cast their eyes on us.

‘The commander and officers of the brig were eager to serve us, and kindly anticipated our wants. They had just snatched us from death by rescuing us from our raft; their reiterated care rekindled in us the flame of life. M. Renaud, the surgeon, distinguished himself by indefatigable zeal; he passed

the whole day in dressing our wounds; and during the two days that we remained on board the brig, he exerted all the resources of his art, with a degree of attention and gentleness which merit our eternal gratitude. It was, in truth, time that our sufferings should have an end, they had already lasted thirteen days; the strongest among us might, at the most, have lived forty-eight hours more. M. Corréard felt that he must die in the course of the day; yet he had a foreboding that we should be saved: he said that a series of events so extraordinary were not destined to be buried in oblivion: that Providence would preserve some of us at least, that we might present to mankind the affecting picture of our unhappy adventures.’

CHAPTER XV.

ALONE ON AN ISLAND IN THE PACIFIC.

EARLY in the year 1825, the subject of this narrative was, at the age of seventeen, by one of the freaks of fortune, placed on board a ship employed in the South Sea Fishery. The ship being in the latitude of the Galapagos, a group of islands situated about 200 miles west of Peru, she directed her course towards them for the purpose of obtaining wood and water; here they found an American brig, which had arrived there

a day or two previous with the same intention. They came to an anchor fronting a sandy beach of no very great extent, with high hills and lofty woods terminating the prospect; the inland parts at a little distance seemed impracticable from the great thickness of the forests. At two in the afternoon, a number of hands were despatched on shore in the long boat; but not meeting with so desirable a place for watering as they ex-

pected, some of the men entered the woods in search of the 'Quick freshes,' while others proceeded along shore to find one less objectionable.

Of the former party was a young man named Lord; and whether led on by destiny or want of caution, it so happened that he got separated from the rest, and entered quite unconsciously into the thickest part of the country. Having wandered on in this wild labyrinth for nearly two hours, and not finding any water, nor able to knock down any of the large birds which he occasionally disturbed, and chased from among the wild furze and thickets, he began to think of returning, not apprehending any more difficulty of egress than he had met with on entering. Being perfectly satisfied in his own mind that he was proceeding in the direction for the ship, he stedfastly pursued the path he had chosen; evening, however, began to wrap the forest in a deeper gloom, and only just sufficient light remained to show him that he had arrived at a place clothed with some very fine trees, beyond which the woods grew so thick as to render them completely impassable. The fact now flashed upon him that he had proceeded in all probability some miles into the interior.

Our youth was of a character of much pleasantry and good humour, blended with a determined spirit and resolution

greatly superior to most lads of his age; to those qualities, in after years, may be attributed his saving the life of a boy who fell overboard from one of His Majesty's ships at Plymouth, and the promptitude and activity he displayed on another occasion, when a sailor fell from the foreyard into the sea, which procured for him the high commendation of his superior officers, with a certificate of the circumstance from his gallant commander.

But to resume: the certainty of having lost himself did not appear to him to be a discovery of great importance; and with a buoyancy of spirits, he determined to pass the night in the woods, not doubting that on the morrow he should readily find his way back to the vessel. In this comfortable hope, after having fortified himself with a good drink of water from a spring just at hand, he ascended one of the trees; and here, notwithstanding the loud screaming of the night-bird, and the continued whoopings of innumerable owls, 'making night hideous,' worn out by fatigue and watching, he slept till morning.

It may be imagined that at the first glimpse of daybreak he was not a little anxious to get out of the wood, an anxiety increased by his experiencing that uneasy sensation which too long a fast is apt to produce. For some hours he wandered about in the intricacies of this wild and uninhabited spot, sup-

ported in the hope, as he advanced, that his toils were near their termination. Often did he listen in breathless attention to catch the sound of any signal gun to guide his footsteps, and often did he shout in expectation of being heard by those whomight have been despatched in search of him. He ascended at intervals any high tree that he met with in his progress, but found his view constantly intercepted by forests, and elevated hills wooded to their summits.

Hunger now pointed to him the necessity of seeking some means of subsistence; he accordingly prepared with his knife a formidable bludgeon, determined to knock on the head, if an opportunity offered, either biped or quadruped; and scarcely had an hour passed, when he was startled by a rustling among the underwood, and expected some kind of animal to sally forth; but he was surprised to see what in reality was neither one nor the other, for a large black snake glided out from its concealment and raised its head, 'nimble in threats,' at his approach. Having got within range of his stick, he immediately 'rapped' it 'o' the coxcomb,' whereupon it rolled itself up, and after a few twists and twirls remained quite stationary, with its forked tongue thrust out of its mouth. Although he had fasted a long time, yet his hunger had not as yet become so importunate as not to be resisted, otherwise

he might have ventured upon a feed of this reptile; but his attention was diverted from the snake by the conviction of more dangers and difficulties. In this desolate situation, night again overtook him; and although the climate of the island, notwithstanding its latitude, is generally mild, and the middle of the day pleasantly warm, yet the mornings and evenings are rather cold: consequently he had to struggle against both cold and hunger, without any apparent remedy. The simple circumstance of having met with a snake in the day did not seem of much consequence, but the idea of meeting one in the night, occasioned by his hearing those peculiar noises usually made by them at this period, alarmed his imagination, and kept up a continual anxiety.

There being some small springs which ran meandering through the woods, he was not in want of water; and after imbibing a sufficient quantity, he thought it advisable to lay aside all further attempts for that day. He therefore ascended a tree, and having eaten some of the leaves, which in a degree alleviated his hunger, there he remained during the obscurity of a night intensely dark, with his spirits 'down at zero;' for he now began to fear that the ship would sail without him, and the apprehension of such an occurrence with all its terrors rushed upon his fancy. His situation

appeared so hopeless, that he passed a sleepless and desponding night, the same noises being kept up in the woods, which convinced him that many birds of prey existed upon the island. When day began to appear, he descended from the tree, and had not gone many paces when he perceived a large owl perched, with the most imperturbable gravity, upon a low bough, with its large eyes intently fixed on him, but as if unconscious of his appearance. He very quietly approached near enough to testify his joy at their meeting, by instantly knocking it on the head; and thus he had the good fortune to provide himself with a breakfast. Not willing to waste time in useless attempts to obtain a fire (for the day previous his endeavours had been unavailing), he instantly set to work to alleviate the cravings of hunger; but from the difficulty of plucking off the feathers, and the shrivelled and yellow appearance of the skin, he had reason to conclude that it had been a tenant of the island, and had been guilty of screaming and whooping about the forest for at least half a century. Having eaten sufficiently, which left his mouth as bitter as wormwood, he set out with a determination of moving in a right line, which could not fail of bringing him to the sea-shore at some part of the island. Towards evening he was seized with a most painful sickness, and felt cold and disheartened;

he had not seen during this day any four-footed animal.

The night set in dark and rainy, and he took up his quarters at the base of a mountain, determined to ascend to the summit in the morning, in the hope of gaining a view of the sea; but the first thing he did was to shelter himself in one of the low trees which had the thickest foliage, and which proved, in some measure, a defence against the tempestuous weather which now set in; the rain fell in torrents, and he might truly have said, 'Here a night pities neither wise men nor fools!' In this dismal situation he fell asleep, and on awakening found himself in a very feeble condition, and completely wet through.

Towards morning the weather cleared up, and he proceeded with no very great expedition to climb the mountain, for his strength was nearly exhausted; after great exertion, he succeeded in gaining the top, and with great joy found that it commanded a view of the anchorage; but he also made another discovery, which, in its event, threatened to prove more fatal to this unfortunate youth than all his former adventures: the ship to which he belonged had put to sea, and the American brig was at that moment loosening her sails. The distance from the place where he stood to the sea-beach was at least three miles; and, however rejoiced and gratified he might have been at the sight of the Ameri-

can, the well-known signal warned him that not a moment was to be lost in making a last effort to hail her before she got under weigh. The perfect hopelessness of all succour, should she sail before he could arrive at the beach, rendered him desperate, and he rushed down the mountain, sick, dizzy, and faint, his limbs with difficulty performing their office. He succeeded, after nearly two hours of great fatigue and difficulty, in reaching the bay where he first landed; but what was his horror on beholding the white sails of the American brig dwindled to a mere speck upon the horizon!

Our youth was naturally of an almost unconquerable spirit; but when his last and only chance had failed him, the hopelessness of being rescued shot like an arrow through his heart. He fell down in agony upon the sand, which he grasped in his frenzied agitation. Here he lay until the day was pretty far advanced. On recovering a little, the want of food became insupportable; he now hobbled along shore in search of shell fish, but was obliged to put up with no better repast than what some seaweed and wild shrubs afforded. He sheltered himself this night in the woods which skirted the sea, and in the morning returned to the task of procuring subsistence. With this intent, he walked along the beach, and at a rocky part of the shore he perceived several

seals; some of them were reposing on the sand, while others lay upon the rocks. Approaching very silently, and selecting one whose head presented a fair mark, he, with a few blows, secured the prize. Had he been able to have made a fire, he possibly might have dined very sumptuously off this animal; but as that was impossible, he proceeded to cut it up, and selecting a piece of the liver, ate it ravenously. This he had no sooner done than he was seized with excessive sickness, which affected him so much, that he was obliged to lie upon the sand for a length of time, completely exhausted. In a short time, however, having refreshed himself with some water, he again pursued his path along shore, when by great good fortune he fell in with a turpin; this he also quickly despatched, and the flesh agreeing with his stomach, renovated his strength. He was soon afterwards enabled to return to the place where he had left the seal, which he forthwith cut up into long strips, and laying them upon the sand, left them to dry, intending to try another piece for breakfast in the morning, the remains of the turpin sufficing only for that evening.

In this manner he existed for some days, sleeping in the woods at night, and roving abroad in the day; but the supply of seals at last failed him, neither could he find any turpin; thus he had no opportunity

of recruiting his stock, and starvation began once more to stare him in the face. It happened, very luckily for him, that the weather was particularly pleasant, and he often refreshed himself with a sleep on the warm sand ; a gun would have been the means of supplying him with plenty of waterfowl, for he often had the vexation of seeing flocks of such birds fly past him with impunity. One morning, when he had wandered some distance, allaying his appetite with whatever he could find upon the coast, he sank down beside a small bank quite exhausted, where he must have slept some hours. On awaking, he found that he had overlaid a snake ; its species was different from the one he had killed in the woods, and of a less size : it was not quite dead. This unexpected occurrence not a little startled him ; and placing his stick under its speckled belly, he tossed it into the sea. He had not the good fortune, with all his industry, to meet with any provision ; he therefore crawled back to the bay. As soon as the morning arrived, which was very serene and pleasant, he sauntered along, but with the same want of success as on the foregoing day. Nothing could he find to recruit his strength, which now became seriously impaired, not only from the deprivation, but the quality of the food which he had been obliged to eat. The morning being very far ad-

vanced, and the sun pleasantly warm, he threw himself, or rather fell down, upon the shore, and betook himself to his usual recipe for hunger, which was going to sleep.

It would require a much more able pen than the writer's, to express the surprise of our hero on awaking ; his eyes fixed on, not 'a lovely female face of seventeen,' but the amphibious and black, bully head of a large seal, who, like himself, was basking in the sun, and enjoying a sound sleep ; it had taken up its situation, singular as it may appear, almost within the grasp of our famished Crusoe. Astonished (as every one so situated would have been) at the companionable qualities displayed by his unctuous friend,—for 'misery acquaints a man with strange bed-fellows,'—he raised himself up, and gazed perfectly panic-struck on the uncouth monster, who soundly reposed (no doubt after his fatigue and repletion *sub aqua*) with the utmost tranquillity. From what has been related, it will not be unreasonably concluded that poor Lord was at this time very strong ; but it cannot be doubted that, had he happened to have his club by his side, he would have given the seal a tolerably hard smash on the figure-head, which in all probability would have rendered it still more *comatose*, and prevented a deal of trouble ; but unfortunately he had let fall this weapon about twenty paces

before he sank down upon the shore, and feared that if he got up to fetch it he might disturb the gentle slumbers of his reposing companion, and thereby be prevented from again converting, notwithstanding his former loathing, part of its liver and blubber to his own accommodation and enjoyment. He therefore relinquished all idea of regaining his club, and determined on commencing an attack with his knife, although fearful from its bluntness that it would not prove a very formidable weapon. However, he darted suddenly upon it, and driving the knife with all his force at its throat, succeeded in 'drawing first blood,' and also in encircling the seal in his arms and legs, rolling the creature over and over; it made the most desperate efforts to escape, and practised sundry flip-flaps and tourbillons, blowings and sniffings; still he succeeded in holding on its greasy carcase, with as much affection as ever the old man of the sea did about the neck of our old acquaintance Sinbad the sailor.

There is nothing so indispensably requisite for the establishment of good stamina as good living; and it therefore will not be wondered at that he of the club found himself, after a few rolls and tumbles, in what is called bad condition, and getting the worst of the fight, and that he also began to sniff and blow with almost as

much fury as his antagonist. The seal appeared to have a great affection for the water, while Lord wished to keep it a short time on land; they therefore struggled for the mastery; but the seal was too strong, in despite of all he could effect, and they both rolled into the sea. This certainly increased the odds against the capture; the animal seemed to redouble its struggles at this advantage. Although nearly half drowned, our hero made a last attempt, by rising on his feet, to drag his slippery seal-ship again on shore, but he was too much exhausted.

Vexed and confounded at the escape of his prey, the more so when he found his hands much lacerated in the encounter, he crawled on shore, where he luckily recovered his knife, which he had dropped on the spot where they foundered. As he did not expect another visit from *this* animal, he picked up his club, and began to pursue his road back, benumbed with cold, and much reduced by the heavy fatigue of the day; he had not gone half a mile, when, to his great joy, he beheld a tolerably large turpin moving up from the sea towards the woods. Exerting his utmost strength, he was so successful as to arrive in sufficient time to intercept its retreat, and he proceeded to despatch it without delay. It must be confessed that this supply came very opportunely, for he was

more dead than alive ; and after this meal (which lasted a considerable time), he found himself so much the better, that he reached the tree where he always put up for the night, when he composed himself to rest, and slept without disturbance. The next morning, he finished the remains of the turpin, and he then mustered up resolution to enter the forest, in order to keep a lookout from the mountain from whence he had beheld the American ship prepare for sailing. He succeeded in gaining the summit without much difficulty, as he could perceive it from the beach ; here he remained all this day viewing the distant horizon, but no sail appeared, and the night passed heavily. About the middle of the next day, he was obliged by hunger to return to the beach, the island being destitute of berries or fruits.

In this manner he subsisted till the morning of the twenty-first day, which found him on the top of the mountain, reduced to the greatest extremity, and more like an apparition than a human being ; 'sharp misery had worn him to the bone,' and he expected to die very shortly. As his eye wandered round the glittering expanse, he thought he distinguished in the extreme distance a dark speck, which he took to be a sail. He gazed at it most intensely, but it did not seem to move, and he concluded it was a rock ; in order

to be convinced, he lay down, and brought the stem of a small tree to bear upon the distant object, which he now perceived moved along the level horizon. It must be a ship ; but she was passing the island, and he kept anxiously looking, in the expectation of her fading from his view. In a short time she loomed larger, and he could now perceive her to be a vessel of some size ; but his heart sank within him when he observed soon afterwards that she hauled her wind, and stood away upon a different tack. In about half an hour she tacked again, and it now became evident that she was making for the island, as she stood directly in for the bay. The extreme joy of the poor sufferer at this welcome sight broke out in sundry raptures and transports. He rushed down the mountain with such little caution, that he stumbled over the broken rocks, and pitched headlong down the broken and rugged descent. This fall almost rendered him helpless ; he received a severe cut above the ankle, besides other bad contusions ; but the idea of losing this only chance inspired him with fresh energy, and he made his way down, after many painful efforts, staggering from the woods upon the sea-shore ; and when he beheld the ship come fairly into the bay and anchor, a boat hoisted out, and pull with long and rapid strokes towards him, he fell overpowered upon the sand.

On the boat reaching the shore, the poor fellow appeared at his last gasp, and all he could articulate was, 'Water, water!' One of the sailors brought some in a can, and suffered him to drink his fill. Soon afterwards he again swooned away, and in this state they carried him alongside, where he became sensible, but unable either to speak or move. His helpless condition rendered it necessary to hoist him on board. Nothing could exceed the kind and humane treatment which he received from Captain Cook and the surgeon of the ship, to whose skill and attention may be attributed his ultimate recovery, as from the quantity of water the sailor had suffered him to drink (which

the surgeon succeeded in dislodging from his stomach) in his miserable and emaciated state, the medical gentleman, when he first saw him, had but faint hopes of his surviving; indeed, this gentleman declared that he could not have lived upon the island many hours longer. In a short time he was well enough to leave his cot, when he was informed by Captain Cook, that about a week's sail from the Galapagos he had luckily fallen in with the ship by which Lord had been left, when the master told him that a youth had been missed, and was left upon the island; this induced the captain to bear up for the place; otherwise he had no intention of making it.

CHAPTER XVI.

THE FEVER SHIP.

'I SAILED from Liverpool for Jamaica, and after a pleasant voyage, arrived at my destination, and discharged my cargo. My vessel was called the *Lively Charlotte*, a tight brig, well found for trading, and navigated by thirteen hands. I reloaded with sugar and rum for Halifax, intending to freight from that place for England, before the setting in of winter. This object I could only achieve by using double diligence, allowing a reasonable time for accidental obstacles. My brig was built

sharp, for sailing fast, and I did not trouble myself about convoy (it was during war), as I could run a fair race with a common privateer; and we trusted to manœuvring, four heavy carronades, and a formidable show of painted ports and quakers,¹ for escaping capture by any enemy, not possessing such an overwhelming superiority of force as would give him confidence to run boldly close alongside, and find out what

¹ Wooden guns: so called by seamen because they will not fight.

were really our means of defence.

‘I speedily shipped what provisions and necessaries I wanted, and set sail. A breeze scarcely sufficient to fill the canvas carried us out of Port Royal harbour. The weather was insufferably hot; the air seemed full of fire, and the redness of the atmosphere, not long before sunset, glared as intensely as the flame of a burning city. Jamaica was very sickly; the yellow fever had destroyed numbers of the inhabitants, and three-fourths of all new-comers speedily became its victims. I had been fortunate enough to lose only two men during my stay of three or four weeks (Jack Wilson and Tom Waring), but they were the two most sturdy and healthy seamen in the brig; the first died in thirty-nine hours after he was attacked, and the second on the fourth day. Two hands besides were ill when we left, which reduced to nine the number capable of performing duty. I imagined that putting to sea was the best plan I could adopt to afford the sick a chance of recovery, and retard the spreading of the disorder among such as remained in health; but I was deceived. I carried the contagion with me, and on the evening of the day on which we lost sight of land, another hand died, and three more were taken ill. Still I congratulated myself *I was no worse off, since other vessels had lost half their crews while in Port Royal, and some*

in much less time than we had remained there. We sailed prosperously through the windward passage, so close to Cuba that we could plainly distinguish the trees and shrubs growing upon it, and then shaped our course north-easterly, to clear the Bahamas and gain the great ocean.

‘We had seen and lost sight of Crooked Island three days, when it became all at once a dead calm; even the undulation of the sea, commonly called the ground swell, subsided; the sails hung slackened from the yards; the vessel slept like a turtle on the ocean, which became as smooth as a summer mill-pond. The atmosphere could not have sustained a feather: cloudless and clear, the blue serene above and the water below were alike spotless, shadowless, and stagnant. Disappointment and impatience were exhibited by us all, while the sun, flaring from the burning sky, melted the pitch in the rigging till it ran down on the decks, and a beefsteak might have been broiled on the anchor-fluke. We could not pace the planks without blistering our feet, until I ordered an awning over the deck for our protection; but still the languor we experienced was overpowering.

‘A dead calm is always viewed with an uneasy sensation by seamen, but in the present case it was more than usually unwelcome. To the sick it denied the freshness of the breeze, that would have mitigated in some degree

their agonies; and it gave a predisposition to the healthy to imbibe the contagion, lassitude and despondency being its powerful auxiliaries. Assisted by the great heat, the fever appeared to decompose the very substance of the blood; and its progress was so rapid, that no medicine could operate before death closed the scene of suffering. I had no surgeon on board, and from a medicine chest I in vain administered the common remedies. But what remedies could be expected to act with efficacy, where the disease destroyed life almost as quickly as the current of life circulated? I had now but five men able to do duty, and never can I forget my feelings when three of these were taken ill on the fourth day of our unhappy inactivity. One of the sick expired, as I stood by his cot, in horrible convulsions. His skin was of a deep saffron hue; watery blood oozed from every pore, and from the corners of his eyes; he seemed dissolving into blood, liquifying into death. Another man rushed upon deck in a fit of delirium, and sprang over the ship's side, into the very jaws of the sharks, that hovered ravenous around us, and seemed to be aware of the terrible havoc death was making.

'I had now the dreadful prospect of seeing all that remained perish, and prayed to God I might not be the last; for I *should then become an ocean solitary, dragging on a life of*

hours in every second. A day's space must then be an age of misery. There was still no appearance of a breeze springing up; the horrible calm appeared as if it would endure for ever. A storm would have been welcome. The irritating indolence, the frightful loneliness and tranquillity that reigned around, united with the frequent presence of human dissolution thinning our scanty number, was more than the firmest nerves could sustain without yielding to despair. Sleep fled far from me; I paced the deck at night, gazing upon the remnant of my crew in silence, and they upon me, hopeless and speechless. I looked at the brilliant stars, that shone in tropical glory, with feverish and impatient feelings, wishing I were among them, or bereft of consciousness, or were anything but a man. A heavy presentiment of increasing evil bore down my spirits. I regarded the unruffled sea, dark and glassy, and the reflection of the heavens in it, as a sinner would have contemplated the mouth of hell. The scene, so beautiful at any other time, was terrible under my circumstances. I was overwhelmed with present and anticipated misery. Thirty years I had been accustomed to a sea life, but I had never contemplated that so horrible a situation as mine was possible; I had never imagined that any state half so frightful could exist, though storms had often placed my

life in jeopardy, and I had been twice shipwrecked. In the last misfortune, mind and body were actively employed, and I had no leisure to brood over the future. To be passive, as I now was, with destruction creeping towards me inch by inch; to perceive the most horrible fate advancing slowly upon me, and be obliged to await its approach, pinioned, fixed to the spot, powerless, unable to keep the hope of deliverance alive by exertion: such a situation was the extreme of mortal suffering, a pain of mind language is inadequate to describe; and I endured in silence the full weight of its infliction.

'My mate and cabin boy were now taken with the disease; and on the evening of the fifth day, Will Stokes, the oldest seaman on board, breathed his last, just at the going down of the sun. At midnight another died. By the light of the stars we committed them to the ocean, though, while wrapping the hammock round the body of the last, the effluvia from the rapid putrefaction was so overpowering and nauseous, that it was with difficulty got upon deck and flung into its unfathomable grave. The dull plash of the carcase, as it plunged, I shall never forget, raising lucid circles on the dark unruffled water, and breaking the obstinate silence of the time; it struck my heart with a thrilling chillness; a rush of indescribable feeling came over me. Even now this 'sepulchral sound strikes at times on my ear

during sleep, in its loneliness of horror, and I fancy I am again in the ship. These mournful entombments were viewed by us at last with that unconcern which is shown by men rendered desperate from circumstances. Disease and dissolution were become every-day matters to us, and the fear of death had lost its power; nay, we rather trembled at the thought of surviving; thus does habitude fit us for the most terrible situations.

'The last precaution I took was to remove the sick to the deck, under the shelter of a wet sail, to afford them coolness. The next that died was my old townsman, Job Watson. Just after I had seen him expire, about ten o'clock in the evening, when all around was like the stillness of a dead world, I was leaning over the taffrail, and looking upon the ocean's face, that from its placidity and attraction to the eye, was to me and mine like an angel of destruction clothed in beauty, when on a sudden I became free from anxiety, obdurate, reckless of everything. I imagined I had taken leave of hope for ever, and an apathy came upon me little removed from despair. I was ready for my destiny, come when it might. I got rid of a load of anxiety that I could not have carried much longer; so that, even when the rising moon showed me the body of the mate, which we had thrown into the water, floating on its back,

half disenvolved from its hammock,—when I distinctly saw its livid and ghastly features covered only by an inch of transparent sea, and a huge shark preparing his hungry jaws to prey upon it,—I drew not back, but kept my eye coldly upon it, as if it had been the most indifferent object upon earth; for I was as insensible to emotion as a statue would have been. This insensibility enabled me to undertake any office for the sick, and to drag the bodies of the dead to the ship's side and fling them overboard; for at last no one else was left to do it. All, save myself, were attacked with the disorder, and one by one died before the ninth day was completed, save James Robson, the least athletic man I had, and who, judging from constitution, was but little likely to have survived. The disorder left him weak as a child. I gave him the most nourishing things I could find: I carried him, a mere skeleton, into my cabin, and placed him on a fresh bed, flinging his own and all the other beds overboard. I valued him as the only living thing with me in the vessel; though, had he died, I should at the time have felt little additional pain. I regarded him as one brute animal would have looked at another in such a situation.

‘How the ship was to be navigated by one man, and *what means I possessed of keeping her afloat in case blowing*

weather should come on, gave me no apprehension: I was too much proof against the fear of the future, or any danger that it might bring. Robson could give me no assistance; I had therefore to rely upon my own exertions for everything. If the vessel ever moved again, I must hand and steer—though, from the continuance of the calm, it did not seem likely I should be soon called upon to do either. I kept watch at night upon deck, and could sleep, either by day or night, only by short snatches, extended at full length near the helm. On the tenth night, while the sea was yet in the repose of the grave around me, I fell into a doze, and was assailed with horrible dreams, that precluded my receiving refreshment from rest. Millions of living things, which had ascended from the caverns of the deep, or been engendered from the stagnation and heat, seemed to play in snaky antics on its surface. I aroused myself, and the silence on every side seemed more terrible than ever. Clouds were rising over the distant sea-line and obscuring the stars, and the ocean put on a gloomy aspect. No sailor was now pacing the deck on his accustomed watch. The want of motion in the ship, and her powerless sails hanging in festoons amid the diminishing starlight, added to the solitary feeling which, in spite of my apathy, I experienced; I thought myself cut off from mankind for ever, and that

my ship, beyond where winds ever blew, would lie and rot upon the corrupting sea. I forgot the melancholy fate of my crew at this moment, and thought, with comparative unconcern, that the time must soon come when, the last draught of water being finished, I too must die. The next night, half slumbering, a thousand strange images would come before my sight; the countenance of my late mate, or some one of the crew, was frequently among them, distorted and fitted upon uncouth bodies. I felt feverish and unwell on awaking. One moment I fancied I saw a vessel pass the ship under full sail, and with a stiff breeze—and then a second; while no ruffle appeared on the ocean near mine, and I hailed them in vain. Now I heard the tramp of feet upon the deck, and the whisper of voices, as of persons walking near me, whom I uselessly challenged: this was followed by the usual obdurate silence. I felt no fear; for nature had no visitation for mortal man more appalling than I had already encountered: and to the ultimate of evils with social man, as I have before observed, I was insensible; for what weight could social ideas of good or evil have with me at that moment?

‘The morning of the eleventh day of my suffering I went down into the cabin, to take some refreshment to Robson. Though at intervals in the full possession of his senses, the shortest rational

conversation exhausted him, while talking in his incoherent fits did not produce the same debilitating effect. “Where is the mate?” he wildly asked me; “Why am I in your cabin, captain? Have they flung Waring overboard yet?” I contented myself with giving him general answers, which appeared to satisfy him. I feared to tell him we were the only survivors; for the truth, had he chanced to comprehend it in its full force, might have been fatal. On returning upon the deck, I observed that clouds were slowly forming, while the air became doubly oppressive and sultry. The intensity of the sun’s rays was exchanged for a closer and even more suffocating heat, that indicated an alteration of some kind in the atmosphere. Hope suddenly awoke in my bosom again: a breeze might spring up, and I might get free from my horrible captivity. I took an observation, and found that I was clear of the rocks and shoals of the Bahamas, towards which I feared a current might have insensibly borne me; all I could do, therefore, in case the wind blew, was to hang out a signal of distress, and try to keep the sea until I fell in with some friendly vessel.

‘I immediately took measures for navigating the ship by myself. I fastened a rope to secure the helm in any position I might find needful, so that I might venture to leave it a few minutes when occasion required. I went

aloft and cut away the topsails which I could not reef, and reduced the canvas all over the ship as much as possible, leaving only one or two of the lower sails set; for if it blew fresh, I could not have taken them in, and the ship might perish, while by doing this I had some chance of keeping her alive.

‘I now anxiously watched the clouds which seemed to be in motion, and the sight was a cordial to me. At last the sea began to heave with gentle undulations; a slight ripple succeeded and bore new life with it. I wept for joy, and then laughed, as I saw it shake the sails and then gradually fill them; and when at length the brig moved, just at noon on the eleventh day our becalming commenced, I became almost mad with delight. It was like a resurrection from the dead; it was the beginning of a new existence with me. Fearful as my state then was in reality, it appeared a heaven to that which I had been in. The hope of deliverance aroused me to new energies. I felt hungry, and ate voraciously; for till that moment I had scarcely eaten enough to sustain life. The

chance of once more mingling with my fellow-men filled my imagination, and braced every fibre of my frame almost to breaking. The ship’s motion perceptibly increased; the ripple under her bow at length became audible, she felt additional impulse, moved yet faster, and at length cut through the water at the rate of four or five knots an hour. This was fast enough for her safety, though not for my impatience. I steered her large before the wind for some time, and then kept her as near as possible in the track of vessels bound for Europe, certain that, carrying so little sail, I must be speedily overtaken by some ship that could render me assistance. Nor was I disappointed in my expectation. After steering two days with a moderate breeze, during which time I never left the helm, a large West Indiaman came up with me, and gave me every necessary aid. By this means, I was at length enabled to reach Halifax, and finally the river Mersey, about five weeks later than the time I had formerly calculated for my voyage.’

CHAPTER XVII.

THE BURNING OF THE EARL OF ELDON.

‘On the 24th of August 1834, I embarked on board the ship *Earl of Eldon*, of 600 tons, commanded by Captain Theaker, at Bombay, with a view of returning to my native land on furlough. She was the finest and strongest ship in the trade, and

any insurance might have been had on the chances of her successfully resisting the winds and waves; but who can foresee their fate, even for a day? She was cotton-loaded; and as the number of passengers was small, the space between decks was filled choke up with cotton bales, screwed in as compact and tight as possible, so as to render it a matter of more difficulty to take them out than it had been to put them in. It unfortunately happened that the cotton had been brought on board damp, during heavy rain, and had not been dried in the warehouses previous to its being screwed. As this operation is performed by very powerful compression, it is not unlikely that fire-damp might be generated in the same manner as in a hay-stack when it has been stacked damp. The number of individuals on board was forty-five, including three ladies and an infant, and the captain and his crew.

On the 26th of September, after a series of baffling winds and calms, and heavy rains with squalls of wind, we fell in with the trade winds, and began to anticipate our arrival at the Cape. On the morning of the 27th, I rose early, about half-past five, and went on deck. I found one of my fellow-passengers there: we perceived a steam apparently arising from the fore-hatchway; I remarked to Hunt that I thought it might be caused by fire-damp, and if not immediately checked, might

become fire. The captain came on deck, and I asked him what it was. He answered steam, and that it was common enough in cotton-loaded ships when the hatches were opened. I said nothing, but the smoke becoming more dense, and beginning to assume a different colour, began to think that all was not right, and also that he had some idea of the kind, as the carpenter was cutting holes in the deck just above the place where the smoke appeared to come. I went down to dress, and about half-past six the captain knocked at my door, and told me that part of the cotton was on fire, and he wished to see all the gentlemen passengers on deck. We accordingly assembled, and he then stated the case to us, that some part of the cargo appeared to have spontaneously ignited, and that he proposed removing the bales until they should discover the ignited ones, and have them thrown overboard, as also those which appeared to be in the same damaged condition; and that, if being necessary, in his opinion to do this, he deemed it his duty to lay the matter before us. We of course submitted everything to his judgment, and he ordered the hands to breakfast as quickly as possible, and to work to discover the source of the fire. This having been done, he said that there did not appear to be immediate danger, and that he hoped we might be able to avert it altogether. However, at eight

o'clock, the smoke became much thicker, and began to roll through the after-hatchway—the draught having been admitted forward in order to enable the men to work. Several bales were removed; but the heat began to be intolerable below, the smoke rolled out in suffocating volumes, and before nine o'clock we discovered that part of the deck had caught fire; in short, the men were obliged to knock off work. The captain then ordered the hatches to be battened down, with a view to keep the fire from bursting out, and to hoist out all the boats, and stock them in case of necessity. This was done; and about half-past one, the three ladies, two sick passengers, an infant, and a female servant were put into the long-boat, with two hundred and sixteen gallons of water, twenty gallons of brandy, and biscuit for a month's consumption, together with such pots of jam and preserved meats as we could get at, and the day's provision of fresh and salted meat.

'It was now about two o'clock; the hatches were then opened, and all hands set to work to endeavour to extinguish the fire. The main hatch being lifted, and a tarpaulin removed, there was a sail underneath, which was so hot that the men could hardly remove it; when they did, the heat and smoke came up worse than ever; and it being now known from inspection that the fire was underneath that

part, orders were given to hoist out the bales until the inflamed ones could be got at; but when the men laid hold of the lashing to introduce a crane-hook, they were found to have been burned through beneath, and came away in their hands.

'The case now appeared bad indeed; however, we cut a bale open and tried to remove it by handfuls, but the smoke and heat became so overpowering, that no man could stand over it, and water only seemed to have the effect of increasing it, in the quantities we dared use; for had the captain ventured to pump water into the ship to extinguish the fire, the bales would have swelled so much as to burst open the deck, and have increased so much in weight as to sink the ship; so that either way destruction would have been the issue. Under these circumstances, perceiving the case to be utterly hopeless, the captain called us together on the poop, and asked if any one could propose any expedient likely to avail in extinguishing the fire, and saving the ship, as in that case "we will stick by her while a hope remains." It was unanimously agreed that all had been done that could be done; the men were all perfectly sober, and had been indefatigable in their exertions, but one and all seemed coolly and positively of opinion that the case was hopeless. The heat was increasing so much, that it became dangerous to leave the poop; the captain

therefore requested the gentlemen to get into the boats, told off and embarked his men, and at three o'clock he himself left the ship, the last man, just as the flames were bursting through the quarter-deck. We then put off, the two boats towing the long-boat; the ship's way had been previously stopped by backing her yards. When we were about a mile from the ship, she was in one blaze, and her masts began to fall in. The sight was grand, though awful. Between eight and nine o'clock, all her masts had fallen, and she had burned to the water's edge; suddenly there was a bright flash, followed by a dull, heavy explosion—her powder had caught. For a few seconds her splinters and flaming fragments were glittering in the air, and then all was darkness, and the waters had closed over the *Earl of Eldon*!

'Sad was the prospect now before us! There were in the long-boat the captain and twenty-five persons, including an infant four months old; the size of the boat 23 feet long by $7\frac{1}{2}$ feet broad; in each of the others ten individuals, including the officer in charge. One of the boats had some bags of biscuit, but the chief provision was in the long-boat. We were, by rough calculation, above 1000 miles from Rodrigue, and 450 from Diego Garcias, the largest of the Chagos Islands; but to get there we must have passed through the squally latitudes we

had just left, and been subject to variable winds and heavy weather or calms, neither of which we were prepared to resist. Seeing, then, that our stock was sufficient, we determined on trying for Rodrigue. About eleven o'clock, having humbly committed ourselves to the guidance of that Providence in which alone we had hope, we accomplished rigging the boats, and were under sail. We carried a lantern lashed to our mast in the long-boat, to prevent the other boats from losing us during the night; and when day broke, sent them sailing in all directions around to look out for ships. While the wind was light, they could outsail us, but when it became strong and the sea very high, the difference of speed was rather in our favour, as the weight and size of the long-boat enabled her to lay hold of the water better.

'On the third day of our boat navigation, the change of the moon approaching, the weather began to wear a threatening aspect; but as we were in the trade, we did not apprehend foul or contrary winds. In the course of the night it blew fresh, with rain; we were totally without shelter, and the sea dashing its spray over us, drenched us, and spoiled a great part of our biscuit, though we happily did not discover this until we were nearly out of the want of it.

'In the course of the next day, the weather grew worse, and one of our small boats, in

which was Mr. Simpson, the second mate, with nine others, was split by the sea. She came alongside, and we put the carpenter into her, who made what repairs he could, but with little hope of their answering. We then proceeded to fasten a spray-cloth of canvas along our gunwale, having lashed a bamboo over our feet up the mast, and fixed it on the intersection of two stanchions at the same height above the stern. The spray-cloth was firmly lashed along this, so as to form a kind of half-pent roof; and had it not been for this imperfect defence, we must have been swamped; and we still shipped seas to so great an extent, that four men were obliged to be kept constantly employed in baling to keep her clear of water. Towards evening it blew hard, with a tremendous sea; and not thinking the other damaged boat safe, we took in her crew, and abandoned her. We were now thirty-six persons, stowed as thick as we could hold, and obliged to throw over all superfluities. We had not more than eight inches of clear gunwale out of water.

‘This night I shall never forget; but to describe my feelings I am incapable. Our situation was indeed awful. One wave might overwhelm us, and there would not have been a vestige left to tell the tale of the *Earl of Eldon*. Wet, crushed, and miserable, the night passed away, and the day broke at last; and though the weather was still very

bad, I again felt that hope which had never entirely deserted me. A tremendous sea came roaring down, and I held in my breath with horror; it broke right over our stern, wetted the poor women to their throats, and carried away the steersman’s hat. The captain then cried out, in a tone calculated to inspire with a confidence he afterwards told me his heart did not re-echo—“That’s nothing, it’s all right; bale away, my boys.” He never expected us to live out that night; but harassed as he was in mind and body, he gallantly stood up, and never by word or deed betrayed a feeling that might tend to make us despair; he stood on the bench that live-long night, nor did he ever attempt to sleep for nearly forty-eight hours.

‘The morning broke and passed away; and after the change of the moon, the weather began to moderate, and we enjoyed a comparative degree of comfort. We had three small meals of biscuit and some jam, etc., and three half-pints of water per day, with brandy if we liked it. The men had one gill of spirits allowed them daily: thus we had enough for necessity, and I incline to attribute to our having no more, the state of good bodily health we enjoyed. We had plenty of cigars, and whenever we could strike a light, we had a smoke; and I never found tobacco so great a luxury. The ladies were most wretched, for they could not move, and any

little alteration in their dress was only to be made by spreading a curtain before them. Yet they never uttered a repining word.

‘On the thirteenth evening we began to look out for Rodrigue. The captain told us not to be too sanguine, as his chronometer was not to be depended upon after its late rough treatment. The night fell, and I went forward to sleep, and about twelve was awoken by the cry that land was right ahead. I looked and saw a strong loom of land through the mist. The captain had the boat brought to for an hour; then made sail and ran towards it, and at half-past two it appeared still more strongly. We then lay to until daylight. I attempted to compose myself to sleep, but my feelings were too strong; and after some useless attempts, I sat down and smoked with a sensation I had long been a stranger to. With the first light of dawn, Rodrigue appeared right ahead, distant above six miles, and by eight o’clock we were all safely landed. A fisherman, who came off to show us the way through the reefs, received us in his house, and proceeded to feed us, and in the meantime sent to tell the gentlemen of the island of our arrival. Two of them came down immediately, and having heard our story, said that we had been miraculously preserved, and told us off in two parties, the married men to one, and the single to the other; the

crew were taken inland and encamped. They then gave our bundles to their negroes and took us to their houses, where everything they had was set before us—clean linen and a plentiful dinner. They shook us down four or five beds in an out-house, and we tumbled into them and enjoyed what we had not known for the last fortnight—a sound sleep.

‘I hope the sense of our miraculous preservation dwells deeply on all our minds. My feelings on landing were so intense, that I could not restrain my tears. No human skill in such peril could have availed us; it was the hand of almighty goodness alone that withheld us from destruction; and when we consider it, and look back upon the facts as they stand recorded, and with the full knowledge that we were thirteen days and nights exposed to the violence of winds and waves and weather, in an open, leaky boat, often for days and nights completely drenched, and never completely dry, and that with this we should all (with the exception of those who were before sick) have landed safe, and rather improved in health than otherwise,—these things show the hand of a Providence that watches over us, though we too often forget it; and that man who could coldly say that our escape was surprising, without attributing it wholly and solely to the true cause, I should consider little better than a heathen.’



BOOK III.

CHAPTER I.

THE CAPTIVITY AND ADVENTURES OF ALEXANDER HENRY AMONG THE CHIPPEWAY INDIANS.

‘WHEN I reached Michilimackinac, I found several other traders who had arrived before me, from different parts of the country, and who, in general, declared the disposition of the Indians to be hostile to the English, and even apprehended some attack. M. Laurent Ducharme distinctly informed Major Etherington, that a plan was absolutely conceived for destroying him, his garrison, and all the English in the upper country; but the commandant believing this and other reports to be without foundation, proceeding only from idle or ill-disposed persons, and of a tendency to do mischief, expressed much displeasure against M. Ducharme, and threatened to send the next person, who should bring a story of the same kind, a prisoner to Detroit. The garrison at this time consisted of ninety *privates, two subalterns, and the commandant; and the Eng-*

lish merchants at the fort were four in number. Thus strong, few entertained anxiety concerning the Indians, who had no weapons but small arms.

‘Meanwhile, the Indians from every quarter were daily assembling in unusual numbers, but with every appearance of friendship, frequenting the fort and disposing of their peltries in such a manner as to dissipate almost every one’s fears. For myself, on one occasion I took the liberty of observing to the major that, in my judgment, no confidence ought to be placed in them, and that I was informed no less than four hundred lay around the fort. In return, the major only rallied me on my timidity; and it is to be confessed that, if this officer neglected admonition on his part, so did I on mine.

‘Shortly after my first arrival at Michilimackinac in the preceding year, a Chippeway,

named Wawatam, began to come often to my house, betraying in his demeanour strong marks of personal regard. After this had continued some time, he came on a certain day, bringing with him his whole family, and at the same time a large present, consisting of skins, sugar, and dried meat. Having laid these in a heap, he commenced a speech, in which he informed me that some years before he had observed a fast, devoting himself, according to the custom of his nation, to solitude and to the mortification of his body, in the hope to obtain from the Great Spirit protection through all his days; that on this occasion he had dreamed of adopting an Englishman as his son, brother, and friend; that, from the moment in which he first beheld me, he had recognised me as the person whom the Great Spirit had been pleased to point out to him for a brother; that he hoped I would not refuse his present; and that he should for ever regard me as one of his family. I could not do otherwise than accept the present, and declare my willingness to have so good a man as this appeared to be, for my friend and brother. I offered a present in return for that which I had received, which Wawatam accepted; and then, thanking me for the favour which he said that I had rendered him, he left me, and soon *after* set out on his winter's hunt.

'Twelve months had now

elapsed since the occurrence of this incident, and I had almost forgotten the person of my *brother*, when, on the second day of June, Wawatam came again to my house, in a temper of mind visibly melancholy and thoughtful. He told me that he had just returned from his wintering ground, and I asked after his health; but without answering my question, he went on to say that he was sorry to find me returned from the Sault; that he intended to go to that place himself, immediately after his arrival at Michilimackinac; and that he wished me to go there along with him and his family the next morning. To all this he joined an inquiry, whether or not the commandant had heard bad news, adding, that during the winter he had himself been frequently disturbed with the *noise of evil birds*; and further suggesting that there were numerous Indians near the fort, many of whom had never shown themselves within it. Wawatam was about forty-five years of age, of an excellent character among his nation, and a chief. Referring much of what I heard to the peculiarities of the Indian character, I did not pay all the attention which they will be found to have deserved, to the entreaties and remarks of my visitor. I answered, that I could not think of going to the Sault so soon as the next morning, but would follow him there, after the arrival of my clerks. Find-

ing himself unable to prevail with me, he withdrew for that day; but early the next morning he came again, bringing with him his wife, and a present of dried meat. At this interview, after stating that he had several packs of beaver, for which he intended to deal with me, he expressed a second time his apprehensions, from the numerous Indians who were around the fort, and earnestly pressed me to consent to an immediate departure for the Sault. As a reason for this particular request, he assured me that all the Indians proposed to come in a body, that day, to the fort, to demand liquor of the commandant, and that he wished me to be gone before they should grow intoxicated.

‘I had made, at the period to which I am now referring, so much progress in the language in which Wawatam addressed me, as to be able to hold an ordinary conversation in it; but the Indian manner of speech is so extravagantly figurative, that it is only a perfect master who can follow and comprehend it entirely. Had I been further advanced in this respect, I think that I should have gathered so much information from this my friendly monitor, as would have put me into possession of the design of the enemy, and enabled me to save others as well as myself. As it was, it unfortunately happened that I turned a deaf ear to everything, leaving Wawatam and his wife, after

long and patient but ineffectual efforts, to depart alone, with dejected countenances, and not before they had each let fall some tears.

‘In the course of the same day, I observed that the Indians came in great numbers into the the fort, purchasing tomahawks, and frequently desiring to see silver armbands, and other valuable ornaments, of which I had a large quantity for sale. The ornaments, however, they in no instance purchased, but, after turning them over, left them, saying they would call again the next day. At night, I turned in my mind the visits of Wawatam; but, though they were calculated to excite uneasiness, nothing induced me to believe that serious mischief was at hand. The next day being the 4th of June, was the king’s birthday.

‘The morning was sultry. A Chippeway came to tell me that his nation was going to play at *baggatiwag* with the Saes or Saakies, another Indian nation, for a high wager. He invited me to witness the sport, adding that the commandant was to be there, and would bet on the side of the Chippeways. In consequence of this information, I went to the commandant, and expostulated with him a little, representing that the Indians might possibly have some sinister end in view; but the commandant only smiled at my suspicions.

‘I did not go myself to see

the match which was now to be played without the fort, because, there being a canoe preparing to depart on the following day for Montreal, I employed myself in writing letters to my friends; and even when a fellow-trader, Mr. Tracy, happened to call upon me, saying that another canoe had just arrived from Detroit, and proposing that I should go with him to the beach to inquire the news, it so happened that I still remained to finish my letters, promising to follow in the course of a few minutes. Mr. Tracy had not gone more than twenty paces from the door, when I heard an Indian war-cry, and a noise of general confusion. Going instantly to my window, I saw a crowd of Indians within the fort, furiously cutting down and scalping every Englishman they found. In particular, I witnessed the fate of Lieutenant Jemette. I had in the room in which I was, a fowling-piece, loaded with swan shot. This I immediately seized, and held it for a few minutes, waiting to hear the drum beat to arms. In this dreadful interval I saw several of my countrymen fall, and more than one struggling between the knees of an Indian, who, holding him in this manner, scalped him while yet living.

‘At length, disappointed in the hope of seeing resistance made to the enemy, and sensible of course that no effort of my own unassisted arm could avail against four hundred Indians, I

thought only of seeking shelter. Amid the slaughter which was raging, I observed many of the Canadian inhabitants of the fort calmly looking on, neither opposing the Indians nor suffering injury. From this circumstance I conceived a hope of finding security in their houses. Between the yard door of my own house and that of M. Langlade, my next neighbour, there was only a low fence, over which I easily climbed. At my entrance, I found the whole family at the windows, gazing at the scene of blood before them. I addressed myself immediately to M. Langlade, begging that he would put me in some place of safety, until the heat of the affair should be over,—an act of charity by which he might perhaps preserve me from the general massacre. But while I uttered my petition, M. Langlade, who had looked for a moment at me, turned again to the window, shrugging his shoulders, and intimating that he could do nothing for me. This was a moment for despair; but the next, a Pani woman, a slave of M. Langlade’s, beckoned me to follow her. She brought me to a door, which she opened, desiring me to enter, and telling me that it led to the garret, where I must go and conceal myself. I joyfully obeyed her directions; and she, having followed me up to the garret door, locked it after me, and with great presence of mind took away the key.

‘This shelter obtained, if shelter I could hope to find it, I was naturally anxious to know what might still be passing without. Through an aperture which afforded me a view of the area of the fort, I beheld, in shapes the foulest and most terrible, the ferocious triumphs of barbarian conquerors. The dead were scalped and mangled; the dying were writhing and shrieking under the unsatiated knife and tomahawk, amidst the shouts of rage and victory. I was shaken not only with horror, but with fear. The sufferings which I witnessed I seemed on the point of experiencing. No long time elapsed before, everyone being destroyed who could be found, there was a general cry of “All is finished!” At the same instant, I heard some of the Indians enter the house in which I was. The garret was separated from the room below only by a layer of single boards, at once the flooring of the one and the ceiling of the other. I could therefore hear everything that passed; and the Indians no sooner came in, than they inquired whether or not any Englishmen were in the house. M. Langlade replied that he could not say, he did not know of any; answers in which he did not exceed the truth, for the Pani woman had not only hidden me by stealth, but kept my secret and her own. M. Langlade was therefore, as I presume, as far from a wish to destroy me as he *was careless about saving me, when he added to these answers,*

that “they might examine for themselves, and would soon be satisfied as to the object of their question.” Saying this, he brought them to the garret door.

‘The state of my mind will be imagined. Arrived at the door, some delay was occasioned by the absence of the key, and a few moments were thus allowed me in which to look around for a hiding-place. In one corner of the garret was a heap of those vessels of birch bark used in maple sugar making. The door was unlocked and opened, and the Indians ascended the stairs, before I had completely crept into an opening which presented itself at one end of the heap. An instant after, four Indians entered the room, all armed with tomahawks, and all besmeared with blood upon every part of their bodies. The die appeared to be cast. I could scarcely breathe, but I thought the throbbing of my heart occasioned a noise loud enough to betray me. The Indians walked in every direction about the garret; and one of them approached me so closely, that at a particular moment, had he put forth his hand, he must have touched me. Still I remained undiscovered, a circumstance to which the dark colour of my clothes and the want of light in the room, which had no window, and in the corner in which I was, must have contributed. In a word, after taking several turns in the room, during which they told M. Langlade how many they had killed, and

how many scalps they had taken, they returned down-stairs, and I, with sensations not to be expressed, heard the door, which was the barrier between me and my fate, locked for the second time. There was a feather bed on the floor, and on this, exhausted as I was by the agitation of my mind, I threw myself down and fell asleep. In this state I remained till the dusk of the evening, when I was awakened by a second opening of the door. The person that now entered was M. Langlade's wife, who was much surprised at finding me, but advised me not to be uneasy, observing that the Indians had killed most of the English, but that she hoped I might myself escape. A shower of rain having begun to fall, she had come to stop a hole in the roof. On her going away, I begged her to send me a little water to drink, which she did.

'As night was now advancing, I continued to lie on the bed, ruminating on my condition, but unable to discover a resource from which I could hope for life. A flight to Detroit had no probable chance of success. The distance from Michilimackinac was four hundred miles; I was without provisions; and the whole of the road lay through Indian countries, countries of an enemy in arms, where the first man whom I should meet would kill me. To stay where I was threatened nearly the same issue. As before, fatigue of mind, and tranquillity, suspended my

cares, and procured me further sleep. The respite which sleep afforded me during the night, was put an end to by the return of the morning. I was again on the rack of apprehension. At sunrise I heard the family stirring, and presently after, Indian voices informing M. Langlade that they had not found my helpless self among the dead, and they supposed me to be somewhere concealed. M. Langlade appeared, from what followed, to be by this time acquainted with the place of my retreat, of which, no doubt, he had been informed by his wife. The poor woman, as soon as the Indians mentioned me, declared to her husband, in the French tongue, that he should no longer keep me in his house, but deliver me up to my pursuers, giving as a reason for this measure, that should the Indians discover his instrumentality in my concealment, they might revenge it on her children, and that it was better that I should die than they. M. Langlade resisted at first this sentence of his wife's, but soon suffered her to prevail, informing the Indians that he had been told I was in his house, and that I had come there without his knowledge, and that he would put me into their hands. This was no sooner expressed than he began to ascend the stairs, the Indians following upon his heels.

'I now resigned myself to the fate with which I was menaced; and regarding every attempt at

concealment as vain, I arose from the bed, and presented myself full in view to the Indians who were entering the room. They were all in a state of intoxication, and entirely naked, except about the middle. One of them, named Wenniway, whom I had previously known, and who was upwards of six feet in height, had his entire face and body covered with charcoal and grease, only that a white spot of two inches in diameter encircled either eye. This man walked up to me, seized me with one hand by the collar of the coat, while in the other he held a large carving knife, as if to plunge it in my breast; his eyes meanwhile were fixed stedfastly on mine. At length, after some seconds of the most anxious suspense, he dropped his arm, saying, "I won't kill you!" To this he added, that he had frequently engaged in wars against the English, and had brought away many scalps; that on a certain occasion he had lost a brother, whose name was Musington, and that I should be called after him. A reprieve upon any terms placed me among the living, and gave me back the sustaining voice of hope; but Wenniway ordered me down-stairs, and there informed me that I was to be taken to his cabin, where, and indeed everywhere else, Indians were all mad with liquor. Death was again threatened, and not as possible only, but as certain. *I mentioned my fears on this*

subject to M. Langlade, begging him to represent the danger to my master. M. Langlade in this instance did not withhold his compassion, and Wenniway immediately consented that I should remain where I was until he found another opportunity to take me away.

'Thus far secure, I reascended my garret stairs, in order to place myself as far as possible out of the reach of insult from drunken Indians; but I had not remained there more than an hour, when I was called to the room below, in which was an Indian, who said that I must go with him out of the fort, Wenniway having sent him to fetch me. This man, as well as Wenniway himself, I had seen before. In the preceding year, I had allowed him to take goods on credit, for which he was still in my debt; and some short time previous to the surprise of the fort, he had said, upon my upbraiding him with want of honesty, that he would pay me before long. This speech now came fresh into my memory, and led me to suspect that the fellow had formed a design against my life. I communicated the suspicion to M. Langlade; but he gave for answer that "I was not now my own master, and must do as I was ordered." The Indian, on his part, directed that before I left the house I should undress myself, declaring that my coat and shirt would become him better than they did me. His pleasure in this

me, it not be stained with blood when he should kill me.

'I was now told to proceed, and my driver followed me close until I had passed the gate of the fort, when I turned towards the spot where I knew the Indians to be encamped. This, however, did not suit the purpose of my enemy, who seized me by the arm and drew me violently in the opposite direction, to the distance of fifty yards above the fort. Here, finding that I was approaching the bushes and sand-hills, I determined to proceed no farther, but told the Indian that I believed he meant to murder me; and if so, he might as well strike where I was as at any greater distance. He replied with coolness that my suspicions were just, and that he meant to pay me in this manner for my goods.

the fort, I saw Wenniway in the midst of the party. To him I hastened for aid. Wenniway desired that I desist; but the latter would not round him, making strokes at me with his knife and foaming at the mouth with rage at the repeated refusal of his purpose. At length he drew near to my house, and the door was open. I ran into it. The Indian followed me; but on reaching the house, he voluntarily abandoned the pursuit.

'Preserved so often unexpectedly as it has been my lot to be, I returned with a strong determination to believe that, through the overruling of an overruling Indian enemy could not be hurt. But new trials were at hand.

out the fort, and immediately stripped of all their clothes. They were now sent into the fort, under the charge of Canadians, because the Indians having resolved on getting drunk, the chiefs were apprehensive that they would be murdered if they continued in the camp. Lieutenant Jemette and seventy soldiers had been killed, and but twenty Englishmen including soldiers were still alive. These were all within the fort, together with nearly three hundred Canadians belonging to the canoes.

‘These being our numbers, myself and others proposed to Major Etherington to make an effort for regaining possession of the fort, and maintaining it against the Indians. The Jesuit missionary was consulted on the project ; but he discouraged us, by his representations not only of the merciless treatment which we must expect from the Indians, should they regain their superiority, but of the little dependence which was to be placed upon our Canadian auxiliaries. Thus the fort and prisoners remained in the hands of the Indians, though through the whole night the prisoners and whites were in actual possession, and they were without the gates.

‘The whole night, or the greater part of it, was passed in mutual condolence ; and my fellow-prisoners shared my garter. In the morning, being again *called down*, I found my master, *Wenniway*, and was desired to

follow him. He led me to a small house within the fort, where, in a narrow room, and almost dark, I found Mr. Ezekiel Solomons, an Englishman from Detroit, and a soldier, all prisoners. With these I remained in painful suspense as to the scene that was next to present itself, till ten o'clock in the forenoon, when an Indian arrived, and presently marched us to the lake-side, where a canoe appeared ready for departure, and in which we found that we were to embark. Our voyage, full of doubt as it was, would have commenced immediately, but that one of the Indians who was to be of the party was absent. His arrival was to be waited for ; and this occasioned a very long delay, during which we were exposed to a keen north-east wind. An old shirt was all that covered me. I suffered much from the cold ; and in this extremity, M. Langlade coming down to the beach, I asked him for a blanket, promising if I lived to pay him for it at any price he pleased ; but the answer I received was, that he could let me have no blanket unless there were some one to be security for the payment. For myself, he observed, I had no longer any property in that country. I had no more to say to M. Langlade ; but presently seeing another Canadian, I addressed to him a similar request, and was not refused. Naked as I was, and rigorous as was the weather, but for the

blanket I must have perished. At noon our party was all collected, the prisoners all embarked, and we steered for the Isles du Castor (Beaver Island) in Lake Michigan.

'The soldier who was our companion in misfortune, was made fast to a bar of the canoe by a rope tied round his neck, as is the manner of the Indians in transporting their prisoners. The rest were left unconfined; but a paddle was put into each of our hands, and we were made to use it. The Indians in the canoe were seven in number, the prisoners four. I had left, as it will be recollected, Major Etherington, Lieutenant Leslie, and Mr. Bostwick at M. Langlade's, and was now joined in misery with Mr. Ezekiel Solomons, the soldier, and the Englishman who had newly arrived from Detroit. This was on the 6th day of June. The fort was taken on the 4th; I surrendered myself to Wenniway on the 5th; and this was the third day of our distress.

'We were bound, as I have said, for the Isles du Castor, which lie in the mouth of Lake Michigan; and we should have crossed the lake, but that a thick fog came on, on account of which the Indians deemed it safer to keep the shore close under their lee. We therefore approached the lands of the Ottawas, and their village on the opposite side of the tongue of land on which the fort is built. Every half hour the

Indians gave their war-whoop one for every prisoner in a canoe. This is a general custom, by the aid of which other Indians within a short distance are apprized of the number of prisoners they are carrying. In this manner we reached Fox-point, a long narrow point stretching westward into the lake, and which the Chippeways make a carrying place, to go round it. It is about eighteen miles from Michilimackinac. After the Indians made their war-whoop as usual, an Ottawa appeared upon the beach, who made signs that we should land. In consequence we approached. The Indians asked the news, and the Chippeways in further consultation, till we were within a few yards of the land, and in the water. At this moment a hundred men rushed upon us among the bushes, and drove all the prisoners out of the canoe amid a terrifying shout.

'We now believed that our last sufferings were approaching, but no sooner were we fastened to the shore, and on our legs, than the chiefs of the party advanced and gave each of us their arms, telling us that they were our friends, and Ottawas, who the Chippeways had insulted by destroying the English vessel, consulting with them in the affair. They added that what they had done was for the purpose of saving our lives, the Chippeways having been consulting us to the Isles du

only to kill and devour us. It was not long before we were embarked again in the canoes of the Ottawas, who, the same evening, relanded us at Michilimackinac, where they marched us into the fort, in view of the Chippeways, confounded at beholding the Ottawas espousing a side opposite to their own. The Ottawas, who had accompanied us in sufficient numbers, took possession of the fort. We, who had changed masters but were still prisoners, were lodged in the house of the commandant, and strictly guarded.

‘Early the next morning a general council was held, in which the Chippeways complained much of the conduct of the Ottawas in robbing them of their prisoners; alleging that all the Indians, the Ottawas alone excepted, were at war with the English; that Pontiac had taken Detroit; that the king of France had awoke, and repossessed himself of Quebec and Montreal; and that the English were meeting destruction not only at Michilimackinac, but in every other part of the world. From all this they inferred that it became the Ottawas to restore the prisoners, and to join in the war; and the speech was followed by large presents, being part of the plunder of the fort, and which was previously heaped in the centre of the room. The Indians rarely make their answers till the day after they have heard the arguments offered. They did not depart from their custom

on this occasion; and the council therefore adjourned.

‘We, the prisoners, whose fate was thus in controversy, were unacquainted at the time with this transaction, and therefore enjoyed a night of tolerable tranquillity, not in the least suspecting the reverse which was preparing for us. Which of the arguments of the Chippeways, or whether or not all were deemed valid by the Ottawas, I cannot say; but the council was resumed at an early hour in the morning, and, after several speeches had been made in it, the prisoners were sent for, and returned to the Chippeways. The Ottawas, who now gave us into the hands of the Chippeways, had themselves declared that the latter designed no other than to kill us and make broth of us. The Chippeways, as soon as we were restored to them, marched us to a village of their own, situated on the point which is below the fort, and put us into a lodge, already the prison of fourteen soldiers, tied two and two, with each a rope about his neck, and made fast to a pole which might be called the supporter of the building.

‘I was left untied, but I passed a night sleepless and full of wretchedness. My bed was the bare ground, and I was again reduced to an old shirt as my entire apparel, my blanket having been taken from me. I was, besides, in want of food, having for two days eaten nothing. I confess that in the

canoe with the Chippeways I was offered bread; but bread with what accompaniment? They had a loaf, which they cut with the same knives that they had employed in the massacre—knives still covered with blood. The blood they moistened with spittle, and rubbing it on the bread, offered this for food to their prisoners, telling them to eat the blood of their countrymen. Such was my situation on the morning of the 7th of June, in the year 1763; but a few hours produced an event which gave still a new colour to my lot.

‘Towards noon, when the great war-chief, in company with Wewniway, was seated at the opposite end of the lodge, my friend and brother, Wawatam, suddenly came in. During the four preceding days, I had often wondered what had become of him. In passing by he gave me his hand, but went immediately towards the great chief, by the side of whom and Wewniway he sat himself down. The most uninterrupted silence prevailed; each smoked his pipe; and this done, Wawatam arose and left the lodge, saying to me as he passed, “Take courage.” An hour elapsed, during which several chiefs entered, and preparations appeared to be making for a council. At length Wawatam re-entered the lodge, followed by his wife, and both loaded with merchandise, which they carried up to the chiefs, and
id in a heap before them.

Some moments of silence followed, at the end of which Wawatam pronounced a speech, every word of which to me was of extraordinary interest:—

“Friends and relations,” he began, “what is it that I shall say? You know what I feel. You all have friends, and brothers, and children, whom as yourselves you love; and you, what would you experience, did you, like me, behold your dearest friend, your brother, in the condition of a slave—a slave exposed every moment to insult and to menaces of death? This case, as you all know, is mine. See there (pointing to myself) my friend and brother among slaves, himself a slave! You all well know, that long before the war began I adopted him as my brother. From that moment he became one of my family, so that no change of circumstances could break the cord which fastened us together. He is my brother; and because I am your relation, he is therefore your relation too; and how, being your relation, can he be your slave? On the day on which the war began, you were fearful lest on this very account I should reveal your secret. You requested, therefore, that I would leave the fort, and even cross the lake. I did so, but did it with reluctance, notwithstanding that you, Menhwehna, who had the command in this enterprise, gave me your promise that you would protect my friend, delivering him from all dangers

and giving him safely to me. The performance of this promise I now claim. I come not with empty hands to ask it. You, Menehwehna, best know whether or not, as it respects yourself, you have kept your word; but I bring these goods to buy off every claim which any man among you all may have on my brother as his prisoner."

'Wawatam having ceased, the pipes were again filled; and after they were finished, a further period of silence followed. At the end of this, Menehwehna rose and gave his reply:—

"My relation and brother," said he, "what you have spoken is the truth. We are acquainted with the friendship which subsisted between yourself and the Englishman, in whose behalf you have now addressed us. We knew the danger of having our secret discovered, and the consequences which must follow; and you say truly that we requested you to leave the fort. This we did out of regard for you and your family; for, if a discovery of our design had been made, you would have been blamed whether guilty or not; and you would thus have been involved in difficulties from which you could not have extricated yourself. It is also true that I promised to take care of your friend; and this promise I performed, by desiring my son at the moment of assault to seek him and bring him to my lodge. He went accordingly, but could not find

him. The day after, I sent him to Langlade's, when he was informed that your friend was safe; and had it not been that the Indians were then drinking the rum which had been found in the fort, he would have brought him home with him according to my orders. I am very glad to find that your friend has escaped. We accept your present, and you may take him home with you."

'Wawatam thanked the assembled chiefs, and taking me by the hand, led me to his lodge, which was at the distance of a few yards only from the prison lodge. My entrance appeared to give joy to the whole family; food was immediately prepared for me, and I now ate the first hearty meal which I had made since my capture. I found myself one of the family; and but that I had still my fears as to the other Indians, I felt as happy as the situation would allow.

'In the evening of the next day, a large canoe, such as those which came from Montreal, was seen advancing to the fort. It was full of men, and I distinguished several passengers. The Indian cry was made in the village, a general muster ordered, and to the number of two hundred they marched up to the fort, where the canoe was expected to land. The canoe, suspecting nothing, came boldly to the fort, where the passengers, as being English traders, were seized, dragged through the water, beat, reviled, marched to the prison

lodge, and there stripped of their clothes and confined.

‘In the morning of the 9th of June a general council was held, at which it was agreed to move to the island of Michilimackinac, as a more defensible situation in the event of an attack by the English. The Indians had begun to entertain apprehensions of want of strength. No news had reached them from the Potawatamies, and they were uncertain whether or not the Monomins would join them. They even feared that the Sioux would take the English side. This resolution fixed, they prepared for a speedy retreat. At noon the camp was broken up, and we embarked, taking with us the prisoners that were still undisposed of. On our passage we encountered a gale of wind, and there were some appearances of danger. To avert it, a dog, of which the legs were previously tied together, was thrown into the lake, an offering designed to soothe the angry passions of some offended Manito. As we approached the island, two women in the canoe in which I was, began to utter melancholy and hideous cries. Precarious as my condition still remained, I experienced some sensations of alarm from these dismal sounds, of which I could not then discover the occasion. Subsequently, I learned that it is customary for the women, on passing near the burial-places, never to omit the ice of which I was now a

witness, and by which they intend to denote their grief. By the approach of evening we reached the island in safety, and the women were not long in erecting our cabins. In the morning there was a muster of the Indians, at which there were found three hundred and fifty fighting men.

‘In the course of the day there arrived a canoe from Detroit, with ambassadors, who endeavoured to prevail on the Indians to repair thither to the assistance of Pontiac; but fear was now the prevailing passion. A guard was kept during the day, and a watch by night, and alarms were very frequently spread. Had an enemy appeared, all the prisoners would have been put to death; and I suspected that, as an Englishman, I should share their fate. Several days had now passed, when one morning a continued alarm prevailed, and I saw the Indians running in a confused manner toward the beach. In a short time, I learned that two large canoes from Montreal were in sight. All the Indian canoes were immediately manned, and those from Montreal were surrounded and seized as they turned a point behind which the flotilla had been concealed. The goods were consigned to Mr. Levy, and would have been saved if the canoe men had called them French property; but they were terrified, and disguised nothing.

‘In the canoes was a large pro-

portion of liquor, a dangerous acquisition, and which threatened disturbance among the Indians, even to the loss of their dearest friends. Wawatam, always watchful of my safety, no sooner heard the noise of drunkenness, which in the evening did not fail to begin, than he represented to me the danger of remaining in the village, and owned that he could not himself resist the temptation of joining his comrades in the debauch. That I might escape all mischief, he therefore requested that I would accompany him to the mountain, where I was to remain hidden till the liquor should be drunk. We ascended the mountain accordingly. It is this mountain which constitutes the high land in the middle of the island, of which I have spoken before, as a figure considered as resembling a *turtle*, and therefore called *Michilimackinac*. It is thickly covered with wood, and very rocky toward the top. After walking more than half a mile, we came to a large rock, at the base of which was an opening, dark within, and appearing to be the entrance of a cave. Here Wawatam recommended that I should take up my lodging, and by all means remain till he returned.

‘On going into the cave, of which the entrance was nearly ten feet wide, I found the further end to be rounded in its shape, like that of an oven, but with a further aperture, too small, how-

ever, to be explored. After thus looking around me, I broke small branches from the trees, and spread them for a bed, then wrapped myself in my blanket, and slept till daybreak. On awakening, I felt myself incommoded by some object on which I lay, and removing it, found it to be a bone. This I supposed to be that of a deer or some other animal, and what might very naturally be looked for in the place in which it was; but, when daylight visited my chamber, I discovered with some feelings of horror that I was lying on nothing less than a heap of human bones and skulls, which covered all the floor.

‘The day passed without the return of Wawatam, and without food. As night approached, I found myself unable to meet its darkness in the charnel-house, which, nevertheless, I had viewed free from uneasiness during the day. I chose, therefore, an adjacent bush for this night’s lodging, and slept under it as before. But in the morning, I awoke hungry and dispirited, and almost envying the dry bones, to the view of which I returned. At length the sound of a foot reached me, and my Indian friend appeared, making many apologies for his long absence, the cause of which was an unfortunate excess in the enjoyment of his liquor. This point being explained, I mentioned the extraordinary sight that had presented itself in the cave, to which he had com-

mended my slumbers. He had never heard of its existence before; and, upon examining the cave together, we saw reason to believe that it had been anciently filled with human bodies. On returning to the lodge, I experienced a cordial reception from the family, which consisted of the wife of my friend, his two sons, of whom the eldest was married, and whose wife and a daughter of thirteen years of age completed the list. Wawatam related to the other Indians the adventure of the bones. All of them expressed surprise at hearing it, and declared that they had never been aware of the contents of this cave before. After visiting it, which they immediately did, almost every one offered a different opinion as to its history.

‘A few days after the occurrence of the incidents recorded above, Menehwehna, whom I now found to be the great chief of the village of Michilimackinac, came to the lodge of my friend; and when the usual ceremony of smoking was finished, he observed that Indians were now daily arriving from Detroit, some of whom had lost relations or friends in the war, and who would certainly retaliate on any Englishman they found; upon which account, his errand was to advise that I should be dressed like an Indian, an expedient whence I might hope to escape all future insult. I did not but consent to the

proposal, and the chief was so kind as to assist my friend and his family in effecting that very day the desired metamorphosis. My hair was cut off, and my head shaved, with the exception of a spot on the crown, of about twice the diameter of a crown piece. My face was painted with three or four different colours, some parts of it red, and others black. A shirt was provided for me, painted with vermilion mixed with grease. A large collar of wampum was put round my neck, and another suspended on my breast. Both my arms were decorated with large bands of silver above the elbows, besides several smaller ones on the wrists; and my legs were covered with *mitases*, a kind of hose, made, as is the favourite fashion, of scarlet cloth. Over all I was to wear a scarlet blanket or mantle, and on my head a large bunch of feathers. I parted not without some regret with the long hair which was natural to it, and which I fancied to be ornamental; but the ladies of the family, and of the village in general, appeared to think my person improved, and now condescended to call me handsome even among Indians.

‘Protected in a great measure by this disguise, I felt myself more at liberty than before; and the season being arrived in which my clerks from the interior were to be expected, and some part of my property, as I had a right to hope, re-

covered, I begged the favour of Wawatam that he would enable me to pay a short visit to Michilimackinac. He did not fail to comply, and I succeeded in finding my clerks; but either through the disturbed state of the country, as they represented to be the case, or through their misconduct, as I had reason to think, I obtained nothing; and nothing, or almost nothing, I now began to think would be all that I should need during the rest of my life. To fish and to hunt, to collect a few skins and exchange them for necessaries, was all that I seemed destined to do and to acquire for the future. I returned to the Indian village, where at this time much scarcity of food prevailed. We were often for twenty-four hours without eating; and when in the morning we had no victuals for the day before us, the custom was to blacken our faces with grease and charcoal, and exhibit through resignation a temper as cheerful as in the midst of plenty. A repetition of the evil, however, soon induced us to leave the island in search of food; and accordingly we departed for the bay of Boutchitaouy, distant eight leagues, and where we found plenty of wild-fowl and fish.

‘Our next encampment was on the Island of Saint Martin, off Cape Saint Ignace, so called from the Jesuit mission of St. Ignatius to the Hurons, formerly established there. Our object was to fish for sturgeon, which

we did with great success; and here, in the enjoyment of a plentiful and excellent supply of food, we remained till the 20th day of August. At this time, the autumn being at hand, and a sure prospect of increased security from hostile Indians afforded, Wawatam proposed going to his intended wintering-ground. The removal was a subject of the greatest joy to myself, on account of the frequent insults to which I had still to submit from the Indians of our band or village, and to escape from which I would freely have gone almost anywhere. At our wintering-ground we were to be alone; for the Indian families, in the countries of which I write, separate in the winter season, for the convenience as well of subsistence as of the chase, and re-associate in the spring and summer.

‘In preparation, our first business was to sail for Michilimackinac, where, being arrived, we procured from a Canadian trader on credit some trifling articles, together with ammunition and two bushels of maize. This done we steered directly for Lake Michigan. At L’Arbre Croche we stopped one day on a visit to the Ottawas, where all the people, and particularly Okinochumaki, the chief, the same who took me from the Chippeways, behaved with great civility and kindness. The chief presented me with a bag of maize. Leaving L’Arbre Croche, we proceeded direct to the mouth of

the river Aux Sables, on the south side of the lake, and distant about one hundred and fifty miles from Fort Michilimackinac. On our voyage we passed several deep bays and rivers, and I found the banks of the lake to consist in mere sands, without any appearance of verdure, the sand drifting from one hill to another, like snow in winter. Hence all the rivers which here entered the lake, are as much entitled to the epithet of *sandy* as that to which we were bound. They are also distinguished by another particularity, always observable in similar situations. The current of the stream being met, when the wind is contrary, by the waves of the lake, it is driven back, and the sands of the shore are at the same time washed into its mouth. In consequence, the river is able to force a passage into the lake, broad only in proportion to its utmost strength; while it hollows for itself, behind the sand-banks, a basin of one, two, or three miles across. In these rivers we killed many wild-fowl and beaver.

‘To kill beaver, we used to go several miles up the rivers, before the approach of night, and after the dusk came on, suffer the canoe to drift gently down the current without noise. The beaver in this part of the evening came abroad to procure food, or materials for repairing *their habitations*; and as they **are not** alarmed by the canoe, *y* often pass it within gun-

shot. While we thus hunted along our way, I enjoyed a personal freedom of which I had been long deprived, and became as expert in the Indian pursuits as the Indians themselves. On entering the river Aux Sables, Wawatam took a dog, tied its feet together, and threw it into the stream, uttering, at the same time, a long prayer, which he addressed to the Great Spirit, supplicating his blessings on the chase, and his aid in the support of the family through the dangers of a long winter. Our lodge was fifteen miles above the mouth of the stream. The principal animals which the country afforded were the stag or red deer, the common American deer, the bear, racoon, beaver, and marten.

‘The most common way of taking the beaver is that of breaking up its house, which is done with trenching tools, during the winter, when the ice is strong enough to allow of approaching them, and when, also, the fur is in its most valuable state. Breaking up the house, however, is only a preparatory step. During this operation, the family make their escape to one or more of their *washes*. These are to be discovered by striking the ice along the bank, and where the holes are, a hollow sound is returned. After discovering and searching many of these in vain, we often found the whole family together in the same wash. I was taught occasionally to distinguish a full



BEAVERS AT WORK.—*Adventure and Peril*, p. 442.

dash from an empty one, by the motion of the water above its entrance, occasioned by the breathing of the animals concealed in it. From the washes they must be taken out with the hands; and in doing this, the hunter sometimes receives severe wounds from their teeth. While a hunter, I thought, with the Indians, that the beaver flesh was very good; but after that of the ox was again within my reach, I could not relish it. The tail is accounted a luxurious morsel.

'The racoon was another object of our chase. It was my practice to go out in the evening with dogs, accompanied by the youngest son of my guardian, to hunt this animal. The racoon never leaves its hiding-place till after sunset. As soon as a dog falls on a fresh track of the racoon, he gives notice by a cry, and immediately pursues. His barking enables the hunter to follow. The racoon, which travels slowly and is soon overtaken, makes for a tree, on which he remains till shot. After the falling of the snow, nothing more is necessary for taking the racoon than to follow the track of his feet. In this season he seldom leaves his habitation, and he never lays up any food. I have found six at a time in the hollow of one tree, lying upon each other, and nearly in a torpid state. In more than *one instance, I have ascertained that they have lived six weeks*

without food. The mouse is their principal prey. Racoon hunting was my more particular and daily employ. I usually went out at the first dawn of day, and seldom returned till sunset, or till I had laden myself with as many animals as I could carry. By degrees I became familiarized with this kind of life; and had it not been for the idea, of which I could not divest my mind, that I was living among savages, and for the whispers of a lingering hope that I should one day be released from it—or if I could have forgotten that I had ever been otherwise than as I then was—I could have enjoyed as much happiness in this as in any other situation.

'On the 20th of December we took an account of the produce of our hunt, and found that we had a hundred beaver skins, as many racoons, and a large quantity of dried venison, all of which was secured from the wolves by being raised upon a scaffold. A hunting excursion into the interior of the country was resolved on, and early next morning the bundles were made up by the women for each person to carry. I remarked that the bundle given to me was the lightest, and those carried by the women the largest and the heaviest of the whole.

'On the first day of our march we advanced about twenty miles, and then encamped. Being somewhat fatigued, I could not hunt; but Wawatam killed a

stag not far from our encampment. The next morning we moved our lodge to the carcase. At this station we remained two days, employed in drying the meat. The method was, to cut it into slices of the thickness of a steak, and then hang it over the fire in a smoke. On the third day we removed, and marched till two o'clock in the afternoon. While the women were busy in erecting and preparing the lodges, I took my gun and strolled away, telling Wawatam that I intended looking out for some fresh meat for supper. He answered that he would do the same, and on this we both left the encampment, in different directions.

'The sun being visible, I entertained no fear of losing my way; but in following several tracks of animals, in momentary expectation of falling in with the game, I proceeded to a considerable distance, and it was not till near sunset that I thought of returning. The sky, too, had become overcast, and I was therefore left without the sun for my guide. In this situation I walked as fast as I could, always supposing myself to be approaching our encampment, till at length it became so dark that I ran against the trees. I became convinced that I was lost, and I was alarmed by the reflection that I was in a country entirely strange to me, and in danger from strange Indians. With the flint of my gun I made a fire, and then laid me down

to sleep. In the night it rained hard. I awoke cold and wet; and as soon as light appeared, I recommenced my journey, sometimes walking and sometimes running, unknowing where to go, bewildered, and like a madman. Towards evening I reached the border of a large lake, of which I could scarcely discern the opposite shore. I had never heard of a lake in this part of the country, and therefore felt myself removed further than ever from the object of my pursuit. To tread back my steps appeared to be the most likely means of delivering myself; and I accordingly determined to turn my face directly from the lake and keep this direction as nearly as I could. A heavy snow-storm began to descend, and night soon afterwards came on. On this I stopped and made a fire, and stripping a tree of its sheet of bark, lay down under it to shelter me from the snow. All night, at small distances, the wolves howled around, and to me seemed to be acquainted with my misfortune.

'Amid thoughts the most distracted, I was able at length to fall asleep; but it was not long before I awoke refreshed, and wondering at the terror to which I had yielded myself. That I could really have wanted the means of recovering my way, appeared to me almost incredible, and the recollection of it like a dream, or as a circumstance which must have pro-

ceeded from the loss of my senses. Had this not happened, I could never, as I now thought, have suffered so long without calling to mind the lessons which I had received from my Indian friend, for the very purpose of being useful to me in difficulties of this kind. These were, that, generally speaking, the tops of pine trees lean toward the rising of the sun ; that moss grows toward the roots of trees on the side which faces the north ; and that the limbs of trees are most numerous and largest on that which faces the south.

‘Determined to direct my feet by these marks, and persuaded that I should thus, sooner or later, reach Lake Michigan, which I reckoned to be distant about sixty miles, I began my march at break of day. I had not taken, nor wished to take, any nourishment since I left the encampment ; I had with me my gun and ammunition, and was therefore under no anxiety in regard to food. The snow lay about half a foot in depth. My eyes were now employed upon the trees. When their tops leaned different ways, I looked to the moss or to the branches, and by connecting one with another, I found the means of travelling with some degree of confidence. At four o’clock in the afternoon, the sun, to my inexpressible joy, broke from the clouds, and I had now *no further need of examining the trees.*

‘In going down the side of a lofty hill, I saw a herd of red deer approaching. Desirous of killing one of them for food, I hid myself in the bushes, and on a large one coming near, presented my piece, which missed fire on account of the priming having been wetted. The animals walked along, without taking the least alarm ; and having reloaded my gun, I followed them, and presented a second time. But now a disaster of the heaviest kind had befallen me, for, on attempting to fire, I found that I had lost the cock. I had previously lost the screw by which it was fastened to the lock, and to prevent this from being lost also, I had tied it in its place with a leather string. The lock, to prevent it catching in the boughs, I had carried under my molton coat. Of all the sufferings which I had experienced, this seemed to me the most severe. I was in a strange country, and knew not how far I had to go. I had been three days without food ; I was without the means of procuring myself either food or fire. Despair had almost overpowered me ; but I soon resigned myself into the hands of that Providence whose arm had so often saved me, and returned on my track in search of what I had lost. My search was in vain, and I resumed my course, wet, cold, and hungry, and almost without clothing.

‘The sun was setting fast, when I descended a hill, at the

bottom of which was a small lake entirely frozen over. On drawing near, I saw a beaver lodge in the middle, offering some faint prospect of food; but I found it already broken up. While I looked at it, it suddenly occurred to me that I had seen it before, and turning my eyes round the place, I discovered a small tree which I had myself cut down in the autumn, when, in company with my friends, I had taken the beaver. I was no longer at a loss, but knew both the distance and the route to the encampment. The latter was only to follow the course of a small stream of water, which ran from the encampment to the lake on which I stood. An hour before I had thought myself the most miserable of men; and now I leaped for joy and called myself the happiest. The whole of the night and through all the succeeding day I walked up the rivulet, and at sunset reached the encampment, where I was received with warmest expressions of pleasure by the family, by whom I had been given up for lost, after a long and vain search for me in the woods. Some days elapsed, during which I rested myself and recruited my strength. After this I resumed the chase, secure that, as the snow had now fallen, I could always return by the way I went.

'In the course of the month of January, I noticed that the trunk of a large pine tree was much torn by the claws of

a bear, made both in going up and coming down. On further examination, I saw that there was a large opening in the upper part, near which the smaller branches were broken. From these marks, and from the additional circumstance that there were no tracks on the snow, there was reason to believe that a bear lay concealed in the tree. On returning to the lodge, I communicated my discovery; and it was agreed that all the family should go together in the morning to assist in cutting down the tree, the girth of which was not less than three fathoms. The women at first opposed the undertaking, because our axes, being only of a pound and a half weight, were not well adapted to so heavy a labour; but the hope of finding a large bear, and obtaining from its fat a great quantity of oil, an article at the time much wanted, at length prevailed.

'Accordingly, in the morning we surrounded the tree, both men and women, as many at a time as could conveniently work at it; and here we toiled like beavers till the sun went down. This day's work carried us about half way through the trunk; and the next morning we renewed the attack, continuing it until about two o'clock in the afternoon, when the tree fell to the ground. For a few minutes everything remained quiet, and I feared that all our expectations were disappointed; but as I advanced to the opening, there

came out, to the great satisfaction of all our party, a bear of extraordinary size, which, before she had proceeded many yards, I shot. The bear being dead, all my assistants approached, and all, but more particularly my old mother, as I was wont to call her, took her head in her hands, stroking and kissing it several times; begging a thousand pardons for taking away her life; calling her their relation and grandmother; and requesting her not to lay the fault upon them, since it was truly an Englishman that had put her to death. This ceremony was not of long duration; and if it was I that killed their grandmother, they were not themselves behindhand in what remained to be performed. The skin being taken off, we found the fat in several places six inches deep. This being divided into two parts, loaded two persons; and the flesh parts were as much as four persons could carry. In all, the carcase must have exceeded five hundredweight.

‘As soon as we reached the lodge, the bear’s head was adorned with all the trinkets in the possession of the family, and then laid upon a scaffold, set up for its reception within the lodge. Near the nose was placed a large quantity of tobacco. The next morning no sooner appeared, than preparations were made for a feast to the *manes*. The lodge was cleaned and swept; and the head of the bear lifted up, and a new stroud

blanket, which had never been used before, spread under it. The pipes were now lit, and Wawatam blew tobacco smoke into the nostrils of the bear, telling me to do the same, and thus appease the anger of the bear, on account of my having killed her. At length, the feast being ready, Wawatam commenced a speech, deploring the necessity under which men laboured thus to destroy their *friends*. He represented, however, that the misfortune was unavoidable, since without doing so they could by no means subsist. The speech ended, all ate heartily of the bear’s flesh; and even the head itself, after remaining three days on the scaffold, was put into the kettle. The fat of our bear was melted down, and the oil filled six porcupine skins. A part of the meat was cut into strips and fire-dried, after which it was put into the vessels containing the oil, where it remained in perfect preservation until the middle of summer.

‘February, in the country and by the people where and among whom I was, is called the Moon of Hard or Crusted Snow; for now the snow can bear a man, or at least dogs, in pursuit of animals of the chase. At this season the stag is very successfully hunted, his feet breaking through at every step, and the crust upon the snow cutting his legs with its sharp edges to the very bone. He is consequently in this distress an

easy prey; and it frequently happened that we killed twelve in the short space of two hours. By this means we were soon put into possession of four thousand pounds weight of dried venison, which was to be carried on our back, along with all the rest of our wealth, for seventy miles, the distance of our encampment from that part of the lake shore at which in the autumn we left our canoes. This journey it was our next business to perform. Our venison and furs and peltries were to be disposed of at Michilimackinac, and it was now the season for carrying them to market. The women therefore prepared our loads; and the morning of departure being come, we set off at day-break, and continued our march till two o'clock in the afternoon. Where we stopped we erected a scaffold, on which we deposited the bundles we had brought, and returned to our encampment, which we reached in the evening. In the morning we carried fresh loads, which being deposited with the rest, we returned a second time in the evening. This we repeated till all was forwarded one stage. Then, removing our lodge to the place of deposit, we carried our goods, with the same patient toil, a second stage; and so on, till we were at no great distance from the shores of the lake. Here we were joined by several lodges of Indians, most of whom were of the family to which I belonged, and had

wintered near us. I was treated civilly by all the lodges.

'We arrived at the border of the lake in the beginning of April, and while there, a watch was kept every night, in apprehension of a speedy attack from the English, who were expected to avenge the massacre of Michilimackinac. The immediate grounds of this apprehension were the constant dreams, to this effect, of the more aged women. I endeavoured to persuade them that nothing of the kind would take place; but their fears were not to be subdued. Amid these alarms, there came a report concerning a real, though less formidable, enemy discovered in the neighbourhood. This was a panther, which one of our young men had seen, and which animal sometimes attacks and carries away the Indian children. Our camp was immediately on the alert, and we set off into the woods, about twenty in number. We had not proceeded more than a mile before the dogs found the panther, and pursued him to a tree, on which he was shot. He was of a large size.

'On the 25th of April we embarked for Michilimackinac. At La Grande Traverse we met a large party of Indians, who appeared to labour like ourselves under considerable alarm, and who dared proceed no further, lest they should be destroyed by the English. Frequent councils of the united bands were held, and interroga-

tions were continually put to myself as to whether or not I knew of any design to attack them. I found that they believed it possible for me to have a foreknowledge of events, and to be informed by dreams of all things doing at a distance. Protestations of my ignorance were received with but little satisfaction, and incurred the suspicion of a design to conceal my knowledge. On this account, therefore, or because I saw them tormented with fears which had nothing but imagination to rest upon, I told them, at length, that I knew there was no enemy to insult them, and that they might proceed to Michilimackinac without danger from the English. I further, and with more confidence, declared that, if ever my countrymen returned to Michilimackinac, I would recommend them to their favour, on account of the good treatment which I had received from them. Thus encouraged, they embarked at an early hour the next morning. In crossing the bay, we experienced a storm of thunder and lightning. Our port was the village of L'Arbre Croche, which we reached in safety, and there we stayed till the following day. At this village we found several persons who had been lately at Michilimackinac, and from them we had the satisfaction of learning that all was quiet there. The remainder of our voyage was therefore performed with confidence.

'In the evening of the 27th we landed at the fort, which now contained only French traders. The Indians who had arrived before us were very few in number; and by all who were of our party I was used very kindly. I had the entire freedom both of the fort and camp. Wawatam and myself settled our stock, and paid our debts; and this done, I found that my share of what was left consisted in a hundred beaver skins, sixty racoon skins, and six otter, of the total value of about 160 dollars. With these earnings of my winter toil I proposed to purchase clothes, of which I was much in need, having been six months without a shirt; but, on inquiring into the price of goods, I found that all my means would not go far. I was able, however, to buy two shirts, at ten pounds of beaver each; a pair of *leggings* of scarlet cloth, which, with the ribbon to fasten them fashionably, cost me fifteen pounds of beaver; a blanket, at twenty pounds of beaver; and some other articles at proportionable rates. In this manner my wealth was soon reduced, but not before I had laid in a good stock of ammunition and tobacco. To the use of the latter I had become much attached during the winter.

'Eight days had passed in tranquillity, when there arrived a band of Indians from the bay of Saguenau. They had assisted at the siege of Detroit, and came to muster as many

recruits for that service as they could. For my own part, I was soon informed that, as I was the only Englishman in the place, they proposed to kill me, in order to give their friends a mess of English broth to raise their courage. This intelligence was not of the most agreeable kind; and in consequence of receiving it, I requested my friend to carry me to the Sault de Saint-Marie, at which place I knew the Indians to be peaceably inclined, and that M. Cadotte exercised a powerful influence over their conduct. They considered M. Cadotte as their chief; and he was not only my friend, but a friend to the English. Wawatam was not slow to exert himself for my preservation, but, leaving Michilimackinac in the night, transported himself and all his lodge to Point Saint-Ignace, on the opposite side of the strait. Here we remained till daylight, and then went into the Bay of Boutchitaouy, in which we spent three days in fishing and hunting, and where we found plenty of wild-fowl. Leaving the bay, we made for the Isle aux Outardes, where we were obliged to put in, on account of the wind coming ahead. We proposed sailing for the Sault the next morning.

‘ But when the morning came, Wawatam’s wife complained that she was sick, adding that she had *had bad dreams*, and knew that *if we went to the Sault we should be destroyed*. To have argued,

at this time, against the infallibility of dreams would have been extremely inadvisable, since I should have appeared to be guilty not only of an odious want of faith, but also of a still more odious want of sensibility to the possible calamities of a family which had done so much for the alleviation of mine. I was silent; but the disappointment seemed to seal my fate. No prospect opened to console me. The return to Michilimackinac could only ensure my destruction; and to remain at the island was to brave almost equal danger, since it lay in the direct route between the fort and the Missisaki, along which the Indians from Detroit were hourly expected to pass, on the business of their mission. I doubted not but, taking advantage of the solitary situation of the family, they would carry into execution their design of killing me. Unable, therefore, to take any part in the direction of our course, but a prey, at the same time, to the most anxious thoughts as to my own condition, I passed all the day on the highest part of a tall tree to which I could climb, from whence the lake on both sides of the island lay open to my view. Here I might hope to learn, at the earliest possible time, the approach of canoes, and by this means be warned to conceal myself.

‘ On the second morning I returned, as soon as it was light to my watch-tower, on which

had not been long before I discovered a sail coming from Michilimackinac. The sail was a white one, and much larger than those usually employed by the northern Indians. I therefore indulged a hope that it might be a Canadian canoe on the voyage to Montreal, and that I might be able to prevail upon the crew to take me with them, and thus release me from all my troubles. My hopes continued to gain ground; for I soon persuaded myself that the manner in which the paddles were used on board the canoe was Canadian and not Indian. My spirits were elated; but disappointment had become so usual with me, that I could not suffer myself to look to the event with any strength of confidence. Enough, however, appeared at length to demonstrate itself, to induce me to descend the tree and repair to the lodge with my tidings and schemes of liberty. The family congratulated me on the approach of so fair an opportunity of escape; and my father and brother lit his pipe and presented it to me, saying, "My son, this may be the last time that ever you and I shall smoke out of the same pipe! I am sorry to part with you. You know the affection which I have always borne you, and the dangers to which I have exposed myself and family to preserve you from your enemies; and I am happy to find that my efforts promise not to have been in vain." At this

time a boy came into the lodge, informing us that the canoe had come from Michilimackinac, and was bound to Sault de Saint-Marie. It was manned by three Canadians, and was carrying home Madame Cadotte, the wife of M. Cadotte already mentioned.

'My hopes of going to Montreal being now dissipated, I resolved on accompanying Madame Cadotte, with her permission, to the Sault. On communicating my wishes to Madame Cadotte, she cheerfully acceded to them. She was an Indian woman of the Chippeway nation, and was very generally respected. My departure fixed upon, I returned to the lodge, where I packed up my wardrobe, consisting of my two shirts, a pair of *leggings*, and blanket; besides these I took a gun and ammunition, presenting what remained further to my host. I also returned the silver arm-bands with which the family had decorated me the year before. We now exchanged farewells with an emotion entirely reciprocal. I did not quit the lodge without the most grateful sense of the many acts of goodness which I had experienced in it, nor without the sincerest respect for the virtues which I had witnessed among its members. All the family accompanied me to the beach; and the canoe had no sooner put off than Wawatam commenced an address to the Kichi-Manito, beseeching him to take care of me, his brother,

* Being now no longer in the society of the Indians, I put aside the dress, putting on that of a Canadian. At daybreak, on the second morning of our voyage, we embarked, and presently perceived several canoes behind us. As they approached, we ascertained them to be the fleet, bound for the Missisaki, of which I had been so long in dread. It amounted to twenty sail. On coming up with us, and surrounding our canoe, and amid general inquiries concerning the news, an Indian challenged me for an Englishman, and his companions supported him by declaring that I looked very like one; but I affected not to understand any of the questions which they asked me, and Madame Cadotte assured them that I was a Canadian whom she had brought on this voyage from Montreal. The following day saw us safely

to c
disc
of t
the
fuge
the
My
Mu
was
des
chi
kiw
tha
but
to
ab
sta
rai
tur
tha
to
th
M
se
ric
af

the protection of all the chiefs, by whom any insult I might sustain would be avenged, the ambassadors were peremptorily told that they might go back as they came, none of the young men of this village being foolish enough to join them.

‘A moment after, a report was brought that a canoe had just arrived from Niagara. As this was a place from which every one was anxious to hear news, a message was sent to these fresh strangers, requesting them to come to the council. The strangers came accordingly, and being seated, a long silence ensued. At length one of them, taking up a belt of wampum, addressed himself thus to the assembly: “My friends and brothers, I am come with this belt from our great father, Sir William Johnson. He desired me to come to you as his ambassador, and tell you that he is making a great feast at Fort Niagara; that his kettles are all ready and his fires lit. He invites you to partake of the feast, in common with your friends, the Six Nations, who have all made peace with the English. He advises you to seize this opportunity of doing the same, as you cannot otherwise fail of being destroyed; for the English are on their march with a great army, which will be joined by different nations of Indians. In a word, before the fall of the leaf, they *will be at Michilimackinac, and the Six Nations with them.*”

‘The tenor of this speech greatly alarmed the Indians of the Sault, who, after a very short consultation, agreed to send twenty deputies to Sir William Johnson at Niagara. This was a project highly interesting to me, since it offered me the means of leaving the country. I intimated this to the chief of the village, and received his promise that I should accompany the deputation.

‘On the 10th of June, I embarked with the Indian deputation, composed of sixteen men. Twenty had been the original number designed; and upwards of fifty actually engaged themselves to the council for the undertaking. But, exclusively of the degree of timidity which prevailed, we are to take into account the various domestic calls which might supersede all others, and detain many with their families. In the evening of the second day of our voyage, we reached the mouth of the Missisaki, where we found about forty Indians, by whom we were received with abundant kindness, and at night regaled at a great feast, held on account of our arrival. The viand was a preparation of the roe of the sturgeon, beat up and boiled, and of the consistence of porridge. After eating, several speeches were made to us, of which the general topic was a request that we should recommend the village to Sir William Johnson. This request was also specially

the companions of my voyage, who now saw they were not the first to run into danger. The next day, about noon, the wind blowing very hard, we were obliged to put ashore at Point aux Grondines. While the Indians erected a hut, I employed myself in making a fire. As I was gathering wood, an unusual sound fixed my attention for a moment; but as it presently ceased, and as I saw nothing from which I could suppose it could proceed, I continued my employment, till, advancing farther, I was alarmed by a repetition. I imagined that it came from above my head; but after looking that way in vain, I cast my eyes on the ground, and there discovered a rattlesnake, at not more than two feet from my naked legs. The reptile was coiled, and its head raised con-

ing this part of the coiled snake, they filled their pipes; and each blew the smoke into the mouth of the snake, who, as it appeared to me, really received pleasure. In a word, remaining coiled and receiving incense for the space of an hour, it stretched itself over the ground in visible glee. Its length was four and five feet. Having remained outstretched for some time, at last it moved away, the Indians following and still addressing it with the title of grandfather, begging it to take care of their children during their absence, and that it would be pleased to visit the heart of Sir Williamson, so that he might show his charity, and fill their canoes with rum.

‘Early the next mor-

hoisted sail. Soon after the wind increased, and the Indians beginning to be alarmed, frequently called on the rattlesnake to come to their assistance. By degrees the waves grew high; at eleven o'clock it blew a hurricane, and we expected every moment to be swallowed up. From prayers the Indians now proceeded to sacrifices, both alike offered to the god rattlesnake, or *Manito kinibic*. One of the chiefs took a dog, and after tying its forelegs together, threw it overboard, at the same time calling on the snake to preserve us from being drowned, and desiring him to satisfy his hunger with the carcase of the dog. The snake was unpropitious, and the wind increased. Another chief sacrificed another dog, with the addition of some tobacco. In the prayer which accompanied these gifts, he besought the snake, as before, not to avenge upon the Indians the insult which he had received from myself, in the conception of a design to put him to death. He assured the snake that I was absolutely an Englishman, and of kin neither to him nor to them. At the conclusion of this speech, an Indian who sat near me observed that, if we were drowned, it would be for my fault alone, and that I ought myself to be sacrificed, to appease the angry Manito; nor was I without apprehensions that in case of extremity this would be my fate; but happily for me, the storm at length

abated, and we reached the island safely.

'The next day was calm, and we arrived at the entrance of the navigation which leads to Lake Aux Claies (Lake Suncoe). We presently passed two short carrying-places, at each of which were several lodges of Indians, containing only women and children, the men being gone to the council at Niagara. From this, as from a former instance, my companions derived fresh courage. On the 18th of June we crossed Lake Aux Claies, which appeared to be upwards of twenty miles in length. At its further end we came to the carrying-place of Toronto. Here the Indians obliged me to carry a burden of more than a hundred pounds weight. The day was very hot, and the woods and marshes abounded with mosquitoes; but the Indians walked at a quick pace, and I could by no means see myself left behind. The whole country was a thick forest, through which our only road was a footpath, or such as in America is exclusively termed an *Indian path*. Next morning, at ten o'clock, we reached the shore of Lake Ontario. Here we were employed two days in making canoes out of the bark of the elm tree, in which we were to transport ourselves to Niagara. For this purpose, the Indians first cut down a tree, then stripped off the bark in one entire sheet of about eighteen feet in length, the incision being lengthwise. The canoe was now

complete as to its top, bottom, and sides. Its ends were next closed by sewing the bark together; and a few ribs and bars being introduced, the architecture was finished. In this manner we made two canoes, of which one carried eight men and the other nine.

'On the 21st we embarked at Toronto, and encamped in the evening four miles short of Fort Niagara, which the Indians would not approach till morning. At dawn the Indians were awake, and presently assembled in council, still doubtful as to the fate they were to encounter. I assured them of the most friendly welcome; and at length, after painting themselves with the most lively colours, in token

of their own peaceable views, and after singing the song which is in use among them on going into danger, they embarked and made for Point Missisaki, which is on the north side of the mouth of the river or strait of Niagara, as the fort is on the south. A few minutes after I crossed over to the fort; and here I was received by Sir William Johnson, in a manner for which I have ever been gratefully attached to his person and memory.

'Thus was completed my escape from the sufferings and dangers which the capture of Fort Michilimackinac brought upon me; but the property which I had carried into the upper country was left behind.'

CHAPTER II.

CAPTURE OF QUINTIN STOCKWELL BY INDIANS, AND PERILOUS JOURNEY MADE IN THEIR COMPANY.

'In the year 1777, September the 19th, at Deerfield, Mass., between sunset and dark, the Indians came upon us. I and another man being together, we ran away at the outcry the Indians made, shouting and shooting at some others of the English that were hard by. We took a swamp that was at hand for our refuge. The enemy spying us so near them, ran after us, and shot many guns at us; ~~the~~ ^{see} guns were discharged upon the enemy being within of me, besides many

others before that. Being in this swamp, which was miry, I slumped in and fell down, whereupon one of the enemy stepped to me, with his hatchet lifted up to knock me on the head, supposing that I had been wounded, and so unfit for any other travel. I, as it happened, had a pistol by me, which, though uncharged, I presented at the Indian, who presently stepped back, and told me if I would yield I should have no hurt. He said, which was not true, that they had destroyed all

Hatfield, and that the woods were full of Indians ; whereupon I yielded myself, and falling into their hands, was by three of them led away to the place where I first began to make my flight. Here two other Indians came running to us, and the one lifting up the butt end of his gun to knock me on the head, the other with his hand put by the blow, and said I was his friend.

‘I was now by my own house, which the Indians burned the last year, and I was about to build up again ; and there I had some hopes to escape from them. There was a horse just by, which they bid me take. I did so, but made no attempt to escape thereby, because the enemy was near, and the beast was slow and dull. Then was I in hopes they would send me to take my own horses, which they did ; but they were so frightened that I could not come near to them, and so fell still into the enemy’s hands. They now took and bound me, and led me away, and soon was I brought into the company of other captives, who were that day brought away from Hatfield, who were about a mile off : and here methought was matter of joy and sorrow both ; joy to see company, and sorrow for our condition. Then were we pinioned and led away in the night over the mountains, in dark and hideous ways, about four miles farther, before we took up our place of rest, which was in a dismal place of wood,

on the east side of the mountain. We were kept bound all that night. The Indians kept awake, and we had little mind to sleep in this night’s travel. The Indians dispersed, and as they went made strange noises, as of wolves and owls, and other wild beasts, to the end that they might not lose one another, and if followed, might not be discovered by the English.

‘About the break of day we marched again, and got over that great river at Pecomptuck (Deerfield) river mouth, and there rested about two hours. Here the Indians marked out upon the trees the number of their captives and slain, as is their manner. Now was I again in great danger, a quarrel having arisen about me, whose captive I was ; for three took me. I thought I must be killed to end the controversy ; so, when they put it to me, whose I was, I said three Indians took me ; so they agreed to have all a share in me. I had now three masters, and he was my chief master who laid hands on me first ; and thus was I fallen into the hands of the worst of all the company, as Asphelon the Indian chief told me, which chief was all along very kind to me, and a great comfort to the English. In this place they gave us some victuals, which they had brought from the English. This morning also they sent ten men forth to the town of Deerfield, to bring away what they could find. Some provi-

recruits for that service as they could. For my own part, I was soon informed that, as I was the only Englishman in the place, they proposed to kill me, in order to give their friends a mess of English broth to raise their courage. This intelligence was not of the most agreeable kind; and in consequence of receiving it, I requested my friend to carry me to the Sault de Saint-Marie, at which place I knew the Indians to be peaceably inclined, and that M. Cadotte exercised a powerful influence over their conduct. They considered M. Cadotte as their chief; and he was not only my friend, but a friend to the English. Wawatam was not slow to exert himself for my preservation, but, leaving Michilimackinac in the night, transported himself and all his lodge to Point Saint-Ignace, on the opposite side of the strait. Here we remained till daylight, and then went into the Bay of Boutchitaouy, in which we spent three days in fishing and hunting, and where we found plenty of wild-fowl. Leaving the bay, we made for the Isle aux Outardes, where we were obliged to put in, on account of the wind coming ahead. We proposed sailing for the Sault the next morning.

‘ But when the morning came, Wawatam’s wife complained that she was sick, adding that she had had bad dreams, and knew that if we went to the Sault we should all be destroyed. To have argued,

at this time, against the infallibility of dreams would have been extremely inadvisable, since I should have appeared to be guilty not only of an odious want of faith, but also of a still more odious want of sensibility to the possible calamities of a family which had done so much for the alleviation of mine. I was silent; but the disappointment seemed to seal my fate. No prospect opened to console me. The return to Michilimackinac could only ensure my destruction; and to remain at the island was to brave almost equal danger, since it lay in the direct route between the fort and the Missisaki, along which the Indians from Detroit were hourly expected to pass, on the business of their mission. I doubted not but, taking advantage of the solitary situation of the family, they would carry into execution their design of killing me. Unable, therefore, to take any part in the direction of our course, but a prey, at the same time, to the most anxious thoughts as to my own condition, I passed all the day on the highest part of a tall tree to which I could climb, from whence the lake on both sides of the island lay open to my view. Here I might hope to learn, at the earliest possible time, the approach of canoes, and by this means be warned to conceal myself.

‘ On the second morning I returned, as soon as it was light, to my watch-tower, on which I

had not been long before I discovered a sail coming from Michilimackinac. The sail was a white one, and much larger than those usually employed by the northern Indians. I therefore indulged a hope that it might be a Canadian canoe on the voyage to Montreal, and that I might be able to prevail upon the crew to take me with them, and thus release me from all my troubles. My hopes continued to gain ground; for I soon persuaded myself that the manner in which the paddles were used on board the canoe was Canadian and not Indian. My spirits were elated; but disappointment had become so usual with me, that I could not suffer myself to look to the event with any strength of confidence. Enough, however, appeared at length to demonstrate itself, to induce me to descend the tree and repair to the lodge with my tidings and schemes of liberty. The family congratulated me on the approach of so fair an opportunity of escape: and my father and brother lit his pipe and presented it to me, saying, "My son, this may be the last time that ever you and I shall smoke out of the same pipe! I am sorry to part with you. You know the affection which I have always borne you, and the dangers to which I have exposed myself and family to preserve you from your enemies; and I am happy to find that my efforts promise not to have been in vain." At this

time a boy came into the lodge, informing us that the canoe had come from Michilimackinac, and was bound to Saint de Saint-Marc. It was manned by three Canadians, and was carrying home Madame Cadotte, the wife of M. Cadotte already mentioned.

My hopes of going to Montreal being now dissipated, I resolved on accompanying Madame Cadotte, with her permission, to the Saint. On communicating my wishes to Madame Cadotte, she cheerfully acceded to them. She was an Indian woman of the Chippeway nation, and was very generally respected. My departure fixed upon, I returned to the lodge, where I packed up my wardrobe, consisting of my two shirts, a pair of leggings, and blanket; besides these I took a gun and ammunition, presenting what remained further to my host. I also returned the silver arm-bands with which the family had decorated me the year before. No exchanged farewells, no emotion entirely repressed, did not quit the lodge. The most painful and many acts of kindness had exposed the virtues of the family to the beach; and sooner

recruits for that service as they could. For my own part, I was soon informed that, as I was the only Englishman in the place, they proposed to kill me, in order to give their friends a mess of English broth to raise their courage. This intelligence was not of the most agreeable kind; and in consequence of receiving it, I requested my friend to carry me to the Sault de Saint-Marie, at which place I knew the Indians to be peaceably inclined, and that M. Cadotte exercised a powerful influence over their conduct. They considered M. Cadotte as their chief; and he was not only my friend, but a friend to the English. Wawatam was not slow to exert himself for my preservation, but, leaving Michilimackinac in the night, transported himself and all his lodge to Point Saint-Ignace, on the opposite side of the strait. Here we remained till daylight, and then went into the Bay of Boutchitaouy, in which we spent three days in fishing and hunting, and where we found plenty of wild-fowl. Leaving the bay, we made for the Isle aux Outardes, where we were obliged to put in, on account of the wind coming ahead. We proposed sailing for the Sault the next morning.

‘But when the morning came, Wawatam’s wife complained that she was sick, adding that she had had bad dreams, and knew that if we went to the Sault we should all be destroyed. To have argued,

at this time, against the infallibility of dreams would have been extremely inadvisable, since I should have appeared to be guilty not only of an odious want of faith, but also of a still more odious want of sensibility to the possible calamities of a family which had done so much for the alleviation of mine. I was silent; but the disappointment seemed to seal my fate. No prospect opened to console me. The return to Michilimackinac could only ensure my destruction; and to remain at the island was to brave almost equal danger, since it lay in the direct route between the fort and the Missisaki, along which the Indians from Detroit were hourly expected to pass, on the business of their mission. I doubted not but, taking advantage of the solitary situation of the family, they would carry into execution their design of killing me. Unable, therefore, to take any part in the direction of our course, but a prey, at the same time, to the most anxious thoughts as to my own condition, I passed all the day on the highest part of a tall tree to which I could climb, from whence the lake on both sides of the island lay open to my view. Here I might hope to learn, at the earliest possible time, the approach of canoes, and by this means be warned to conceal myself.

‘On the second morning I returned, as soon as it was light, to my watch-tower, on which I

had not been long before I discovered a sail coming from Michilimackinac. The sail was a white one, and much larger than those usually employed by the northern Indians. I therefore indulged a hope that it might be a Canadian canoe on the voyage to Montreal, and that I might be able to prevail upon the crew to take me with them, and thus release me from all my troubles. My hopes continued to gain ground; for I soon persuaded myself that the manner in which the paddles were used on board the canoe was Canadian and not Indian. My spirits were elated; but disappointment had become so usual with me, that I could not suffer myself to look to the event with any strength of confidence. Enough, however, appeared at length to demonstrate itself, to induce me to descend the tree and repair to the lodge with my tidings and schemes of liberty. The family congratulated me on the approach of so fair an opportunity of escape; and my father and brother lit his pipe and presented it to me, saying, "My son, this may be the last time that ever you and I shall smoke out of the same pipe! I am sorry to part with you. You know the affection which I have always borne you, and the dangers to which I have exposed myself and family to preserve you from your enemies; and I am happy to find that my efforts promise not to have been in vain." At this

time a boy came into the lodge, informing us that the canoe had come from Michilimackinac, and was bound to Sault de Saint-Marie. It was manned by three Canadians, and was carrying home Madame Cadotte, the wife of M. Cadotte already mentioned.

'My hopes of going to Montreal being now dissipated, I resolved on accompanying Madame Cadotte, with her permission, to the Sault. On communicating my wishes to Madame Cadotte, she cheerfully acceded to them. She was an Indian woman of the Chippeway nation, and was very generally respected. My departure fixed upon, I returned to the lodge, where I packed up my wardrobe, consisting of my two shirts, a pair of *leggings*, and blanket; besides these I took a gun and ammunition, presenting what remained further to my host. I also returned the silver arm-bands with which the family had decorated me the year before. We now exchanged farewells with an emotion entirely reciprocal. I did not quit the lodge without the most grateful sense of the many acts of goodness which I had experienced in it, nor without the sincerest respect for the virtues which I had witnessed among its members. All the family accompanied me to the beach; and the canoe had no sooner put off than Wawatam commenced an address to the Kichi-Manito, beseeching him to take care of me, his brother,

till we should next meet. This, he had told me, would not be long, as he intended to return to Michilimackinac for a short time only, and would then follow me to the Sault. We had proceeded to too great a distance to allow of our hearing his voice, before Wawatam had ceased to offer up his prayers.

‘Being now no longer in the society of the Indians, I put aside the dress, putting on that of a Canadian. At daybreak, on the second morning of our voyage, we embarked, and presently perceived several canoes behind us. As they approached, we ascertained them to be the fleet, bound for the Missisaki, of which I had been so long in dread. It amounted to twenty sail. On coming up with us, and surrounding our canoe, and amid general inquiries concerning the news, an Indian challenged me for an Englishman, and his companions supported him by declaring that I looked very like one; but I affected not to understand any of the questions which they asked me, and Madame Cadotte assured them that I was a Canadian whom she had brought on this voyage from Montreal. The following day saw us safely landed at the Sault, where I experienced a generous welcome from M. Cadotte. There were thirty warriors at this place, restrained from joining in the wars only by M. Cadotte’s influence.

‘Here, for five days, I was once more in possession of tran-

quillity; but on the 6th, a young Indian came into M. Cadotte’s, saying that a canoe full of warriors had just arrived from Michilimackinac; that they had inquired for me, and that he believed their intentions to be bad. Nearly at the same time, a message came from the good chief of the village, desiring me to conceal myself until he should discover the views and temper of the strangers. A garret was the second time my place of refuge; and it was not long before the Indians came to M. Cadotte’s. My friend immediately informed Mutchikiwish, their chief, who was related to his wife, of the design imputed to them of mischief against myself. Mutchikiwish frankly acknowledged that they had had such a design, but added that, if displeasing to M. Cadotte, it should be abandoned. He then further stated that their errand was to raise a party of warriors to return with them to Detroit, and that it had been their intention to take me with them.

‘In regard to the principal of the two objects thus disclosed, M. Cadotte proceeded to assemble all the chiefs and warriors of the village; and these, after deliberating for some time among themselves, sent for the strangers, to whom both M. Cadotte and the chief of the village addressed a speech. In these speeches, after recurring to the designs confessed to have been entertained against myself, who was now declared to be under

the protection of all the chiefs, by whom any insult I might sustain would be avenged, the ambassadors were peremptorily told that they might go back as they came, none of the young men of this village being foolish enough to join them.

‘A moment after, a report was brought that a canoe had just arrived from Niagara. As this was a place from which every one was anxious to hear news, a message was sent to these fresh strangers, requesting them to come to the council. The strangers came accordingly, and being seated, a long silence ensued. At length one of them, taking up a belt of wampum, addressed himself thus to the assembly: “My friends and brothers, I am come with this belt from our great father, Sir William Johnson. He desired me to come to you as his ambassador, and tell you that he is making a great feast at Fort Niagara; that his kettles are all ready and his fires lit. He invites you to partake of the feast, in common with your friends, the Six Nations, who have all made peace with the English. He advises you to seize this opportunity of doing the same, as you cannot otherwise fail of being destroyed; for the English are on their march with a great army, which will be joined by different nations of Indians. In a word, before the fall of the leaf, they *will be at Michilimackinac, and the Six Nations with them.*”

‘The tenor of this speech greatly alarmed the Indians of the Sault, who, after a very short consultation, agreed to send twenty deputies to Sir William Johnson at Niagara. This was a project highly interesting to me, since it offered me the means of leaving the country. I intimated this to the chief of the village, and received his promise that I should accompany the deputation.

‘On the 10th of June, I embarked with the Indian deputation, composed of sixteen men. Twenty had been the original number designed; and upwards of fifty actually engaged themselves to the council for the undertaking. But, exclusively of the degree of timidity which prevailed, we are to take into account the various domestic calls which might supersede all others, and detain many with their families. In the evening of the second day of our voyage, we reached the mouth of the Missisaki, where we found about forty Indians, by whom we were received with abundant kindness, and at night regaled at a great feast, held on account of our arrival. The viand was a preparation of the roe of the sturgeon, beat up and boiled, and of the consistence of porridge. After eating, several speeches were made to us, of which the general topic was a request that we should recommend the village to Sir William Johnson. This request was also specially

and I promised
to return in the evening.

On the nineteenth of June
we reached the village of La
Croix, of which the greater
part of the Indians were
absent being already on a visit
to Sir William Johnson. This
circumstance greatly encouraged
the completion of my voyage.
The few who were not the
first to depart were larger. The
wind being from the north we were ob-
liged to anchor at Point aux
Indes. While the Indians
were absent I employed myself
in making a fire. As I was
going to wood, an unusual
noise attracted my attention for a
moment, but as it presently
ceased, and as I saw nothing
of which I could suppose it
was the cause, I continued my
work. On advancing far-
ther I was alarmed by a repeti-
tion of the noise, and imagined that it came
from above my head: but after
looking that way in vain, I cast
my eyes on the ground, and
there I discovered a rattlesnake.
It was not more than two feet from
my feet. The reptile was
coiled, and its head raised con-
siderably above its body. Had
I advanced another step before
my discovery, I must have
fallen upon it.

No sooner saw the snake
I hastened to the canoe,
to procure my gun;
the Indians, observing what
I was doing, inquired the oc-
casion being informed,
desist. At the

same time, they followed me to
the spot, with their pipes and
tobacco pouches in their hands.
On returning, I found the snake
still coiled. The Indians on
their part surrounded it, all ad-
dressing it by turns, and calling
it their grandfather, but yet
keeping at some distance. Dur-
ing this part of the ceremony
they filled their pipes; and now
each blew the smoke towards
the snake, who, as it appeared
to me, really received it with
pleasure. In a word, after re-
maining coiled and receiving
incense for the space of half
an hour, it stretched itself along
the ground in visible good hu-
mour. Its length was between
four and five feet. Having re-
mained outstretched for some
time, at last it moved slowly
away, the Indians following it,
and still addressing it by the
title of grandfather, beseeching
it to take care of their families
during their absence, and also
that it would be pleased to open
the heart of Sir William John-
son, so that he might show them
charity, and fill their canoes with
rum.

Early the next morning we
proceeded. We had a serene
sky and very little wind, and
the Indians therefore determined
on steering across the lake, to
an island which just appeared
in the horizon, saving by this
course a distance of thirty miles,
which would be lost in keeping
the shore. At nine o'clock A.M.
we had a light breeze astern, to
enjoy the benefit of which we

hoisted sail. Soon after the wind increased, and the Indians beginning to be alarmed, frequently called on the rattlesnake to come to their assistance. By degrees the waves grew high; at eleven o'clock it blew a hurricane, and we expected every moment to be swallowed up. From prayers the Indians now proceeded to sacrifices, both alike offered to the god rattlesnake, or *Manito kinibic*. One of the chiefs took a dog, and after tying its forelegs together, threw it overboard, at the same time calling on the snake to preserve us from being drowned, and desiring him to satisfy his hunger with the carcase of the dog. The snake was unpropitious, and the wind increased. Another chief sacrificed another dog, with the addition of some tobacco. In the prayer which accompanied these gifts, he besought the snake, as before, not to avenge upon the Indians the insult which he had received from myself, in the conception of a design to put him to death. He assured the snake that I was absolutely an Englishman, and of kin neither to him nor to them. At the conclusion of this speech, an Indian who sat near me observed that, if we were drowned, it would be for my fault alone, and that I ought myself to be sacrificed, to appease the angry Manito; nor was I without apprehensions that in case of extremity this would be my fate; but happily for me, the storm at length

abated, and we reached the island safely.

'The next day was calm, and we arrived at the entrance of the navigation which leads to Lake Aux Claies (Lake Suncoe). We presently passed two short carrying-places, at each of which were several lodges of Indians, containing only women and children, the men being gone to the council at Niagara. From this, as from a former instance, my companions derived fresh courage. On the 18th of June we crossed Lake Aux Claies, which appeared to be upwards of twenty miles in length. At its further end we came to the carrying-place of Toronto. Here the Indians obliged me to carry a burden of more than a hundred pounds weight. The day was very hot, and the woods and marshes abounded with mosquitoes; but the Indians walked at a quick pace, and I could by no means see myself left behind. The whole country was a thick forest, through which our only road was a footpath, or such as in America is exclusively termed an *Indian path*. Next morning, at ten o'clock, we reached the shore of Lake Ontario. Here we were employed two days in making canoes out of the bark of the elm tree, in which we were to transport ourselves to Niagara. For this purpose, the Indians first cut down a tree, then stripped off the bark in one entire sheet of about eighteen feet in length, the incision being lengthwise. The canoe was now

THEY WERE IN THE MIDDLE OF THE RIVER, AND AFTER SINGING THE SONG WHICH IS IN USE AMONG THEM ON GOING INTO DANGER, THEY EMBARKED AND MADE FOR POINT MISSISAKI, WHICH IS ON THE NORTH SIDE OF THE MOUTH OF THE RIVER OR STRAIT OF NIAGARA, AS THE FORT IS ON THE SOUTH. A FEW MINUTES AFTER I CROSSED OVER TO THE FORT; AND HERE I WAS RECEIVED BY SIR WILLIAM JOHNSON, IN A MANNER FOR WHICH I HAVE EVER BEEN GRATEFULLY ATTACHED TO HIS PERSON AND MEMORY.

Thus was completed my escape from the sufferings and dangers which the capture of Fort Michilimackinac brought upon me; but the property which I had carried into the upper country was left behind.

CHAPTER II.

CAPTURE OF QUENTIN STOCKWELL BY INDIANS, AND PERILOUS JOURNEY MADE IN THEIR COMPANY.

IN THE YEAR 1777, SEPTEMBER THE TENTH AT DEERFIELD MASS., BETWEEN SUNSET AND DARK, THE INDIANS CAME UPON US. I AND MY COMPANIES BEING TOGETHER, WE SAW THEM AT THE OUTCRY THE INDIANS MADE, SHOUTING AND SINGING AT SOME OTHERS OF THE ENGLISH THAT WERE HARD BY. WE TOOK A SWAMP THAT WAS AT HAND FOR REFUGE. THE ENEMY SPYING US SO NEAR THEM, RAN AFTER US AND SHOT MANY GUNS AT US; BUT WE WERE DISCHARGED UPON THEM BEING WITHIN RANGE OF US, BESIDES MANY

others before that. Being in this swamp, which was miry, I slumped in and fell down, whereupon one of the enemy stepped to me, with his hatchet lifted up to knock me on the head, supposing that I had been wounded, and so unfit for any other travel. I, as it happened, had a pistol by me, which, though uncharged, I presented at the Indian, who presently stepped back, and told me if I would yield I should have no hurt. He said, which was not true, that they had destroyed all

Hatfield, and that the woods were full of Indians ; whereupon I yielded myself, and falling into their hands, was by three of them led away to the place where I first began to make my flight. Here two other Indians came running to us, and the one lifting up the butt end of his gun to knock me on the head, the other with his hand put by the blow, and said I was his friend.

‘I was now by my own house, which the Indians burned the last year, and I was about to build up again ; and there I had some hopes to escape from them. There was a horse just by, which they bid me take. I did so, but made no attempt to escape thereby, because the enemy was near, and the beast was slow and dull. Then was I in hopes they would send me to take my own horses, which they did ; but they were so frightened that I could not come near to them, and so fell still into the enemy’s hands. They now took and bound me, and led me away, and soon was I brought into the company of other captives, who were that day brought away from Hatfield, who were about a mile off : and here methought was matter of joy and sorrow both ; joy to see company, and sorrow for our condition. Then were we pinioned and led away in the night over the mountains, in dark and hideous ways, about four miles farther, before we took up our place of rest, which was in a dismal place of wood,

on the east side of the mountain. We were kept bound all that night. The Indians kept awake, and we had little mind to sleep in this night’s travel. The Indians dispersed, and as they went made strange noises, as of wolves and owls, and other wild beasts, to the end that they might not lose one another, and if followed, might not be discovered by the English.

‘About the break of day we marched again, and got over that great river at Pecomptuck (Deerfield) river mouth, and there rested about two hours. Here the Indians marked out upon the trees the number of their captives and slain, as is their manner. Now was I again in great danger, a quarrel having arisen about me, whose captive I was ; for three took me. I thought I must be killed to end the controversy ; so, when they put it to me, whose I was, I said three Indians took me ; so they agreed to have all a share in me. I had now three masters, and he was my chief master who laid hands on me first ; and thus was I fallen into the hands of the worst of all the company, as Asphelon the Indian chief told me, which chief was all along very kind to me, and a great comfort to the English. In this place they gave us some victuals, which they had brought from the English. This morning also they sent ten men forth to the town of Deerfield, to bring away what they could find. Some provi-

thinking I should therefore be killed by the Indians, and what death I should die, my pain was suddenly gone, and I was much encouraged again. We had about eleven horses in our company, which the Indians used to convey burdens, and to carry women. It was after noon when we now crossed the river. We travelled upwards till night, and then took up our lodgings in a dismal place, and were staked down, and spread out on our backs ; and so we lay all night, yea, so we lay many nights. They told me their law was that we should lie so nine nights, and by that time it was thought we should be out of our knowledge. The manner of staking down was this : our arms and legs, stretched out, were staked fast down, and a cord about our necks, so that we could stir no

que
pos
mil
her
of :
gre
He
and
call
thre
do
afte
to b
ano
wife
not
yet
sign
und
The
for
The
the
and
lish

next day, when we were to be burned, our masters and some others spoke to us, and the evil was prevented in this place.

'Hereabouts we lay three weeks together. Here I had a shirt brought me to make, and one Indian said it should be made this way, a second another way, and a third this way. I told them I would make it that way my chief master said ; whereupon one Indian struck me on the face with his fist. I suddenly rose up in anger, ready to strike again : upon this happened a great hubbub, and the Indians and English came about me. I was fain to humble myself to my master ; so that matter was put up. Before I came to this place, my three masters were gone a - hunting ; I was left with another Indian, all the company being upon a march. I was left with this Indian, who fell sick, so that I was fain to carry his gun and hatchet, and had opportunity, and had thought to have despatched him and run away ; but did not, because the English captives had promised the contrary to one another ; because, if one should run away, that would provoke the Indians, and endanger the rest that could not escape.

'Whilst we were here, Benjamin Stebbins, going with some Indians to Wachuset Hills, made his escape from them, and when the news of his escape came, we were all presently called in and bound. One of the Indians,

a chief among them, and always our great friend, met me coming in, and told me Stebbins was run away, and the Indian spoke of burning us ; some, of only burning and biting off our fingers, by and by. He said there would be a council, and all would speak their minds, and he would speak last, and would say, that the Indian who let Stebbins run away was only in fault, and so no hurt should be done to us, and added, "Fear not!" And so it proved accordingly.

'Whilst we lingered hereabout, provision grew scarce ; one bear's foot must serve five of us a whole day. We began to eat horse-flesh, and ate up seven in all : three were left alive and not killed. After we had been here, some of the Indians had been down, and fallen upon Hadley, and were taken by the English, agreed with, and let go again. They were to meet the English upon such a plain, there to make further terms. Asphelon was much for it, but the Wachuset *sachems*, when they came, were much against it, and were for this : that we should meet the English indeed, but there fall upon them and take them. Asphelon spoke to us not to say a word further that matter would come of. When the Indians came there came women and children, who reported

With this good master I continued till he died, and, as a reward for my faithful service, he left me £200 currency, which was then about £120 sterling, his best horse, saddle, and all his wearing apparel.

‘Being now seventeen years old, and my own master, having money in my pocket, and all other necessities, I employed myself in jobbing for near seven years, when I resolved to settle, and married the daughter of a substantial planter. My father-in-law made me a deed of gift of a tract of land that lay, unhappily for me, as it has since proved, on the frontiers of the province of Pennsylvania, near the Forks of Delaware, containing about two hundred acres, thirty of which were well cleared and fit for immediate use, on which were a good house and barn. The place pleasing me well, I settled on it. My money I expended in buying stock, household furniture, and implements for out-of-door work; and being happy in a good wife, my felicity was complete. But in 1754, the Indians, who had for a long time before ravaged and destroyed other parts of America unmolested, began now to be very troublesome on the frontiers of our province, where they generally appeared in small skulking parties, committing great devastations.

‘Terrible, and shocking to human nature, were the barbarities daily committed by

these savages! Scarce did a day pass but some unhappy family or other fell victims to savage cruelty. Terrible indeed it proved to me as well as to many others. I, who was now happy in an easy state of life, blessed with an affectionate and tender wife, became on a sudden one of the most unhappy of mankind. Scarce can I sustain the shock which for ever recurs on recollecting the fatal 2d of October 1754. My wife that day went from home to visit some of her relations. As I stayed up later than usual, expecting her return, none being in the house besides myself, how great was my surprise and terror, when, about eleven o’clock at night, I heard the dismal war-whoop of the savages, and found that my house was beset by them. I flew to my chamber window, and perceived them to be twelve in number. Having my gun loaded, I threatened them with death if they did not retire. But how vain and fruitless are the efforts of one man against the united force of so many bloodthirsty monsters. One of them, who could speak English, threatened me in return, that “if I did not come out, they would burn me alive,” adding, however, that “if I would come out and surrender myself prisoner, they would not kill me.” In such deplorable circumstances, I chose to rely on their promises rather than meet death by rejecting them, and accordingly went out of the house with

my gun in my hand, not knowing that I had it. Immediately on my approach they rushed on me like tigers, and instantly disarmed me. Having me thus in their power, they bound me to a tree, went into the house, plundered it of everything they could carry off, and then set fire to it and consumed what was left before my eyes. Not satisfied with this, they set fire to my barn, stable, and outhouses, wherein were about two hundred bushels of wheat, six cows, four horses, and five sheep, all of which were consumed to ashes.

‘Having thus finished the execrable business about which they came, one of the monsters came to me with a tomahawk, and threatened me with the worst of deaths if I would not go with them. This I agreed to, and then they untied me, gave me a load to carry, under which I travelled all that night, full of the most terrible apprehensions lest my unhappy wife should likewise have fallen into their cruel power. At daybreak, my infernal masters ordered me to lay down my load; then, tying my hands again round a tree, —forcing the blood out at my fingers’ ends, —they kindled a fire near the tree to which I was bound; the most dreadful agonies seized me, for I concluded I was to be made a sacrifice to their barbarity. The fire being made, they for some time danced round me after their manner, *whooping, hallooing, and shrieking in a frightful manner.* Being

satisfied with this sort of mirth, they proceeded in another manner; taking the burning coals, and sticks flaming with fire at the ends, holding them to my face, head, hands, and feet, and at the same time threatening to burn me entirely if I cried out. Thus, tortured as I was almost to death, I suffered their brutalities, without being able to vent my anguish otherwise than by shedding silent tears; and these being observed, they took fresh coals and applied them near my eyes, telling me my face was wet, and that they would dry it for me, which indeed they cruelly did. How I underwent these tortures has been matter of wonder to me, but God enabled me to wait with more than common patience for the deliverance I daily prayed.

‘At length they sat down round the fire, and roasted the meat of which they had robbed my dwelling. When they had supped, they offered some to me. Though it may easily be imagined I had but little appetite to eat, after the tortures and miseries I had suffered, yet was I forced to seem pleased with what they offered me, lest by refusing it they should resume their hellish practices. What I could not eat I contrived to hide, they having unbound me till they imagined I had eaten all; but then they bound me as before, in which deplorable condition I was obliged to continue the whole day. When the sun was set, they put out

the fire, and covered the ashes with leaves, as is their custom, that the white people might not discover any traces of their having been there.

‘Going from thence along the Susquehannah for the space of six miles, loaded as I was before, we arrived at a spot near the Apalachian mountains, or Blue Hills, where they hid their plunder under logs of wood. From thence they proceeded to a neighbouring house, occupied by one Jacob Snider and his unhappy family, consisting of his wife, five children, and a young man, his servant. They soon got admittance into the unfortunate man’s house, where they immediately, without the least remorse, scalped both parents and children ; nor could the tears, the shrieks, or cries of poor innocent children prevent their horrible massacre. Having thus scalped them, and plundered the house of everything that was moveable, they set fire to it, and left the distressed victims amidst the flames.

‘Thinking the young man belonging to this unhappy family would be of service to them in carrying part of their plunder, they spared his life, and loaded him and myself with what they had here got, and again marched to the Blue Hills, where they stowed their goods as before. My fellow-sufferer could not support the cruel treatment which we were obliged to suffer, and complaining bitterly to me

of his being unable to proceed any farther, I endeavoured to animate him, but all in vain, for he still continued his moans and tears ; which one of the savages perceiving as we travelled along, came up to us, and with his tomahawk gave him a blow on the head, which felled the unhappy youth to the ground, whom they immediately scalped and left. The suddenness of this murder shocked me to that degree, that I was in a manner motionless, expecting that my fate would soon be the same. However, recovering my distracted thoughts, I dissembled my anguish as well as I could from the barbarians ; but still, such was my terror, that for some time I scarce knew the days of the week or what I did.

‘They still kept on their course near the mountains, where they lay skulking for four or five days, rejoicing at the plunder they had got. When provisions became scarce, they made their way toward Susquehannah, and passing another house, inhabited by an old man, whose name was John Adams, with his wife and four small children, and meeting with no resistance, they immediately scalped the mother and her children before the old man’s eyes. Inhuman and horrid as this was, it did not satisfy them ; for when they had murdered the poor woman and her children, they proceeded to mutilate the bodies in a most brutal manner. The unhappy Adams,

not being able to avoid the sight, entreated them to put an end to his miserable being ; but they were as deaf to the tears and entreaties of this venerable sufferer, as they had been to those of the others, and proceeded to burn and destroy the house, barn, corn, hay, and cattle, and everything the poor man a few hours before was master of. Having saved what they thought proper from the flames, they gave the old man, feeble, weak, and in the miserable condition he then was, as well as myself, burdens to carry, and loading themselves likewise with bread and meat, pursued their journey toward the Great Swamp. Here they lay for eight or nine days, diverting themselves at times in barbarous cruelties on the old man : sometimes they would strip him naked, and paint him all over with various sorts of colours ; at other times they would pluck the white hairs from his head, and tauntingly tell him he was a fool for living so long, and that they would show him kindness in putting him out of the world. In vain were all his tears, for daily did they tire themselves with the various means they tried to torment him.

‘ One night, after he had as usual been tormented, while he and I were condoling each other at the miseries we daily suffered, twenty-five other Indians arrived, bringing with them twenty scalps and three prisoners, who

had unhappily fallen into their hands in Conogochegue, a small town near the river Susquehannah, chiefly inhabited by the Irish. These prisoners gave us some shocking accounts of the murders and devastations committed in their parts.

‘ The three prisoners that were brought with these additional forces, constantly repining at their lot, and almost dead with their excessive hard treatment, contrived at last to make their escape ; but being far from their own settlements, and not knowing the country, were soon after met by some others of the tribes or nations at war with us, and brought back. The poor creatures, almost famished for want of sustenance, having had none during the time of their escape, were no sooner in the power of the barbarians than they were put to death in a most cruel manner. And after their death, it was my task to dig their graves, which, feeble and terrified as I was, the dread of suffering the same fate enabled me to do.

‘ A great snow now falling, the barbarians were fearful lest the white people should, by their tracks, find out their skulking retreats, which obliged them to make the best of their way to their winter quarters, about two hundred miles farther from any plantations or inhabitants. After a long and painful journey, being almost starved, I arrived with this dreadful band at Alamingo. There I found a

number of wigwams full of their women and children. Dancing, singing, and shouting were their usual amusements. And in all their festivals and dances they relate what successes they have had and what damages they have sustained in their expeditions in which I now unfortunately became a part of their number. The severity of the cold, however, they stripped me of all clothes for their own use, and gave me such as they usually wore themselves, being a pair of moccasins and a pair of moccasins of skins with a yard of rawhide cord to put round me instead of breeches.

At length I remained near the wigwam all the snow was on the ground. Whatever attempts I made of making a path to carry them into the country was impracticable, being so far from any plantations or white people, and the severe weather rendering my limbs in a manner quite stiff and motionless. However, I contrived to defend myself against the inclemency of the weather as well as I could by making myself a little wigwam with the bark of the trees covering it with earth, which made it resemble a cave; and to prevent the ill effects of the cold, I kept a good fire always near the door. My liberty of going about was, indeed, than I could have expected, but they well knew the possibility of my escaping being me outwardly alive, they would

sometimes give me a little meat; but my chief food was Indian corn. At length the time came when they were preparing themselves for another expedition against the planters and white people; but before they set out, they were joined by many other Indians.

'As soon as the snow was quite gone, they set forth on their journey toward the back parts of the province of Pennsylvania, all leaving their wives and children behind in their wigwams. They were now a formidable body, amounting to near one hundred and fifty. My business was to carry what they thought proper to load me with, but they never entrusted me with a gun. We marched on several days without anything particular occurring, almost famished for want of provisions; for my part, I had nothing but a few stalks of Indian corn, which I was glad to eat dry. Nor did the Indians themselves fare much better; for as we drew near the plantations, they were afraid to kill any game, lest the noise of their guns should alarm the inhabitants.

'When we again arrived at the Blue Hills, about thirty miles from the Irish settlements before mentioned, we encamped for three days, though God knows we had neither tents nor anything else to defend us from the inclemency of the weather, having nothing to lie on by night but the grass, their usual method of lodging, pitching, or encamp-

ing by night being in parcels of ten or twelve men to a fire, where they lie upon the grass or brush wrapped up in a blanket, with their feet to the fire.

‘During our stay here, a sort of council of war was held, when it was agreed to divide themselves into companies of about twenty men each, after which every chief marched with his party where he thought proper. I still belonged to my old masters, but was left behind on the mountains with ten Indians, to stay till the rest should return, not thinking it proper to carry me nearer Conogocheague or the other plantations.

‘Here I began to meditate an escape; and though I knew the country round extremely well, yet I was very cautious of giving the least suspicion of any such intention. However, the third day after the grand body left, my companions thought proper to traverse the mountains in search of game for their sustenance, leaving me behind in such a manner that I could not escape. At night, when they returned, having unbound me, we all sat down together to supper on what they had killed, and soon after, being greatly fatigued with their day’s excursion, they composed themselves to rest as usual. I now tried various ways to discover whether it was a scheme to prove my intentions or not; but after making a noise and walking about, sometimes *touching them with my feet*, I *found there was no fallacy*.

‘Then I resolved, if possible, to get one of their guns, and if discovered, to die in my defence rather than be taken. For that purpose, I made various efforts to get one from under their heads, where they always secured them, but in vain. Disappointed in this, I began to despair of carrying my design into execution; yet, after a little recollection, and trusting myself to the divine protection, I set forward naked and defenceless as I was. Such was my terror, however, that in going from them I halted and paused every four or five yards, looking fearfully towards the spot where I had left them, lest they should awake and miss me; but when I was two hundred yards from them, I mended my pace, and made as much haste as I possibly could to the foot of the mountains; when, on a sudden, I was struck with the greatest terror at hearing the wood cry, as it is called, which the savages I had left were making upon missing their charge. The more my terror increased the faster I rushed on, and scarce knowing where I trod, drove through the woods with the utmost precipitation, sometimes falling and bruising myself, cutting my feet and legs against the stones in a miserable manner. But faint and maimed as I was, I continued my flight till daybreak, when, without having anything to sustain nature but a little corn left, I crept into a hollow tree, where I lay very snug, and returned

my prayers and thanks to the Divine Being, who had thus far favoured my escape. But my repose was in a few hours destroyed at hearing the voices of the savages near the place where I was hid, threatening and talking how they would use me if they got me again. However, they at last left the spot where I heard them, and I remained in my apartment all that day without further molestation.

‘At night I ventured forward again, frightened, thinking each twig that touched me a savage. The third day I concealed myself in like manner as before, and at night travelled, keeping off the main road as much as possible, which lengthened my journey many miles. But how shall I describe the terror I felt on the fourth night, when, by the rustling I made among the leaves, a party of Indians that lay around a small fire, which I did not perceive, started from the ground, and seizing their arms, ran from the fire among the woods? Whether to move forward or rest where I was I knew not, when, to my great surprise and joy, I was relieved by a parcel of swine that made toward the place where I guessed the savages to be; who, on seeing them, imagined they had caused the alarm, very merrily returned to the fire, and lay down again to sleep. Bruised, crippled, and terrified as I was, I pursued my journey till break of day, when, thinking myself safe, I lay down under a great

log, and slept till about noon. Before evening, I reached the summit of a great hill; and looking out if I could spy any habitations of white people, to my inexpressible joy I saw some, which I guessed to be about ten miles distant.

‘In the morning I continued my journey toward the nearest cleared lands I had seen the day before, and about four o’clock in the afternoon arrived at the house of John Bell, an old acquaintance, where, knocking at the door, his wife, who opened it, seeing me in such a frightful condition, flew from me screaming into the house. This alarmed the whole family, who immediately fled to their arms, and I was soon accosted by the master with his gun in his hand. But on making myself known, for he before took me for an Indian, he immediately caressed me, as did all his family, with extraordinary friendship, the report of my being murdered by the savages having reached them some months before.

‘For two days and nights they very affectionately supplied me with all necessaries, and carefully attended me till my spirits and limbs were pretty well recovered, and I thought myself able to ride, when I borrowed of these good people, whose kindness merits my most grateful returns, a horse and some clothes, and set forward for my father-in-law’s house in Chester county, about one hundred and forty miles from thence, where

I arrived on the 4th of January 1755,—but scarce one of the family could credit their eyes, believing, with the people I had lately left, that I had fallen a prey to the Indians,—where I was received and embraced by the whole family with great af-

fection. Upon inquiring for my wife, I found she had been dead two months. This fatal news greatly lessened the joy I otherwise should have felt at my deliverance from the dreadful state and company I had been in.'

CHAPTER V.

STORY OF MY UNCLE'S ADVENTURES AMONG THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.

'UNCLE CHARLES was a fine, tall, handsome-looking youth, about nineteen, when he decided upon going into the army; and a commission having been procured for him in the gallant 42d, he left home to join the regiment, which, in the course of a few months, embarked at a very short notice for the American provinces, betwixt which and Great Britain a regular war had commenced. Mrs. Grant, whose favourite son Charles was, parted from him with great regret; but having fortified his mind by good principles and the best example, she committed him to the care of Providence. Charles had lost his father when he was quite a child, so that he was left entirely to the instruction of his mother; and it was fortunate that she had such a soil wherein to sow the good seed that produced the fruits that will be seen in his adventurous life.

'The regiment arrived safe at New York; and as soon as they had recovered from the voyage,

it was ordered to march into the interior to join their brethren in arms, as the officer commanding the troops in that part of the country understood that the Americans had prevailed upon a tribe of Indians from Lake Michigan to aid them against the British. The chief of this tribe had become well known to the Americans, as he and his followers were in the habit of visiting the frontiers yearly, to exchange their furs, fish, and other products of their country for fire-arms, powder, and shot, which were most useful to them; so that the Americans found it no difficult matter to engage Michigan John and his tribe as an ally in the war; and John, who was a man of no common mind, not only picked up sufficient of the English language to make himself intelligible, but he had a powerful mind, and ruled over his tribe with despotic sway. The Indians, who were well acquainted with every foot of the country, were found by the Ame-

ricans to be invaluable ; and an ambuscade was planned to entrap the 42d ere it could reach its destination. They were only too successful ; for, in marching through a wood, they were attacked suddenly, and taken at a disadvantage. From behind the trees, the deadly rifle laid low many a brave fellow. Fearing to be cut off to a man, a retreat was sounded, with the hope of returning to more open ground ; and the dreaded war-whoop of the savages could hardly fail to strike terror into the minds of soldiers who had never encountered such a ferocious-looking enemy. The Americans, being aware that the loss of their officers would render the men a more easy conquest, took aim accordingly ; and Charles, who nobly stood his ground, was singled out by the Indian chief, and he fell severely wounded ; and the Indians, rushing into the *mêlée*, began to strip the dead and scalp the dying. Michigan John, who had perceived from his dress that Charles was an officer, advanced to where he lay, and raising his head by the long hair, he lifted the deadly tomahawk, and whirling it round, he was on the point of scalping his victim, when my uncle moved one of his arms, as if to put his hand upon the wound ; and Indian John, finding he still breathed, spared his life. Summoning four of his tribe, they hastily cut down some branches from the trees, and making a sort of litter, my uncle

having had a bandage tied over his wound, he was placed in the litter, and by nightfall the party were on their way to Lake Michigan, laden with the booty which the Americans and they had divided. Some days elapsed ere they reached their home ; the poor captive was so weak and exhausted by the loss of blood, that he could hardly make the smallest exertion, and it required all the care of the Indian chief to keep him alive.

‘The warriors were received with shouts of triumph by their wives and companions, who had remained to guard their encampment, mingled with cries and lamentations for those who had fallen in battle. My uncle, upon the arrival of the Indians in the Michigan territory, was taken to the wigwam of their chief, and herbs were gathered and applied to his wound, so that he gradually recovered ; and in the midst of such kind-hearted savages he felt exceedingly grateful, but above all to the chief. But one may imagine his horror and dismay when John informed him, that his life was only preserved that he might be offered up as a sacrifice to the *manes* of those who had been killed on the day of the battle. To have met with death in the field would have been little compared with the fate that awaited him, and his entreaties that the chief would at once put an end to his life were not listened to. John replied it was the custom of the tribe, and that he ought not to

have invaded the land of the red men ; and my uncle, perceiving that there existed not the smallest chance of escape for him, endeavoured to prepare his mind for the trial that awaited him ; and he employed many hours of the day, and in the silent watches of the night, in praying for fortitude and strength to die as a Christian, from the only source at which it can be found. With a composure of manner and appearance, which even to himself appeared somewhat unnatural, my uncle saw the preparations that were taking place, and was relieved in a great measure by learning that he was not to be put to torture, but that he was to be shot,—a favour that he did not expect. His manly bearing and amiable manners had softened the heart in some degree of old John, and he would gaze with a steadfast and thoughtful look, when in a corner of the wigwam he saw the young white-skin speaking to the Great Spirit, and heard the earnest petitions of the young soldier for his mother, and for forgiveness of his own sins ; and old John felt how proud he would have been of such a son to succeed him as chief of the Michigans.

‘At length, my uncle having recovered, a day was fixed, and the whole tribe were assembled in their war-dresses, the women and children shouting and singing the death-song, as John, *accompanied by his captive, appeared ; and the chief making*

a short palaver to his followers, they all followed their leader to the wood that adjoined their encampment ; and a tree being selected for the purpose, my uncle was placed against it, John having granted him the favour that he should not be bound nor his eyes covered, saying he was not afraid to look death in the face, and hoping that the Indian would take so sure an aim as to be fatal at the moment. John loaded his rifle ; and when the signal was given, he presented it at his victim. The trigger was pulled, but the powder flashed in the pan. With an impatient air, John examined his rifle, put in fresh powder, and again presented. Again was the attempt unsuccessful. A third time would surely finish the affair, for the flint was sharpened, and fresh priming put in the pan. The rifle again missed fire. Anxiety, doubt, and consternation sat upon every face, as the chief looked round upon his tribe. As if struck by the thought of the moment, he raised the gun in his hand, and fired in the air, when it exploded with a tremendous noise, as the Indians gave out cries and shouts of surprise. After a pause of a few minutes, and silence being restored, the chief addressed them : “My children, it’s of no use to kill this white-skin ; he is protected by the Great Spirit. When did you see the gun of Michigan John miss fire ? The Great Spirit says,

No. Listen, my children :—I have no son, and this young white-skin shall become as one to your father. When I am old, and go to the land of my fathers, he shall be your chief. We shall teach him to hunt and to fish, and he will be as the son of the red man." This address was received with joyful acclamations, and my uncle, like one in a dream, was carried back to the wigwam upon the shoulders of Indians, who, leaving him to the care of his adopted father, spent the day in mirth and dancing. My uncle, whose life was thus wonderfully spared, never for a moment doubted that it was solely by the interposition of Providence, and gave thanks where it was due. A day was soon after appointed to adopt my uncle as the chief who was to rule the tribe after his father's death, and he underwent the ceremonies observed amongst the savage tribes of North America. His body was handsomely tattooed, his ears pierced, and also his nose, to all of which were appended ornaments ; and his skin being stained and attired in the full war-dress of an Indian chief, with the rifle, the deadly tomahawk, and scalping-knife, he was, I am told, a very handsome-looking person. The ceremony concluded by his having the name of John bestowed upon him.

'Only too grateful to have his life spared, young John soon fell into all the customs of his

new friends. He accompanied his father in the chase, and became an expert huntsman ; and this roving and exciting occupation became delightful to him. If he had any ambition, here it might be gratified : he would, at some future period, preside over a numerous body of Indians, who felt some degree of awe for one who was guarded by the Great Spirit. Youth soon reconciles itself to a situation that is not uncomfortable upon the whole ; and young John, who was particularly attached to the chief, seemed to forget that he was not a red-skin from the first. But his promotion, although approved of by the greater number of the tribe, had raised some envy and jealousy amongst those who were related to John, and they only waited an opportunity to do him an injury. And so it chanced. When some of the tribe, accompanied by my uncle, were out hunting, a huge panther was tracked and fired at ; and as the Indians pursued the animal closely, he took refuge in a cave, and every attempt to dislodge him was found to be vain. It was now the time for the discontented to endeavour to get rid of their rival, and with furious threats they insisted that he should enter the cave and drive out the panther. This attempt he looked upon as certain death, as the cave was so low that he must have gone in on his hands and knees. But expostulation and remarks

upon the injustice of their conduct were only answered by a blow of the tomahawk ; and seeing there was no alternative, he crept in upon his hands, holding his scalping-knife between his teeth. The cave was so dark, that some minutes elapsed before he could distinguish the animal, which had retreated into a corner of the den in the agonies of death, having been mortally wounded by one of the Indians. My uncle having advanced cautiously, drew his knife across the throat of the panther, and seizing him by the tail, dragged him out of the den, and with an air of indignation threw him down before the astonished savages, who, humbled and crestfallen, were convinced that he bore a charmed life, and that it was fruitless to endeavour to injure him.

‘Three years were passed away by my uncle amongst the Indians ; and having accumulated a considerable number of skins and other products of their country, John proposed that a party of the tribe should proceed to the United States, to exchange them for powder and shot, which they now stood much in need of. Accordingly, he with his adopted son, and seven of their followers, proceeded to Charleston. Here it was that my uncle recognised one of the officers of the 42d. Home and all its sweet associations rushed into his heart, and he went up directly and ad-

dressed his old companion in arms, who, if possible, was more astonished at hearing a young Indian speak in his own language. It was some time before he could be brought to acknowledge his identity. His adopted father was all this while beside them, his anxious piercing looks full of anxiety, which was increased when he found that my uncle intended accompanying the officer to his quarters, where he followed them. A long and interesting conversation took place, and his friend represented in the strongest terms the folly of spending his life amidst a tribe of savages, and recalled to my uncle the duty he owed to his parent, his king, and his country ; in return, my uncle pleaded all he owed his adopted father. His friend did not press the subject too keenly at the moment ; but having written to the commanding officer the history of Charles’s captivity, an order was despatched to Charles, claiming him as a British officer, and commanding him to join his regiment with as little delay as possible. There was no disputing this order, as he would be considered a deserter ; and he had the painful duty of explaining this to Michigan John, who was overwhelmed with grief. He endeavoured by every means in his power to prevail on my uncle to go home with him. “Return, return, my son John, with your old father. Why should you seek again to become a white-

skin? Oh, my own John, break not the heart of your Indian father!" Everything was done to comfort and console him, but with little success, until the old chief made up his mind that the Good Spirit called his son away to his own people; and after choosing the best of the furs, and everything that he thought would be valued, he took a last parting farewell, and turned his face towards Lake Michigan.

'My uncle proceeded to New York, where his extraordinary adventures had travelled before him, and every one was anxious to see the Indian chief. This desire was most strongly felt by the ladies; and a fair American girl, who heard him relate his romantic tale with modesty and ingenuousness, showed that she loved him for the dangers he had passed; and he was too gallant a soldier not to be flattered by the interest she expressed. And while he gained a step in the 42d, he lost his heart in New York; and fearing to be called a heartless man, he had nothing for it but to agree to an exchange or barter. The regiment was ordered to England, and Charles along with

it. If his adventures had made a sensation in New York, he was still a greater lion in London; and one of His Majesty's ministers wrote my uncle that it would be agreeable that he should spend an evening at his house, and that a certain member of the royal family would honour the company with his presence, having a desire to see him, in the Indian costume, dance the celebrated war-dance. All these requests my uncle did not consider himself at liberty to refuse, and acquitted himself so well, that his dance and tremendous war-whoop electrified the whole assembly.

'After remaining a short time in London, my uncle returned home to his native glen, to visit his relations; and recollecting after a reasonable time that his heart was on the other side of the Atlantic, and finding himself uncomfortable without it, he set out again for New York, to unite himself to his lady-love, leaving as parting gifts his Indian dress, tomahawk, and scalping-knife, which are hung up in the hall as memorials of the true tale of Michigan John, *alias* Charles Grant of Glen.'

CHAPTER VI.

THE STORY OF JOHN GLOVER, AND HOW HE ESCAPED FROM
A TERRIBLE DEATH.

'I WAS taken from New River, in Virginia, by the Miamees, a nation of the Indians by us called the Picts, amongst whom I lived

six years. Afterwards, being sold to a Delaware, and by him put into the hands of a trader, I was carried among the Shawanees, with whom I continued six years; so that my whole time among these nations was twelve years—that is, from the eighth to the twentieth year of my age. At the treaty of Fort Pitt, in the fall preceding what is called Dunmore's war,—which, if I am right, was in the year 1773,—I came in with the Shawanees nation to the treaty; and meeting with some of my relations at that place, was by them solicited to relinquish the life of a savage, which I did with some reluctance, this manner of life having become natural to me, inasmuch as I had scarcely known any other. I enlisted as a soldier in the continental army at the commencement of the American War of Independence, and served fifteen months. Having been properly discharged, I have since married, have a family, and am in communion with the Church.

‘Having been a prisoner among the Indians many years, and so being well acquainted with the country west of the Ohio, I was employed as a guide in the expedition under Colonel William Crawford against the Indian towns on or near the river Sandusky, in the year 1782. On Tuesday, the 4th of June, we fought the enemy near Sandusky, and lay that night in our camp. *The next day we fired on each other at the distance of three*

hundred yards, doing little or no execution.

‘In the evening of that day, it was proposed by Colonel Crawford, as I have been since informed, to draw off with order; but at the moment of our retreat, the Indians—who had probably perceived that we were about to retire—firing alarm guns, our men broke and rode off in confusion, treading down those who were on foot, and leaving the wounded men, who supplicated to be taken with them. I was with some others in the rear of our troops, feeding our horses in the glade, when our men began to break. The main body of our people had passed by me a considerable distance before I was ready to set out. I overtook them before I crossed the glade, and was advanced almost in front. The company of five or six men with whom I had been immediately connected, and who were at some distance to the right of the main body, had separated from me, and endeavoured to pass a morass; for, coming up, I found their horses had stuck fast in it, and in endeavouring to pass, mine also, like theirs, became a captive. I tried a long time to disengage my horse, until I could hear the enemy just behind me and on each side, but in vain. Here then was I obliged to leave him. The morass was so unstable, that I was up to the middle in it, and it was with the greatest difficulty I got across it; but which having at length done,

I came up with the six men, who had left their horses in the same manner I had done, two of these, my companions, having lost their guns.

‘We travelled that night, making our course towards Detroit, with a view to shun the enemy, whom we conceived to have taken the paths by which the main body of our people had retreated. Just before day we got into a second deep morass, and were under the necessity of stopping until it was light to see our way through it. The whole of this day we travelled towards the Shawanees’ towns, with a view of throwing ourselves still farther out of the search of the enemy. About ten o’clock this day we sat down to eat a little, having tasted nothing from Tuesday, the day of our engagement, until this time, which was on Thursday; and now the only thing we had to eat was a scrap of pork for each. We had sat down just by a warrior’s path, which we had not suspected, when eight or nine warriors appeared. Running off hastily, we left our luggage and provisions, but were not discovered by the party; for, skulking some time in the grass and bushes, we returned to the place, and recovered our baggage. The warriors had hallooed as they passed, and were answered by others on our flank.

‘We set off at break of day. About nine o’clock the third day, we fell in with a party of

the enemy, about 135 miles from Fort Pitt. They had come upon our track, or had been on our flank, and discovered us; and then, having got before, had waylaid us, and fired before we perceived them. At the first fire, one of my companions fell before me, and another just behind me; these two had guns. There were six men in company, and four guns; two of these had been rendered useless by the wet when coming through the swamp the first night; we had tried to discharge them, but could not. When the Indians fired, I ran to a tree; but an Indian presenting himself fifteen yards before me, desired me to deliver myself up, and I should not be hurt. My gun was in good order; but, apprehending the enemy might discharge their pieces at me, I did not risk firing, which I had afterwards reason to regret, when I found what was to be my fate, and that the Indian who was before me was one of those who had just fired. Two of my companions were taken with me in the same manner, the Indians assuring us we should not be hurt. One of these Indians knew me, and was of the party by whom I was taken in the last war. He came up and spoke to me, calling me by my Indian name, Mannuch-cothee, and upbraiding me for coming to war against them.

‘The party by whom we were made prisoners had taken some horses, but left them at the

glades we had passed the day before. From these glades they had followed on our track; on our return we found the horses, and each of us rode. We were carried to a town of the Mingoes and Shawanees. I think it was on the third day we reached the town; which as we were approaching, the Indians in whose custody we were began to look sour, having been kind to us before, and given us a little meat and flour to eat, which they had found or taken from some of our men on their retreat. This town is small, and, we were told, was about two miles distant from the main town, to which they meant to carry us. The inhabitants from this town came out with clubs and tomahawks, struck, beat, and abused us greatly. One of my two companions they seized, and having stripped him naked, blacked him with coal and water: this was the sign that he must be burnt. The man seemed to surmise it, and shed tears. He asked me the meaning of his being blacked; but I was forbid by the enemy, in their own language, to tell him what was intended. In English, which they spoke very easily, having been often at Fort Pitt, they assured him he was not to be hurt. I knew of no reason for making him the first object of their cruelty, unless it was that he was the oldest.

'A warrior had been to the greater town to acquaint them

with our coming, and prepare them for the frolic; for, on our coming to it, the inhabitants came out with guns, clubs, and tomahawks. We were told we had to run to the council-house, about 300 yards. The man that was black was about twenty yards before us in running the gauntlet; they made him their principal object, men, women, and children beating him, and those who had guns firing loads of powder on him as he ran naked, putting the muzzles of the guns to his body, shouting, hallooing, and beating their drums in the meantime. The unhappy man had reached the door of the council-house, beaten and wounded in a manner shocking to the sight; for, having arrived before him, we had it in our power to view the spectacle; it was indeed the most horrid that can be conceived. They had cut him with their tomahawks, shot his body black, burnt it into holes with loads of powder blown into him; a large wadding had made a hole in his shoulder, from whence the blood gushed.

'Agreeably to the declaration of the enemy when he first set out, he had reason to think himself secure when he had reached the door of the council-house; this seemed to be his hope; for, coming up with great struggling and endeavour, he laid hold on the door, but was pulled back and drawn away by them. Finding they intended no mercy but putting him to death, he at-

tempted several times to snatch or to lay hold of some of their tomahawks; but being very weak, he could not effect it. We saw him borne off, and they were a long time beating, wounding, pursuing, and killing him. That same evening, I saw the dead body of the man close by the council-house. It was mangled cruelly, and the blood, mingled with the powder, was rendered black. The same evening, I saw him, after he was cut into pieces, and his limbs and his head, about two hundred yards on the outside of the town, put on poles. That evening also I saw the bodies of three others, in the same black and mangled condition; these, I was told, had been put to death the same day, and just before we had reached the town. Their bodies as they lay were black, bloody, and burnt with powder; two of these were Harrison and young Crawford. I knew the visage of Colonel Harrison, and I saw his clothing and that of young Crawford at the town. They brought horses to me, and asked me if I knew them: I said they were Harrison's and Crawford's. They said they were. The third of these men I did not know, but believe to have been Colonel M'Clelland, the third in command on the expedition. The next day, the bodies of these men were dragged to the outside of the town, and their carcasses *being* given to the dogs, their *limbs* and heads were stuck on *poles*. My surviving companion,

shortly after we had reached the council-house, was sent to another town, and I presume he was burnt and executed in the same manner.

'In the evening the men assembled in the council-house. This is a large building, about fifty yards in length, and about twenty-five yards wide, and about sixteen feet in height, built of split poles covered with bark. Their first object was to examine me, which they could do in their own language, inasmuch as I could speak the Miami, Shawnee, and Delaware tongues, which I had learned during my early captivity in the last war; I found I had not forgotten these tongues, especially the two former, being able to speak them as well as my native tongue. They began with interrogating me concerning the situation of our country; what were our provisions; our numbers; the state of the war between us and Britain. I informed them Cornwallis had been taken; which, next day, when Matthew Elliot, with James Girty, came, he affirmed to be a lie, and the Indians seemed to give full credit to his declaration. Hitherto I had been treated with some appearance of kindness, but now the enemy began to alter their behaviour towards me. However, I was not tied, and could have escaped; but having nothing to put on my feet, I waited some time to provide for this. In the meantime, I was invited to the war-dances,

which they usually continued till almost day ; but I could not comply with their desire, believing these things to be the service of the devil.

‘The council lasted fifteen days, from fifty to one hundred warriors being usually in council, and sometimes more. Every warrior is admitted to these councils, but only the chiefs or head warriors have the privilege of speaking. The head warriors are accounted as such from the number of scalps they have taken. There was one council at which I was not present. The warriors had sent for me as usual, but the squaw with whom I lived would not suffer me to go, but hid me under a large quantity of skins ; it may have been from an unwillingness that I should hear in council the determination respecting myself, that I should be burnt. About this time, twelve men were brought in from Kentucky, three of whom were burnt on this day, the remainder distributed to other towns, and all, as the Indians informed me, were burnt. On this day also I saw an Indian, who had just come into town, and he said that the prisoner he was bringing to be burnt, and who was a doctor, had made his escape from him. I knew this must have been Dr. Knight, who went out as surgeon to the expedition. The Indian had a wound four inches long in his head the doctor had given him ; he was cut to the skull.

‘At this time I was told that Colonel Crawford was burnt, and they greatly exulted over it. The day after the council I have mentioned, about forty warriors, accompanied by George Girty, came early in the morning round the house where I was. The squaw gave me up. I was sitting before the door of the house ; they put a rope round my neck, tied my arms behind, stripped me naked, and then blackened me in the usual manner. George Girty, as soon as I was tied, cursed me, saying that now I should get what I had deserved many years. I was led away to a town distant about five miles, to which a messenger had been despatched, to desire them to prepare to receive me. Arriving at this town, I was beaten with clubs, and the pipe ends of their tomahawks, and was kept some time tied to a tree before a house door. In the meanwhile, the inhabitants set out to another town about two miles distant, where I was to be burnt, and where I arrived about three o’clock in the afternoon.

‘Here was also a council-house, part of it covered and part of it without roof. In the part of it where no cover was, but only sides built up, there stood a post about sixteen feet in height, and in the middle of the house, around the post, there were three piles of wood built about three feet from the post. Being brought to the post, my arms were tied behind me, and

the thong or cord with which they were bound was fastened to the post ; a rope was also put about my neck, and tied to the post about four feet above my head. During the time they were tying me, the piles of wood were kindled and began to flame. Death by burning, which now appeared to be my fate, I had resolved to sustain with patience. The grace of God had made it less alarming to me ; for on my way this day, I had been greatly exercised in regard to my latter end.

‘I was tied to the post as I have already said, and the flame was now kindled. The day was clear, and not a cloud to be seen ; if there were clouds low in the horizon, the sides of the house prevented me from seeing them, but I heard no thunder, nor observed any sign of approaching rain. Just as the fire of one pile began to blaze, the wind rose ; from the time when they began to kindle the fire and to tie me to the post, until the wind began to blow, about fifteen minutes had elapsed. The wind blew a hurricane, and the rain followed in less than three minutes. The rain fell violently, and the fire, though it began to blaze considerably, was instantly extinguished. The rain lasted about a quarter of an hour. When the storm was over, the savages stood amazed, and were a long time silent. At last one said, “We will let him alone till morning, and take a whole day’s frolic in burning

him.” The sun at this time was about three hours high. The rope about my neck was now untied, and making me sit down, they began to dance around me. They continued dancing in this manner until eleven o’clock at night, in the meantime beating, kicking, and wounding me with their tomahawks and clubs.

‘At last one of the warriors asked me if I was sleepy ; I answered yes. The warrior then chose out three men to take care of me. I was taken to a block-house ; my arms were tied, round my wrist and above my elbows, so tightly, that the cord was hid in the flesh. A rope was fastened about my neck and tied to the beam of the house, but permitting me to lie down on a board. The three warriors were constantly harassing and troubling me, saying, “How will you like to eat fire to-morrow ? You kill no more Indians now.” I was in expectation of their going to sleep ; when, at length, an hour before daybreak, two of them lay down, the third smoked a pipe, talked to me, and asked the same painful questions. About half an hour after, he also lay down, and I heard him begin to snore. Instantly I went to work ; and as my hands were perfectly dead with the cord, I laid myself down upon my right arm, which was behind my back, and keeping it fast with my fingers, I stripped the cord from my left arm over my elbow and wrist. One of the warriors now got up and stirred the fire ; I was ap-

prehensive that I should be examined, and thought it was over with me, but my hopes revived when he lay down again. I then attempted to unloose the rope about my neck, and tried to gnaw it, but in vain, as it was as thick as my thumb and as hard as iron, being made of buffalo hide; I wrought with it a long time, but finally gave it up, and could see no relief. At this time I saw daybreak. I made a second attempt, almost without hope, pulling the rope by putting my fingers between my neck and it, and to my great surprise it came easily untied: it was a noose with two or three knots tied over it.

‘I stepped over the warriors as they lay, and having got out of the house, looked back to see if there was any disturbance; I then ran through the town into a corn-field. In my way, I saw a squaw with four or five children lying asleep under a tree. Going a different way into the field, I untied my arm, which was greatly swelled, and burned black. Having observed a number of horses in the glade as I ran through it, I went back to catch one, and on my way found a piece of an old rug or quilt hanging on a fence, which I took with me. Having caught the horse, the rope with which I had been tied serving for a halter, I rode off. The horse was strong and swift; and the woods being open and the country level, about ten o'clock that day I crossed Sciota River at a

place about fifty miles from the town. I had rode about twenty miles on this side Sciota by three o'clock in the afternoon, when the horse began to fail, and could no longer go on a trot. I instantly left him, and ran on foot about twenty miles farther that day, making in the whole the distance of near one hundred miles. In the evening I heard hallooing behind me, and for this reason did not halt till about ten o'clock at night, when I sat down, was extremely sick, and vomited; but when the moon rose, which might have been about two hours after, I then went on my way, and travelled till daylight.

‘During the night I had a path, but in the morning I judged it prudent to forsake the path and to take a ridge for the distance of fifteen miles, in a line at right angles to my course, putting back with a stick as I went along the weeds which I had bended, lest I should be tracked by the enemy. I lay the next night on the waters of Muskingum. The nettles had been troublesome to me after my crossing the Sciota, having nothing to defend myself but the piece of rug which I had found, and which while I rode I used under me by way of a saddle. The briars and thorns were now painful too, and prevented me from travelling in the night until the moon appeared. In the meantime, I was hindered from sleeping by the mosquitoes; even in the day I was under the

necessity of travelling with a handful of bushes to brush them from my body.

'The second night I reached Cushakim. Next day came to Newcomer's Town, where I got about seven raspberries, which were the first thing I ate from the morning in which the Indians had taken me to burn until this time, which was now about three o'clock the fourth day. I felt hunger very little, but was extremely weak. I swam Muskingum River at Old Cromer's Town, the river being about two miles wide. Having reached the bank, I sat down, and looking back, thought I had a good start of the Indians, should any pursue. That evening I

travelled about five miles, and the next day came to Stillwater, a small river, in a branch of which I got two small cray-fish to eat. Next night I lay down within five miles of Wheeling, but had not a wink during the whole time, it being rendered impossible by the mosquitoes, which it was my constant employment to brush away. Next day I came to Wheeling, and saw a man on the island in the Ohio opposite to that post, and calling to him, inquired for particular persons who had been in the expedition, and telling him I was Stover; at length, with great difficulty, he was persuaded to come over and bring me across in his canoe. Then was I safe.'

CHAPTER VII.

THE SOLDIER AND THE INDIAN—COLONEL BOONE'S ESCAPE— HARROD'S WOLF-SKIN CAP—BARTLE'S ADVENTURE

THE SOLDIER AND THE INDIAN.

IN the year 1779, when the war with America was conducted with great spirit upon that continent, a division of the English army was encamped on the banks of a river, and in a position so favoured by nature, that it was difficult for any military art to surprise it. War in America was rather a species of hunting than any regular campaign. 'If you fight with art,' said Washington to his soldiers, 'you are sure to be defeated. Acquire discipline enough for retreat and

the uniformity of combined attack, and your country will prove the best of engineers.' So true was the maxim of the American General, that the English soldiers had to contend with little else. The Americans had incorporated the Indians into their ranks, and made them useful in a species of war to which their habits of life had peculiarly fitted them. They sallied out of their impenetrable forests, and with arrows and tomahawks committed daily waste upon the British army—surprising their sentinels, cutting

off their stragglers, and even when the alarm was given and pursuit commenced, they fled with a swiftness, that the speed of cavalry could not overtake, into rocks and fastnesses, whither it was dangerous to follow them. In order to limit as far as possible this species of war, in which there was so much loss and so little honour, it was the custom with every regiment to extend its outposts to a great distance beyond the encampments, to station sentinels some miles in the woods, and to keep a constant guard round the main body.

A regiment of foot was at this time stationed upon the confines of a boundless savannah. Its particular office was to guard every avenue of approach to the main body; the sentinels whose posts penetrated into the woods were supplied from its ranks, and the service of this regiment was thus more hazardous than that of any other. Its loss was likewise great. The sentinels were perpetually surprised upon their posts by the Indians, and were borne off their stations without communicating any alarm or being heard of after. Not a trace was left of the manner in which they had been conveyed away, except that, upon one or two occasions, a few drops of blood had appeared upon the leaves which covered the ground. Many imputed this unaccountable disappearance to *treachery*, and suggested as an *unanswerable argument*, that the

men thus surprised might at least have fired their muskets and communicated the alarm to the contiguous posts. Others, who could not be brought to rank it as treachery, were content to consider it as a mystery, which time would unravel.

One morning, the sentinels having been stationed as usual over night, the guard went at sunrise to relieve a post which extended a considerable distance into the wood. The sentinel was gone! The surprise was great; but the circumstance had occurred before. They left another man, and departed, wishing him better luck. 'You need not be afraid,' said the man with warmth; 'I shall not desert.' The relief company returned to the guard-house. The sentinels were replaced every four hours, and at the appointed time the guard again marched to relieve the post. To their inexpressible astonishment, the man was gone! They searched round the spot, but no traces could be found of his disappearance. It was now necessary that the station, from a stronger motive than ever, should not remain unoccupied; they were compelled to leave another man, and returned to the guard-house. The superstition of the soldiers was awakened, and terror ran through the regiment. The colonel being apprised of the occurrence, signified his intention to accompany the guard when they relieved the sentinel they had left. At the appointed time, they all

marched together ; and again, to their unutterable wonder, they found the post vacant and the man gone !

Under these circumstances, the colonel hesitated whether he should station a whole company on the spot, or whether he should again submit the post to a single sentinel. The cause of this repeated disappearance of men, whose courage and honesty were never suspected, must be discovered ; and it seemed not likely that this discovery could be obtained by persisting in the old method. Three brave men were now lost to the regiment, and to assign the post to a fourth seemed nothing less than giving him up to destruction. The poor fellow whose turn it was to take the station, though a man in other respects of incomparable resolution, trembled from head to foot.

‘I must do my duty,’ said he to the officer: ‘I know that ; but I should like to lose my life with more credit.’ ‘I will leave no man,’ said the colonel, ‘against his will.’ A man immediately stepped from the ranks, and desired to take the post. Every mouth commended his resolution. ‘I will not be taken alive,’ said he, ‘and you shall hear of me on the least alarm. At all events, I will fire my piece if I hear the least noise. If a bird chatters or a leaf falls, you shall hear my musket. You may be alarmed when nothing is the matter ; but you must take the chance as the condition of the

discovery.’ The colonel applauded his courage, and told him he would be right to fire upon the least noise which was ambiguous. His comrades shook hands with him, and left him with a melancholy foreboding. The company marched back, and awaited the event in the guard-house.

An hour had elapsed, and every ear was upon the rack for the discharge of the musket, when, upon a sudden, the report was heard. The guard immediately marched, accompanied, as before, by the colonel and some of the most experienced officers of the regiment. As they approached the post, they saw the man advancing towards them, dragging another man on the ground by the hair of his head. When they came up with him, he appeared to be an Indian, whom he had shot. An explanation was immediately required.

‘I told your honour,’ said the man, ‘that I should fire if I heard the least noise. The resolution I had taken has saved my life. I had not been long on my post when I heard a rustling at some short distance ; I looked, and saw an American hog, such as are common in the woods, crawling along the ground, and seemingly looking for nuts under the trees and amongst the leaves. As these animals are so very common, I ceased to consider it for some minutes ; but being on the constant alarm and expectation of attack, and scarcely knowing what was to be con-

sidered a real cause of apprehension, I kept my eyes vigilantly fixed upon it, and marked its progress among the trees : still there was no need to give the alarm, and my thoughts were directed to danger from another quarter. It struck me, however, as somewhat singular to see this animal making, by a circuitous passage, for a thick coppice immediately behind my post. I therefore kept my eye more constantly fixed upon it, and as it was now within a few yards of the coppice, hesitated whether I should not fire. My comrades, thought I, will laugh at me for alarming them by shooting a pig ! I had almost resolved to let it alone, when, just as it approached the thicket, I thought I observed it give an unusual spring. I no longer hesitated ; I took my aim ; discharged my piece ; and the animal was instantly stretched before me, with a groan which I conceived to be that of a human creature. I went up to it, and judge my astonishment when I found I had killed an Indian ! He had enveloped himself with the skin of one of these wild hogs so artfully and completely, his hands and feet were so entirely concealed in it, and his gait and appearance were so exactly correspondent to that of the animal, that imperfectly as they were always seen through the trees and jungles, the disguise could not be penetrated *at a distance, and scarcely discovered upon the nearest in-*

spection. He was armed with a dagger and a tomahawk.'

Such was the substance of this man's relation. The cause of the disappearance of the other sentinels was now apparent. The Indians, sheltered in this disguise, secreted themselves in the coppice, watched the moment when they could throw it off, burst upon the sentinels without previous alarm, and, too quick to give them an opportunity to discharge their pieces, either stabbed or scalped them, and bearing their bodies away, concealed them at some distance in the leaves. The Americans gave them rewards for every scalp of an enemy which they brought.

COLONEL BOONE'S ESCAPE.

'Colonel Boone happened to spend a night with me under the same roof, more than twenty years ago. We had returned from a shooting excursion, in the course of which his extraordinary skill in the management of the rifle had been fully displayed. On retiring to the room appropriated to that remarkable individual and myself for the night, I felt anxious to know more of his exploits and adventures than I did, and accordingly took the liberty of proposing numerous questions to him. The stature and general appearance of this wanderer of the western forests approached the gigantic. His chest was broad and prominent ; his mus-

cular powers displayed themselves in every limb ; his countenance gave indication of his great courage, enterprise, and perseverance ; and when he spoke, the very motion of his lips brought the impression that whatever he uttered could not be otherwise than strictly true. I undressed, while he merely took off his hunting-shirt, and arranged a few folds of blankets on the floor, choosing rather to lie there, as he observed, than on the softest bed. When we had both disposed of ourselves, each after his own fashion, he related to me the following account of his escape on one occasion from the Indians:—

““ I was once,” said he, “on a hunting expedition on the banks of the Green River, when the lower parts of this state (Kentucky) were still in the hands of nature, and none but the sons of the soil were looked upon as its lawful proprietors. We Virginians had for some time been waging a war of intrusion upon them, and I, amongst the rest, rambled through the woods in pursuit of their race, as I now would follow the tracks of any ravenous animal. The Indians outwitted me one dark night, and I was as unexpectedly as suddenly made a prisoner by them. The trick had been managed with great skill ; for no sooner had I extinguished the fire of my camp, and laid me down to rest in full security, as I thought, than I felt myself seized by an indistinguishable

number of hands, and was immediately pinioned, as if about to be led to the scaffold for execution. To have attempted to be refractory would have proved useless and dangerous to my life ; and I suffered myself to be removed from my camp to theirs, a few miles distant, without uttering a word of complaint. You are aware, I dare say, that to act in this manner was the best policy, as you understand that by so doing I proved to the Indians at once that I was born and bred as fearless of death as any of themselves. When we reached the camp, great rejoicings were exhibited. Two squaws and a few papooses appeared particularly delighted at the sight of me, and I was assured by very unequivocal gestures and words, that on the morrow the mortal enemy of the red-skin would cease to live. I never opened my lips, but was busy contriving some scheme which might enable me to give the rascals the slip before dawn. The women immediately fell a searching about my hunting-shirt for whatever they might think valuable, and fortunately for me, soon found my flask filled with *monongahela* (i.e. strong whisky). A terrific grin was exhibited on their murderous countenances, while my heart throbbed with joy at the anticipation of their intoxication. The crew immediately began to beat their bellies and sing, as they passed the bottle from mouth to mouth.

How often did I wish the flask ten times its size, and filled with aquafortis ! I observed that the squaws drank more freely than the warriors, and again my spirits were about to be depressed, when the report of a gun was heard at a distance. The Indians all jumped on their feet, the singing and drinking were both brought to a stand, and I saw with inexpressible joy the men walk off to some distance and talk to the squaws. I knew that they were consulting about me, and I foresaw that in a few moments the warriors would go to discover the cause of the gun having been fired so near their camp. I expected that the squaws would be left to guard me. Well, sir, it was just so. They returned ; the men took up their guns and walked away. The squaws sat down again, and in less than five minutes had my bottle up to their dirty mouths, gurgling down their throats the remains of the whisky. With what pleasure did I see them becoming more and more drunk, until the liquor took such hold on them, that it was quite impossible for these women to be of any service. They tumbled down, rolled about, and began to snore ; when I, having no other chance of freeing myself from the cords that fastened me, rolled over and over towards the fire, and after a short time, burned them asunder. I rose *on my feet, stretched my stiffened sinews, snatched up my*

rifle, and, for once in my life, spared that of Indians. I now recollect how desirous I once felt to lay open the skulls of the wretches with my tomahawk ; but when I again thought upon killing beings unprepared and unable to defend themselves, it looked like murder without need, and I gave up the idea. But, sir, I felt determined to mark the spot, and walking to a thrifty ash sapling, I cut out of it three large chips, and ran off. I soon reached the river, crossed it, and threw myself deep into the cane brakes, imitating the tracks of an Indian with my feet, so that no chance might be left for those from whom I had escaped to overtake me."

HARROD'S WOLF-SKIN CAP.

The Shawanees had made several attacks upon Boone's station, against which settlement they had always expressed the bitterest animosity, on account, no doubt, of its having been the first white settlement held in the country. Boone was absent at the Licks, with a great part of the men of the station, making salt. The prowling parties of Indians had killed their cattle, driven in their hunting-parties, and so shortened their supplies of meat, that the garrison was reduced to great straits. At this juncture, a stalwart hunter, James Harrod, the founder of Harrodsburg, made his unexpected appearance, on his return

from one of those long solitary expeditions he was accustomed to make. Finding the condition of things, he first proposed to some of the remaining men that they should accompany him to one of the nearest of his depots of meat. The risk was very great; and Harrod, perceiving from their hesitation that the men were not willing to go, left the station that night alone, telling the women to be of good cheer, that he would bring them back meat.

He found game very shy in the morning; and as there were plenty of Indian signs about, he determined to have the first meat he could get, and return with it as soon as possible to the relief of the station. He came in sight of a small herd of deer, which were moving as if they had been lately startled, and were still on the look-out; this caused him to use great circumspection. It was not long before he came across signs which induced him to think that there were several Indians close at hand. The daring hunter cared nothing for the odds, but coolly resolved to have one of those deer, or lose a scalp; and of the latter, there surely seemed to be a great likelihood. This would have been foolhardiness with any other man, but with Harrod it was entirely a matter of course. He had never turned aside from his path for the red man, nor did he ever intend to do so.

He claimed those hunting rounds, too, and those deer

were his, if he could win them, and his he intended they should be. His circumspection was not a little increased on perceiving the marks of the moccasin on the trail of the deer. These were before him, and he might come upon them at any moment. This did not deter him, for he saw at a glance his advantage, as he was on the look-out for them, while they were on the look-out for the deer, and evidently, from the carelessness of the trail they left, entirely unconscious of his proximity. He had followed on in this manner for several miles, taking care to expose his body as little as possible, and, indeed, advancing from tree to tree all the time, as if in a bush fight. The sudden whistle of a deer, followed instantly by the ring of two rifles close on his left, gave him warning that the time for business had come. The Indians kept close, and as he was peeping cautiously round a tree, endeavouring to get a sight of them, a rifle ball from the right whizzed through the heavy mass of black hair that fell down over his shoulders, stinging his neck sharply as it grazed past. He crouched instantly, and all was still as death for a long time, for the two on the left had taken the hint, and lay close, while the Indian on the right did the same, while he re-loaded and watched for another chance.

Here was a fix certainly for any common man, beleaguered

on two sides, and it might be on every side for all he could tell. But from Harrod's well-known daring and character, it may be questioned if it was not a source of pleasure rather than fear; for it was just such a dilemma as he delighted to get himself into, for the pleasure of getting himself out again. The foot of the tree at which he crouched was surrounded by bushes or shrubs about three feet high, and he was obliged to lift his head above these before he could fire. He wore a famous wolf-skin cap, that had figured in many a bloody border fight, and after waiting till he was convinced that there was no chance of getting a sight of the daring foe, he placed it upon the ramrod of his rifle, and after some prefatory manœuvring among the shrubs, to show that he was getting restless, gradually and cautiously elevated the cap. The ring of the three rifles was almost simultaneous, as it rose a little above the bushes; and before the echoes had died away, the death-shriek of the warrior on the right followed them into the shadows. Harrod lay still a long time before he concluded to try the manœuvre again: the cap was cautiously elevated once more, and this time drew but one fire; for the Indians had taken warning. It effected all that Harrod required, however, for it discovered the exact position of *these two*. He had only known the direction before, but not the

position, as his eyes had been occupied in watching the one on the right. In less than half a minute, the Indian who had fired exposed part of his body in sending home his rod; Harrod shot him through the heart. The other Indian commenced a rapid retreat. He got off, but Harrod thought he carried a third ball with him. They had been entirely deceived by the manœuvre of the cap, and the survivor was clearly of the opinion that, as he did not doubt they had killed two, there must be several white men there yet. Harrod proceeded at his leisure to dress the two deer they had brought down, and that night entered the station, to the great joy of all, with a full load of meat.

BARTLE'S ADVENTURE.

'You must first know that I have been a trader among the red men for about twenty-five years, in the course of which time I made many friends among the Delawares, Shawanees, and Wyandots; and I regret to add many were bitter foes. You see I was always noted for taking a decided course upon every occasion in which the red men were brought into conflict with the whites. I was not a mere trader, who was willing to sacrifice his honour, and conscience, and race, to fill his pocket. I told the red men when I thought they were wrong, and also told them on several

occasions that they deserved to be punished. By this bold, open course of action, I won the respect of the greater portion of the men with whom I was brought in contact. But Custaloga, and many others, who bore an unconquerable hatred to the whites, said I was the red man's foe, and should not be allowed to come among the Delawares and accuse them of acting treacherously.

'For some time I feared Custaloga's influence, and kept on the borders of the Delaware country. But the inducements of a very profitable trade, and the probabilities of evading injury from my foes, determined me to visit the Delawares again. I set out from Fort Pitt in the spring of 1793, in company with another trader, and a Wyandot named Hochela, who had long been an intimate friend and guide to me. We journeyed in safety, meeting many friendly Delawares and red men of other tribes, and arrived on the Muskingum, up which we intended to proceed till we reached the Delaware villages. One morning we were getting things ready to start from the place where we had camped the night before, when Hochela came running to us from a thick wood. He informed us that he had seen Custaloga, and two other Delawares, advancing cautiously through the wood in the direction of our camping-place. We instantly seized our rifles, but our foes were upon us before we ex-

pected them, yelling like fiends. They fired—a ball passed through my wrist, but my friends were unhurt. My fire killed the Delaware who was foremost in the onset, and then the struggle commenced.

'Our camping-place was near the edge of the high bank, and the descent from it was almost perpendicular. Custaloga was a very powerful man, and my wound had disabled one of my arms. But I struck at him with my tomahawk. I received the stroke of his upon my wounded arm, and fell to the ground. Then the Wyandot came to my relief. He struck at Custaloga, who, however, parried the blow, and grappling with the Wyandot by neck and waist, threw him headlong from the height. Meantime I arose, drew my knife, and stabbed the chief in the back. The wound was mortal. He reeled, struck at me with his knife, and fell from the height uttering an awful scream. I had time now to look around for my friend Jones. I found him just giving the other Delaware a mortal blow in the throat. They had been engaged in a fierce and desperate struggle, and Jones had been severely cut by his opponent's knife. However, his foe fell, and the scalp was soon in his possession. I scalped the other Delaware whom I had shot. We then had breathing time. My arm was broken, and the wound in the wrist bled very much. Jones was cut on both arms, and

slightly on the back. But we agreed to go round to a place where we could easily descend the bank, and see what had become of the bodies of the two who had gone over the height; we found both lying in the shallow water at the foot. Hochela's head had struck against a projecting rock in his fall, and he was quite dead when we found him. Custaloga still clenched his knife, while his features were fearfully distorted. I managed to scalp him, and then we threw both bodies into deep water, as the readiest grave. Returning to our camping-place, we dressed each other's wounds after a fashion, secured our goods, and determined to hurry away from that part of the country.

'It was severe travelling with heavy packs in our condition; but we knew that, if the death of Custaloga and his friends reached the ears of the people of their village, our lives would be

sought in revenge. So we travelled hard till we reached Farmer's Castle, on the Ohio. There we were sure of protection. The Delawares found the bodies of their friends—that of Custaloga drifting ashore a short distance below the place where he was killed. For a while they were very much excited, and threatened us with the most horrible torture if we should fall into their hands. But the Major-commandant at the Castle sent a friendly Wyandot to their principal chief, to inform him of the true state of the affair, and to offer presents from us as marks of our esteem and friendship. The chief was fully satisfied that Custaloga had deserved his fate, and succeeded in convincing his relatives of the fact. At least, they said they were convinced. Jones and I much doubted it, and kept away from the Delawares for more than a year afterwards.'

CHAPTER VIII.

A LONELY LOG-HUT—COLTER'S ADVENTURE—BRADY'S LEAP.

A LONELY LOG-HUT.

'I HAD often, on being overtaken by the shades of night, resolved in my own mind for the future only to travel through the woods by daylight; for even at noon-day the still and gloomy forest is sufficiently lonesome, and melancholy for the most ardent admirers of solitude. The road

which I was travelling was new to me, and in fact it was altogether a new road, that had been opened only the preceding year. Two friends of mine, who had essayed to travel it the past autumn, had supplied me with a sketch of the route, containing the names of the few settlers found along it, and the computed distances between the respective

houses. I therefore, as a matter of course, marked off the different places where I was to halt ; and if anything occurred to prevent me from stopping at the destined places, my whole plan would become disarranged. So far I had been able to keep to my previously-arranged plan ; and just as the shades of evening were beginning to enshroud the deep valley that reposes at the foot of the wild and lofty Pochono mountain, I approached the lone cottage which was marked out on my travelling chart as the place for me to pass the night in. Although I had never been in that part of the country, yet the building of squared logs or "blocks" that now presented itself, was in some measure an old acquaintance, since, poor and lonely and cheerless as it seemed, it had acquired a name in the history of that part of the country with which it was connected. Its wooden walls were blackened with the tempests of half a century, and the traditionary tales connected with it were familiar to every child in the distant settlement.

'A person of the name of Larner had been induced to settle here, long before any of the valleys in the southern district of country (now full of people) contained one white inhabitant. What induced this hardy man to bury himself and a young family in the wilderness, so far from all the pale-faces, as the Indians called the white

people in those days, is difficult to conceive. On his way to this secluded dell, he must have passed through many a valley which presented a fertile soil and a more serene climate ; but induced by some feeling which must now for ever remain a secret, Larner, with a wife and four or five children, accompanied by a younger brother, took possession of the extreme head of a mountain valley, and there built the sombre-looking building now before me. It has been surmised by many, that the contiguity to the adjoining mountain was his chief inducement to settle here, for he was a remarkably keen hunter. There certainly were more wolves and panthers in that vicinity than in any other part of the State, besides an abundance of elk and deer, with a great variety of game of smaller note. They did not devote their time exclusively to hunting ; for when they had resided here some half-score of years, they had managed to clear away the forest trees from a few acres of land, sufficient to grow more grain than the family could consume.

'About this period they were waited on by two Indian warriors of the Six Nations, who informed the Larners that, if they valued their own safety, they must immediately fly from the abode they had so long inhabited. This piece of intelligence, which was delivered with much apparent sincerity, was at the time but little heeded ; for although

they had never before been actually threatened by the Indians who had occasionally visited them, they had sometimes used a little caution when they suspected a party of Indians were anywhere in the vicinity. One day shortly after the visit of the two warriors, the younger of the brothers returned from an excursion on the mountain, with the somewhat startling intelligence that he had crossed in his way down the trail of an Indian party, and he should judge from its appearance that the number was something considerable. He further stated that he had, from the summit of an adjoining hill, carefully surveyed the forests all around, but no curling smoke rose above the green foliage (for it was summer) to denote their hunting fires, neither had he heard the report of fire-arms during the whole day. To those acquainted with the subtlety of the Indian character, this report was somewhat alarming, and the lone family determined to be circumspect in all their movements. Their arms consisted of three rifles—one used by each of the brothers, and the remaining one by the eldest son, a stout youth of nineteen. It was agreed that they should keep watch during the night, the brothers and the son taking it by turns, and the fire was extinguished before it became quite dark.

‘Some hours after midnight, and while the father of the family was keeping watch, he

thought he perceived a bright spark of fire advancing slowly across the small piece of meadow in the direction of the house; and as it came nearer, he distinctly saw part of the body of a naked Indian. There was no mistaking the intention of the incendiary; and as all was parched and dry with the scorching sun of July, a fire once kindled against the time-seasoned log-walls of their dwelling, the whole building would be in a blaze in a few minutes. Larner was in the upper storey, at an opening in one end of the building; but as the Indian came nearer, he changed his course a little, as if he intended to make his fire in the rear of the house. It was a moment of extreme anxiety with Larner. If he permitted the villain to pass the rear of the building, they were all in a short time to be burnt out, and most probably massacred by the merciless beings no doubt in ambush close by. If he fired and shot him, retribution would certainly await them all, and in either case he considered them a doomed family. But he did fire; and long before the reverberations were silent in the adjoining mountains, the Indian had given one lofty bound and shrieked the shriek of death. The report of his rifle brought the whole family to his side, and he related to them all that had taken place; and it seemed a matter of uncertainty whether the Indians would attack them under cover of the yet remain-

ing darkness, or postpone their onset until the return of day. It seems they *did* wait for daylight, and when it returned they commenced firing at the different windows or openings, wherever they imagined they might reach the inmates. This plan, however, had not much effect: one of the younger children received its death-wound; but the rest escaped unharmed for the present.

‘As I before stated, in the back part of the building there was no opening. The Indians finding the plan of firing at the windows not likely to produce much effect, determined upon making a circuit through the neighbouring woods, and thereby gain the defenceless rear of the dwelling. This plan, however, was anticipated by the besieged; for when the firing ceased, the Larners suspected they would be making this movement. The two brothers, therefore, without much difficulty, contrived to make two small openings in the shingled roof; and when the assailants emerged from the woods behind the building, the two leaders were instantly shot down. The rest, unappalled, rushed forward; and before the brothers could reload their pieces, there were a score of the savages under the shelter of the building. The son, too, had not been idle; for by thrusting one half of his person through the end window, he had been enabled to fire upon them as they rushed for

the house, and had made one of them bite the dust. Yet, after all, what availed it? Should the Indians instantly set fire to the house, they would all be burnt alive. The brothers, therefore, immediately resolved upon the family quitting the premises and making for the woods. But this plan was nearly fatal to the whole party; for before they had crossed the slight hollow in front of the woods, the two brothers and three of the children fell to rise no more. The eldest son was singled out by a tall, powerful Indian, who pursued him across a field of growing rye. They were each armed with a rifle, but neither of them stopped to fire. Young Larner, perceiving that the Indian gained rapidly upon him, for his knee had been slightly injured by a ball, bethought himself of a stratagem which ultimately saved him. Some of the party near the house were yet occasionally firing at the fugitives that made for the woods; so young Larner, as if he had received a death-wound, fell amongst the tall grain. The Indian instantly squatted in the rye also, being apparently suspicious of some trick in his intended victim; but in a short time he raised himself upon his knees, in order to scrutinize the place where young Larner lay, when the young fellow, who had been arranging his piece for such an occasion, fired at the Indian and shot him through the brain.

He did not wait to reload ; but in spite of the soreness of his knee, pushed for the woods, which were but at a short distance. Once behind a sheltering tree, he reloaded his rifle, and having done so, had the satisfaction to find that none of the surviving Indians pursued him ; they were many of them engaged in scalping his father and uncle, and a younger brother and two sisters, while others were in pursuit of his mother and eldest sister, who had succeeded in reaching the woods.

‘ For two nights he continued to wander in the forest ; but during the day he remained hidden in some hollow tree. At last, hungry and weary, he reached a distant settlement on the river Delaware, the inhabitants of which immediately formed themselves into an armed party, and set off for the scene of slaughter. On reaching the place, they presently discovered the dead bodies of nine Indians, the two Larners, and the remainder of the family, except the eldest daughter and the mother. The two last mentioned, it was evident, had been carried off by the surviving Indians, for their bodies were nowhere to be found. This party remained three or four days in the vicinity of these late scenes of blood ; but the mother and daughter returned not. From this period, the place was deserted for some years ; but the surviving young *Larner* marrying, he and his wife took possession of the lone

and blood-stained dwelling. The tribe of Indians had removed far away to the vicinity of the Seneca and Ciaaga lakes, so that there was no longer any danger to be apprehended from such rude and barbarous neighbours. Years rolled on, and brought with them a new generation of that devoted family ; but more than twenty years passed away without any tidings of the missing females. About this period, some settlers from the part of the country where the Larners originally resided, located themselves in the vicinity of the above-mentioned lakes, where they lived in peace and goodwill with their neighbours the Indians, and from whom they learned the fate of the missing mother and daughter.

‘ They stated that they were pursued and soon captured in the woods ; and although they would only submit to be dragged along by force, in that manner they proceeded for a portion of two days. But this mode of proceeding was found so inconvenient to the party, that when they reached the caves in the Moose Mountain, a council was held on their prisoners, when they were adjudged to die. They were then tomahawked, according to the custom of those barbarians ; and they had no doubt but their skeletons might be found there still. This information was some time afterwards imparted to the son and brother of the deceased, who, embracing the first opportunity,

accompanied by three friends, repaired to Moose Mountain, sought out the caves, that were almost entirely unknown to the white men, and found the two skeletons in the very position they had fallen beneath the tomahawks of their murderers. They were then removed with much care and labour to the residence of the son, who, with true filial affection, interred them in the same grave with the mouldering bodies of their departed kindred. At the time I visited this lone dwelling, the son, who had escaped the family massacre, was still occupying it. He was now old and grey-headed; but he still occasionally took his rifle into the woods in pursuit of game. He, too, had been the father of a family of sons and daughters, now all grown up, and all except one, I believe, married and settled, one or two in his own district; but the others had been induced to wander away to the Far West. He is still looked upon with a sort of veneration; and scarce a lone traveller ever visits him, to whom he does not relate the lamentable fate of his family.'

COLTER'S ADVENTURE.

'Colter came to St. Louis in May 1810, in a small canoe, from the head waters of the Missouri, a distance of 3000 miles, which he traversed in thirty days. I saw him on his arrival, and received from him an account of his adventures,

after he had separated from Lewis and Clark's party. I shall relate one anecdote for its singularity:—

'On the arrival of the party at the head waters of the Missouri, Colter, observing an appearance of abundance of beaver being there, got permission to remain and hunt for some time, which he did in company with a man of the name of Dixon, who had traversed the immense tract of country from St. Louis to the head waters of the Missouri alone. Soon after, he separated from Dixon, and *trapped* in company with a hunter named Potts; and aware of the hostility of the Blackfeet Indians, one of whom had been killed by Lewis, they set their traps at night, and took them up early in the morning, remaining concealed during the day.

'They were examining their traps early one morning, in a creek about six miles from that branch of the Missouri called Jefferson Fork, and were ascending in a canoe, when they suddenly heard a great noise, resembling the trampling of animals; but they could not ascertain the fact, as the high perpendicular banks on each side of the river impeded their view. Colter immediately pronounced it to be occasioned by Indians, and advised an instant retreat, but was accused of cowardice by Potts, who insisted that the noise was caused by buffaloes; and they proceeded on. In a few minutes afterwards, their

doubts were removed by a party of Indians making their appearance on both sides of the creek, to the number of five or six hundred, who beckoned them to come ashore. As retreat was now impossible, Colter turned the head of the canoe; and, at the moment of its touching, an Indian seized the rifle belonging to Potts; but Colter, who is a remarkably strong man, immediately retook it, and handed it to Potts, who remained in the canoe, and, on receiving it, pushed off into the river.

‘He had scarcely quitted the shore, when an arrow was shot at him, and he cried out, “Colter, I am wounded!” Colter remonstrated with him on the folly of attempting to escape, and urged him to come ashore. Instead of complying, he instantly levelled his rifle at the Indian, and shot him dead on the spot. This conduct, situated as he was, may appear to have been an act of madness, but it was doubtless the effect of sudden but sound reasoning; for, if taken alive, he must have expected to be tortured to death, according to their custom. He was instantly pierced with arrows so numerous, that, to use Colter’s words, “he was made a riddle of.”

‘They now seized Colter, stripped him entirely naked, and began to consult on the manner in which he should be put to death. They were at first inclined to set him up as a mark to shoot at, but the chief interfered, and, seizing him by the

shoulder, asked him if he could run fast. Colter, who had been some time amongst the Kee-katso or Crow Indians, had in a considerable degree acquired the Blackfoot language, and was also well acquainted with Indian customs. He knew that he had now to run for his life, with the dreadful odds of five or six hundred against him, and those armed Indians; he therefore cunningly replied that he was a very bad runner, although he was considered by the hunters as remarkably swift.

‘The chief now commanded the party to remain stationary, and led Colter out on the prairie three or four hundred yards, and released him, bidding him save himself if he could. At this instant the horrid war-whoop sounded in the ears of poor Colter, who, urged with the hope of preserving life, ran with a speed at which he himself was surprised. He proceeded towards the Jefferson Fork, having to traverse a plain six miles in breadth, abounding with the prickly pear, on which he was every instant treading with his naked feet. He ran nearly half-way across the plain before he ventured to look over his shoulder, when he perceived that the Indians were very much scattered, and that he had gained ground to a considerable distance from the main body; but one Indian, who carried a spear, was much before all the rest, and not more than one hundred yards from him. A faint gleam of hope

now cheered the heart of Colter ; he derived confidence from the belief that escape was within the bounds of possibility ; but that confidence was nearly fatal to him, for he exerted himself to such a degree, that the blood gushed from his nostrils, and soon almost covered the fore part of his body. He had now arrived within a mile of the river, when he distinctly heard the appalling sound of footsteps behind him, and every instant expected to feel the spear of his pursuer. Again he turned his head, and saw the savage not twenty yards from him. Determined, if possible, to avoid the expected blow, he suddenly stopped, turned round, and spread out his arms. The Indian, surprised by the suddenness of the action, and perhaps by the bloody appearance of Colter, also attempted to stop, but, exhausted with running, he fell whilst endeavouring to throw his spear, which stuck in the ground and broke. Colter instantly snatched up the pointed part, with which he pinned him to the earth, and then continued his flight.

‘The foremost of the Indians, on arriving at the place, stopped till others came up to join them, when they set up a hideous yell. Every moment of this time was improved by Colter, who, although fainting and exhausted, succeeded in gaining the skirting of the cotton-tree wood on the borders of the Fork, through which he ran, and plunged into

the river. Fortunately for him, a little below this place was an island, against the upper part of which a raft of drift-timber had lodged. He dived under the raft, and, after several efforts, got his head above water amongst the trunks of trees, covered over with smaller wood to the depth of several feet. Scarcely had he secured himself, when the Indians arrived on the river, screeching and yelling, as Colter expressed it, “like so many devils.” They were frequently on the raft during the day, and were seen through the chinks by Colter, who was congratulating himself on his escape, until the idea arose that they might set the raft on fire. In horrible suspense, he remained until night, when, hearing no more of the Indians, he dived under the raft, and swam silently down the river to a considerable distance, where he landed, and travelled all night.

‘Although happy in having escaped from the Indians, his situation was still dreadful. He was completely naked, under a burning sun ; the soles of his feet were entirely filled with the thorns of the prickly pear ; he was hungry, and had no means of killing game, although he saw abundance around him, and was at least seven days’ journey from Lisa’s Fort, on the Bighorn branch of the Roche Jaune river. These were circumstances under which almost any man but an American hunter would have despaired. He arrived at the fort in seven days, having subsisted on a root

much esteemed by the Indians of the Missouri.'

BRADY'S LEAP.

Captain Samuel Brady was one of that band of brave men who lived in the trying days of the American Revolution, on the western borders, exposed to all the horrors and dangers of Indian warfare, and whose name should be perpetuated in history. He held a commission under the United States, and, for a part of the time, commanded a company of rangers, who traversed the forests for the protection of the frontiers. He was born in Sheppensburgh in the year 1758, and removed, probably when a boy, into the valley of the Monono-gahela. At the period of this adventure he lived on Chartier Creek, about twelve miles below Fort Pitt, a stream better known, however, to the pilots and keel boatmen of modern days by the significant name of 'Shirtee.' He died in 1796, soon after the close of the Indian war.

Samuel Brady, the hero of the following adventure, was about six feet in height, with light blue eyes, fair skin, and dark hair; he was remarkably straight; an athletic, bold, and vigorous backwoodsman, inured to all the toils and hardships of a frontier life, and had become very obnoxious to the Indians, from his numerous successful attacks *on their war-parties*, and from *shooting them in his hunting ex-*

cursions whenever they crossed his path, or came within reach of his rifle; for he was personally engaged in more hazardous contests with the savages than any other man west of the mountains, excepting Daniel Boone. He was, in fact, 'an Indian hater,' as many of the early borderers were. This class of men appear to have been more numerous in this region than in any other portion of the frontiers; and this, doubtless, arose from the slaughter at Braddock's defeat, and the numerous murders and attacks on defenceless families that for many years followed that disaster.

Brady was also a very successful trapper and hunter, and took more beavers than any of the Indians themselves. In one of his adventurous trapping excursions to the waters of the Beaver river, or Mahoning,—which in early days so abounded with animals of this species, that it took its name from this fact,—it so happened that the Indians surprised him in his camp and took him prisoner. To have shot or tomahawked him on the spot, would have been but a small gratification to that of satiating their revenge by burning him at a slow fire, in presence of all the Indians of their village. He was therefore taken alive to their encampment, on the west bank of the Beaver river, about a mile and a half from its mouth.

After the usual exultations and rejoicings at the capture of a

noted enemy, and causing him to run the gauntlet, a fire was prepared, near which Brady was placed, after being stripped naked, and with his arms unbound. Previous to tying him to the stake, a large circle was formed around him, consisting of Indian men, women, and children, dancing and yelling, and uttering all manner of threats and abuse that their small knowledge of the English language could afford. The prisoner looked on these preparations for death and on his savage foes with a firm countenance and a steady eye, meeting all their threats with a truly savage fortitude. In the midst of all their dancing and rejoicing, a squaw of one of their chiefs came near him, with a child in her arms; quick as thought, and with intuitive prescience, he snatched it from her, and threw it into the midst of the flames.

Horror-struck at the sudden outrage, the Indians simultaneously rushed to rescue the infant from the fire. In the midst of this confusion, Brady darted from the circle, outrunning all that came in his way, and rushed into the adjacent thickets, with the Indians yelling at his heels. He ascended the steep side of a high hill amidst a shower of bullets, and darting down the opposite declivity, secreted himself in the deep ravines and laurel thickets that abound for several miles to the west of it. *His knowledge of the country and wonderful activity enabled*

him to elude his enemies and to reach the settlements on the south of the Ohio river, which he crossed by swimming. The hill near whose base this adventure is said to have happened still goes by his name; and the incident is often referred to by the traveller as the coach is slowly dragged up its side.

Captain Brady seems to have been as much the Daniel Boone of the north-east part of the valley of the Ohio as the other was of the south-west; and the country is equally full of traditional legends of his hardy adventures and hairbreadth escapes, although he has lacked a Flint to chronicle his fame, and to transmit it to posterity in the glowing and beautiful language of that distinguished annalist of the west. From undoubted authority, it seems the following incident actually transpired in this vicinity. Brady resided on Chartier Creek, on the south side of the Ohio; and being a man of herculean strength, activity, and courage, he was generally selected as the leader of the hardy borderers in all their incursions into the Indian territory north of the river.

About the year 1780, on one occasion, a large party of warriors, from the falls of the Cuyahoga and the adjacent country, had made an inroad on the south side of the Ohio river, in the lower part of what is now Washington county, but which was then known as the settlement of the 'Catfish Camp,' after an

old Indian of that name, who lived there when the whites first came into the country, on the Monono-gahela river. This party had murdered several families, and with the plunder had re-crossed the Ohio before effectual pursuit could be made. By Brady a party was quickly summoned of his chosen followers, who hastened on after them; but the Indians having one or two days the start, he could not overtake them in time to arrest their return to the villages.

Near the spot where the town of Ravenna now stands, the Indians separated into two parties, one of which went to the north, and the other west, to the falls of the Cuyahoga. Brady's men also divided; a part pursued the northern trail, and a part went with their commander to the Indian village, lying on the river in the present township of Northampton, in Portage county.

Although Brady made his approaches with the utmost caution, the Indians, expecting a pursuit, were on the look-out, and ready to receive him with numbers fourfold to those of his own party, whose only safety was in a hasty retreat, which, from the ardour of the pursuit, soon became a perfect flight. Brady directed his men to separate, and each one to take care of himself; but the Indians knowing Brady, and having a *most inveterate hatred and dread of him, from the numerous chas-*

tisements which he had inflicted upon them, left all the others, and with united strength pursued him alone.

The Cuyahoga here makes a wide bend to the south, including a large tract of several miles of surface, in the form of a peninsula. Within this tract the pursuit was hotly contested. The Indians, by extending their line to the right and left, forced him on the bank of the stream. Having in peaceable times often hunted over this ground with the Indians, and knowing every turn of the Cuyahoga as familiarly as the villager knows the streets of his own hamlet, Brady directed his course to the river, at a spot where the whole stream is compressed by the rocky cliffs into a narrow channel of only twenty-two feet across the top of the chasm, although it is considerably wider beneath, near the water, and in height more than twice that number of feet above the current. Through this pass the water rushes like a race-horse, chafing and roaring at the confinement of its current by the rocky channel, while a short distance above the stream it is at least fifty yards wide.

As he approached the chasm, Brady, knowing that life or death was in the effort, concentrated his mighty powers, and leaped the stream at a single bound. It so happened that on the opposite cliff the leap was favoured by a low place, into which he dropped, and grasping

the bushes, he thus helped himself to ascend to the top of the cliff. The Indians for a few moments were lost in wonder and admiration ; and before they had recovered their recollection, he was half-way up the side of the opposite hill, but still within reach of their rifles. They could easily have shot him at any moment before, but, being bent upon taking him alive for torture, and to glut their long delayed revenge, they forbore the use of the rifle ; but now, seeing him likely to escape, they all fired upon him ; one bullet wounded him severely in the hip, but not so badly as to prevent his progress.

The Indians having to make a considerable circuit before they could cross the stream, Brady advanced a good distance ahead. His limb was growing stiff from the wound, and, as the Indians gained on him, he made for the pond which now bears his name, and plunging

in, swam under water a considerable distance, and came up under the trunk of a large oak which had fallen into the pond. This, although only leaving a small breathing place to support life, still completely sheltered him from their sight.

The Indians tracing him by the blood to the water, made diligent search all round the pond, but finding no signs of his exit, finally came to the conclusion that he had sunk and was drowned. As they were at one time standing on the very tree beneath which he was concealed, Brady, understanding their language, was very glad to hear the result of their deliberations ; and after they had gone, weary, lame, and hungry, he made good his retreat to his own home. His followers also all returned in safety. The chasm across which he leaped is known in all that region by the name of *Brady's Leap*.

CHAPTER IX.

THREE REMARKABLE INCIDENTS IN THE LIFE OF AUDUBON THE NATURALIST.

'I HAD left the village of Shawney, situated on the banks of the Ohio, on my return from Henderson, also on the banks of the same beautiful stream. The weather was pleasant, and I thought not warmer than usual at that season. My horse was jogging quietly along, and my thoughts were, for once at

least in the course of my life, entirely engaged in commercial speculations. I had forded Highland Creek, and was on the eve of entering a tract of bottom land or valley that lay between it and Canoe Creek, when on a sudden I remarked a great difference in the aspect of the heavens. A hazy thick-



•

•

•

•



A HURRICANE.-- *Adventure and Peril*, p. 512

ness had overspread the country, and I for some time expected an earthquake; but my horse exhibited no propensity to stop and prepare for such an occurrence. I had nearly arrived at the verge of the valley, when I thought fit to stop near a brook, and dismounted to quench the thirst which had come upon me.

'I was leaning on my knees, with my lips about to touch the water, when, from my proximity to the earth, I heard a distant murmuring sound of an extraordinary nature. I drank, however, and as I rose on my feet, looked towards the south-west, where I observed a yellowish oval spot, the appearance of which was quite new to me. Little time was left me for consideration, as the next moment a smart breeze began to agitate the taller trees. It increased to an unexpected height, and already the smaller branches and twigs were seen falling in a slanting direction towards the ground. Two minutes had scarcely elapsed, when the whole forest before me was in fearful motion. Here and there, where one tree pressed against another, a creaking noise was produced, similar to that occasioned by violent gusts which sometimes sweep over the country. Turning instinctively towards the direction from whence the wind blew, I saw, to my great astonishment, that the noblest trees of the forest bent their lofty heads for a while, and unable to stand against the blast, were

falling into pieces. First the branches were broken off with a crackling noise; then went the upper part of the massy trunks; and in many places whole trees of gigantic size were falling entire to the ground. So rapid was the progress of the storm, that before I could think of taking measures to ensure my safety, the hurricane was passing opposite the place where I stood. Never can I forget the scene which at that moment presented itself. The tops of the trees were moving in the strangest manner, in the central current of the tempest, which carried along with it a mingled mass of twigs and foliage, that completely obscured the view. Some of the largest trees were seen bending and writhing under the gale; others suddenly snapped across; and many, after a momentary resistance, fell uprooted to the earth. The mass of branches, twigs, foliage, and dust that moved through the air was whirled onwards like a cloud of feathers, and on passing, disclosed a wide space filled with fallen trees, naked stumps, and heaps of shapeless ruins, which marked the path of the tempest. This space was about a quarter of a mile in breadth, and to my imagination resembled the dried-up bed of the Mississippi, with its ten thousands of planters and sawyers strewed in the sand, and inclined in various degrees. The horrible noise resembled that of the great cataracts of Niagara, and as it howled along

in the track of the desolating tempest, produced a feeling in my mind which it were impossible to describe.

‘The principal force of the hurricane was now over, although millions of twigs and small branches, that had been brought from a great distance, were seen following the blast as if drawn onwards by some mysterious power. They even floated in the air for some hours after, as if supported by the thick mass of dust that rose high above the ground. The sky was now of a greenish lurid hue, and an extremely disagreeable sulphureous odour was diffused in the atmosphere. I waited in amazement, having sustained no material injury, until nature at length resumed her wonted aspect. For some moments I felt undetermined whether I should return to Morgantown, or attempt to force my way through the wrecks of the tempest. My business, however, being of an urgent nature, I ventured into the path of the storm, and after encountering innumerable difficulties, succeeded in crossing it. I was obliged to lead my horse by the bridle, to enable him to leap over the fallen trees, whilst I scrambled over or under them in the best way I could, at times so hemmed in by the broken tops and tangled branches as almost to become desperate. On arriving at my house, I gave an account of what I had seen, when, to my surprise, I was told that

there had been very little wind in the neighbourhood, although in the streets and gardens many branches and twigs had fallen in a manner which excited great surprise.

‘Many wondrous accounts of the devastating effects of this hurricane were circulated in the country after its occurrence. Some log-houses, we were told, had been overturned, and their inmates destroyed. One person informed me that a wire-sifter had been conveyed by the gust to a distance of many miles. Another had found a cow lodged in the fork of a large half-broken tree. But as I am disposed to relate only what I have myself seen, I shall not lead you into the region of romance, but shall content myself with saying, that much damage was done by this awful visitation. The valley is yet a desolate place, overgrown with briars and bushes, thickly entangled amidst the tops and trunks of the fallen trees, and is the resort of ravenous animals, to which they often betake themselves when pursued by man, or after they have committed their depredations on the farms of the surrounding district. I have crossed the path of the storm at a distance of a hundred miles from the spot where I witnessed its fury, and again, four hundred miles farther off, in the State of Ohio. Lastly, I observed traces of its ravages on the summits of the mountains connected with the great pine forests of Pennsylvania,

three hundred miles beyond the place last mentioned. In all these different parts, it appeared to me not to have exceeded a quarter of a mile in breadth.'

IN PERIL OF FIRE.

'With what pleasure have I seated myself by the blazing fire of some lonely cabin, when, faint with fatigue and chilled with the piercing blast, I had forced my way to it through the drifted snows that covered the face of the country as with a mantle! The affectionate mother is hushing her dear babe to repose, while a group of sturdy children surround their father, who has just returned from the chase, and deposited on the rough flooring of his hut the varied game which he has procured. The great black log, that with some difficulty has been rolled into the ample chimney, urged, as it were, by lighted pieces of pine, sends forth a blaze of light over the happy family. The dogs of the hunter are already licking away the trickling waters of the thawing icicles that sparkle over their shaggy coats, and the comfort-loving cat is busied in passing her furry paws over each ear, or with her rough tongue smoothing her glossy coat.

'How delightful to me has it been, when, kindly received and hospitably treated under such a roof, by persons whose means were as scanty as their generosity *was great, I have entered into conversation with them respect-*

ing subjects of interest to me, and received gratifying information! I recollect that once, while in the State of Maine, I passed such a night as I have described. Next morning the face of nature was obscured by the heavy rains that fell in torrents, and my generous host begged me to remain in such pressing terms, that I was well content to accept his offer. Breakfast over, the business of the day commenced: the spinning wheels went round, and the boys employed themselves, one in searching for knowledge, another in attempting to solve some ticklish arithmetical problem. In a corner lay the dogs, dreaming of plunder, while close to the ashes stood grimalkin, seriously purring in concert with the wheels. The hunter and I, having seated ourselves each on a stool, while the matron looked after her domestic arrangements, I requested him to give me an account of the events resulting from those fires which he had witnessed. Willingly he at once went on, nearly as follows:—

“About twenty-five years ago, the larch or hackmitack trees were nearly all killed by insects. This took place in what hereabouts is called the ‘black soft growth’ land, that is, the spruce, pine, and all other firs. The destruction of these trees was effected by insects cutting the leaves; and you must know that, though other trees are not killed by the loss of their leaves, the

evergreens always are. Some few years after this destruction of the larch, the same insects attacked the spruces, pines, and other firs in such a manner, that before half a dozen years were over they began to fall, and, tumbling in all directions, they covered the whole country with matted masses. You may suppose that, when partially dried or seasoned, they would prove capital fuel, as well as supplies for the devouring flames which accidentally, or perhaps by intention, afterwards raged over the country, and continued burning at intervals for years, in many places stopping all communication by the roads; the resinous nature of the firs being of course best fitted to ensure and keep up the burning of the deep beds of dry leaves of the other trees.

“I dare say that what I have told you brings sad recollections to the minds of my wife and eldest daughter, who, with myself, had to fly from our home at the time of the great fires.”

‘I felt so interested in his relation of the causes of the burnings, that I asked him to describe to me the particulars of his misfortunes at the time.

“It is a difficult thing, sir, to describe; but I will do my best to make your time pass pleasantly. We were sound asleep one night, in a cabin about a hundred miles from this, when, about two hours before day, the snorting of the horses and lowing of the cattle,

which I had ranged in the woods, suddenly awakened us. I took yon rifle, and went to the door to see what beast had caused the hubbub, when I was struck by the glare of light reflected on all the trees before me as far as I could see through the woods. My horses were leaping about, snorting loudly, and the cattle ran among them, with their tails raised straight over their backs. On going to the back of the house, I plainly heard the crackling made by the burning brushwood, and saw the flames coming towards us in a far extended line. I ran to the house, told my wife to dress herself and the child as quickly as possible, and take what little money we had, while I managed to catch and saddle the two best horses. All this was done in a very short time, for I guessed that every moment was precious to us.

“We then mounted, and made off from the fire. My wife, who is an excellent rider, stuck close to me; my daughter, who was then a small child, I took in one arm. When making off, as I said, I looked back, and saw that the frightful blaze was close upon us, and had already laid hold of the house. By good luck there was a horn attached to my hunting clothes, and I blew it, to bring after us, if possible, the remainder of my live stock, as well as the dogs. The cattle followed for awhile; but before an hour had elapsed, they all ran as if mad through

the woods, and that, sir, was the last of them. My dogs, too, although at all other times extremely tractable, ran after the deer that in bodies sprang before us, as if fully aware of the death that was so rapidly approaching.

“ We heard blasts from the horns of our neighbours as we proceeded, and knew that they were in the same predicament. Intent on striving to the utmost to preserve our lives, I thought of a large lake, some miles off, which might possibly check the flames; and urging my wife to whip up her horse, we set off at full speed, making the best way we could over the fallen trees and the brush heaps, which lay like so many articles placed on purpose to keep up the terrific fires that advanced with a broad front upon us.

“ By this time we could feel the heat, and we were afraid that our horses would drop every instant. A singular kind of breeze was passing over our heads, and the glare of the atmosphere shone over the daylight. I was sensible of a slight faintness, and my wife looked pale. The heat had produced such a flush in the child's face, that when she turned towards either of us, our grief and perplexity were greatly increased. Ten miles, you know, are soon gone over on swift horses; but notwithstanding this, when we reached the borders of the lake, *covered with sweat and quite exhausted, our hearts failed us.*

The heat of the smoke was insufferable, and sheets of blazing fire flew over us in a manner beyond belief. We reached the shores, however, coasted the lake for a while, and got round to the lee side. There we gave up our horses, which we never saw again. Down among the rushes we plunged by the edge of the water, and laid ourselves flat, to wait the chance of escaping from being burnt or devoured. The water refreshed us, and we enjoyed the coolness.

“ On went the fire, rushing and crashing through the woods. Such a sight may we never see! The heavens themselves, I thought, were frightened; for all above us was a red glare, mixed with clouds of smoke, rolling and sweeping away. Our bodies were cool enough, but our heads were scorching; and the child, who now seemed to understand the matter, cried so as nearly to break our hearts. The day passed on, and we became hungry. Many wild beasts came plunging into the water beside us, and others swam across to our side, and stood still. Although faint and weary, I managed to shoot a porcupine, and we all tasted its flesh. The night passed I cannot tell you how. Smouldering fires covered the ground, and the trees stood like pillars of fire, or fell across each other. The stifling and sickening smoke still rushed over us, and the burnt cinders and ashes fell thick about us.

How we got through that night I really cannot tell, for about some of it I remember nothing.

“Towards morning, although the heat did not abate, the smoke became less, and blasts of fresh air sometimes made their way to us. When morning came, all was calm ; but a dismal smoke still filled the air, and the smell seemed worse than ever. We were now cooled enough, and shivered as if in an ague fit ; so we removed from the water, and went up to a burning log, where we warmed ourselves. What was to become of us I did not know. My wife hugged the child to her breast, and wept bitterly ; but God had preserved us through the worst of the danger, and the flames had gone past, so I thought it would be both ungrateful to Him and unmanly to despair now. Hunger once more pressed upon us ; but this was easily remedied. Several deer were still standing in the water, up to the head, and I shot one of them. Some of its flesh was soon roasted ; and after eating it, we felt wonderfully strengthened.

“By this time the blaze of the fire was beyond our sight, although the ground was still burning in many places, and it was dangerous to go among the burnt trees. After resting awhile, and trimming ourselves, we prepared to commence our march. Taking up the child, I led the way over the hot ground and rocks ; and after two weary days and nights, during which we

shifted in the best manner we could, we at last reached the ‘hard woods,’ which had been free of the fire. Soon after we came to a house, where we were kindly treated for a while. Since then, sir, I have worked hard and constantly as a lumberer ; but thanks be to God, here we are, safe, sound, and happy.”

A TERRIBLE DILEMMA.

‘On my return from the Upper Mississippi, I found myself obliged to cross one of the wide prairies which, in that portion of the United States, vary the appearance of the country. The weather was fine ; all around me was as fresh and blooming as if it had just issued from the bosom of nature. My knapsack, my gun, and my dog were all I had for baggage and company. The track which I followed was an old Indian trace ; and as darkness overshadowed the prairie, I felt some desire to reach at least a copse, in which I might lie down to rest. The night-hawks were skimming over and around me, attracted by the buzzing wings of the beetles, which form their food ; and the distant howlings of wolves gave me some hope that I should soon arrive at the skirts of some woodland.

‘I did so ; and almost at the same instant a fire-light attracted my eye. I moved towards it, full of confidence that it proceeded from the camp of some wandering Indians. I was mis-

taken. I discovered by its glare that it was from the hut of a small log-cabin, and that a tall figure passed and repassed between it and me, as if busily engaged in household arrangements.

‘I reached the spot, and presenting myself at the door, asked the tall figure, which proved to be a woman, if I might take shelter under her roof for the night. Her voice was gruff, and her attire negligently thrown about her. She answered in the affirmative. I walked in, took a stool, and quietly seated myself by the fire. The next object that attracted my attention was a finely-formed young Indian, resting his head between his hands, with his elbows on his knees. A long-bow rested against the log-wall near him, while a quantity of arrows and two or three racoon skins lay at his feet. He moved not—he apparently breathed not. Accustomed to the habits of the Indians, and knowing that they pay little attention to the approach of civilised strangers (a circumstance which in some countries is considered as evincing the apathy of their character), I addressed him in French, a language not unfrequently partially known to the people in that neighbourhood. He raised his head, pointed to one of his eyes with his finger, and gave me a significant glance with the other. His face was covered *with blood*. The fact was, that *about an hour before this*, as he

was in the act of discharging an arrow at a racoon in the top of a tree, the arrow had split upon the cord, and sprung back with such violence into his right eye as to destroy it for ever.

‘Feeling hungry, I inquired what sort of fare I might expect. Such a thing as a bed was not to be seen, but many large untanned bear and buffalo hides lay piled in a corner. I drew a fine timepiece from my breast, and told the woman that it was late, and that I was fatigued. She had espied my watch, the richness of which seemed to operate upon her feelings with electric quickness. She told me that there was plenty of venison and jerked buffalo meat, and that on removing the ashes I should find a cake. But my watch had struck her fancy, and her curiosity had to be gratified by an immediate sight of it. I took off the gold chain that secured it from around my neck, and presented it to her. She was all ecstasy, spoke of its beauty, asked me its value, and put the chain round her brawny neck, saying how happy the possession of such a watch would make her. Thoughtless, and as I fancied myself in so retired a spot secure, I paid little attention to her talk or her movements. I helped my dog to a good supper of venison, and was not long in satisfying the demands of my own appetite.

‘The Indian rose from his seat, as if in extreme suffering. He passed and repassed me

several times, and once pinched me on the side so violently, that the pain nearly brought forth an exclamation of anger. I looked at him; his eye met mine, but his look was so forbidding, that it struck a chill into the more nervous part of my system. He again seated himself, drew his butcher-knife from its greasy scabbard, examined its edge as I would do that of a razor suspected dull, replaced it, and again taking his tomahawk from his back, filled the pipe of it with tobacco, and sent me expressive glances whenever our hostess chanced to have her back towards us.

'Never until that moment had my senses been awakened to the danger which I now suspected to be about me. I returned glance for glance to my companion, and rested well assured that, whatever enemies I might have, he was not of their number. I asked the woman for my watch, wound it up, and under pretence of wishing to see how the weather might probably be on the morrow, took up my gun, and walked out of the cabin. I slipped a ball into each barrel, scraped the edges of my flints, renewed the primings, and returning to the hut, gave a favourable account of my observations. I took a few bear-skins, made a pallet of them, and calling my faithful dog to my side, lay down, with my gun close to my body, and in a few minutes was to all appearance fast asleep.

'A short time had elapsed, when some voices were heard, and from the corner of my eyes I saw two athletic youths making their entrance, bearing a dead stag on a pole. They disposed of their burden, and asking for whisky, helped themselves freely to it. Observing me and the wounded Indian, they asked who I was, and why that rascal (meaning the Indian, who they knew understood not a word of English) was in the house. The mother—for so she proved to be—bad them speak less loudly, made mention of my watch, and took them to a corner, where a conversation took place, the purport of which it required little shrewdness in me to guess. I tapped my dog gently; he moved his tail, and with indescribable pleasure, I saw his fine eyes alternately fixed on me, and raised towards the trio in the corner. I felt that he perceived danger in my situation. The Indian exchanged a last glance with me.

'The lads had eaten and drunk themselves into such condition, that I already looked upon them as *hors de combat*; and the frequent visits of the whisky-bottle to the ugly mouth of their dam I hoped would soon reduce her to a like state. Judge of my astonishment, reader, when I saw this incarnate fiend take a large carving-knife and go to the grindstone to whet its edge. I saw her pour the water on the turning machine, and watched

her working away with the dangerous instrument, until the cold sweat covered every part of my body, in despite of my determination to defend myself to the last. Her task finished, she walked to her reeling sons, and said, "There, that'll soon settle him ! Boys, kill you —, and then for the watch."

'I turned, cocked my gunlocks silently, touched my faithful companion, and lay ready to start up and shoot the first who might attempt my life. The moment was fast approaching, and that night might have been my last in this world, had not Providence made preparations for my rescue. All was ready : the infernal hag was advancing slowly, probably contemplating the best way of despatching me whilst her sons should be engaged with the Indian. I was several times on the eve of rising and shooting her on the spot ; but she was not to be punished thus. The door was suddenly opened, and there entered two stout travellers, each with a long rifle on his shoulder. I bounced up on my feet, and making them most heartily welcome, told them how well it was for me that they should have arrived at that moment. The tale was told in a minute. The drunken men were secured, and the woman, in spite of her

defence and vociferations, shared the same fate. The Indian fairly danced with joy, and gave us to understand that, as he could not sleep for pain, he would watch over us. You may suppose we slept much less than we talked. The two strangers gave me an account of their once having been themselves in a somewhat similar situation. Day came, fair and rosy, and with it the punishment of our captives.

'They were now quite sobered. Their feet were unbound, but their arms were still securely tied. We marched them into the woods off the road, and having used them as regulators were wont to use such delinquents, we set fire to the cabin, gave all their skins and implements to the young Indian warrior, and proceeded well pleased towards the settlements.

'During upwards of twenty-five years, when my wanderings extended to all parts of our country, this was the only time at which my life was in danger from my fellow-creatures. Indeed, so little risk do travellers run in the United States, that no one born there ever dreams of any to be encountered on the road ; and I can only account for the occurrence, by supposing that the inhabitants of the cabin were not Americans.'



BOOK IV.

CHAPTER I.

HOW MR. WATERTON CAPTURED HIS SNAKES.

'TIME and experience have convinced me that there is not much danger in roving amongst snakes and wild beasts, provided only you have self-command. You must never approach them abruptly ; if so, you are sure to pay for your rashness, because the idea of self-defence is predominant in every animal ; and thus the snake, to defend himself from what he considers an attack upon him, makes the intruder feel the deadly effect of his poisonous fangs. The jaguar flies at you, and knocks you senseless with a stroke of his paw ; whereas, if you had not come upon him too suddenly, it is ten to one but that he had retired in lieu of disputing the path with you. The labarri snake is very poisonous, and I have often approached within two yards of him without fear. I took care to move very softly and gently, without moving my arms, and he always allowed me to have a fine view

of him, without showing the least inclination to make a spring at me. He would appear to keep his eye fixed on me, as though suspicious, but that was all. Sometimes I have taken a stick ten feet long, and placed it on the labarri's back. He would then glide away without offering resistance. But when I put the end of the stick abruptly to his head, he immediately opened his mouth, flew at it, and bit it.

'One day, wishful to see how the poison comes out of the fang of the snake, I caught a labarri alive. He was about eight feet long. I held him by the neck, and my hand was so near his jaw, that he had not room to move his head to bite it. This was the only position I could have held him in with safety and effect. To do so, it only required a little resolution and coolness. I then took a small piece of stick in the other hand, and pressed it

against the fang, which is invariably in the upper jaw. Towards the point of the fang, there is a little oblong aperture on the convex side of it. Through this there is a communication down the fang to the root, at which lies a little bag containing the poison. Now, when the point of the fang is pressed, the root of the fang also presses against the bag, and sends up a portion of the poison therein contained. Thus, when I applied a piece of stick to the point of the fang, there came out of the hole a liquor thick and yellow, like strong camomile tea. This was the poison, which is so dreadful in its effects, as to render the labarri snake one of the most poisonous in the forests of Guiana. I once caught a fine labarri, and made it bite itself. I forced the poisonous fang into its belly. In a few minutes I thought it was going to die, for it appeared dull and heavy. However, in half an hour's time he was as brisk and vigorous as ever, and in the course of the day showed no symptoms of being affected. Is, then, the life of the snake proof against its own poison?

‘There was a person making shingles, with twenty or thirty negroes, not far from Mibiri-hill. I had offered a reward to any of them who would find a good-sized snake in the forest, and come and let me know *where it was*. Often had these negroes looked for a large snake,

and as often been disappointed. One Sunday morning I met one of them in the forest, and asked him which way he was going; he said he was going towards Warratilla Creek to hunt an armadillo; and he had his little dog with him. On coming back about noon, the dog began to bark at the root of a large tree, which had been upset by the whirlwind, and was lying there in a gradual state of decay. The negro said he thought his dog was barking at an acouri, which had probably taken refuge under the tree, and he went up with an intention to kill it; he then saw a snake, and hastened back to inform me of it.

‘The sun had just passed the meridian in a cloudless sky. There was scarce a bird to be seen; for the winged inhabitants of the forest, as though overcome by heat, had retired to the thickest shade: all would have been like midnight silence, were it not that the shrill voice of the pi-pi-yo every now and then resounded from a distant tree. I was sitting, with a little Horace in my hand, on what had once been the steps which formerly led up to the now mouldering and dismantled building. The negro and his little dog came down the hill in haste, and I was soon informed that a snake had been discovered; but it was a young one, called the bush-master, and a rare and poisonous snake. I instantly rose up, and laying

hold of my eight-foot lance, which was close by me, "Well, then, Daddy," said I, "we'll go and have a look at the snake." I was barefoot, with an old hat, check shirt, and trousers on, and a pair of braces to keep them up. The negro had his cutlass; and as we ascended the hill, another negro, armed with a cutlass, joined us, judging from our race that there was something to do. The little dog came along with us; and when we had got about half a mile in the forest, the negro stopped, and pointed to the fallen tree. All was still and silent. I told the negroes not to stir from the place where they were, and keep the little dog in, and that I would go in and reconnoitre.

'I advanced up to the place slow and cautious. The snake was well concealed, but at last I made him out; it was a coulacanara, not poisonous, but large enough to have crushed any of us to death. On measuring him afterwards, he was something more than fourteen feet long. This species of snake is very rare, and much thicker in proportion to his length than any other snake in the forest. A coulacanara of fourteen feet in length is as thick as a common boa of twenty-four. After skinning this snake, I could easily get my head into his mouth, as the singular formation of the jaws admits of wonderful extension.

'A Dutch friend of mine, by

name Brouwer, killed a boa twenty-two feet long, with a pair of stag's horns in his mouth. He had swallowed the stag, but could not get the horns down; so he had to wait in patience with that uncomfortable mouthful till his stomach digested the body, and then the horns would drop out. In this plight the Dutchman found him as he was going in his canoe up the river, and sent a ball through his head.

'On ascertaining the size of the serpent the negro had just found, I retired slowly the way I came, and promised four dollars to the negro who had shown it to me, and one to the other who had joined us. Aware that the day was on the decline, and that the approach of night would be detrimental to the dissection, a thought struck me that I could take him alive. I imagined, if I could strike him with the lance behind the head and pin him to the ground, I might succeed in capturing him. When I told this to the negroes, they begged and entreated me to let them go for a gun and bring more force, as they were sure the snake would kill some of us. I had been in search of a large serpent for years, and now, having come up with one, it did not become me to turn soft. So, taking a cutlass from one of the negroes, and then ranging both the sable slaves behind me, I told them to follow, and that I would cut them down if they

offered to fly. I smiled as I said this, but they shook their heads in silence, and seemed to have but a bad heart for it.

‘When I got up to the place, the serpent had not stirred; but I could see nothing of his head; and I judged by the folds of his body that it must be at the farthest side of his den. A species of woodbine had formed a complete mantle over the branches of the fallen tree, almost impervious to the rain or the rays of the sun. Probably he had resorted to this sequestered place for a length of time, as it bore marks of an ancient settlement. I now took my knife, determining to take away the woodbine and break the twigs in the gentlest manner possible, till I could get a view of his head. One negro stood guard close behind me with the lance, and near him the other with a cutlass. The cutlass which I had taken from the first negro was on the ground, close by me, in case of need. After working in dead silence for a quarter of an hour, with one knee all the time on the ground, I had cleared away enough to see his head. It appeared coming out betwixt the first and second coils of the body, and was flat on the ground. This was the very position I wished it to be in. I rose in silence, and retreated very slowly, making a sign to the negroes to do the same. The dog was *sitting at a distance in mute observance*. I could now read

in the faces of the negroes that they considered this a very unpleasant affair, and they made another attempt to persuade me to let them go for a gun. I smiled in a good-natured manner, and made a feint to cut them down with the weapon I had in my hand. This was all the answer I made to their request, and they looked very uneasy.

‘It must be observed we were now twenty yards from the snake’s den. I now ranged the negroes behind me, and told him who stood next to me, to lay hold of the lance the moment I struck the snake, and that the other must attend my movements. It now only remained to take their cutlasses from them; for I was sure, if I did not disarm them, they would be tempted to strike the snake in time of danger, and thus forever spoil his skin. On taking their cutlasses from them, if I might judge from their physiognomy, they seemed to consider it as a most intolerable act of tyranny in me. Probably nothing kept them from bolting, but the consolation that I was to be betwixt them and the snake. Indeed, my own heart, in spite of all I could do, beat quicker than usual, and I felt those sensations which one has on board a merchant vessel in war time, when the captain orders all hands on deck to prepare for action, while a strange vessel is coming down upon us under suspicious colours.

‘We went slowly on in silence, without moving our arms or heads, in order to prevent all alarm as much as possible, lest the snake should glide off or attack us in self-defence. I carried the lance perpendicularly before me, with the point about a foot above the ground. The snake had not moved; and on getting up to him, I struck him with the lance on the near side, just behind the neck, and pinned him to the ground. That moment, the negro next to me seized the lance and held it firm in its place, while I dashed head foremost into the den to grapple with the snake, and to get hold of his tail before he could do any mischief. On pinning him to the ground with the lance, he gave a tremendous loud hiss, and the little dog ran away, howling as he went. We had a sharp fray in the den, the rotten sticks flying on all sides, and each party struggling for superiority. I called out to the second negro to throw himself upon me, as I found I was not heavy enough. He did so, and the additional weight was of great service. I had now got firm hold of his tail; and after a violent struggle or two, he gave in, finding himself overpowered. This was the moment to secure him; so, while the first negro continued to hold the lance firm to the ground, and the other was helping me, I contrived to unloose my braces, and with them tied up the snake’s mouth.

‘The snake now finding himself in an unpleasant situation, tried to better himself, and set resolutely to work; but we overpowered him. We continued to make him twist himself round the shaft of the lance, and then prepared to convey him out of the forest. I stood at his head, and held it firm under my arm. One negro supported the belly, and the other the tail. In this order we began to move slowly towards home, and reached it after resting ten times; for the snake was too heavy for us to support him without stopping to recruit our strength. As we proceeded onwards with him, he fought hard for freedom; but it was all in vain. The day was now too far spent to think of dissecting him. Had I killed him, a partial putrefaction would have taken place before morning. I had brought up with me in the forest a strong bag, large enough to contain any animal that I should want to dissect. I considered this the best mode of keeping live wild animals when I was pressed for daylight; for the bag yielding in every direction to their efforts, they would have nothing solid or fixed to work on, and thus would be prevented from making a hole through it. I say fixed, for after the mouth of the bag was closed, the bag itself was not fastened or tied to anything, but moved about wherever the animal inside caused it to roll. After securing afresh the mouth of the coulacanara, so that he

could not open it, he was forced into this bag, and left to his fate till morning.

'I cannot say he allowed me to have a quiet night. My hammock was in the loft just above him, and the floor betwixt us half gone to decay, so that in parts of it no boards intervened betwixt his lodging-room and mine. He was very restless and fretful; and had Medusa been my wife, there could not have been more continued and disagreeable hissing in the bed-chamber that night. At daybreak I sent to borrow ten of the negroes who were cutting wood at a distance; I could have done with half that number, but judged it most prudent to have a good force, in case he should try to escape from the house when we opened the bag. However, nothing serious occurred. We untied the mouth of the bag, kept him down by main force, and then I cut his throat. He bled like an ox. By six o'clock the same evening he was completely dissected. On examining his teeth, I observed they were all bent like tenter-hooks, pointing down his throat, and not so large or strong as I expected to have found them; but they are exactly suited to what they are intended by nature to perform. The snake does not masticate his food; and thus the only service his teeth have to perform is to seize his prey and hold it till he swallows it whole.

'In general, the skins of snakes are sent to museums without the

head; for when the Indians and negroes kill a snake, they seldom fail to cut off the head, and then they run no risk from its teeth. When the skin is stuffed in the museum, a wooden head is substituted, armed with teeth which are large enough to suit a tiger's jaw; and this tends to mislead the spectator, and give him erroneous ideas. During this fray with the serpent, the old negro, Daddy Quashi, was in Georgetown procuring provisions, and just returned in time to help to take the skin off. He had spent the best part of his life in the forest with his old master, Mr. Edmonstone, and amused me much in recounting their many adventures among the wild beasts. Daddy had a particular horror of snakes, and frankly declared he could never have faced the one in question.

'The week following his courage was put to the test, and he made good his words. It was a curious conflict, and took place near the spot where I had captured the large snake. In the morning I had been following a new species of parroquet, and the day being rainy, I had taken an umbrella to keep the gun dry, and had left it under a tree. In the afternoon, I took Daddy Quashi with me to look for it. Whilst he was searching about, curiosity took me towards the place of the late scene of action. There was a path where timber had formerly been dragged along. Here I observed a young coulanara, ten feet long, slowly

moving onwards ; I saw he was not thick enough to break my arm, in case he got twisted round it. There was not a moment to be lost. I laid hold of his tail with the left hand, one knee being on the ground ; with the right I took off my hat, and held it as you would hold a shield for defence. The snake instantly turned, and came on at me, with his head about a yard from the ground, as if to ask me what business I had to take liberties with his tail. I let him come, hissing and open-mouthed, within two feet of my face, and then, with all the force I was master of, I drove my fist, shielded by my hat, full in his jaws. He was stunned and confounded by the blow, and ere he could recover himself, I had seized his throat with both hands, in such a position that

he could not bite me. I then allowed him to coil himself round my body, and marched off with him as my lawful prize. He pressed me hard, but not alarmingly so.

‘In the meantime, Daddy Quashi, having found the umbrella, and having heard the noise which the fray occasioned, was coming cautiously up. As soon as he saw me, and in what company I was, he turned about and ran off home, I after him, and shouting, to increase his fear. On scolding him for his cowardice, the old rogue begged that I would forgive him, for that the sight of the snake had positively turned him sick at stomach.

‘When I had done with the carcase of the large snake, it was conveyed into the forest, and there left to attract the vultures.’

CHAPTER II.

ADVENTURES WITH THE COBRA DE CAPELLO—A BATTLE BETWEEN TWO SNAKES.

‘A RESIDENCE in India, Siam, and Burmah makes you wary of your life. The quantity and deadly venomous quality of snakes of all sizes and shapes, from the cobra de capello to the tiny but equally deadly carpet-snake, puts people upon their guard against the intrusion of such foes by such resorts as are never dreamt of by people in Europe. Such, for instance, is carefully examining every

portion of your bed and bedroom, of violently shaking boots and clothes before wearing them, and which is an operation not unfrequently attended by the outfall of a scorpion or a snake, or mayhap a comfortably coiled-up cobra under your pillow.

‘One of the first Tamul words which becomes familiar to European infants and adults alike, is the word *pambo*, signifying snake. I well remember an in-

stance of a baby in arms, who could just manage to prattle, being instrumental in all probability in saving the life of its native *amah*, or wet-nurse. The woman, as is the custom, had laid herself down upon a mattress on the floor, whence she could the more easily rock the child to sleep with a foot or an arm, without disturbing herself from her recumbent position—nay, almost without thoroughly awakening from that heavy lethargy which falls upon this class of people after a plentiful supper of curry and rice. Apparently the child had been lying awake for some little time, gazing, perhaps, as infants often do, at the bright flame of the wreck of the cocoa-nut oil lamp, when of a sudden it uttered piercing screams, which thoroughly aroused not only the nurse, but the mother and father, and all the palanquin-bearers that usually slept in the verandah. Rushing in to see what was the matter, the child distinctly shrieked out the word "*Pambo!*" pointing at the same time to the hurriedly displaced bed-covering, which the *amah* had removed on the first alarm. Warily lifting this up, the bearers, who were armed with stout bamboos, discovered a large snake coiled up in the folds, to which they very speedily administered a *quietus*.

'It is no uncommon thing for these poor barefooted palanquin-bearers, whilst carrying you through the jungle, to set foot

upon some snake or other reptile, which sometimes succeeds in inflicting a mortal wound upon them. And if, as on a clear moonlight night, the bearers espy one of these deadly foes crossing the high road, they will very unceremoniously drop the palanquin at the cost of a considerable shaking to the unhappy inside passenger, if not fractured limbs, and immediately assail the snake, leaving you to keep out like intruders as best you can, until they have despatched the common foe, and can return to give relief.

'A friend of mine, a colonel of the Madras Horse Artillery, was travelling down from the interior to the sea-side, accompanied by his wife, who was in extremely delicate health, and with the object in view of sending her back to England by the first opportunity that offered. They were in the act of dining at one of the old-fashioned, tumble-down travellers' bungalows, before the new bomb-proof ones were erected, and were seated at opposite ends of the camp-table. Suddenly there flopped down from the ceiling upon the centre of the table a vile cobra, who, recovering itself, reared up its expanded head, and threatened instantaneous death to the poor invalid, who, perhaps fortunately for herself, fainted away, and fell off her chair. Seizing the dilemma the snake seemed to be in at the sudden disappearance of its victim, the colonel rushed to

the corner for his sabre, and unsheathing it, with one blow struck off the brute's head.

'On one occasion, when I was stationed at Tellicherry on the Malabar coast, I had dangerous and ocular demonstration of the liking evinced by these cobras for eggs. We kept a great many turkeys, and in the extensive compound attached to the house, which at the very least covered nearly four square miles of garden, and tope and waste land, the hens used to stray in all directions, making their nests and depositing their eggs in all kinds of secluded spots, whence, sometimes, after the disappearance of a week, they would return to the poultry-yard, accompanied by a young retinue of turkeys. One day I tracked one of these hens to a considerable distance, keeping behind hedges and trees, so as best to conceal myself; finally she went into a bush, whence, after a short time, she returned with all the cackling satisfaction of a newly-made mother. I waited till the bird had disappeared in the direction of the poultry-yard, and then scrambled into the bush, where, in a rough-made nest, I saw what I conceived to be some eight or ten fine-looking eggs. Stooping to possess myself of this treasure, and transfer the eggs from the nest to the coat pocket, I was shocked by an ominous hissing close beside me. Leaping back with all conceivable rapidity, I saw a monstrous cobra de capello

standing upright as an arrow in the centre of the bush, and shaking its ugly head to and fro, previous to making a dart at me as sure and as deadly as a poisoned shaft. To turn and run for my life was the impulse of the moment. I never paused to see whether I was pursued or not, but rushed into the house and closed the door abruptly behind,—a proceeding which, together with the bang of the door, very much astonished the rest of the inmates. Seeing the field clear, I loaded my gun with duck-shot, and accompanied by one of the servants, retraced my steps to the turkey's nest. There, sure enough, was the cobra comfortably coiled up, and sucking away contentedly at the newly-laid turkey egg, of which he had previously pierced the shell with his fangs. That snake was sagacious enough never to show itself to the bird, and so frighten her from returning to the nest. The contents of my double-barrelled Manton gave the venomous brute its *quietus*, and then we discovered that every egg had been as carefully emptied of its contents as it could have been by any practised bird-fancier or stuffer, the incision made being barely perceptible to the naked eye.

'One of the most perilous encounters that I ever had with a snake, occurred to me in a little up-country civil station called Chittoor, in the Arcot district, Madras Presidency. We

had an out-house or go-down, as these stores and warehouses are called in India, where we kept our annual supply of European wines, beer, spirits, preserved fruits, jams, etc., which were precious treasures in such an out-of-the-way place as Chittoor, and which we kept under the safe custody of a huge padlock, the key of which was always a tenant of our waistcoat pockets. Notwithstanding the professed religious antagonism to strong drinks and European abominations, there were many of our servants who had a "strong weakness" for liquor of any description. It was a daily duty of one or the other of us to serve out to the head dubash, or butler, such requisites as were required for consumption.

'One fine morning, I had preceded the dubash, who was very busy entering the cook's morning market account, and entering the store, walked across it to the farther end, in search of some hermetically-sealed viands and vegetables, which were not procurable in the place for love or money. The place was lighted only by the entrance-door, through which, however, there entered a sufficient flood of brilliant daylight to answer all my purposes. I had just laid my hand upon a tin case of green pease, and was speculating upon the best means of opening it, when a sudden scuffling, squeaking, and hissing close *behind me* attracted my attention; and turning abruptly round,

I saw that a huge cobra and an angry rat had tumbled just by the door of entrance, and were engaged in deadly combat. The former had in all probability intruded upon the latter's nest of young ones somewhere in the rafters of the roof, and met with a hostile reception. Springing up with all the agility of fear upon a strong projecting shelf—for I durst not make a rush at the door under peril of my life—I became an unwilling spectator of this most unequal contest. The rat for some time, conscious of the venomous foe it had to contend with, kept leaping round and round, like an agile prize-fighter, availing itself of every opportunity to rush in and bite the snake, which had worked itself into a frenzied state of rage, and hissed and darted at the rat with its protruded forked tongue in a manner that was truly awful to witness, whilst its little venomous eyes sparkled again in the sunlight with rage. At last the cobra succeeded in inflicting a deadly wound upon the brave little animal, which, apparently conscious that soon all would be up with her, put aside all previous caution, and rushed boldly in upon its adversary, fixing itself firmly, close under the left eye of the snake, and never letting go its hold, notwithstanding all the desperate lashing about of the tail and body of its much more powerful opponent, till the convulsions of death forced it to let go and fall prostrate before the snake.

The cobra, which had evidently received a severe if not mortal wound, to my terror made its way direct to the shelf where I had taken refuge, and was wriggling up one of the posts that supported it. I had nothing in the shape of a weapon of defence of any kind or description. But there chanced to be on a shelf over my head some heavy bags of a rare kind of rice, grown somewhere in the interior of Bengal. I clambered up to this shelf, and seizing a heavy bag, waited until my ugly aggressor had wriggled itself half-way across the shelf below, when I let drop the sack, and so completely crushed the snake. It was not long, you may be sure, before I retreated from the storehouse. I caused every article in it to be removed—displacing and killing in the operation a whole family of young cobras—to a more commodious warehouse, where such venomous reptiles could easily be discovered, and as quickly despatched.

‘A peon in the Tannah, near the college bridge, observed a rat run across the floor. He stooped to look after it, having his turban off and his hair loose. While in this position, he suddenly felt as though some one were tugging him back by his hair. He put his hand up, and to his horror he found there was a large cobra on his back, struggling to free its teeth from his hair, in which they had got entangled. Probably the reptile

had also observed the rat, and had dropped from the roof imbued with as keen a love of hunting as the peon himself. Be that as it may, the snake ultimately succeeded in getting loose, and escaped to a hole without inflicting any injury on the man. By the orders of the chief magistrate, the place was pulled down the next day, and there sure enough was the snake, with the rat in its stomach half digested.

‘One day, at Kirdee, near Poonah, I had been out with my gun and dogs in pursuit of game; and after some hours of tramping, feeling very tired, I lay down to rest beneath a tree, when suddenly I was aroused by the furious barking of my dogs. On turning round to ascertain the cause, I beheld a cobra *de capello* directing its course to a point that would approximate very closely on my position. In an instant I was on my feet. The moment the reptile became aware of my presence, in nautical phraseology, it boldly brought to, with expanded hood, eyes sparkling, and neck beautifully arched, and the head raised about two feet from the ground, and oscillating from side to side, in a manner plainly indicative of a relentless foe. I seized the nearest weapon, a short bamboo left by the beaters, and hurled it at my opponent's head; I was fortunate enough to hit it just beneath the eye. The reptile immediately fell,

and lay apparently lifeless. Without a moment's reflection, I seized it a little below the head, hauled it beneath the shelter of the tree, and very coolly began to examine the mouth for the poison fangs of which naturalists speak so much. While in the act of forcing open the mouth with a stalk, I felt the head sliding through my hand, and to my astonishment, became aware that I had now to contend with the most deadly of reptiles in its full strength and vigour. Indeed, I was in a moment convinced of this; for as I tightened my hold of the throat, its body became wreathed round my neck and arms.

'If the reader is aware of the universal dread in which the cobra de capello is held throughout India, and the almost instant death which invariably follows its bite, he will in some degree be able to imagine what my feelings were at that moment; a faint kind of disgusting sickness pervaded my whole frame, as I felt the clammy fold of the reptile tightening round my neck. I still held the throat, but to hold it much longer would be impossible. Immediately under my grasp there was an inward working and creeping of the skin, which seemed to be assisted by the tightness with which I held it—my hand was gloved. Finding, in defiance of my efforts, that *my hand each moment was forced closer to my face, an*

idea struck me, that were it in my power to transfix the mouth with some sharp instrument, it would prevent the reptile from using his fangs should it escape my hold. My gun lay at my feet. The ramrod appeared to be the very thing I required, which with some difficulty I succeeded in drawing out, having only one hand disengaged. My right hand was trembling with over-exertion, and my hold became less firm, when I happily succeeded in passing the rod through its upper jaw to its centre. It was not without considerable hesitation that I let go my hold of the throat; and seizing the rod with both hands at the same time, brought them over my head with a sudden jerk, and disengaged the fold from my neck, which had been almost tight enough to produce strangulation. There was then but little difficulty in freeing my right arm, and ultimately throwing the reptile from me to the earth, where it continued to twist itself into a thousand contortions of rage and agony. To run to a neighbouring stream, to bathe my neck, hands, and face in its cooling waters, was my first act after despatching my formidable enemy.'

BATTLE BETWEEN TWO SNAKES.

'As I was one day sitting solitary and pensive in my arbour, my attention was engaged by a strange sort of rustling noise at some paces distant. I looked

all around without distinguishing anything, until I climbed one of my great hemp stalks, when, to my astonishment, I beheld two snakes of considerable length, the one pursuing the other through a hemp stubble-field. The aggressor was of the black kind, six feet long; the fugitive was a water-snake, nearly of equal dimensions. They soon met, and in the fury of their first encounter, they appeared in an instant firmly twisted together; and whilst their united tails beat the ground, they tried with open jaws to lacerate each other. What a fell aspect did they present! Their heads were compressed to a very small size; their eyes flashed fire. After the conflict had lasted about five minutes, the second found means to disengage itself from the first, and hurried toward the ditch. Its antagonist instantly assumed a new posture, and half creeping and half erect, with a majestic mien, overtook and attacked the other again, which placed itself in the same attitude, and prepared to resist. The scene was uncommon and beautiful; for, thus opposed, they fought with their jaws, biting each other with the utmost rage; but notwithstanding this appearance of mutual courage and fury, the water-snake seemed still desirous of retreating toward the ditch, its natural element. This was no sooner perceived by the keen-eyed black one, than, twist-

ing its tail twice round a stalk of hemp, and seizing its adversary by the throat, not by means of its jaws, but by twisting its own neck twice round that of the water-snake, it pulled the latter back from the ditch. To prevent a defeat, the water-snake took hold likewise of a stalk on the bank, and by the acquisition of that point of resistance, became a match for its fierce antagonist. Strange was this to behold. Two great snakes, strongly adhering to the ground, fastened together by means of the writhings which lashed them to each other, and stretched at their full length, they pulled, but pulled in vain; and in the moments of greatest exertion, that part of their bodies which was entwined seemed extremely small, while the rest appeared inflated, and now and then convulsed with strong undulations, rapidly following each other. Their eyes seemed on fire, and ready to start out of their heads. At one time the conflict seemed decided; the water-snake bent itself into two great folds, and by that operation rendered the other more than commonly outstretched; the next minute the fresh struggles of the black one gained an unexpected superiority. It, acquired two great folds likewise, which necessarily extended the body of its adversary in proportion as it had contracted its own. These efforts were alternate: victory seemed doubtful, inclining sometimes to the one side and some-

times to the other, until at last the stalk to which the black snake was fastened suddenly gave way, and in consequence of this accident they both plunged into the ditch. The water did not extinguish their vindictive rage; for by their agitations, I could trace, though not distinguish, their mutual attacks. They soon reappeared on the surface, twisted together, as in their first

onset; but the black snake seemed to retain its wonted superiority, for its head was exactly fixed above that of the other, which he incessantly pressed down under the water, until it was stifled and sunk. The victor no sooner perceived its enemy incapable of further resistance, than, abandoning it to the current, it returned on shore and disappeared.'

CHAPTER III.

CROCODILE-SHOOTING IN CEYLON—HOW ABBE DOMENECK CAUGHT HIS CROCODILE.

'MINNERIA LAKE, like all others in Ceylon, swarms with crocodiles of a very large size. Early in the morning and late in the evening they may be seen lying upon the banks like logs of trees. I have frequently remarked that a buffalo shot within a few yards of the lake has invariably disappeared during the night, leaving an undoubted track where he has been dragged to the water by the crocodiles. These brutes frequently attack the natives when fishing or bathing, but I have never heard of their pursuing any person upon dry land.

'I remember an accident having occurred at Madampi, on the west coast of Ceylon, about seven years ago, the day before I passed through the village. A number of women were employed in cutting rushes for mat-making, and were about mid-deep in the

water. The horny tail of a large crocodile was suddenly seen above the water among the group of women, and in another instant one of them was seized by the thigh and dragged towards the deeper part of the stream. In vain the terrified creature shrieked for assistance; the horror-stricken group had rushed to the shore, and a crowd of spectators on the bank offered no aid beyond their cries. It was some distance before the water deepened, and the unfortunate creature was dragged for many yards, sometimes beneath the water, sometimes above the surface, rending the air with her screams, until at length the deep water hid her from their view. She was never again seen.

'Some of these vermin grow to a very large size, attaining the length of twenty feet, and eight feet in girth; but the common

size is fourteen feet. They move slowly upon land, but are wonderfully fast and active in the water. They commonly lie in wait for their prey under some hollow bank in a deep pool; and when the unsuspecting deer or even buffalo stoops his head to drink, he is suddenly seized by the nose and dragged beneath the water. Here he is speedily drowned, and consumed at leisure.

'The two lower and front teeth of a crocodile project through the upper jaw, and their white points attract immediate notice as they protrude through the brown scales on the upper lip. When the mouth is closed, the jaws are thus absolutely locked together. It is a common opinion that the scales on the back of a crocodile will turn a ball; this is a vulgar error. The scales are very tough and hard, but a ball from a common fowling-piece will pass right through the body. I have even seen a hunting-knife driven at one blow deep into the hardest part of the back; and this was a crocodile of a large size, about fourteen feet long, that I shot at a place called Bolgoddé, twenty-two miles from Colombo.

'A man had been setting nets for fish, and was in the act of swimming to the shore, when he was seized and drowned by a crocodile. The next morning two buffaloes were dragged into the water close to the spot, and it was supposed that these murders were committed by the

same crocodile. I was at Colombo at the time, and hearing of the accident, I rode off to Bolgoddé to try my hand at catching him. Bolgoddé is a very large lake, many miles in circumference, abounding with crocodiles, widgeon, teal, and ducks. On arrival that evening, the moodeliar (head man) pointed out the spot where the man had been destroyed, and where the buffaloes had been dragged in by the crocodile. One buffalo had been entirely devoured; but the other had merely lost his head, and his carcase was floating in a horrible state of decomposition near the bank. It was nearly dark, so I engaged a small canoe to be in readiness by break of day.

'Just as the light streaked the horizon, I stepped into the canoe. This required some caution, as it was the smallest thing that can be conceived to support two persons. It consisted of the hollow trunk of a tree six feet in length and about one foot in diameter. A small outrigger prevented it from upsetting, but it was not an inch from the surface of the water when I took my narrow seat, and the native in the stern paddled carefully towards the carcase of the buffalo. Upon approaching within a hundred yards of the floating carcase, I counted five forms within a few yards of the flesh. These objects were not above five inches square, and appeared like detached pieces of rough bark. I knew them to be the fore-

heads of different crocodiles, and presently one moved towards the half-consumed buffalo. His long head and shoulders projected from the water as he attempted to fix his fore-claws into the putrid flesh; this, however, rolled over towards him, and prevented him from getting a hold; but the gaping jaws nevertheless made a wide breach in the buffalo's flank. I was now within thirty yards of them, and being observed, they all dived immediately to the bottom.

'The carcase was lying within a few yards of the bank, where the water was extremely deep and clear. Several large trees grew close to the edge, and formed a good hiding-place. I therefore landed; and sending the canoe to a distance, I watched the water. I had not been five minutes in this position, before I saw in the water at my feet, in a deep hole close to the bank, the immense form of a crocodile as he was slowly rising from his hiding-place to the surface. He appeared to be about eighteen feet long, and he projected his horny head from the surface, bubbled, and then floated with only his forehead and large eyes above the water. He was a horrible-looking monster, and from his size I hoped he was the villain that had committed the late depredations. He was within three yards of me; and although I stood upon the bank, *his great round eyes gazed at me without a symptom of fear.* The

next moment I put a two-ounce ball exactly between them, and killed him stone dead. He gave a convulsive slap with his tail, which made the water foam, and turning upon his back, he gradually sank, till at length I could only distinguish the long line of his white belly twenty feet below me.

'Not having any apparatus for bringing him to the surface, I again took to the canoe, as a light breeze that had sprung up was gradually moving the carcase of the buffalo away. This I slowly followed until it at length rested on a wide belt of rushes which grew upon the shallows near the shore. I pushed the canoe into the rushes within four yards of the carcase, keeping to windward to avoid the sickening smell. I had not been long in this position, before the body suddenly rolled over, as though attacked by something underneath the water, and the next moment the tall reeds brushed against the sides of the canoe, being violently agitated in a long line, evidently by a crocodile at the bottom. The native in the stern grew as pale as a black can turn with fright, and instantly began to paddle the canoe away. This, however, I soon replaced in its former position, and then took his paddle away to prevent further accidents. There sat the captain of the fragile vessel in the most abject state of terror. We were close to the shore, and the water

was not more than three feet deep, and yet he dared not jump out of the canoe, as the rushes were again brushing against its sides, being moved by the hidden beast at the bottom. There was no help for him. So, after vainly imploring me to shove the canoe into deep water, he at length sat still. In a few minutes the body of the buffalo again moved, and the head and shoulders of a monster appeared above water and took a bite of some pounds of flesh. I could not get a shot at the head, from its peculiar position, but I put a ball through his shoulders and immediately shoved the canoe astern. Had I not done this, we should most likely have been upset, as the wounded brute began to lash out with his tail in all directions, till he at length retired to the bottom among the rushes. Here I could easily track him, as he slowly moved along, by the movement of the reeds. Giving the native the paddle, I now by threats induced him to keep the canoe over the very spot where the rushes were moving, and we slowly followed on the track, while I kept watch in the bow of the canoe with a rifle. Suddenly the movement in the rushes ceased, and the canoe stopped accordingly. I leaned slightly over the side to look into the water, when up came a large air-bubble, and directly after an apparition in the shape of some fifteen pounds of putrid fish. The stench was fright-

ful; but I knew my friend must be very bad down below to disgorge so sweet a morsel. I therefore took the paddle and poked for him; the water being shallow, I felt him immediately. Again the rushes moved; I felt the paddle twist as his scaly back glided under it, and a pair of gaping jaws appeared above the water, wide open, within two feet of the canoe. The next moment his head appeared, and the two-ounce ball shattered his brain. He sank to the bottom, the rushes moved slightly, and were then still.

‘I now put the canoe ashore, and cutting a strong stick with a crook at one end, I again put out to the spot and dragged for him. He was quite dead; and catching him under the fore-leg, I soon brought him gently to the surface of the water. I now made fast a line to his fore-leg, and we towed him slowly to the village. His weight in the water was a mere trifle; but on arrival at the village on the banks of the lake, the villagers turned out with great glee, and fastened ropes to different parts of his body to drag him out. This operation employed about twenty men. The beast was about fourteen feet long; and he was no sooner on shore, than the natives cut him to pieces with axes, and threw the sections into the lake to be devoured by his own species. This was a savage kind of revenge which appeared to afford them great satisfaction.’

A CROCODILE HUNT.

‘To enjoy the luxury of a little fresh meat from time to time, we fattened cats, which I subsequently metamorphosed into most delicious *fricassées*. The chase too, one way or other, contributed to the maintenance of our table. Whenever there were any pieces of small money in our round snuff-box, which was our iron safe, and which in that capacity received all presents of our parishioners, I laid out a portion of it in the purchase of powder and shot, to be employed in shooting wood-quests and squirrels. Not that I loved the sport; for to fatigue myself to death during the entire length of a day, besides tearing my skin and clothes, in killing one or two very harmless animals, was never to me a source of pleasure. But necessity consulteth not our tastes.

‘One Thursday, when our treasure amounted to ten sous, and the children had a holiday, I provided myself with ammunition, and started in company with Charles, a young French gentleman and a keen sportsman, to shoot wild turkeys on the picturesque banks of the Medina. After beating the bushes and copsewood, to the utter destruction of our clothes and hands, we failed to start a single bird. Seeing this, my companion directed his attention to coveys of partridges, which whizzed past us at every step. *I continued my way along the*

river’s edge, picking my steps with great caution, lest I should tread on rattlesnakes or congos, hideous black serpents, extremely dangerous, which abound in the neighbourhood of water-courses.

‘I arrived at length at a bend of the river, where the water calmly reposed under the shadow of enormous fig-trees. Athwart the foliage the sun’s rays gilded the parti-coloured water-lilies, which formed the framework of this sparkling mirror. The chase was soon forgotten; and whilst I stood admiring this lovely spot, the leaves of the water-lilies were agitated, and I observed them disappear and form as it were a pathway under the water. It at once occurred to me that some large fish was taking his promenade through this delicious aquatic garden, when suddenly I recognised the long, dark brown back of a crocodile.

‘In general, when I apprehend even an imaginary danger, my first impulse is to avoid it; nevertheless, should any useful object be obtained by confronting it, my second impulse brings me into its presence. Hence I resolved on killing this amphibious creature, with a view to increase our stock of provisions. Being provided with small shot only, I charged the gun heavily with it, in the fervent hope that the animal would turn the side of his head towards me. I raised the gun to my shoulder, and stood ready to fire. But

whether it was ill-luck, or that the crocodile suspected danger, the fact is, he only exposed the front of his head. At length, however, he made the desired move; I fired, and the animal disappeared under water.

‘Have I missed him? No. Something comes up to the surface of the water. I leaped for joy on perceiving that it was the crocodile’s belly; in truth, I was very proud. This animal is so hideous, that I had no pity for him. I called out to my companion with all my strength. He at the same moment was hurling anathemas against my shot, the report of which had frightened some partridges which he had kept in view for the last quarter of an hour. Still, fearing that some accident had occurred, he ran towards me in all haste, and entered into all my delight at the sight of this enormous piece of game, which floated like a quantity of wood on the surface of the water.

‘Still our task was only half done; it remained for us to secure the prize. The river, on issuing from the basin, became very narrow and rapid. Our enormous prey floated down with the current, very slowly, to be sure; but should it once reach this narrow spot, it was entirely lost to us. The basin was very deep, so that we durst not venture in, as neither of us could swim; and although at the place where the river entered it was shallow enough, yet there was danger of being carried into

the deep water beyond our depth by the strength of the current. Quite undecided as to how we should manage, and filled with disagreeable misgivings, we followed the motion of the crocodile with anxious minds. Fortunately, a tree which floated down before it arrived crosswise, having encountered some obstacle at the point where the river issues from the basin, stopped and arrested the motion of the crocodile. Time was thus afforded to consider what was best to be done.

‘I recollected there was a farm-house on the other side of the river, about half a mile distant from us. I resolved therefore to cross the river with my clothes on, a task of no small difficulty, a dangerous one too, as I was up to my arm-pits in water. Having reached the farm-house, I found no one there, and retraced my steps quite out of sorts. The second passage of the river was even more dangerous than the first, and I was nigh falling into a hole into which the water flung itself with tremendous fury. What was to be done now? We cut a long, thick *liane*, which was to be our harpoon; and having advanced into the water up to the waist, I cast it over the crocodile’s back—for by this time his back was again uppermost—and we by this means drew him to the bank.

‘All at once, his tail commenced to lash our legs. Off we set at the top of our speed,

uttering cries of horror the while. We fancied that those jaws of eighteen inches, and armed with sixty-seven long sharp teeth, were at our heels.

“‘Sure as a gun,” said I, “he is dangerously wounded; and these movements of the tail are either the last convulsions of expiring life, or merely the agitation of the water which we set in motion.”

‘This tail, too, was to me a subject of serious reflection. Report said it was excellent for culinary purposes; it would serve therefore to save in a very satisfactory way our provisions of dried and smoked meat. Having re-charged my pistol and rifle, we returned; but the crocodile had not moved. I fired point-blank into his eye and under the shoulder, not indeed without trembling a little. He was dead at last; there could be no doubt about it now. In length he measured ten feet, and in circumference, round the middle of the carcase, four feet. He was a little too heavy to be carried by two men. We therefore abandoned him for the moment, half plunged in the water and mud, with his belly turned up to the sun, and off we started

for Castroville, to procure assistance and announce our victory.

‘Although crocodiles are not rare in the Medina, still they are very seldom killed. The news caused quite a sensation in the town. A waggon set out without delay, followed by a veritable procession, as uproarious and as gay as one can well imagine. The distance was six miles. It required six men to put the animal into the waggon. Although killed in the morning, it did not reach our garden until the evening. On opening it, we found in the stomach two stones as large as the fist, six others as large as hens’ eggs, besides a great quantity of pebbles; add to this seven or eight entire lobsters. The cooking of it was a real *jôte*. It is only the fleshy portions of the tail that are eaten. We distributed it liberally. The flesh did not strike me as well-flavoured; it was too evident that the animal had lain in the mud during the hottest part of the day. There also emanated from it a powerful odour of musk, which got into our heads and destroyed our appetites. This odour remained in our clothes for more than a week afterwards.’

CHAPTER IV.

A RIDE ON THE BACK OF A CAYMAN—THE ALLIGATOR AND THE BEAR.

ONE of the most exciting of Waterton’s adventures in South America, is that in which he narrates his efforts to entrap a

cayman, an animal of the alligator kind which infests the rivers of that country. Waterton had long desired to catch one of these monsters, and at length favourable opportunities appeared to present themselves, during his third journey along the wild and solitary banks of the Essequibo. One day, an hour before sunset, he reached the place which two men who had joined his party at the falls had pointed out as a proper one to find a cayman. There was a large creek close by, and a sand-bank gently sloping to the water. Just within the forest on this bank they cleared a place of brushwood, suspended the hammocks from the trees, and then picked up enough of decayed wood for fuel. They now baited a shark-hook with a large fish, and put it upon a board, which they had brought on purpose. This board was carried out in the canoe about forty yards into the river. By means of a string, long enough to reach the bottom of the river, and at the end of which string was fastened a stone, the board was kept, as it were, at anchor. One end of a new rope was reeved through the chain of the shark-hook, and the other end fastened to a tree on the sand-bank. It was now an hour after sunset. The sky was cloudless, and the moon shone brightly. There was not a breath of wind in the heavens, and the river seemed like a large plain of quicksilver. Every now and

then huge fish would strike and plunge in the water; then the owls and goatsuckers would continue their lamentations, and the sound of these was lost in the prowling panther's growl. Then all was still again, and silent as midnight.

The caymen were now upon the stir, and at intervals their noise could be distinguished amid that of the jaguar, the owls, the goatsuckers, and frogs. It was a singular and awful sound, like a suppressed sigh, bursting forth all of a sudden, and so loud, you might hear it above a mile off. First one emitted this horrible noise, and then another answered him; and on looking at the countenances of the people round him, Waterton could plainly see that they expected to have a cayman that night. The party were at supper when the Indian said he saw the cayman coming. Upon looking towards the place, there appeared something on the water like a black log of wood. It was so unlike anything alive, that the Englishman doubted if it were a cayman; but the Indian smiled, and said he was sure it was one, for he remembered seeing a cayman some years ago, when he was in the Essequibo. At last it gradually approached the bait, and the board began to move. The moon shone so brightly, that they could distinctly see him open his huge jaws and take in the bait. They pulled the rope. He immediately dropped the

bait, and then they saw his black head retreating from the board to the distance of a few yards, where it remained quite motionless. The monster did not seem inclined to advance again, and so they finished their supper. In about an hour's time he again put himself in motion, and took hold of the bait, but did not swallow it. They pulled the rope again, but with no better success than the first time. He retreated as usual, and came back again in about an hour. Thus the party watched till three o'clock in the morning, when, worn out with disappointment, they went to their hammocks, turned in, and fell asleep. When day broke, they found that he had contrived to get the bait from the hook, though they had tied it on with string. They had now no more hopes of taking a cayman till the return of night. The Indian went into the woods, and brought back a noble supply of game. The rest of the party went into the canoe, and proceeded up the river to shoot fish, where they got even more than they could use.

The second night's attempt upon the cayman was a repetition of the first, and was quite unsuccessful. They went fishing the day after, and returned to experience a third night's disappointment. On the fourth day, about four o'clock, they began to erect a stage among the trees, close to the water's edge. *From this they intended to shoot an arrow into the cay-*

man. At the end of this arrow was to be attached a string, which would be tied to the rope; and as soon as the cayman was struck they were to have the canoe ready, and pursue him in the river. They spent the best part of the fourth night in trying for the cayman, but all to no purpose. Waterton was now convinced that something was materially wrong. He showed one of the Indians the shark-hook, who shook his head and laughed at it, and said it would not do. When he was a boy, he had seen his father catch the cayman, and on the morrow he would make something that would answer. In the meantime they set the shark-hook, but it availed nothing; a cayman came and took it, but would not swallow it. Seeing it was useless to attend the shark-hook any longer, they left it for the night, and returned to their hammocks. Ere the Englishman fell asleep, a new idea broke upon him. He considered that, as far as the judgment of civilised man went, everything had been procured and done to ensure success. They had hooks, and lines, and baits, and patience; they had spent nights in watching, had seen the cayman come and take the bait, and yet all had ended in disappointment. Probably, he thought, the poor wild man of the woods would succeed by means of a very simple process, and thus prove to his more civilised brother, that, notwithstanding books and schools,

and shot some young caymen
about two feet long. When the
arrow struck them, tiny as they
were, they turned round and bit
it, and snapped at the men
when they went into the water
to take them up.

The day was now declining
apace, and the Indian had
made his instrument to take the
cayman. It was very simple:
there were four pieces of tough,
hard wood, a foot long, and
about as thick as a little finger,
and barbed at both ends; they
were tied round the end of the
rope in such a manner, that if
the rope be imagined to be an
arrow, these four sticks would
form the arrow's head, while
the other end expanded at equal
distances round the rope. It
was evident that, if the cayman
swallowed this—the other end
of "

them against their will, they would take themselves off, and leave me and my presents unheeded, and never return. Daddy Quashi was for applying to our guns, as usual, considering them our best and safest friends. I immediately offered to knock him down for his cowardice, and he shrunk back, begging that I would be cautious, and not get myself worried, and apologizing for his own want of resolution. My Indian was now in conversation with the others, and they asked if I would allow them to shoot a dozen arrows into him, and thus disable him. This would have ruined all. I had come above three hundred miles on purpose to get a cayman uninjured, and not to carry back a mutilated specimen. I rejected their proposition with firmness, and darted a disdainful eye upon the Indians. Daddy Quashi was again beginning to remonstrate, and I chased him on the sand-bank for a quarter of a mile. Here then we stood in silence. They wanted to kill him, and I wanted to take him alive. I now walked up and down the sand, revolving a dozen projects in my head. The canoe was at a considerable distance, and I ordered the people to bring it round to the place where we were. The mast was eight feet long, and not much thicker than my wrist. I took it out of the canoe, and *wrapped the sail round the end of it.* Now, it appeared clear

to me, that if I went down upon one knee, and held the mast in the same position as the soldier holds his bayonet when rushing to the charge, I could force it down the cayman's throat, should he come open-mouthed at me. When this was told to the Indians, they brightened up, and said they would help me to pull him out of the river. Daddy Quashi hung in the rear. I showed him a large Spanish knife, which I always carried in the waistband of my trousers; it spoke volumes to him, and he shrugged up his shoulders in absolute despair.

'The sun was just peeping over the high forests on the eastern hills, as if coming to look on and bid us act with becoming fortitude. I placed all the people at the end of the rope, and ordered them to pull till the cayman appeared on the surface of the water, and then, should he plunge, to slacken the rope, and let him go again into the deep. I now took the mast of the canoe in my hand—the sail being tied round the end of the mast—and sunk down upon one knee, about four yards from the water's edge, determining to thrust it down his throat, in case he gave me an opportunity. I certainly felt somewhat uncomfortable in this situation. The people pulled the cayman to the surface; he plunged furiously as soon as he arrived in these upper regions, and immediately went below again on

their slackening the rope. They pulled again, and out he came. This was an interesting moment. I kept my position firmly, with my eye fixed stedfastly on him. By the time the cayman was within two yards of me, I saw he was in a state of fear and perturbation. I instantly dropped the mast, sprang up, and jumped on his back, turning half round as I vaulted, so that I gained my seat, with my face in a right position. I immediately seized his fore-legs, and by main force twisted them on his back; thus they served me for a bridle. He now seemed to have recovered from his surprise, and, probably fancying himself in hostile company, he began to plunge furiously, and lashed the sands with his long and powerful tail. I was out of reach of the strokes of it, by being near his head. He continued to plunge and strike, and made my seat very uncomfortable. It must have been a fine sight for an unoccupied spectator. The people roared out in triumph, and were so vociferous, that it was some time before they heard me tell them to pull me and my beast of burden farther inland. I was apprehensive the rope might break, and then there would have been every chance of going down to the regions under water with the cayman. The people now dragged us above forty yards on the sand: it was the first and last time I was ever on a cayman's back. Should it be

asked how I managed to keep my seat, I would answer, I hunted some years with Lord Darlington's fox-hounds.'

After repeated attempts to regain his liberty, the cayman gave in, and became tranquil through exhaustion. They now managed to tie up his jaws, and firmly secured his fore-feet; but they had another severe struggle for superiority before the huge monster was finally conveyed to the canoe, and then to the place where they had suspended the hammocks, where, after he was slain, the enthusiastic naturalist commenced dissecting him.

THE ALLIGATOR AND THE BEAR.

'On a scorching day in the middle of June 1830, whilst I was seated under a venerable live oak, on the evergreen banks of the Teche, waiting for the fish to bite, I was startled by the roaring of some animal in the cane-brake a short distance below me, apparently getting ready for action. These notes of preparation were quickly succeeded by the sound of feet trampling down the cane and scattering the shells. As soon as I recovered from my surprise, I resolved to take a view of what I supposed to be two prairie bulls mixing impetuously in battle, an occurrence so common in this country and season.

'When I reached the scene of action, how great was my astonishment, instead of bulls, to behold a large black bear

reared upon his hind-legs, with his fore-paws raised aloft, as if to make a plunge! His face was besmeared with white foam, sprinkled with red, which, dropping from his mouth, rolled down his shaggy breast. Frantic from the smarting of his wounds, he stood gnashing his teeth and growling at the enemy. A few paces in his rear was the cane-brake from which he had issued. On a bank of snow-white shells, spotted with blood, in battle array, stood Bruin's foe, in shape of an alligator, fifteen feet long! He was standing on tiptoe, his back curved upwards, and his mouth thrown open, displayed in his wide jaws two large tusks and rows of teeth. His tail, six feet long, raised from the ground, was constantly waving, like a boxer's arm, to gather force; his big eyes starting from his head, glared upon Bruin, whilst sometimes uttering hissing cries, then roaring like a bull.

'The combatants were a few paces apart when I stole upon them, the "first round" being over. They remained in the attitudes described for about a minute, swelling themselves as large as possible, but marking the slightest motions with attention and great caution, as if each felt confident that he had met his match. During this pause I was concealed behind a tree, watching their manœuvres in silence. I could scarcely believe my eyesight. What, thought I, *can these two beasts have to fight about?* Some

readers may doubt the tale on this account; but if it had been a bull-fight, no one would have doubted it, because every one knows what they are fighting for. The same reasoning will not always apply to a man-fight. Men frequently fight when they are sober, for no purpose except to ascertain which is the better man. We must then believe that beasts will do the same, unless we admit that the instinct of beasts is superior to the boasted reason of man. Whether they did fight upon the present occasion without cause, I cannot say, as I was not present when the affray began. A bear and a ram have been known to fight, and so did the bear and the alligator, whilst I prudently kept in the background, preserving the strictest neutrality betwixt the belligerents.

'Bruin, though evidently baffled, had a firm look, which showed he had not lost confidence in himself. If the difficulty of the undertaking had once deceived him, he was preparing to resume it. Accordingly, letting himself down upon all fours, he ran furiously at the alligator. The alligator was ready for him, and throwing his head and body partly round to avoid the onset, met Bruin half way with a blow of his tail, which rolled him on the shells. Old Bruin was not to be put off by one hint. Three times in rapid succession he rushed at the alligator, and was as often repulsed in the same manner, being

knocked back by each blow just far enough to give the alligator time to recover the swing of his tail before he returned. The tail of the alligator sounded like a flail against the coat of hair on Bruin's head and shoulders; but he bore it without flinching, still pushing on to come to close quarters with his scaly foe. He made his fourth charge with a degree of dexterity which those who have never seen this clumsy animal exercising would suppose him incapable of. This time he got so close to the alligator before his tail struck him, that the blow came with half its usual effect; the alligator was upset by the charge; and before he could recover his feet, Bruin grasped him round the body below the fore-legs, and holding him down on his back, seized one of his legs in his mouth. The alligator was now in a desperate situation, notwithstanding his coat of mail, which is softer on his belly than his back, from which

"The darted steel with idle shivers flies."

As a Kentuck would say, "he was getting up fast." Here, if I dared to speak, and had supposed he could understand English, I should have uttered the encouraging exhortation of the poet—

"Now, gallant knight, now hold thy own;
No maiden's arms are round thee thrown."

'The alligator attempted in vain to bite; pressed down as he was, he could not open his mouth, the upper jaw of which only moves; and his neck was so stiff, he could not turn his head short round. The amphibious beast fetched a scream in despair, but was not yet entirely overcome. Writhing his tail in agony, he happened to strike it against a small tree that stood next the bank; aided by this purchase, he made a convulsive flounder, which precipitated himself and Bruin, locked together, into the river. The bank from which they fell was four feet high, and the water below seven feet deep. The tranquil stream received the combatants with a loud splash, then closed over them in silence. A volley of ascending bubbles announced their arrival at the bottom, where the battle ended. Presently Bruin rose again, scrambled up the bank, cast a hasty glance back at the river, and made off, dripping, to the cane-brake. I never saw the alligator afterwards to know him; no doubt he escaped in the water, which he certainly would not have done had he remained a few minutes longer on land. Bruin was forced by nature to let go his grip under water, to save his own life; I therefore think he is entitled to the credit of the victory. Besides, by implied consent, the parties were bound to finish the fight on land, where it began, and so Bruin understood it.'

CHAPTER V.

ELEPHANT-HUNTING IN CEYLON. BY SIR SAMUEL BAKER.

[WHEN Bruce, in his Abyssinian travels, recounted the method by which the natives attacked and slew the gigantic elephant, namely, by severing the tendon of the hind-leg with a sword, it was uncredited, and he was accused of telling travellers' tales; but recent Abyssinian explorations have proved that Bruce was right. Sir Samuel Baker, in his most interesting volume, *The Nile Tributaries of Abyssinia, and the Sword Hunters of the Hamran Arabs*, gives a graphic description of this exciting and dangerous sport. Mounted on swift and sure-footed steeds trained to the chase, the hunters carefully approach their intended victim. One of them faces the elephant, riding as closely to him as possible, carefully watching the wary beast so as to be ready to turn and fly the moment he charges. With a shrill scream of rage the elephant dashes at his insulting foe, meaning mischief; round turns the horse as though upon a pivot and away he scampers, the huge beast in full chase, his trunk dangerously close to the horse's tail. At this moment two other hunters swoop down in the rear of the elephant, dashing close to his hind quarters. When close to the tail one draws his sword, springs from his horse, which *his companion catches*, and in two or three bounds on foot is

close behind the elephant: there is a bright flash of the sword, followed by a dull crack as it cuts through skin and sinews and settles deep in the bone, about twelve inches above the foot. The elephant comes to a dead halt, the hunter jumps nimbly on one side and vaults quickly into his saddle, naked sword in hand. Meantime, the hunter who leads the chase turns round and again faces the elephant, throws dirt into his face, inciting him to charge again; but this he finds impossible—the dislocated foot turns up in front like an old shoe. While he hesitates, quick as lightning the sharp sword slashes the remaining leg. The arteries of the leg are divided, and the magnificent animal quickly bleeds to death. This is how the elephant is hunted in Abyssinia; but in Ceylon another method is pursued, which we will describe in the words of Sir Samuel himself, who has kindly allowed us to make the extract from his works on Ceylon.]

‘The trunk is the wonderful monitor of all danger to an elephant, from whatever cause it may proceed. This may arise from the approach of man, or from the character of the country; in either case the trunk exerts its power; in one by the acute sense of smell, in the other by the continuation of the sense of scent

and touch. In dense jungles, where the elephant cannot see a yard before him, the sensitive trunk feels the hidden way; and when the roaring of waterfalls admonishes him of the presence of ravines and precipices, the never-failing trunk lowered upon the ground keeps him advised of every inch of his path.

‘Their power of determining whether bogs or the mud at the bottom of tanks are deep or shallow is beyond my comprehension. Although I have seen elephants in nearly every position, I have never seen one inextricably fixed in a swamp. This is the more extraordinary, as their habits induce them to frequent the most extensive morasses, deep lakes, muddy tanks, and estuaries; and yet I have never seen even a young one get into a scrape by being overwhelmed. There appears to be a natural instinct which warns them in their choice of ground, the same as that which influences the buffalo, and in like manner guides him through his swampy haunts. It is a grand sight to see a large herd of elephants feeding in a fine lake in broad daylight. This is seldom witnessed in these days, as the number of guns have so disturbed the elephants in Ceylon, that they rarely come out to drink until late in the evening or during the night; but some time ago I had a fine view of a grand herd in a lake in the middle of the day.

‘I was out shooting with a

great friend of mine, who is a brother in arms against the game of Ceylon, and than whom a better sportsman does not breathe, F. H. Palliser, Esq., and we had arrived at a wild and miserable place while *en route* home after a jungle trip. Neither of us was feeling well; we had been for some weeks in the most unhealthy part of the country, and I was just recovering from a touch of dysentery: altogether, we were looking forward with pleasure to our return to comfortable quarters, and for the time we were tired of jungle life. However, we arrived at a little village about sixty miles south of Batticaloa, called Gollagangevelléwévé, and a very long name it was for so small a place; but the natives insisted that a great number of elephants were in the neighbourhood. They also declared that the elephants infested the neighbouring tank even during the forenoon, and that they nightly destroyed their embankments, and would not be driven away, as there was not a single gun possessed by the village with which to scare them. This looked all right; so we loaded the guns, and started without loss of time, as it was then one P.M., and the natives described the tank as a mile distant. Being perfectly conversant with the vague idea of space described by a Cingalese mile, we mounted our horses, and accompanied by about five-and-twenty villagers, twenty of whom I wished at Jericho, we started.

‘Whether or not it was because I did not feel in brisk health I do not know, but somehow or other I had a presentiment that the natives had misled us, and that we should not find the elephants in the tank, but that, as usual, we should be led up to some dense, thorny jungle, and told that the elephants were somewhere in that direction. Not being very sanguine, I had accordingly taken no trouble about my gun-bearers, and I saw several of my rifles in the hands of the villagers, and only one of my regular gun-bearers had followed me; the rest, having already had a morning’s march, were glad of an excuse to remain behind. Our route lay for about a quarter of a mile through deserted paddy-land and low jungle, after which we entered fine open jungle and forest. Unfortunately, the recent heavy rains had filled the tank, which had overflowed the broken dam and partially flooded the forest. This was in all parts within 200 yards from the dam a couple of feet deep in water, with a proportionate amount of sticky mud beneath; and through this we splashed until the dam appeared about fifty yards on our right. It was a simple earthen mound, which rose about ten feet above the level of the forest, and was studded with immense trees, apparently the growth of ages. We knew that the tank lay on the opposite side; but we *continued our course parallel with the dam, until we had rid-*

den about a mile from the village, the natives for a wonder having truly described the distance.

‘Here our guide, having motioned us to stop, ran quickly up the dam to take a look out on the opposite side. He almost immediately beckoned us to come up. This we did without loss of time; and knowing that the game was in view, I ordered the horses to retire for about a quarter of a mile. On our arrival on the dam there was a fine sight. The lake was about five miles round, and was quite full of water, the surface of which was covered with a scanty but tall, rushy grass. In the lake, browsing upon the grass, we counted twenty-three elephants, and there were many little ones, no doubt, that we could not distinguish in such rank vegetation. Five large elephants were not more than 120 paces distant; the remaining eighteen were in a long line about a quarter of a mile from the shore, feeding in deep water. We were well concealed by the various trees which grew upon the dam, and we passed half an hour in watching the manoeuvres of the great beasts as they bathed and sported in the cool water. However, this was not elephant-shooting, and the question was how to get at them. The natives had no idea of the sport, as they seemed to think it very odd that we did not fire at those within a hundred paces’ distance. I now regretted my absent gun-bearers, as I plainly saw that

these village people would be worse than useless.

‘We determined to take a stroll along the base of the dam to reconnoitre the ground, as at present it seemed impossible to make an attack; and even were the elephants within the forest, there appeared to be no possibility of following them up through such deep water and heavy ground with any chance of success. However, they were not in the forest, being safe, belly and shoulder deep, in the tank. We strolled through mud and water knee deep for a few hundred paces, when we suddenly came upon the spot where in ages past the old dam had been carried away. Here the natives had formed a mud embankment, strengthened by sticks and wattles. Poor fellows! we were not surprised at their wishing the elephants destroyed: the repair of their fragile dam was now a daily occupation; for the elephants, as though out of pure mischief, had chosen this spot as their thoroughfare to and from the lake, and the dam was trodden down in all directions. We found that the margin of the forest was everywhere flooded to a width of about 200 yards, after which it was tolerably dry; we therefore returned to our former post.

‘It struck me that the only way to secure a shot at the herd would be to employ a ruse, which I had once practised successfully some years ago. Accordingly, we sent the greater

part of the villagers for about half a mile along the edge of the lake, with orders to shout and make a grand hullabaloo on arriving at their station. It seemed almost probable that, upon being disturbed, the elephants would retreat to the forest by their usual thoroughfare; we accordingly stood on the alert, ready for a rush to any given point which the herd should attempt in their retreat. Some time passed in expectation, when a sudden yell broke from the far point, as though twenty demons had cramp in the stomach. Gallant fellows are the Cingalese at making a noise, and a grand effect this had upon the elephants; up went tails and trunks, the whole herd closed together, and made a simultaneous rush for their old thoroughfare. Away we skipped through the water, straight in shore through the forest, until we reached the dry ground, when, turning sharp to our right, we soon halted exactly opposite the point at which we knew the elephants would enter the forest. This was grand excitement; we had a great start of the herd, so that we had plenty of time to arrange gun-bearers and take our positions for the *rencontre*. In the meantime, the roar of the water caused by the rapid passage of so many large animals approached nearer and nearer. Palliser and I had taken splendid positions so as to command either side of the herd on their arrival, with our gun-bearers

squatted around us behind our respective trees, while the non-sporting village followers, who now began to think the matter rather serious, and totally devoid of fun, scrambled up various large trees with ape-like activity.

'A few minutes of glorious suspense, and the grand crash and roar of broken water approached close at hand, and we distinguished the mighty phalanx headed by the largest elephants bearing down exactly upon us, and not a hundred yards distant. Here was luck! There was a grim and very murderous smile of satisfaction on either countenance as we quietly cocked the rifles and awaited the onset; it was our intention to let half the herd pass us before we opened upon them, as we should then be in the very centre of the mass, and be able to get good and rapid shooting. On came the herd in gallant style, throwing the spray from the muddy water, and keeping a direct line for our concealed position. They were within twenty yards, and we were still undiscovered, when those rascally villagers, who had already taken to the trees, scrambled still higher in their fright at the close approach of the elephants, and by this movement they gave immediate alarm to the leaders of the herd. Round went the colossal heads, right about was the word, and away dashed the whole herd back towards the tank. In the same instant we made a rush in among them,

and I floored one of the big leaders by a shot behind the ear, and immediately after, as bad luck would have it, Palliser and I both took the same bird, and down went another to the joint shots. Palliser then got another shot, and bagged one more, when the herd pushed straight out to the deep lake, with the exception of a few elephants, who turned to the right, after which Palliser hurried through the mud and water, while I put on all steam in chase of the main body of the herd. It is astonishing to what an amount a man can get up this said steam in such a pitch of excitement. However, it was of no use in this case, as I was soon hip-deep in water, and there was an end to all pursuit in that direction.

'It immediately struck me that the elephants would again retreat to some other part of the forest, after having made a circuit in the tank; I accordingly waded back at my best speed to *terra firma*, and then, striking off to my right, I ran along parallel to the water for about half a mile, fully expecting to meet the herd once more on their entrance to the jungle. It was now that I deplored the absence of my regular gun-bearers; the village people had no taste for this gigantic scale of amusement, and the men who carried my guns would not keep up. Fortunately, Carrasi, the best gun-bearer, was there, and he had taken another loaded

rifle, after handing me that which he had carried at the onset. I waited a few moments for the lagging men, and succeeded in getting them well together, just as I heard the rush of water as the elephants were again entering the jungle, not far in advance of the spot upon which I stood.

'This time they were sharp on the *qui vive*, and the bulls being well to the front, were keeping a bright look-out. It was in vain that I endeavoured to conceal myself until the herd had got well into the forest; the gun-bearers behind me did not take the same precaution, and the leading elephants both saw and winded us when a hundred paces distant. This time, however, they were determined to push on for a piece of thicker jungle which they knew lay in this direction; and upon seeing me running towards them, they did not turn back to the lake, but slightly altered their course in an oblique direction, still continuing to push on through the forest, which I was approaching at right angles with the herd. Hallooing and screaming at them with all my might, to tease some of the old bulls into a charge, I ran at top speed through the fine open forest, and soon got among a whole crowd of half-grown elephants, at which I would not fire. There were a lot of fine beasts pushing along in the front, and towards these I ran as hard as I could go. Unfortunately the herd, seeing me so near, and gaining upon them,

took to the ruse of a beaten fleet, and scattered in all directions; but I kept a few big fellows in view, who were still pretty well together, and managed to overtake the rearmost and knock him over. Up went the tail and trunk of one of the leading bulls at the report of the shot, and trumpeting shrilly, he ran first to one side and then to the other, with his ears cocked, and sharply turning his head to either side. I knew this fellow had his monkey up, and that a little teasing would bring him round for a charge. I therefore redoubled my shouts and yells, and kept on in full chase, as the elephants were straining every nerve to reach a piece of thick jungle within a couple of hundred paces.

'I could not go any faster, and I saw that the herd, which was thirty or forty yards ahead of me, would gain the jungle before I could overtake them, as they were going at a slapping pace, and I was tolerably blown with a long run at full speed, part of which had been through deep mud and water. But I still teased the bull, who was now in such an excited state, that I felt convinced he would turn to charge. The leading elephants rushed into the thick jungle closely followed by the others, and, to my astonishment, my excited friend, who had lagged to the rear, followed their example. But it was only for a few seconds, for, on entering the thick bushes, he wheeled sharp

round, and came rushing out in full charge. This was very plucky, but very foolish, as his retreat was secured when in the thick jungle, and yet he courted further battle. This he soon had enough of, as I bagged him in his onset with my remaining barrel by the forehead shot.

‘I now heard a tremendous roaring of elephants behind me, as though another victim was coming in from the tank; this I hoped to meet; I therefore re-loaded the empty rifles as quickly as possible, and ran towards the spot. The roaring still continued, and was apparently almost stationary; and what was my disappointment on arrival, to find, in place of the expected herd, a young elephant of about four feet high, who had missed the main body in the retreat, and was now roaring for his departed friends. These young things are excessively foolhardy and wilful, and he charged me the moment I arrived. As I laid the rifle upon the ground, instead of firing at him, the rascally gun-bearers, with the exception of Carrasi, threw down the rifles, and ran up the trees like so many monkeys, just as I had jumped on one side and caught the young elephant by the tail. He was far too strong for me to hold; and although I dug my heels into the ground, and held on with all my might, he fairly ran away with me through the forest. Carrasi now came to my assistance, and likewise held

on by his tail; but away we went like the tender to a steam-engine; wherever the elephant went, there we were dragged in company. Another man now came to the rescue; but his assistance was not of the slightest use, as the animal was so powerful, and of such weight, that he could have run away with half a dozen of us, unless his legs were tied. Unfortunately we had no rope, or I could have secured him immediately; and seeing that we had no power over him whatever, I was obliged to run back for one of the guns to shoot him. On my return, it was laughable to see the pace at which he was running away with the two men, who were holding on to his tail like grim death, the elephant not having ceased roaring during the run. I accordingly settled him, and returned to have a little conversation with the rascals who were still perched in the trees.

‘In the meantime, Palliser had heard the roaring of the elephant, followed by the screaming and yelling of the coolies, and succeeded by a shot, and he hastened towards my direction; this caused him a very laborious run, and he arrived thoroughly blown. If the ground had been even tolerably dry, we should have killed a large number of elephants out of this herd; but as it happened, in such deep mud and water, the elephants had it all their own way, and our joint bag could not produce more than seven tails. However,

tion of the district is entirely inhabited by Moormen. They are a fine race of people, far superior to the Cingalese. They are supposed to be descended from Arabian origin, and they hold the Mahometan religion. The Rhatamahatmeya, or head man of the district, resides at Doolana, and he had received us in a most hospitable manner. We therefore started direct from his house. Passing through a belt of low thick jungle, exactly in front of the village, we entered upon the plain which formed the border of the tank. This lake is about three miles in length, but is not more than a mile in width in its widest part, and in some places is very much less. The opposite side of the tank is fine open forest, which grows to the water's edge, and in some parts flooded during

view with they appear giants. ately informed a notorious sociated dread of There we ferocity the time Crossing canoe, w forest up It was a which earth. and so was very we at tracks o and full was a wo but the bough at their no

at every step, and varied our struggles by occasionally flying sprawling over the slippery roots of the trees.

‘The elephants ran clean away from us ; and the elephant-catchers, who knew nothing of the rules for carrying spare guns, entering into the excitement of the chase, and free from the impediment of shoes, ran lightly along the muddy ground, and were soon out of sight as well as the elephants. Still we struggled on, when presently we heard a shout, and then the trumpet of an elephant. Shot after shot then followed, with a chorus of shouts ; they were actually firing all our spare guns ! In a few moments we were up with them. In a beautifully open piece of forest, upon good hard ground, these fellows were having a regular battle with the rogue. He was charging them with the greatest fury ; but he no sooner selected one man for his object, than these active fellows diverted his rage by firing into his hind quarters, and yelling at him. At this he would immediately turn and charge another man, when he would again be assailed as before. When we arrived, he immediately charged B., and came straight at him, but offered a beautiful shot in doing so, and B. dropped him dead.

‘The firing had disturbed a herd of elephants from the forest, and they had swam the large river in the neighbourhood, which was at that time so swollen

that we could not cross it. We therefore struck off to the edge of the forest, where the waters of the lake washed the roots of the trees, and from this point we had a fine view of the greater portion of the lake. All the rogues we had at first counted had retired to their several entrances in the forest, except the pair of desperadoes already mentioned : they knew no fear, and had not heeded the shots fired. They were tempting baits, and we determined to get them if possible. These two villains were standing belly-deep in the water, about a quarter of a mile from the shore ; and the question was, “How were we to get near them ?” Having observed that the other rogues had retreated to the forest at the noise of the firing, it struck me that we might by some ruse induce these two champions to follow their example, and by meeting them on their entrance we might bring them to action.

‘Not far from our left, a long shallow bank, covered with reeds, stretched far into the tank. By wading knee-deep along this shoal, a man might approach within two hundred paces of the elephants, and would be nearly abreast of them. I therefore gave a man a gun, and instructed him to advance to the extreme end of the shallows, taking care to conceal himself in the rushes, and when at the nearest point he was to fire at the elephants. This, I hoped, would drive them to the

jungle where we should endeavour to meet them. The Moor-man entrusted on this mission was a sticky fellow, and he started off, taking a double-barrelled gun and a few charges of powder and ball. The elephant-catchers were delighted with the idea, and we patiently awaited the result. About a quarter of an hour passed away, when we suddenly saw a puff of white smoke spring from the green rushes at the point of the sand-bank. A few moments after, we heard the report of the gun, and we saw the ball splash in the water close to the elephants. They immediately cocked their ears, and throwing their trunks high in the air, they endeavoured to wind the enemy; but they did not move, and they shortly again commenced feeding upon the water-lilies. Another shot from the same place once more disturbed them, and while they winded the unseen enemy, two more shots in quick succession from the old quarter decided their opinion, and they stalked proudly through the water to the shore.

‘Our satisfaction was great, but the delight of the elephant-catchers knew no bounds. Away they started along the shores of the lake, hopping from root to root, skipping through the mud, which was more than a foot deep, their light forms hardly sinking in the tough surface. A nine-stone man certainly has an advantage over one of twelve on this ground; added to this,

I was carrying the long two-ounce rifle of sixteen pounds, which, with ammunition, etc., made up about thirteen and a half stone, in deep stiff clay. I was literally half-way up the calf of my leg in mud at every step, while these light naked fellows tripped like snipes over the sodden ground. Vainly I called upon them to go easily; their moment of excitement was at its full pitch, and they were soon out of sight among the trees and underwood, taking all the spare guns, except the four-ounce rifle, which, weighing twenty-one pounds, effectually prevented the bearer from leaving us behind. What added materially to the annoyance of losing the spare guns, was the thoughtless character of the advance. I felt sure that these fellows would outrun the position of the elephants, which, if they had continued in a direct route, would have entered the jungle within three hundred yards of our first station.

‘We had slipped and plunged and struggled over this distance, when we suddenly were checked in our advance. We had entered a small plot of deep mud and rank grass surrounded upon all sides by dense rattan jungle. This stuff is one woven mass of hooked thorns: long tendrils, armed in the same manner, although not thicker than whip-cord, wind themselves round the parent canes, and form a jungle which even elephants dislike to enter. To men

these jungles are perfectly impervious. Half-way to our knees in mud, we stood in this small open space of about thirty feet by twenty. Around us was an opaque screen of this impenetrable jungle; the lake lay about fifty yards upon our left, behind the thick rattan. The gun-bearers were gone ahead somewhere, and were far in advance. We were at a standstill. Leaning upon my long rifle, I stood within four feet of the wall of jungle which divided us from the lake. I said to B., "The trackers are all gone wrong, and have gone too far. I am convinced that the elephants must have entered somewhere near this place." Little did I think that at that very moment they were within a few feet of us. B. was standing behind me, on the opposite side of the small open, or about seven yards from the jungle.

'I suddenly heard a deep guttural sound in the thick rattan within four feet of me; in the same instant, the whole tangled fabric bent over me, and bursting asunder, showed the furious head of an elephant with uplifted trunk in full charge upon me. I had barely time to cock my rifle, and the barrel almost touched him as I fired. I knew it was in vain, as his trunk was raised. B. fired his right-hand barrel at the same moment, without effect, from the *same cause*. I jumped on one side, and attempted to spring

through the deep mud. It was of no use, the long grass entangled my feet, and in another instant I lay sprawling in the enraged elephant's path, within *a foot* of him. In that moment of suspense, I expected to hear the crack of my own bones as his massive foot would be upon me. It was an atom of time. I heard the crack of a gun: it was B.'s last barrel. I felt a spongy weight strike my heel, and turning quickly heels overhead, I rolled a few paces, and regained my feet. That last shot had floored him just as he was upon me; the end of his trunk had fallen upon my heel. Still he was not dead, but struck at me with his trunk as I passed round his head to give him a finish with the four-ounce rifle, which I had snatched from our solitary gun-bearer.

'My back was touching the jungle from which the rogue had just charged, and I was almost in the act of firing through the temple of the still struggling elephant, when I heard a tremendous crash in the jungle behind me similar to the first, and the savage scream of an elephant. I saw the ponderous fore-leg cleave its way through the jungle directly upon me. I threw my whole weight back against the thick rattans to avoid him, and the next moment his foot was planted within an inch of mine. His lofty head was passing over me in full charge at B., who was unloaded, when, holding the four-

ounce rifle perpendicularly, I fired exactly under his throat. I thought he would fall upon me and crush me ; but this shot was the only chance, as B. was perfectly helpless. A dense cloud of smoke from the heavy charge of powder for the moment obscured everything. I had jumped out of the way the instant after firing. The elephant did not fall, but he had his death-wound : the ball had severed his jugular, and the blood poured from the wound. He stopped ; but collecting his stunned energies, he still blundered forward towards B. He, however, avoided him by running to one side, and the wounded brute staggered on through the jungle. We now loaded the guns ; the first rogue was quite dead, and we followed in pursuit of rogue number two. We heard distant shots, and upon arriving at the spot we found the gun-bearers. They had

heard the wounded elephant crashing through the jungle, and they had given him a volley just as he was crossing the river, over which the herd had escaped in the morning. They described the elephant as perfectly helpless from his wound, and they imagined that he had fallen in the thick bushes on the opposite bank of the river. As I before mentioned, we could not cross the river on account of the torrent ; but in a few days it subsided, and the elephant was found lying dead on the spot where they supposed he had fallen.

‘Thus happily ended the destruction of this notable pair ; they had proved themselves all that we had heard of them, and by their cunning dodge of hiding in the thick jungle they had nearly made sure of us. We killed three rogues that morning, and we returned to our quarters well satisfied.’

CHAPTER VI.

ADVENTURE WITH A BUFFALO.

‘THE haunts of the buffalo are in the hottest parts of Ceylon. In the neighbourhood of lakes, swamps, and extensive plains, the buffalo exists in large herds ; wallowing in the soft mire, and passing two-thirds of his time in the water itself, he may be almost termed amphibious. He is about the size of a large ox, of immense bone and strength,

very active, and his hide is almost free from hair, giving a disgusting appearance to his india-rubber-like skin. He carries his head in a peculiar manner, the horns thrown back, and his nose projecting on a level with his forehead, thus securing himself from a front shot in a fatal part. This renders him a dangerous enemy, as

he will receive any number of balls from a small gun in the throat and chest without evincing the least symptom of distress. The shoulder is the acknowledged point to aim at, but from his disposition to face the guns, this is a difficult shot to obtain. Should he succeed in catching his antagonist, his fury knows no bounds, and he gores his victim to death, trampling and kneeling upon him till he is satisfied life is extinct.

‘This sport would not be very dangerous in the forests, where the buffalo could be easily stalked, and where escape would also be rendered less difficult in case of accident; but as he is generally met with upon the open plains, free from a single tree, he must be killed when once brought to bay, or he will soon exhibit his qualifications for mischief. There is a degree of uncertainty in their character which much increases the danger of the pursuit. A buffalo may retreat at first sight with every symptom of cowardice, and thus induce a too eager pursuit, when he will suddenly become the assailant. I cannot explain their character better than by describing the first wild buffaloes that I ever saw :—

‘I had not been long in Ceylon; but having arrived in the island for the sake of its wild sports, I had not been idle, and I had already made a considerable bag of large game. Like most novices, however, I

was guilty of one great fault. I despised the game, and gave no heed to the many tales of danger and hair-breadth escapes which attended the pursuit of wild animals. This carelessness on my part arose from my first *début* having been extremely lucky; most shots had told well, and the animal had been killed with such apparent ease, that I had learnt to place an implicit reliance in the rifle. The real fact was, that I was like many others; I had slaughtered a number of animals without understanding their habits, and I was perfectly ignorant of the sport. This is now many years ago, and it was then my first visit to the island. Some places that were good spots for shooting in those days have since that time been much disturbed, and are now no longer attractive to my eyes. One of these places is Minneria Lake.

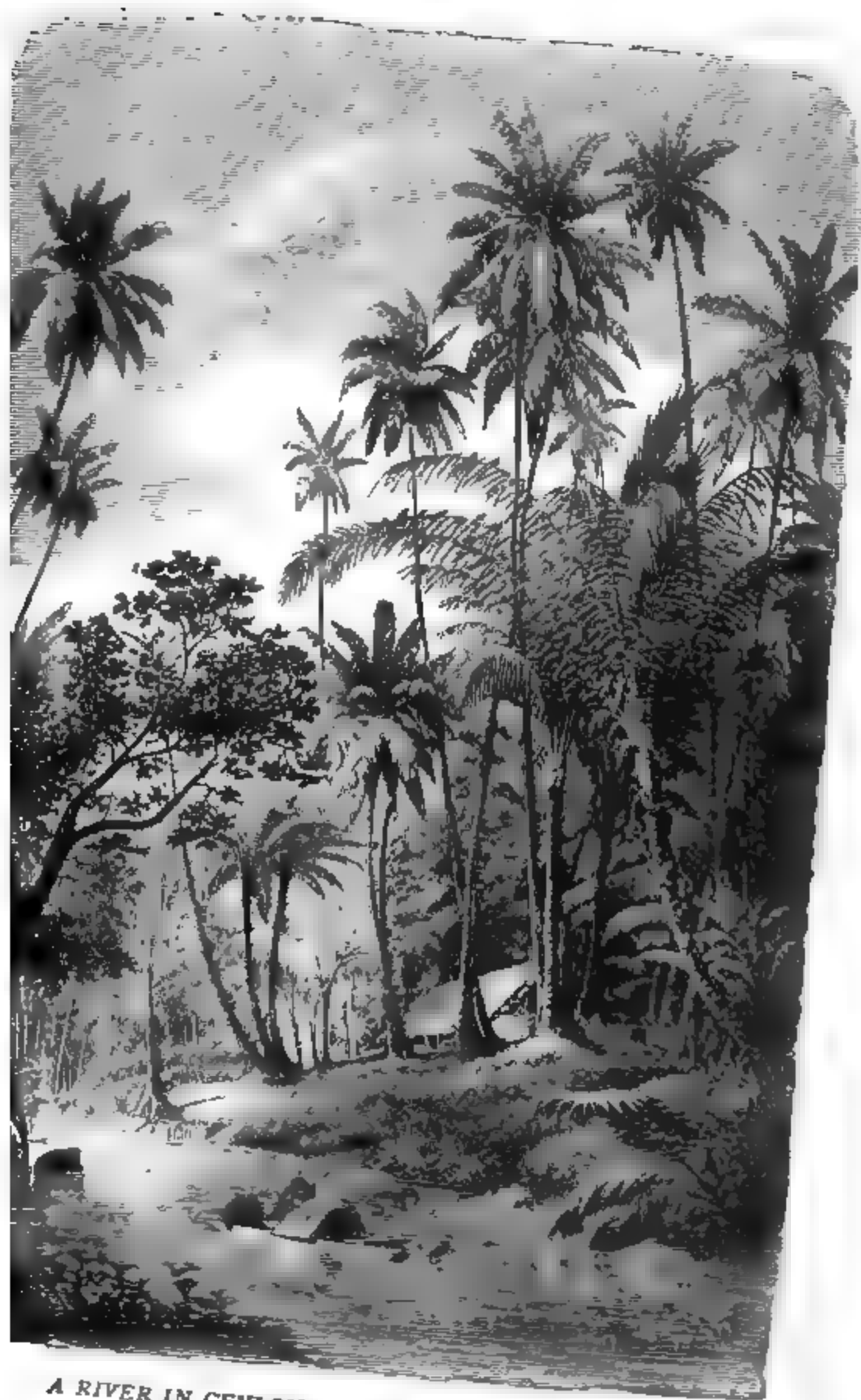
‘I was on a shooting trip, accompanied by my brother, whom I will designate as B. We had passed a toilsome day in pushing and dragging our ponies for twenty miles along a narrow path through thick jungle, which half a dozen natives in advance were opening before us with bill-hooks. This had at one time been a good path, but was then overgrown. It is now an acknowledged bridle-road. At four P.M., and eighty miles from Kandy, we emerged from the jungle, and the view of Minneria Lake burst upon us, fully repaying us for our day’s march. It

was a lovely afternoon. The waters of the lake, which is twenty miles in circumference, were burnished by the setting sun. The surrounding plains were as green as an English meadow, and beautiful forest trees bordered the extreme boundaries of the plains like giant warders of the adjoining jungle. Long promontories densely wooded stretched far into the waters of the lake, forming sheltered nooks and bays teeming with wild-fowl. The deer browsed in herds on the wide extent of plain, or lay beneath the shade of the spreading branches. Every feature of lovely scenery was here presented. In some spots, groves of trees grew to the very water's edge; in others, the wide plains, free from a single stem or bush, stretched for miles along the edge of the lake; thickly-wooded hills bordered the extreme end of its waters, and distant blue mountains mingled their dim summits with the clouds. It was a lovely scene, which we enjoyed in silence, while our ponies feasted upon the rich grass.

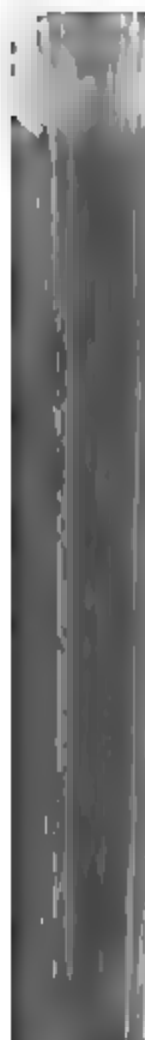
The village of Minneria was about three miles farther on, and our coolies, servants, and baggage were all far behind us. We had therefore no rifles or guns at hand, except a couple of short guns, which were carried by our horse keepers; for these we had a few balls. For about half an hour we waited in the impatient expectation of the arrival of our servants with the

rifles. The afternoon was wearing away, and they did not appear. We could wait no longer, but determined to take a stroll and examine the country. We therefore left our horses and proceeded.

The grass was most verdant, about the height of a field fit for the scythe in England, but not so thick. From this the snipe rose at every twenty or thirty paces, although the ground was perfectly dry. Crossing a large meadow, and skirting the banks of the lake, from which the ducks and teal rose in large flocks, we entered a long neck of jungle, which stretched far into the lake. This was not above two hundred paces in width, and we soon emerged upon an extensive plain bordered by fine forests, the waters of the lake stretching far away upon our left, like a sheet of gold. A few large rocks rose above the surface near the shore; these were covered with various kinds of wild-fowl. The principal tenants of the plain were wild buffaloes. A herd of about a hundred were lying in a swampy hollow about a quarter of a mile from us. Several bulls were dotted about the green surface of the level plain, and on the opposite shores of the lake were many dark patches, undistinguishable in the distance; these were in reality herds of buffaloes. There was not a sound in the wide expanse before us, except the harsh cry of the water-fowl, that our presence had already



A RIVER IN CEYLON — *Adventure and Peril* p. 56



disturbed; not a breath of air moved the leaves of the trees which shadowed us; and the whole scene was that of undisturbed nature. The sun had now sunk low upon the horizon, and the air was comparatively cool. The multitude of buffaloes enchanted us, and with our two light double-barrels, we advanced to the attack of the herd before us.

‘We had not left the security of the forest many seconds before we were observed. The herd started up from their muddy bed, and gazed at us with astonishment. It was a fair open plain of some thousand acres, bounded by the forest that we had just quitted on the one side, and by the lake on the other; thus there was no cover for our advance, and all we could do was to push on. As we approached the herd, they ranged up in a compact body, presenting a very regular line in front. From this line seven large bulls stepped forth, and from their vicious appearance, seemed disposed to show fight. In the meantime we were running up, and were soon within thirty paces of them. At this distance, the main body of the herd suddenly wheeled round, and thundered across the plain in full retreat. One of the bulls at the same moment charged straight at us; but when within twenty paces of the guns, he turned to one side, and instantly *received two balls in the shoulder, B. and I having fired at the*

same moment. As luck would have it, his blade-bone was broken, and he fell upon his knees; but recovering himself in an instant, he retreated on three legs to the water. We now received assistance from a most unexpected quarter. One of the large bulls, his companions, charged after him with great fury, and soon overtaking the wounded beast, struck him full in the side, throwing him over with a great shock on the muddy border of the lake. Here the wounded animal lay unable to rise, and his conqueror commenced a slow retreat across the plain.

‘Leaving B. to extinguish the wounded buffalo, I gave chase to the retreating bully. At an easy canter he would gain a hundred paces, and then turning, he would face me; throwing his nose up, and turning his head on one side with a short grunt, he would advance quickly for a few paces, and then again retreat as I continued to approach. In this manner he led me a chase of about a mile along the banks of the lake; but he appeared determined not to bring the fight to an issue at close quarters. Cursing his cowardice, I fired a long shot at him, and re-loading with my last spare ball, I continued the chase, led on by ignorance and excitement.

‘The lake in one part stretched in a narrow creek into the plain, and the bull now directed his course into the angle formed by

this turn. I thought that I had him in a corner, and redoubling my exertions, I gained upon him considerably. He retreated slowly to the very edge of the creek, and I had gained so fast upon him, that I was not thirty paces distant, when he plunged into the water, and commenced swimming across the creek. This was not more than sixty yards in breadth, and I knew that I could now bring him to action. Running round the borders of the creek as fast as I could, I arrived at the opposite side, on his intended landing-place, just as his black form reared from the deep water and gained the shallows, into which I had waded knee-deep to meet him. I now experienced that pleasure as he stood sullenly eyeing me within fifteen paces. Poor, stupid fellow! I would willingly, in my ignorance, have betted ten to one upon the shot, so certain was I of his death in another instant.

'I took a quick but steady aim at his chest, at the point of connection with the throat. The smoke of the barrel passed to one side. There he stood; he had not flinched; he literally had not moved a muscle. The only change that had taken place was in his eye; this, which had hitherto been merely sullen, was now beaming with fury; but his form was as motionless as a statue. A stream of blood poured from a wound within an inch of the spot at which I had aimed; had it not been for this

fact, I should not have believed him struck. Annoyed at the failure of the shot, I tried him with the left-hand barrel, at the same hole. The report of the gun echoed over the lake, but there he stood as though he bore a charmed life; an increased flow of blood from the wound and additional lustre in his eye were the only signs of his being struck. I was now unloaded, and had not a single ball remaining. It was now my turn. I dared not turn to retreat, as I knew he would immediately charge, and we stared each other out of countenance. With a short grunt, he suddenly sprang forward, but fortunately, as I did not move, he halted; he had, however, decreased his distance, and we now gazed at each other within ten paces. I began to think buffalo-shooting somewhat dangerous, and I would have given something to have been a mile away, but ten times as much to have had my four-ounce rifle in my hand. Oh, how I longed for that rifle in this moment of suspense! Unloaded, without the power of defence, with the absolute certainty of a charge from an overpowering brute, my hand instinctively found the handle of my hunting-knife, a useless weapon against such a foe.

'Knowing that B. was not aware of my situation at the distance which separated us—about a mile—without taking my eyes from the figure before me, I raised my hand to my

mouth, and gave a long and loud whistle. This was a signal that I knew would be soon answered if heard. With a stealthy step and another short grunt, the bull again advanced a couple of paces towards me. He seemed aware of my helplessness, and he was the picture of rage and fury, pawing the water, and stamping violently with his fore-feet. This was very pleasant! I gave myself up for lost; but putting as fierce an expression into my features as I could possibly assume, I stared hopelessly at my maddened antagonist.

‘Suddenly a bright thought flashed through my mind. Without taking my eyes off the animal before me, I put a double charge of powder down the right-hand barrel, and tearing off a piece of my shirt, took all the money from my pouch, three shillings in sixpenny pieces, and two anna pieces, which I luckily had with me in this small coin for paying coolies. Quickly making them into a rouleau with the piece of rag, I rammed them down the barrel, and they were hardly well home before the bull again sprang forward. So quick was it, that I had no time to replace the ramrod, and I threw it into the water, bringing my gun on full cock in the same instant. However, he again halted, being now within about seven paces from me, and we again gazed fixedly *at each other*, but with altered feelings on my part. I had

faced him hopelessly with an empty gun for more than a quarter of an hour, which seemed a century, I now had a charge in my gun, which I knew, if reserved till he was within a foot of the muzzle, would certainly floor him; and I waited his onset with comparative carelessness, still keeping my eyes opposed to his gaze. At this moment I heard a splashing in the water behind me, accompanied by the hard breathing of some one evidently distressed. The next moment I heard B.’s voice. He could hardly speak for want of breath, having run the whole way to my rescue; but I could understand that he had only one barrel loaded and no bullets left.

‘I dared not turn my face from the buffalo; but I cautioned B. to reserve his fire till the bull should be close into me, and then to aim at the head. The words were hardly uttered, when, with the concentrated rage of the last twenty minutes, he rushed straight at me. It was the work of an instant. B. fired without effect. The horns were lowered, their points were on either side of me, and the muzzle of the gun barely touched his forehead, when I pulled the trigger, and three shillings’ worth of small change rattled into his hard head. Down he went, and rolled over with the suddenly-checked momentum of his charge. Away went B. and I as fast as our heels would carry us through the water and over

we turned and looked at us. He had regained his feet, and was following us slowly. We now experienced the difference of feeling between hunting and being hunted; and finesport we must have afforded him.

‘On he came, but fortunately so stunned by the collision with Her Majesty’s features upon the coin which he had dared to oppose, that he could only reel forward at a slow canter. By degrees, even this pace slackened, and he fell. We were only too glad to be able to reduce our speed likewise; but we had no sooner stopped to breathe than he was up again and after us. At length, however, we gained the tree, and we beheld him with satisfaction stretched powerless upon the ground, but not dead, within two hundred yards of us. We retreated under cover of the forest to the spot at which we had left the

midway, or a hundred and fifty yards distant. I had twelve drachms of powder in the four-ounce rifle, and I took a flying shot at his shoulder. No visible effect was produced, and the ball ricocheted completely across the broad surface of the lake (which was no more than a mile wide at this part) in continuous splashes. The gun-bearers said I had fired behind him, but I had distinctly heard the peculiar *fut* which a ball makes upon striking an animal; and although the passage of the ball across the lake appeared remarkable, nevertheless I felt positive that it had first passed through some portion of the animal.

‘Away the bull sped over the plain at unabated speed, for about two hundred paces, when he suddenly turned and charged towards the guns. On he came for about a hundred yards, but evidently slackening his speed at every stride. At length he stopped altogether. His mouth was wide open, and I could now distinguish a mass of bloody foam upon his lips and nostrils. The ball had in reality passed through his lungs, and making its exit from the opposite shoulder, had even then flown across the lake. Having re-loaded, I now advanced towards him, and soon arrived within fifty paces. He was the fac-simile of the bull that had chased us on the previous day—the same picture of fury and determination; and, crouching

low, he advanced a few paces, keeping his eyes fixed upon us, as though we were already his own. A short cough, accompanied by a rush of blood from his mouth, seemed to cause him great uneasiness, and he halted. Again we advanced till within twenty paces of him. I would not fire, as I saw that he already had enough, and I wished to see how long he could support a wound through the lungs, as my safety in buffalo-shooting might in future depend upon this knowledge. The fury of his spirit seemed to war with death; and, although reeling with weakness and suffocation, he again attempted to come on. It was his last effort; his eyes rolled convulsively, he gave a short grunt of impotent rage, and the next moment he fell upon his back, with his heels in the air. He was stone dead, and game to the last moment.

‘I had thus commenced a revenge for the insult of yesterday. I had proved the wonderful power of the four-ounce rifle, a weapon destined to make great havoc amongst the heavy game of Ceylon. Upon turning from the carcase before us, we observed to our surprise that a large herd of buffaloes, that were at a great distance when we had commenced the attack upon the bull, had now approached to within a few hundred yards, and were standing in a dense mass, attentively watching us. Without any delay, we advanced towards them; and upon arriving

within about a hundred paces, we observed that the herd was headed by two large bulls, one of which was the largest I had ever seen. The whole herd were bellowing, and pawing the ground. They had winded the blood of the dead bull, and appeared perfectly maddened.

'We continued to advance, and were within about ninety paces of them, when suddenly the whole herd of about two hundred buffaloes, headed by the two large bulls before mentioned, dashed straight before us at full gallop. So simultaneous was the onset, that it resembled a sudden charge of cavalry, and the ground vibrated beneath their heavy hoofs. Their tails were thrown high above their backs, and the mad and overpowering phalanx of heads and horns came rushing forward as though to sweep us at once from the face of the earth. There was not an instant to be lost; already but a short space intervened between us and apparent certain destruction. Our gun-bearers were almost in the act of flight; but catching hold of the man who carried the long two-ounce rifle, and keeping him by my side, I awaited the irresistible onset with the four-ounce.

'The largest of the bulls was some yards in advance, closely followed by his companion, and the herd in a compact mass came thundering down at their heels. Only fifty yards separated us, we literally felt among them,

and already experienced a sense of being overrun. I did not look at the herd, but kept my eye upon the big bull leader. On they flew, and were within thirty paces of us, when I took a steady shot with the four-ounce, and the leading bull plunged head foremost in the turf, turning a complete summersault. Snatching the two-ounce from the petrified gun-bearer, I had just time for a shot as the second bull was within fifteen paces, and at the flash of the rifle, his horns ploughed up the turf, and he lay almost at our feet. That lucky shot turned the whole herd. When certain destruction threatened us, they suddenly wheeled to their left when within twenty paces of the guns, and left us astonished victors of the field. We poured an ineffectual volley into the retreating herd from the light guns as they galloped off in full retreat, and re-loaded as quickly as possible, as the two bulls, although floored, were still alive. They were, however, completely powerless, and a double-barrelled gun gave each the *coup de grace* by a ball in the forehead. Both rifle shots had struck at the point of junction of the throat and chest, and the four-ounce ball had passed out of the hind quarters. Our friend of yesterday, although hit in precisely the same spot, had laughed at the light guns.

'Although I have since killed about two hundred wild buffaloes, I have never witnessed another

charge by a herd. This was an extraordinary occurrence, and fortunately stands alone in buffalo-shooting. Were it not for the two heavy rifles, our career might have terminated in an unpleasant manner. As I before mentioned, this part of the country was seldom or ever

disturbed at the time of which I write, and the buffaloes were immensely numerous and particularly savage, nearly always turning to bay, and showing good sport when attacked. Having cut out the tongues from the two bulls, we turned home to breakfast.'

CHAPTER VII.

BETWEEN A TIGER'S JAWS — A NARROW ESCAPE — A FINE SPECIMEN OF COURAGE—SHOOTING THE TIGER AT NIGHT.

It is well known that most parts of India are still grievously infested with wild beasts. In all situations except those most inhabited, the lion or the tiger, or the buffalo, render a passage through the jungles in an extreme degree dangerous. It is essential, therefore, to the safety of the inhabitants that these powerful enemies should be kept in subjection ; and this desirable object is effected by enterprising and intrepid persons, at the hazard of their own personal safety. In pursuit of the formidable tiger, the elephant is a most useful assistant, and in this work displays the greatest sagacity and courage. Such is its care of its rider, that in passing through the jungles, whenever a branch hangs in the way of the *howdah*, although the elephant itself could easily pass in security under it, yet, knowing it would injure or *incommode its master*, the *considerate animal* seizes it with its trunk

and rends it off, that no inconvenience may be sustained by his rider. So, also, it is most useful in giving notice of a tiger being near ; for, whenever an elephant scents a tiger, which it can do at some distance, it utters a shrill cry. But it is in the attack that it chiefly displays its powers of usefulness ; for then it raises its trunk perpendicularly, so that, when the tiger charges, it may be prepared to repel the attack, as also to prevent a surprise ; since, if the tiger can but seize the trunk, the elephant is disarmed. The leaps or springs which the tiger makes in his charge are truly astonishing ; yet a well-trained elephant will generally succeed in repelling the most furious attack, by dashing the springing tiger to the earth with its trunk, when, if its foe be at all stunned or maimed by the fall, or wounded by the rifle of the rider, the ponderous foot of the mighty beast will actually crush the

fallen victim, and at once complete its destruction. But it sometimes does happen that an elephant turns away from the contest; and when this is the case, the life of the rider is in the greatest jeopardy; for the tiger can easily climb up on the elephant in the rear, and seize the person in the *howdah* before he can turn to defend himself. The following adventure is an instance of such a seizure:—

A party of Europeans, consisting of some indigo planters, and of some officers of a native regiment stationed in their neighbourhood, went into the jungles for the purpose of shooting tigers. They had not proceeded far before they roused an immense tigress, which, with the greatest intrepidity, charged the line of elephants on which they were seated. At this moment, a female elephant, in the direct point of attack, which had been lately purchased, and was hitherto untried, through dread of the approaching enemy, turned suddenly round to fly from the field of battle. It was in vain the *mahout* exerted all his skill to make her face the tigress. The active creature, therefore, instantly sprang upon her back, and seizing the person in the *howdah* by the thigh, speedily brought him to the ground; then throwing him, quite stunned by the fall, over her shoulders, just in the same manner as a fox carries a goose, she started off to the jungle. Every rifle was pointed at her;

but no one dared to fire, because of the position in which the captive lay on the tigress' back. She went through the jungle grass much faster than the elephants could, so that the party soon lost sight of their prey; yet they were enabled to trace her by the blood in her track; and, as a forlorn hope, they resolved to follow on, to see if it were possible to save the remains of their friend from being devoured by the ferocious brute. As they proceeded, the traces grew fainter and fainter, until at length, bewildered in the heart of the jungle, they were about to give up the search in despair, when all at once they came most unexpectedly upon the object of their pursuit. To their infinite astonishment, they beheld the tigress lying dead in the long jungle grass, still gripping fast the limb of their unfortunate companion in her tremendous jaws; whilst he, though still sensible, was unable from loss of blood to reply to the questions put to him. To extricate his leg from the creature's mouth they found impossible, without first cutting off her head. This therefore was immediately done, and the jaws being separated, the fangs were drawn out of the wounds; and as one of the party providentially happened to be a surgeon, the patient was properly attended to, and the party had the great felicity of returning with their friend, rescued from the most perilous situation, and with hopes of his

recovery. He was taken to the nearest bungalow, and by the aid thus afforded, he was in a short time able to see his friends, when he explained to them the means by which he was preserved.

For some time after the animal had seized him, it appeared that he had continued insensible, being stunned by the fall, faint from the loss of blood, as well as from the excruciating pain which her fangs inflicted. When he came to himself, he discovered that he was lying on the back of the tigress, who was trotting along at a smart pace through the jungle, whilst at times his hands and face received the most violent scratches from the thorns and bushes through which she dragged him. He gave himself up as lost, considering that not the least glimpse of hope remained, and consequently determined to lie quietly on her back waiting the issue—when it struck him that he had a pair of pistols in his girdle, with which he might yet destroy his captor. After several attempts, which, from the weakness which the loss of blood had occasioned, proved ineffectual, he at length succeeded in drawing one of them from the belt, and directed it at the creature's head. He fired; but the only effect it seemed to produce was, that after giving him an angry shake, by which she made her fangs meet more closely in his flesh, her pace *was quickened*. From the agonizing pain thus caused, he again

fainted away, and remained totally unconscious of what was passing for some minutes. However, recovering a little, he determined to try the effect of another shot, in a different place. Drawing the remaining pistol from his girdle, and pointing the muzzle under the blade-bone of the shoulder, in the direction of the heart, he once more fired: the tigress fell dead in a moment, and neither howled nor struggled after she fell.

But he was not yet out of danger. He had not the power to call out for aid, and consequently, though he heard his friends approaching, he feared lest they might pass the spot without observing where he lay. Happily, however, it proved otherwise, and thus his life was saved. Under medical care, he recovered from his wounds; and though, from his thigh being so dreadfully torn by the fangs of the tigress, he afterwards suffered from lameness, yet he had abundant reason to be thankful for being thus providentially preserved.

A NARROW ESCAPE.

‘One morning, in company with two brother officers, Mortimer of the 40th, and Reeves of the 3d Light Cavalry, having been informed by our shicaries that they had tracked a tiger, we determined to go to the Ghud Nullah—where it was said to be—in search of it. Before setting out, we were joined by

Ravenscroft and Forbes, armed only with spears, as they expected to kill swine. We soon reached the Nullah, the banks of which high and steep, intersected by smaller branches, were covered with grass and brushwood; to this we applied fire where the track entered, and then took our stations on foot; Mortimer on the right bank nearest the fire. Reeves on the left bank, myself also on the left with a broad deep branch and two or three gullies between us. There was not much wind, and the grass being green, the fire did not come down rapidly. After waiting some time, a shot, answered by a loud roar, announced the presence of our prey. This was from Mortimer. As she passed Reeves, she got the contents of two barrels, and came on roaring furiously, evidently hard hit, and turned into the deep branch between Reeves and me. My station commanded the entrance to this, between thirty and forty yards distant; and as she came out after a short time, and for a moment stood still, I let fly right and left, and back she went. I reloaded as quickly as possible. On receiving another shot, she came towards my position, and as she passed under me, I fired the other barrel into her. I then supposed she would get into a deep little gully immediately on my right, so I went to the rear, mounted my horse, and drew near all ready. Low growls or rather moans were all

that was now to be heard, and after some time all was silent. Ravenscroft shot into some brushwood near where I had last seen her, but there was no growl of defiance in answer, and he narrowly escaped a serious accident. He had fired from off his horse, and in reloading, cast the butt of his gun over on his left foot; he was on the point of putting in the powder, when the other barrel went off, two balls passing his face without injury.

'We now tried to light the grass above and below where she was supposed to be, but it would not burn well; there were some dry thorns near the top of the gully, which cracked famously, and this was not more than twenty yards long. Still nothing was heard or seen of the enemy, and we all began to be impatient, and of the opinion that she was dead. Seeing a native with a drawn sword going towards this gully, I got off my horse and accompanied him, wishing to look into it if possible, and expecting to see her dead at the bottom. It was some twelve or fifteen feet deep, and the banks, nearly perpendicular, had long grass and brushwood growing thickly up them. By bending this on either side with the muzzle of my gun, I was enabled to see into it tolerably well, and was on the point of giving it up, when my eye caught sight of a patch of her yellow hide. It was no use firing, as I could not tell whether it was

her head or her tail ; but before I could make out a mortal spot to aim at, she was up and scaling the bank, roaring furiously. The native made off as fast as his legs would permit him. As she pushed on, I fired into her. But still on she came ; and as she gained the top, I aimed at her breast. You may conceive my feelings when she dashed my gun aside with her paw as I pulled the trigger ; the contents flew harmless. She seized my Joe Manton—which fortunately is not injured, though it will always bear her mark—just above the locks. I now turned to run for it ; and then Reeves proved himself to be the friend in need : he was standing on the opposite bank of the deep branch before mentioned, full thirty yards from me : ere I had gained five paces, she sprang upon me. Until I had turned, my body was between Reeves and her ; and in the short space thus allowed him, he fired both barrels, both taking effect. One striking her in the spine, caused instant death. I, of course, was underneath her ; she was very heavy ; and as I struggled, it came across me to lie still ; but finding I rather freed myself, I worked on and gained my legs, just as Ravenscroft came running to my rescue, who, by way of a settler, put a ball into her head. And there she lay, a fine four year old tigress, with my hunting-cap in her mouth. Only *one of her teeth reached my head, and that but very slightly at*

the back ; in fact, I may say that I escaped unhurt, having only one rather deep claw on my left fore-arm, and merely the skin raised by her claws on the back of my left shoulder.'

A FINE SPECIMEN OF COURAGE.

At Agoada, near Goa, in the month of March 1809, early one morning, a report was received at the cantonments, that a large tiger had been seen on the rocks near the sea. About nine o'clock, a number of officers and men assembled at the spot where it was said to have been seen ; when, after some search, the animal was discovered to be in the recess of an immense rock. Dogs were sent in, in the hopes of starting him, but without effect, they having returned with several wounds. Lieutenant Evan Davis, of the 7th regiment, attempted to enter the den, but was obliged to return, finding the passage extremely narrow and dark. He, however, attempted it a second time with a pickaxe in his hand, with which he removed some obstructions that were in the way ; and having proceeded a few yards, he heard a noise, which he conceived to be that of the animal in question. He then returned, and communicated this to Lieutenant Threw, of the artillery, who also went in the same distance, and was of a similar opinion. What course to pursue was doubtful ; some proposed to blow up the

from Jones sticking him out. A large porcupine was tied to the end of a bamboo, and introduced into a small crevice which led towards the den. Lieutenant Davis went on his hands and knees down the narrow passage which led to it, and by the light of it was enabled to discover the animal; having remarked he said he would kill him with a pistol which being procured he entered again, and fired but without success. Owing to the awkward situation he was then placed in with his left hand only a liberty. He went back with a musket and bayonet, and wounded him in the loins, but was obliged to retreat as quickly as the narrow passage would allow, the tiger having forced the musket back towards the mouth of the den. He then procured a rifle with which he again forced his way into the place, and taking a deliberate aim in his head fired, and put an end to his existence. Another difficulty still presented itself how to get him out required some consideration. Ropes were procured, but every attempt to reach him proved fruitless. Lieutenant Davis, with a pickaxe in his hand, cut his way into the den, and got sufficiently near to fasten a strong rope round his neck, by which he was dragged out, to the great satisfaction of a numerous crowd of anxious spectators. He measured seven feet and a half from the nose to the tail.

SHOOTING THE TIGER AT NIGHT.

The hunting of the tiger is fully as dangerous and exciting a sport as that of the wild buffalo, and is usually conducted in India on a magnificent scale—dogs, horses, elephants, with the huntsmen in *howdahs* on their backs, and attendants of various kinds to beat the bushes, all composing a large and powerful cavalcade. In these grand hunting matches, the elephants often do important service; for, loaded as they are with armed men, they will rush into the jungle upon the wounded tiger, and transfix him to the earth with their tusks. Occasionally, to relieve the tedium of existence at the British out-stations, this ferocious animal is hunted by one or two gentlemen armed with rifles, and either mounted or dismounted, as suits their fancy or the nature of the country.

A short time ago, a young officer arriving at one of these stations in the upper country, was eager in his inquiries whether there were any tigers to be met with in the neighbourhood, and was informed that certainly tigers existed in no inconsiderable numbers, but that, from the nature of the country, it was impossible to get at them. This intimation was of course unheeded by an ardent and enterprising spirit, pleased with the idea of overcoming difficulties. The country was exceedingly hilly; yet, determined upon

ascertaining whether it would be practicable to employ elephants, they were mustered for the campaign. However, after getting over several very dangerous passes, it became necessary to relinquish the attempt. It became now certain that, unless a tiger could be decoyed into the plains, there could be no chance for the sportsmen with elephants. This, however, proved a forlorn hope. The tigers, as if perfectly aware of the security of their position, never quitted the hills during the day, stealing down to the water below only amid the silence and darkness of the night. It became, therefore, a matter of certainty that the attack, if made at all, must be made long after daylight had departed. A morning's tour round a neighbouring lake added to this conviction; for the inspector observed some fresh tracks of tigers, and on inquiring among the villagers, was told that he might meet with tigers any night that he chose to look for them round Kalin-gur, the name of the lake in question. From that moment he resolved on trying the effect of nocturnal excursions; but the method of proceeding puzzled him not a little. Upon such occasions, a platform is usually constructed in a tree; but here were no trees, no bushes, nor even a blade of grass to afford shelter and concealment, the ground round about being perfectly bare and arid. What was therefore to be done? The

sportsman must either plant himself upon this exposed plain, or get no tiger. The idea of encountering a tiger on foot, with the odds so much in favour of the quadruped, at the dreary hour of night, was rather appalling, and our enterprising friend hesitated; but he could not resolve to abandon the project, the same spirit which animated the chivalry of the olden time urging him to the conflict. He was a first-rate shot, and, should his nerves not fail him, he felt certain that the ball would tell; but as they had never been so severely tried before, there was no saying whether they would abide the test.

The attempt was, however, to be made; and the resolution once taken, he never swerved from it. The lake already named lay at the distance of six miles from the sportsman's bungalow. The road to it being through a heavy jungle, it was necessary, in order to reach it in proper time, a little after sunset, to make an early departure. A young Mus-sulman servant, a mere lad, who was fortunately not very easily daunted, carried the ammunition, and shared in the vigil. The first excursion was made in the month of April, after a parching day of hot winds. The sportsman chose his position with all the advantages that circumstances would admit; he fronted the hills, with his back towards the lake, which prevented any attack in the rear, and would afford a place of re-

in case of necessity, a rush into the water being the last resort. On the first night, the vigil was uninterrupted, at least by a tiger; other animals came down to drink, but they were suffered to pass unmolested. The situation had been rather a nervous one, and the return of the morning was hailed with proportionate delight. A few evenings subsequently, the sportsman was again at his post; he had now become familiar with the scene and the danger, and experienced the composure which results from feeling, as it were, at home: the strangeness at least had worn off.

The hour for the moon's rising was ten; and not expecting to be called into action before it made its appearance, the sentinel had scarcely braced his energies to the task, when, a little after dusk, he plainly perceived some large animal approaching the water. Upon reaching it, it stopped, apparently to drink. What a moment! how inadequate are words to express the sensations crowding upon the adventurer's heart, and how impossible to imagine them by those who have never been placed in a situation of similar peril! A deadly silence prevailed, not even a whisper passing between the officer and his almost breathless attendant. Grasping the faithful rifle firmly, he placed the finger on the trigger, ready to deliver the deadly charge. Who shall say what passed in the breast of

the person thus fearfully placed? What worlds he might not have given for a change of situation! Yet was the excitement even at that moment mingled with a strange kind of delight! Many seconds were not allowed for reflection, for it soon became necessary to act. There was a possibility that the animal taken for a tiger might only be one of the elk species; but the worst must be prepared for, and that speedily. After the animal had refreshed himself at the lake, he appeared to be moving in the direction of the sportsman; but as the evening had considerably advanced, he could not at first distinguish clearly: a very brief interval, however, sufficed to assure him of the truth of the conjecture. Twice the gun was brought up to the position of firing, and twice, in the excited state of the imagination, the marksman fancied he heard a voice whisper, 'Not yet—not yet.' He obeyed the warning, if such it were. In another moment the animal appeared to have changed his direction. It had approached within a dozen yards, and for the last time the gun was raised, aimed steadily at the centre of the moving mass, and without the slightest hesitation, fired. For the first time since the appearance of the game, silence was now broken by the attendant, who exclaimed, 'A large tiger, sir!' Inquiring how he could be certain of the description of the animal, he observed

that, from the flash in the pan, the gun having a flint, he had plainly seen the tiger ; and so, to his master's great delight, it proved ; for upon the rising of the moon, the tawny monarch was seen pinned down upon the very spot which he had occupied at the discharge of the fatal shot. This exploit was duly appreciated by the neighbouring villagers ; and the fallen foe, securely padded on an elephant, made the round of the European dwellings on the following morning, in a sort of triumph or ovation. With confidence, strengthened by good fortune, other attempts were made upon the same spot, and with equal success.

In the vicinity of a neighbouring village, called Manpoora, which was situated in a small valley surrounded with hills and thick jungle, dwelt in solitary grandeur a monster of a tiger, who had become as well known as the village itself, and who had for several years past been permitted to remain undisturbed, in consequence of his having baffled every effort made by parties who had at different times gone out against him. Thus left to himself, he had continued his depredations with impunity, and had become the terror of the inhabitants for many miles round. To *bag* this fellow, as it is termed in sporting phrase, was now the ruling desire of our hero's heart, *not only on account of the report which described him as*

being an enormous beast, but more especially from the circumstance of his having hitherto bade defiance to those sportsmen who had sought him in the field, vanity being mingled with that noble emulation necessary to the performance of great deeds. Near to the village above described runs a beautiful little hill stream, shallow, but clear as crystal, and a place very likely to be chosen for the nightly promenades of the monarch of the waste. The villagers agreeing in this opinion, the young adventurer lost no time in looking out for a convenient position. The people of Manpoora, interested in the issue of the enterprise, and satisfied, after the death of the Kalingur tiger, that the person who performed that notable exploit was equal to a second of the same nature, often gave notice of the movements of the animal ; but some time elapsed before the tiger's plan of operations could be fully made out. Three or four nights were passed on the banks of the Manpoora water without success ; for, though it was ascertained that the tiger had been either prowling above or below the scene of the vigil, he did not show himself ; and tired out with these fruitless attempts, the sportsman reluctantly relinquished his visits.

One afternoon, however, three villagers, in breathless haste, appeared at the European station. They had run fast and far, and could scarcely, after holding up

their hands and beckoning the sportsman, who happened to be riding in a contrary direction, to stop, relate the cause of their hurry and anxiety. At last they exclaimed, 'The Manpoora tiger has come!' which was all that could at first be made out. Afterwards they explained that a cow had been killed, and that a watch kept on this night would be pretty certainly successful. No time was lost in preparing for the expedition, and evening found our friend again at the valley of Manpoora. The peasants immediately accompanied their visitor to the scene of the sacrifice. There lay the cow: and two men who had watched the whole proceeding from the neighbouring trees, reported that the tiger, after a copious draught of pure blood, had retreated to the hills, doubtless to return in the evening to make a more solid meal. An examination of the carcase proved the truth of this information: the cow had been freshly killed, and was as yet uninjured, save by the wounds which had caused its death. The disappearance of the tiger was not at all disheartening, it being the custom of the animal to leave its prey for a while, knowing it to be perfectly safe. It is seldom that the inferior denizens of the wild venture to attack a carcase brought down by a tiger, until he has gorged his fill. The jackals and vultures draw silently around, waiting their turn, after the sovereign

has completed his repast; and should they neglect this mark of respect, they are made to pay dearly for the omission. Sportsmen, on coming on the remains of a slaughtered animal, have sometimes seen vultures lying dead upon it, killed by a stroke from the tiger's claw. The spot on which the cow was lying was exceedingly jungly, and ill calculated for the adventurer's purpose; but after the different attempts that had been made, and the watching and anxiety already undergone, though a most unsatisfactory place for a night abode, the young man determined to take up his quarters on it. The carcase of the cow was moved by his directions to a more promising spot, and close to one of the extremities, a slight ambuscade of thorns was thrown up to conceal the adversary from view. The Mussulman lad before mentioned remained staunch by the side of his master, and one of the villagers asked and obtained permission to join the party.

Towards dusk the position was taken up, the officer placing himself in front, close up to the tail of the cow, and the two natives back to back in the rear, by which plan a look-out on all sides was effected. The night set in with the most profound darkness imaginable, conveying a sense of horror to the mind which it is impossible to describe, and producing an impression which was strongly cal-

culated to render the rashness of the undertaking the prevailing feeling. Hour after hour passed away in the most painful kind of suspense. Midnight arrived, and not long afterwards, a distant rustling among the bushes was distinctly heard. By degrees the sound became plainer and plainer; there was now no mistaking the approach of the enemy, and a few minutes would decide the business. The sounds ceased; and while wondering whether the tiger had, upon second thoughts, retreated, our friend, upon looking up, distinctly saw the royal beast standing close to the head of the cow, the body of the animal only intervening between them. It was a moment of utter dismay. The tiger had commenced his repast, and, with the desperate determination produced by the fearfulness of the occasion, the gun was brought up and fired. The tiger did not drop. A never-to-be-forgotten roar and a charge of indomitable fierceness followed. The tiger fortunately rushed past, blundering onwards in aimless fury. Sufficient presence of mind to fire again under such circumstances was not in human nature; and the villager, still less accustomed to so dreadful a predicament, grasped the arm of the sportsman in the terror of the moment, and thus added to his embarrassment. After the tiger had rushed forward for a short distance, the welcome sound of his fall was heard, succeeded by

heavy groans. These indications gave very satisfactory assurances of his impending fate; but caution was still necessary.

After allowing a sufficient time for the tiger either to make off or to expire in peace, the attendants were directed to rouse the village, and in the interim the rifle was again re-loaded in case of the worst. The villagers were soon assembled with their lighted torches; but for some time their search proved ineffectual. In fact, the chief actor in the scene began to imagine that he had missed his aim, or that the whole had been nothing more than an apparition conjured up by the excited state of his mind. Believing that the tiger had not been wounded at all, and had made good his retreat, the villagers, who had been somewhat fearful of searching too minutely before, growing bolder, looked more narrowly around them. A shout of joy was soon after heard. The tiger was discovered dead. A hearty huzza followed, in which the natives, though unaccustomed to the European mode of cheering, joined with all their lungs. The tiger proved to be the identical monster so long sought. The ball had gone clean through the centre of the stomach; and it was subject of surprise how he had been able to reach the place where he was found. The manner in which this and the Kalin-gur tiger met their deaths, and the arm that laid them low, are well known in Bengal.

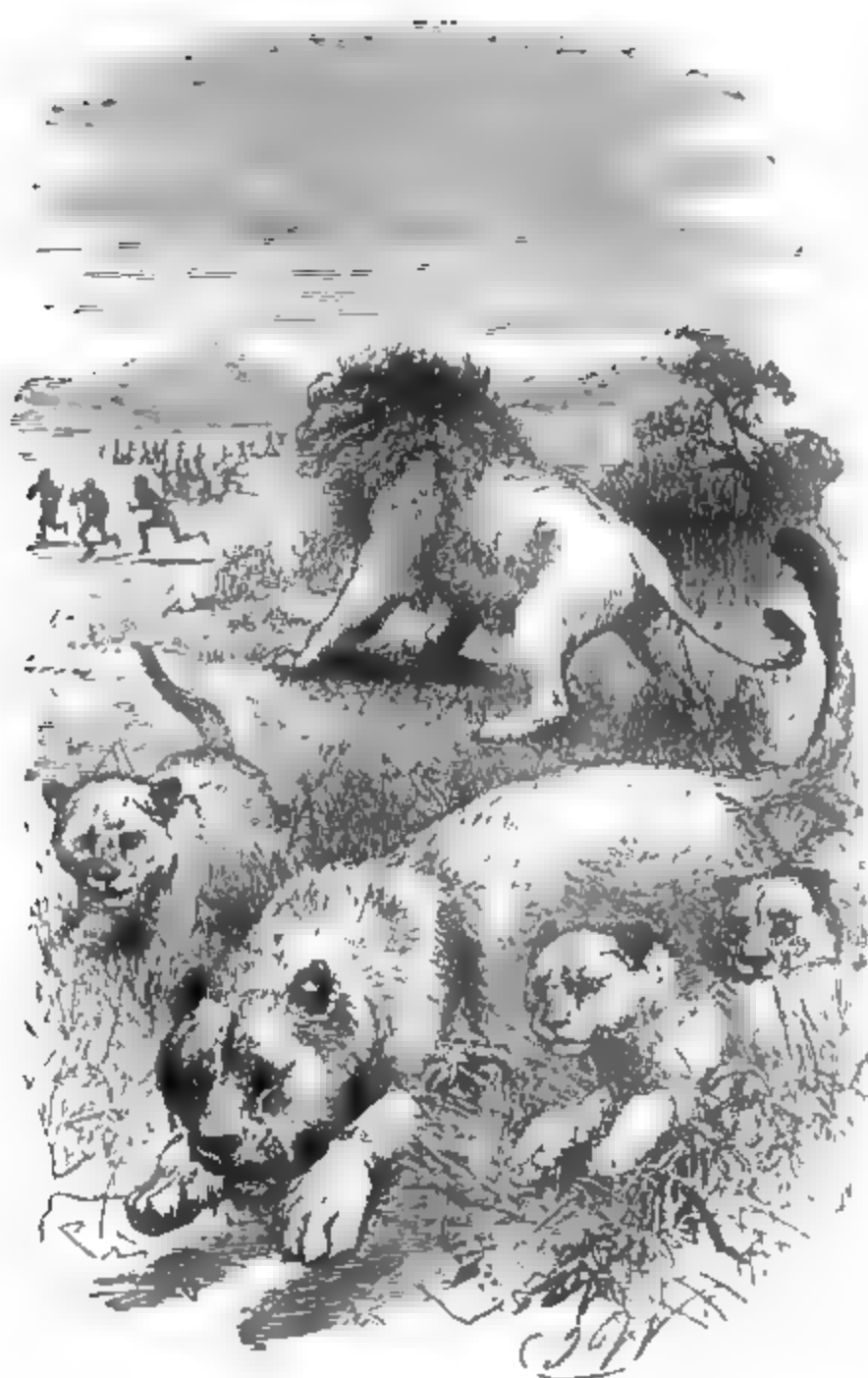
CHAPTER VIII.

HOW THE ARABS ATTACK A LION—GERARD'S SECOND LION—
MOFFAT'S LION ADVENTURES—A SENTRY SEIZED BY A LION
—A LION ENCOUNTER—DEATH OF HENDRICH.

THE lion of Northern Africa can never be called a coward ; he is ever ready to attack an enemy, and the sight of one rouses him to instant fury ; he will even attack a whole tribe of armed Arabs, and often scatters them to the winds. No Arab thinks of attacking a lion unless supported by at least twenty muskets ; and even then, if they succeed in killing him, it is not until he has committed serious damage in their ranks. For a long while they will suffer a lion to devastate their *douars*, and carry off their cattle in helpless resignation. It is not until their losses have driven them to desperation that they resolve on attacking him in his lair, and then they always choose the day-time. Having ascertained his lair, and having decided in full conclave that the attack is to be made, they assemble at the foot of the mountain, and in groups of thirty or forty march towards the lair, shouting at the top of their lungs. On hearing the noise, the lion, if young, at once quits his lair ; the lioness does the same, unless she have her young with her. But as he does not fly, he is soon in sight, and a charge of musketry brings

him down upon them like a thunderbolt. If the lion is an adult, he knows the meaning of this noise, which wakes him, and he rises slowly, yawning and stretching his limbs, rubbing his sides against the trees, and shaking his majestic mane. He listens ; and the approaching cries cause him to sharpen his claws, with certain premonitory growls. He then stalks slowly towards the first ledge of rock which commands the country, and espying his enemies from this height, he crouches and awaits.

The Arab who first sees him cries, 'There he is !' and death-like stillness succeeds. They pause to contemplate him, and look well to their arms, while the lion slowly licks his paws and mane, thus making his *toilette de combat*. After a long pause, an Arab advances in front of the group, and in a tone of defiance, shouts, 'Thou knowest us not, then, that thus thou liest before us ? Rise and fly ; for we belong to such a tribe, and I am Abdallah !' The lion, who has before this eaten more than one warrior who apostrophized him in precisely the same terms, continues passing his enormous paws over his face,



THE AFRICAN LION, LIONESS, AND YOUNG.

Adventure and Peril, p. 578.



to beautify himself, and makes no reply to the challenge, nor to the second challenge, nor to the epithets of 'Jew!' 'Christian!' 'Infidel!' liberally bestowed on him, until the voices swell in a chorus, which makes him impatient. He then rises, lashes his sides with his tail, and marches straight towards the insulters. The timid are already in flight; the brave remain and await the attack—muskets ready, hearts beating. He is beyond their reach, and walks leisurely towards them. They now begin to retreat slowly in order, their faces turned to him, until they rejoin the horsemen waiting at the foot of the mountain, who immediately commence galloping about, brandishing their muskets and yatagans, and shouting defiance.

The lion, on seeing the horsemen on the plain, pauses to reconnoitre. No cries or insults move him; nothing but powder will do that. It is heard at last, and then he changes his leisure march for a charge, which scatters the little army. No one is ashamed of flying now; each tries to secure a favourable position from which to fire as the lion passes. The horsemen then advance. If, as is usual, the lion has clutched one of the retreating group, it is only necessary for a horseman to approach within reasonable distance, discharge his gun, and the lion at once quits his victim to *charge his assailant*. After a *while*, the lion, wounded and

tired, crouches like a cat, and awaits his end. This is a terrible moment. He is fired at, and receives all their balls without moving; but should a horse gallop near enough to be reached in two or three bounds, either the rider or his horse is doomed, for the lion is upon him in an instant, and never quits his hold. It will astonish European hunters to hear that thirty balls, at a distance of twenty paces, are not always enough to kill the lion; it is only when the heart or brain is touched that death is certain; and the nearer he is to death, the more dangerous he is. During the fight, but before he is wounded, if he clutches a man, he is satisfied with knocking him down; and the man, probably protected by his burnous, gets off with a mere flesh-wound from the terrible claws. But after the beast has been wounded, he tears his victim, mangles him in his jaws, till he sees other men upon whom to spring; and when mortally wounded, his rage is something awful. He crushes the victim under him, and crouches over him, as if rejoicing in his agony. While his claws slowly tear the flesh of the unhappy wretch, his flaming eyes are fixed on the eyes of his victim, who, fascinated by them, is unable to cry for help or even to groan. From time to time the lion passes his large rough tongue over the face of his enemy, curls his lips, and shows all his teeth. Meanwhile the relatives of the unhappy man

appeal to the most courageous of the troop, and they advance, guns cocked, towards the lion, who sees them coming, but never moves. Fearing lest their balls should miss the lion and hit the man, they are forced to approach so close, that they can place their muskets in the ear of the lion. This is a critical moment. If the lion has any force left in him, he kills the man lying beneath him, and bounds on the one who has come to the rescue; and as he lies motionless on the body of his victim, it is impossible to know whether he will bound or not. In case his strength is too much wasted, the lion crushes the head of the man beneath him the moment he sees the musket approach his ear, and then closing his eyes, awaits death. Such is the lion of Northern Africa.

GERARD'S SECOND LION.

Gerard describes at great length the death of his first lion; but although he learned several useful details by which he afterwards profited, the campaign was not one which can be abridged with interest. His second lion was nearly the victor. He had tied up the dogs in the tents, in order to preserve silence. Saadi-bou-Nar, his companion, slept behind him on the ground, while he, rifle in hand, awaited the appearance of his enemy. Suddenly the sky, which had been

brilliant, was overclouded; the moon disappeared; the thunder began to mutter in the distance, like a distant lion; large drops of rain falling on the Arab, awakened him, and made him urge Gerard to retire within the tents. At this moment the Arabs shouted, 'Be on your guard; the lion will come when the storm is at its height.' Protecting his rifle with his burnous, Gerard waited, smiling to observe the heroic resignation with which Saadi-bou-Nar draped himself in his burnous. The rain, like all storm-rains, rapidly subsided. The sky was once more lighted by the brilliant moonbeams occasionally piercing through the breaks in the clouds; at the horizon a few flashes of lightning were seen. Gerard, grateful for this fitful light, peered anxiously into space, and in one of the sudden flashes there stood the lion, motionless, only a few paces from the enclosure of the *douar*. Accustomed to find fires lighted, dogs howling in terror, women frantic, and men throwing lighted brands at his head, the lion was perhaps meditating on the meaning of his silence and calm. Turning carefully so as to take deliberate aim, without the lion's perceiving him, Gerard felt his heart beat as the last cloud passed over the moon. He was seated with the left elbow on his knees, the rifle on his shoulder, looking alternately at the lion, which presented only a confused mass to the eye, and the cloud

which travelled slowly over the moon.

At last his heart leapt—the moon shone in all her splendour. Never was moonlight more prized. There stood the lion, motionless as before; a magnificent creature, superbly majestic, with his head aloft, his mane tossed by the wind, and falling to the knee. It was a black-maned lion of the grandest species. His side was turned towards his enemy. Aiming just underneath the shoulder, Gerard fired. At the same time the explosion was re-echoed by the mountains, there rose the roar of rage and pain, and through the smoke the lion bounded on his assailant. It was an awful moment. The lion was within three paces; there was no time to aim; the second barrel was fired at hazard, and struck him in the breast. He rolled expiring at the hunter's feet. 'At first,' says Gerard, 'I could not believe that the animal I had just seen bounding upon me in fury, and rending the air with his cries, was that monstrous inert mass lying at my feet. On looking for my bullets, I found the first, which had not been mortal, placed exactly where I had aimed at; and the second, fired almost at random, had been the one which proved fatal. From this moment, I learned that it is not sufficient to aim accurately to kill a lion; and I began to see that lion-hunting was far more serious than I had imagined.'

MOFFAT'S LION ADVENTURES.

'On our route homeward, we halted at a spot where a novel scene occurred, and which was described by an individual who witnessed it when a boy. Near a very small fountain, which was shown to me, stood a camel thorn tree. It was a stiff tree, about twelve feet high, with a flat bushy top. Many years ago, the relater, then a boy, was returning to his village, and having turned aside to the fountain for a drink, lay down on the bank and fell asleep. Being awoken by the piercing rays of the sun, he saw, through the bush behind which he lay, a giraffe browsing at ease on the tender shoots of the tree, and to his horror, a lion, creeping like a cat, only a dozen yards from him, preparing to pounce on his prey. The lion eyed the giraffe for a few moments, his body gave a shake, and he bounded into the air to seize the head of the animal, which instantly turned his stately neck, and the lion missing his grasp, fell on his back in the centre of the mass of thorns, like spikes, and the giraffe bounded over the plain. The boy instantly followed the example, expecting, as a matter of course, that the enraged lion would soon find his way to earth. Some time afterwards, the people of the village, who seldom visited that spot, saw the eagles hovering in the air; and as it is almost always a certain sign that the lion has killed game,

or some animal is lying dead, they went to the place ; but sought in vain, till, coming under the lee of the tree, their olfactory nerves directed them to where the lion lay dead in his thorny bed. I still found some of his bones under the tree, and hair on its branches, to convince me of what I scarcely could have credited.

‘We were often exposed to dangers from lions, which, from the scarcity of water, frequent the pools or fountains ; and some of our number had some hair-breadth escapes. One night we were quietly bivouacked at a small pool on the ‘Oup River, where we never anticipated a visit from his majesty. We had just closed our united evening worship, the book was still in my hand, and the closing notes of the song of praise had scarcely fallen from our lips, when the terrific roar of the lion was heard : our oxen, which before were quietly chewing the cud, rushed upon us, and over our fires, leaving us prostrated in a cloud of dust. Hats and hymn books, our Bibles and our guns, were all scattered in wild confusion. Providentially no serious injury was sustained ; the oxen were pursued, brought back, and secured to the waggon ; for we could ill afford to lose any. Africaner, seeing the reluctance of the people to pursue in a dark and gloomy ravine, grasped a fire-brand and exclaimed, “Fol-

le !” and but for his prompt-
d intrepidity, we must

have lost some of our number ; for nothing can exceed the terror of oxen at even the smell of a lion. Though they may happen to be in the worst condition possible, worn out with fatigue and hunger, the moment the shaggy monster is perceived, they start like race-horses, with their tails erect, and sometimes days will elapse before they are found.

‘Passing along a vale, we came to a spot where the lion appeared to have been exercising himself in the way of leaping. As the natives are very expert in tracing the manoeuvres of animals by their foot-marks, it was soon discovered that a large lion had crept towards a short black stump, very like the human form ; when within about a dozen yards, it bounded on its supposed prey, when, to his mortification, he fell a foot or two short of it. According to the testimony of a native who had been watching his motions, and who joined us soon after, the lion lay for some time steadfastly eyeing its supposed meal. It then arose, smelt the object, and returned to the spot from which he commenced his first leap, and leaped four several times, till at last he placed his paw on the imagined prize. On another occasion, when Africaner and an attendant were passing near the end of a hill, from which jutted out a smooth rock of ten or twelve feet high, he observed a number of zebras pressing round it, obliged to

keep the path, beyond which it was precipitous. A lion was seen creeping up towards the path, to intercept the large stallion, which is always in the rear, to defend or warn the troop. The lion missed his mark, and while the zebra rushed round the point, the lion knew well if he could mount the rock at one leap, the next would be on the zebra's back, it being obliged to turn towards the hill. He fell short, with only his head over the stone, looking at the galloping zebra switching his tail in the air. He then tried a second and a third leap, till he succeeded. In the meantime, two more lions came up, and seemed to talk and roar away about something, while the old lion led them round the rock, and round it again; then he made another grand leap, to show them what he and they must do next time. Africaner added, with the most perfect gravity, "They evidently talked to each other, but though loud enough, I could not understand a word they said; and fearing lest we should be the next objects of their skill, we crept away, and left them in council."

'The following fact will show the fearful dangers to which solitary travellers are sometimes exposed. A man belonging to Mr. Schmelen's congregation, at Bethany, returning homewards from a visit to his friends, took a circuitous course in order to *pass a small fountain, or rather pool, where he hoped to kill an*

antelope to carry home to his family. The sun had risen to some height by the time he reached the spot, and seeing no game, he laid his gun down on a shelving low rock, the back part of which was covered over with a species of dwarf thorn-bushes. He went to the water, took a hearty drink, returned to the rock, smoked his pipe, and being a little tired, fell asleep. In a short time, the heat reflected from the rock awoke him, and opening his eyes, he saw a large lion crouching before him, with its eyes glaring in his face, and within little more than a yard of his feet. He sat motionless for some minutes, till he had recovered his presence of mind; then eyeing his gun, he moved his hand slowly towards it. The lion seeing him, raised its head, and gave a tremendous roar. He made another and another attempt; but the gun being far beyond his reach, he gave it up, as the lion seemed well aware of his object, and was enraged whenever he attempted to move his hand. His situation now became painful in the extreme; the rock on which he sat became so hot, that he could scarcely bear his naked feet to touch it, and kept moving them, alternately placing one above the other. The day passed and the night also, but the lion never moved from the spot; the sun rose again, and its intense heat soon rendered his feet past feeling. At noon the lion rose and

walked to the water, only a few yards distant, looking behind as he went, lest the man should move, and seeing him stretch out his hand to take his gun, turned in a rage, and was on the point of springing upon him. The animal went to the water, drank, and returning, lay down again at the edge of the rock. Another night passed; the man in describing it said he knew not whether he slept, but if he did, it must have been with his eyes open, for he always saw the lion at his feet. Next day, in the forenoon, the animal went again to the water, and while there, he listened to some noise apparently from an opposite quarter, and disappeared in the bushes. The man now made another effort, and seized his gun; but on attempting to rise, he fell, his ankles being without power. With his gun in hand, he crept towards the water, and drank; but looking at his feet, he saw, as he expressed it, his "toes roasted," and the skin torn off with the grass. There he sat a few moments, expecting the lion's return, when he was resolved to send the contents of the gun through his head; but as it did not appear, tying his gun to his back, the poor man made the best of his way on his hands and knees to the nearest path, hoping some solitary individual might pass. He could go no farther, when, providentially, a person came up, who took him to a place of safety, from whence

he obtained help, though he lost his toes, and was a cripple for life.

'Having refreshed ourselves with a bathe and a draught of water, we prepared for the thirsty road we had to traverse; but before starting, a council was held whether we should finish the last small portion of meat (which any one might have devoured in a minute) or reserve it. The decision was to keep it till evening. We sought in vain for ixia bulbs. Our only resource, according to the custom of the country, was to fill ourselves with as much water as our bodies could contain. We had no vessels in which to carry it; and if we had, our horses were not equal to more than the carriage of our persons. We were obliged to halt during the day, fearing our horses would give up from the excessive heat. When the evening drew on, we had to ascend and descend several sand-hills, which, weary and faint from two days' fasting, was to us exceedingly fatiguing. Vanderbyl and myself were somewhat in advance of the rest, when we observed our three companions remaining behind; but supposing they stayed to strike light and kindle their pipes, we thoughtlessly rode forward. Having proceeded some distance, we halted and halloed, but received no reply. We fired a shot, but no one answered. We pursued our journey in the direction of the high ground near the Long Mountains,

through which our path lay. On reaching a bushless plain, we alighted and made a fire: another shot was fired, and we listened with intense earnestness; but gloomy desert silence reigned around. We conversed, as well as our parched lips would allow, on what must be done. To wait till morning would only increase the length of our suffering; to retrace our steps was impossible. Probably they had wandered from the path, and might never overtake us. At the same time, we felt most reluctant to proceed. We had just determined to remain, when we thought we would fire one more shot. It was answered—by a lion, apparently close to the place where we stood. No wood was at hand to make a fire, nothing but tufts of grass; so we ran and remounted our horses, urging them on towards a range of dark mountains, the gloom increasing as we proceeded; but as our horses could not go much above a walking pace, we were in dread every moment of being overtaken. If we drew up to listen, his approach in the rear was distinctly heard. On reaching the winding glen or pass through the mountains, despairing of escape from our enemy, we resolved to ascend a steep, where, from a precipice, we might pelt him with stones; for we had only a couple of balls left. On dragging ourselves and our horses up the steep, we *found the supposed refuge too uneven for a standing-place, and*

not one fragment of loose stone to be found. Our situation was now doubly dangerous; for, on descending to the path, the query was, on which side is the lion? My companion took his steel and flint, to try, by striking them, if he could not discover traces of the lion's paws on the path, expecting every moment that he would bound on one of us. The terror of the horses soon told us that the object of our dread was close to us, but on the right side, namely, in our rear. We instantly remounted, and continued to pursue the track, which we had sometimes great difficulty in tracing along its zigzag windings among bushes, stones, and sand. The dark towering cliffs around us, the deep silence of which was disturbed by the grunt of a solitary baboon or the squalling of some of its young ones, added to the colouring of the night's picture. We had not proceeded very far before the lion gave a tremendous roar, which, echoing from precipice to precipice, sounded as if we were within a lion's den. On reaching the egress of the defile through which we had passed, we were cheered by the waning moon rising bright in the east. Descending again, we would gladly have laid our weary limbs down to rest; but thirst, and the possibility of the lion's resolving to make his supper on one of us, propelled our weary steps, for our horses were completely jaded.

‘We continued our slow and

silent march for hours. The tongue cleaving to the roof of the mouth from thirst, made conversation extremely difficult. At last we reached the long wished-for "waterfall," so named because, when it rains, water sometimes falls, though in small quantities ; but it was too late to ascend the hill. We allowed our poor worn-out horses to go where they pleased, and having kindled a small fire, and produced a little saliva by smoking a pipe, we talked about our lost companions, who happened for their comfort to have the morsel of meat, and who, as Jantye thought, would wander from the position in which we left them towards the river. We bowed the knee to Him who had mercifully preserved us, and laid our heads on our saddles. The last sound we heard to soothe us was the distant roar of the lion ; but we were too much exhausted to feel anything like fear. Sleep came to our relief ; and it seemed made up of scenes the most lovely, forming a glowing contrast to our real situation. I felt as if engaged during my short repose in roving among ambrosial bowers of paradisiacal delight, hearing sounds of music as if from angels' harps ; it was the night wind falling on my ears from the neighbouring hill. I seemed to pass from stream to stream, in which I bathed and slaked my thirst at many a crystal fount, flowing from golden mountains enriched with living green. These Elysian pleasures con-

tinued till morning dawn, when we awoke, speechless with thirst, our eyes inflamed, and our whole frames burning like a coal. We were, however, somewhat less fatigued, but wanted water, and had recourse to another pipe before we could articulate a word.

' Having put my waggon in order, taken a driver, and a little boy as leader of the oxen, and two Barolongs, who were going to the same place, I left the station, my wife and family, for an absence of two or three months. Our journey lay over a wild and dreary country, inhabited by Balalas only, and but a sprinkling of these. On the night of the third day's journey, having halted at a pool (Khokhole), we listened on the lonely plain for the sound of an inhabitant ; but all was silent. We could discover no lights, and amid the darkness were unable to trace foot-marks to the pool. We let loose our wearied oxen to drink and graze ; but as we were ignorant of the character of the company with which we might have to spend the night, we took a fire-brand, and examined the edges of the pool to see, from the imprints, what animals were in the habit of drinking there, and with terror discovered many *spoors* of lions. We immediately collected the oxen, and brought them to the waggon, to which we fastened them with the strongest things we had, having discovered in their appearance something rather wild, indicating that, either from scent or

sight, they knew danger was near. The two Barolongs had brought a young cow with them; and though I recommended their making her fast also, they very humorously replied that she was too wise to leave the waggon and oxen, even though a lion should be scented. We took a little supper, which was followed by our evening hymn and prayer. I had retired only a few minutes to my waggon to prepare for the night, when the whole of the oxen started to their feet. A lion had seized the cow only a few steps from their tails, and dragged it to the distance of thirty or forty yards, where we distinctly heard it tearing the animal, and breaking the bones, while its bellowings were most pitiful. When these were over, I seized my gun; but as it was too dark to see any object at half the distance, I aimed at the spot where the devouring jaws of the lion were heard. I fired again and again, to which he replied with tremendous roars, at the same time making a rush towards the waggon, so as exceedingly to terrify the oxen. The two Barolongs engaged to take fire-brands, advance a few yards, and throw them at him, so as to afford me a degree of light, that I might take aim, the place being bushy. They had scarcely discharged them from their hands, when the flame went out, and the enraged animal rushed towards them with such swiftness, that I had barely time to turn

the gun and fire between the men and the lion; and providentially the ball struck the ground immediately under his head, as we found by examination the following morning. From this surprise he returned, growling dreadfully. The men darted through some thorn bushes, with countenances indicative of the utmost terror. It was now the opinion of all that we had better let him alone if he did not molest us.

‘Having but a scanty supply of wood to keep up a fire, one man crept among the bushes on one side of the pool, while I proceeded for the same purpose on the other side. I had not gone far, when, looking upward to the edge of the small basin, I discerned between me and the sky four animals, whose attention appeared to be directed to me by the noise I made in breaking a dry stick. On closer inspection, I found that the large, round, hairy-headed visitors were lions, and retreated on my hands and feet towards the other side of the pool, when, coming to my waggon-driver to inform him of our danger, I found him looking, with no little alarm, in an opposite direction, and with good reason, as no fewer than two lions, with a cub, were eyeing us both, apparently as uncertain about us as we were distrustful of them. They appeared, as they always do in the dark, twice the usual size. We thankfully decamped to the waggon, and sat down to keep alive

for alarm, lest any of the six lions we saw, fearless of our small fire, might rush in among us. The two Barolongs were grudging the lion his fat meal, and would now and then break the silence with a deep sigh, and expressions of regret that such a vagabond lion should have such a feast on their cow, which they anticipated would have afforded them many a draught of luscious milk. Before the day dawned, having deposited nearly the whole of the carcass in his stomach, he collected the head, backbone, part of the legs, the paunch, which he emptied of its contents, and the two clubs which had been thrown at him, and walked off, leaving nothing but some fragments of bones, and one of my balls, which had hit the carcass instead of himself.

a dem-
vinced
for his
flesh c
of the
was le
marrow
if with
'Aft
hymn-
back c
a good
with n
upon a
but no
except
and a
had no
have to
meat w
at our
son of
ride to
evening

service was over, having taken another draught of milk, and renewed my conversation with the people, I lay down on a mat to repose for the night. Sometimes a kind housewife would hang a bamboo or wooden vessel filled with milk on a forked stick near my head, that I might, if necessary, drink during the night.

‘At one of these places, I had slept on the ground near the door of the hut in which the principal man and his wife reposed. I remarked in the morning, that it appeared that some of the cattle had broken loose during the night, as I had heard something moving about on the outside of the thorn fence under which I lay. “Oh,” he replied, “I was looking at the *spoor* this morning ; it was the lion,” adding, that a few nights before it sprang over on the very spot on which I had been lying, and seized a goat, with which it bounded off through another part of the fold. “Look,” said he, “there is part of some of the mats we tore from the house and burned to frighten him away.” On asking him how he could think of appointing me to sleep in that very spot, “Oh,” he rejoined, “the lion would not have the audacity to jump over on you.” This remark produced a laugh from me, in which he and his wife joined most heartily, and reminded me of a circumstance in his own *history*, with which I was well *acquainted* ; for he had been in

the jaws of a lion. One night, he, and about a dozen more hunters, were fast asleep, with a circle of bushes placed around their fire. When the blaze was extinguished, a lion sprang into the midst of the sleeping party, seized my host by the shoulder, and, with his caross, dragged him off to some distance. The others, aroused by the scuffle, snatched up their guns, and not knowing that one of their number had been carried off, shot in the direction whence the noise proceeded. One ball happened to wound the lion, and in trying to roar, it let the man drop from its grasp, who instantly ran off, leaving his mantle, and bolted in among his companions, crying out, “Do not shoot me ;” for they supposed for a moment that he was the lion. He showed me the ugly marks of the lion’s teeth in his shoulder.

‘With all their boldness, they are sometimes arrant cowards. I have known bushmen, and even women, drive the lion away from the prey he has just seized, by beating their clubs on dry hides and shouting ; nevertheless, by day, and especially by night, he is an object of terror. On one occasion, I remember a man who, coming unexpectedly on a lion, fainted. The lion raised himself to look over the bushes, and seeing no one, seemed to suspect a plot, and scampered off with his tail between his legs. It is but justice to add that the man was no less cowardly ; for, on awaking from

his swoon, and looking this way and that, he imagined the object of his terror was still there, and taking to his heels, made towards the waggon. On another occasion, a native having been followed by a lion, climbed a tree for safety. The animal lay down at the foot of the very tree up which the poor fellow had taken refuge, and kept watch all night. Towards morning, however, sleep overcame the hitherto watchful bushman. He dreamt that he had fallen into the lion's mouth; and awakening at the moment, in a state of fright and bewilderment, he lost his balance, and falling from among the branches, alighted heavily on the back of the beast, on which the monster, thus unexpectedly saluted, ran off with a loud roar; and the bushman, also taking to his heels in an opposite direction, returned in safety to his anxious parents.'

A SENTRY SEIZED BY A LION.

Jan Steneberg, in describing a journey of his into the interior of Africa, says:—'The waggons and cattle had been put up for the night, when about midnight the cattle suddenly got into complete confusion. About thirty paces from the tent stood a lion, which on seeing us walked away deliberately about thirty paces farther, behind a small thorn bush, carrying something with him, which I took to be a young ox. We fired more than sixty shots at the bush. The south-

east wind blew strong, the sky was clear, and the moon shone very brightly, so that we could perceive anything at a short distance. After the cattle had been quieted again, and I had looked over everything, I missed the sentry before the tent. We called as loudly as possible, but in vain; nobody answered, from which I concluded he was carried off. Three or four men then advanced very cautiously to the bush, which stood right opposite to the door of the tent, to see if they could discover anything of the man, but retired helter-skelter; for the lion, who was still there, rose up and began to roar. About a hundred shots were again fired at the bush, without our perceiving anything of the beast. This induced one of the men again to approach it with a fire-brand in his hand; but as soon as he neared the bush, the lion roared terribly, and leaped at him, on which he threw the fire-brand at the animal; and the other people having fired about ten shots at him, he returned immediately to his former station. The fire-brand which the man had thrown at the lion had fallen in the midst of the bush, and favoured by the wind, it began to burn with a great flame, so that we could see very clearly into it, and through it. We continued our firing into it. The night passed away, and the day began to break, which animated every one to fire at the lion, because he could not be there without

exposing himself entirely. Seven men posted at the farthest wag-gons watched to take him as he came out. At last, before it became quite light, he walked up the hill with the man in his mouth, when about forty shots were fired without hitting him. He persevered in retaining his prey amidst fire and shots, and amidst it all carried it securely off. When the day was more advanced, the lion was tracked to his lair, and killed whilst lying over the mangled remains of the poor sentinel.'

A LION ENCOUNTER.

Dr. Burchell, in one of his travelling expeditions, had the following encounter with lions : 'The day was exceedingly pleasant, and not a cloud to be seen. For a mile or two we travelled along the banks of the river, which in this part abounded in tall mat rushes. The dogs seemed much to enjoy prowling about, examining every bushy place, and at last met with some object among the rushes which caused them to set up a most vehement and determined barking. We explored the spot with caution, as we suspected from the peculiar tone of their bark that it was, what it proved to be, a lion. Having encouraged the dogs to drive him out, a task which they performed with great unwillingness, we had a full view of an enormous black-maned lion and a lioness. The latter was seen only for a minute,

as she made her escape up the river under concealment of the rushes ; but the lion came steadily forward, and stood to look at us. At this moment we felt our situation not free from danger, as the animal seemed preparing to spring upon us, and we were standing on the bank, at the distance of only a few yards from him, most of us being on foot and unarmed, without any visible possibility of escaping. I had given up my horse to the hunters, and was on foot myself ; but there was no time for fear, and it was useless to attempt avoiding him. Poor Truy was in great alarm : she clasped her infant to her bosom, and screamed out as if she thought her destruction inevitable, calling to those who were nearest the animal, "Take care ! Take care !" In great fear for my safety, she had insisted on my moving farther off. I, however, stood well upon my guard, holding my pistols in my hand, with my finger upon the trigger ; and those who had muskets kept themselves prepared in the same manner. But at this instant the dogs boldly flew in between us and the lion, and surrounding him, kept him at bay by their violent and resolute barking. The courage of those faithful animals was most admirable ; they advanced up to the side of the huge beast, and stood making the greatest clamours in his face, without the least appearance of fear. The lion, conscious of his strength, remained unmoved at their

noisy attempts, and kept his head turned towards us. At one moment, the dogs perceiving his eye thus engaged, had advanced close to his feet, and seemed as if they would actually seize hold of him; but they paid dearly for their impudence, for, without discomposing the majestic and steady attitude in which he stood fixed, he merely moved his paw, and at the next instant I beheld two lying dead. In doing this, he made so little exertion, that it was scarcely perceptible by what means they had been killed. Of the time which we gained by the interference of the dogs not a moment was lost; we fired upon him; one of the balls went through his side, just between the short ribs, and blood began to flow; but the animal still remained standing in the same position. We had now no doubt that he would spring upon us; every gun was instantly re-loaded; but happily we were mistaken, and were not sorry to see him move quietly away, though I had hoped in a few minutes to have been able to take hold of his paw without danger.'

DEATH OF HENDRICH.

'Having outspanned,' says Gordon Cumming, 'we at once set about making a kraal for the cattle, and that of the worst description of thorn trees, as I had now become very particular since my severe loss by lions on the first of the month. I

had yet, however, a fearful lesson to learn, as to the nature and character of those beasts, of which I had at one time entertained so little fear; and on this night a horrible tragedy was to be enacted in my little lonely camp, of so very awful and appalling a nature as to make the blood curdle in my veins. I worked till near sundown at one side of the kraal with Hendrich, my first waggon-driver, I cutting down the trees with my axe, and he dragging them to the spot. When the kraal was completed, and the cattle secured within it, I turned my attention to preparing a pot of barley-broth. For this purpose I lighted a fire outside the kraal, between it and the water, close on the river-bank, and under a dense bushgrove of shady trees, but made no kind of fence around this our setting place for the evening. The Hottentots, without any reason, made their fire about fifty paces from mine; they, according to their usual custom, being satisfied with the shelter of a large dense bush. The evening passed away cheerfully.

'Soon after it was dark, we heard elephants breaking the trees in the forest across the river; and once or twice I strode away into the darkness some distance from the fireside, to stand and listen to them. I little at that moment imagined the imminent peril to which I was exposing my life, or thought that a bloodthirsty "man-eater"

lion was crouching near, and only watching his opportunity to consign one of us to a most horrible death. About three hours after the sun went down, I called my men to come and take their coffee and supper, which was ready for them at my fire; and after supper, three of them returned before their comrades to their own fireside, and lay down: these were John Stofolus, Hendrich, and Ruyter. In a few minutes, an ox coming out by the gate of the kraal and walking round the back of it, Hendrich got up and drove him in again, and then went back to his fireside and lay down. Hendrich and Ruyter lay on one side of the fire, under one blanket, and John Stofolus lay on the other. At this moment I was sitting taking some barley-broth; our fire was very small, and the night pitch dark and windy. Owing to our proximity to the village, the wood was very scarce, the Bakalahari having burnt it all in their fires.

‘Suddenly the appalling and murderous voice of an angry bloodthirsty lion burst upon my ear within a few yards of us, followed by the shrieking of the Hottentots. Again and again the murderous roar of the attack was repeated. We heard John and Ruyter shriek, “The lion! the lion!” Still for a few moments we thought he was chasing one of the dogs round the kraal: but next instant John Stofolus rushed into the midst of us, almost speechless with fear

and terror, his eyes bursting from their sockets, and shrieked out, “The lion! the lion! he has got Hendrich. He dragged him away from the fire beside me. I struck him with the burning brand upon the head, and he would not let go his hold. Hendrich is dead! O God! Hendrich is dead! Let us take fire and seek him!” On hearing this, the rest of my people rushed about, shrieking and yelling as if they were mad. I was angry with them for their folly, and told them that if they did not stand still and keep quiet the lion would have another of us, and that very likely there was a troop of them. I ordered the dogs, which were nearly all fast, to be made loose, and the fire to be increased as far as could be. I then shouted Hendrich’s name; but all was still. I told my men that Hendrich was dead, and that a regiment of soldiers could not now help him, and, hunting my dogs forward, had everything brought within the kraal, when we lighted our fire, and closed the entrance as well as we could. My terrified people sat round the fire with guns in their hands till the day broke, still fancying that every moment the lion would return and spring again into the midst of us. When the dogs were first let go, the stupid brutes, as dogs often prove when most required, instead of going at the lion, rushed fiercely on one another, and fought desperately for several minutes; after this they got his

wind, and going at him, disclosed to us his position. They kept up a continued barking until the day dawned, the lion occasionally springing after them and driving them in upon the kraal. The horrible monster lay all night within forty yards of us, consuming the wretched man whom he had chosen for his prey. He had dragged him into a little hollow at the back of the thick bush beside which the fire was kindled, and there he remained until the day dawned.

‘It appeared that when the unfortunate Hendrich rose to drive in the ox, the lion had watched him to his fireside ; and he had scarcely lain down, when the brute sprang upon him and Ruyter with his appalling murderous roar, and roaring as he lay, grappled him with his fearful claws, and kept biting him on the breast and shoulder, and all the while feeling for his neck ; having got hold of which, he at once dragged him backwards round the bush into the dense shade. As the lion lay upon the unfortunate man, he faintly cried, “ Help me, help me ! O God ! men, help me ! ” after which the fearful beast got a hold of his neck, and then all was still, except that his comrades heard the bones of the neck crashing between the teeth of

the lion. John Stofolus had lain with his back to the fire, on the opposite side ; and on hearing the lion, he sprang up, and seizing a large flaming brand, belaboured him on the head with the burning wood. But the brute did not take any notice of him. The bushman had a narrow escape, the lion having inflicted two gashes in his seat with his claws. The next morning, just as the day began to dawn, we heard the lion dragging something up the river-side, under cover of the bank. We drove the cattle out of the kraal, and then proceeded to inspect the scene of the night’s awful tragedy. In the hollow, where the lion had lain consuming his prey, we found one leg of the unfortunate Hendrich, bitten off below the knee, the shoe still on the foot, and fragments of the pea-coat lay around. Poor Hendrich ! I knew the fragments of that old coat, and had often marked them hanging in the dense covers where the elephant had charged after my unfortunate after-rider. Hendrich was by far the best man I had about my waggon, of a most cheerful disposition, a first-rate waggon-driver, fearless in the field, ever active, willing and obliging ; his loss to us all was very serious. I felt confounded, and utterly sick in my heart.’



INDEX.

- ABYSSINIA**, elephant-hunting in, 547.
 Accident, an unfortunate, 222.
 Adams family, massacre of the, 472.
 Adoption, Indian, 480.
 Adventure, Bartle's, 497.
 — Colter's, 504.
 Adventures among the Chippeway Indians, 425.
 — in a burning forest, 514.
 — lion, 582.
 — my uncle's, 477.
 — of Captain Wilson, 148.
 — of nine men in an open boat, 265.
 — of seven poor sailors, 233.
 — of two brothers, 98.
 Alamingo, life at, 474.
 Algerine tyranny, 244.
 Algiers, city of, 240.
 — slave's life at, 242.
 All, Hyder, 150.
 Alligator and the bear, 544.
 Allowance, a meagre, 312.
 Ambuscade, an Indian, 478.
 Ambush, an Indian, 434.
 America, loss of a ship on the coast of, 370.
 Arabs attack a lion, how, 579.
 Arctic Crusoes, fate of, 219.
 Arctic regions, diary of a residence in, 234.
 Arctic Seas, adventures in, 265.
 Ardennes forest, dangers of the, 6.
Argus, the brig, 404.
 Arrest, an, 173.
 Arrows, ingenious method of making, 292.
 Ashton, Philip, story of, 270.
 Asylum, a safe, 183.
 Audubon, three incidents in the life of, 510.
 Bagging elephants, 552.
 Bait, a cayman, 540.
Balbi the monk, 89.
 Barbarity, Indian, 471-473.
 Bare feet, inconvenience of, 279.
 Barentz, death of, 210.
 Bartle's adventure, 497.
 Basque Roads, boat voyage to the, 171.
 Bastile, life in the, 115.
 — wonderful escape from the, 110.
 Battle between a cobra and rat, 529.
 — between two snakes, 531.
 Bear, a frozen, 204.
 — a terrible fight with a, 202.
 — an encounter with a, 208-210.
 — and the alligator, 544.
 — battle with a, 229.
 — killing a, 446.
 Bear's feast, 447.
 Bears, attacked by seven, 235.
 — attacks from, 292.
 — plentiful supply of, 230.
 Beaver skins, sold for, 464.
 — trapping, 442.
 Bell Sound, building huts at, 223.
 Betrayed, 430.
 Bitche, imprisonment in the fortress of, 164.
 Bligh, Captain, narrative of, 315.
 Boa's mouthful, a, 522.
 Boar, attacked by a wild, 279.
 Boat, a leaky, 312.
 Boat-building in a cellar, 246.
 Boat voyage, a fearful, 423.
 — a remarkable, 295.
 Books, mystical, 78.
 Boone, Daniel, escape of, 493.
 — personal appearance of, 493.
Bounty, mutiny of the, 316.
 Brady's leap, 507.
 Buccaneer, story of a French, 252.
 Buffalo adventure, 559.
 Buffalo bull, a vicious, 562.
 — chased by a, 564.
 Buffaloes, charged by a herd of, 566.
 Burchell, Dr., lion encounter of, 592.

- Cadotte, Madame, 451.
 Calm, a dead, 414.
 Camp, a winter, 378.
 Canadian inhumanity, 433.
 Canal, voyage on a, 126.
 Canoe, a floating, 281.
 — making a bark, 455.
 Canvas boat, embarking in a, 243.
 Cap, a wolf-skin, 497.
 Captives, stalking, 458.
 Carver, Captain, adventures of, 464.
 Casanova—
 Story of, 73.
 Accusations, 74.
 Prison, 75.
 Sufferings, 76.
 Lorenzo the jailor, 76.
 Night of horror, 77.
 Life under the leads, 78.
 Illness, 79.
 Earthquake, 80.
 Fellow-prisoners, 80.
 New-Year's gift, 81.
 The stiletto, 82.
 First attempt at escaping, 82.
 Lamp-making, 83.
 Disappointment, 86.
 A new cell, 86.
 Jailor's wrath and cruelty, 87.
 Second plan of escape, 89.
 Balbi the monk, 89.
 Dish of macaroni, 90.
 The informer, 91.
 On the leads, 93.
 Perilous position, 94.
 Balbi's rage, 94.
 A useful ladder, 95.
 Overcome with fatigue, 96.
 Free! 97.
 Castle of comfort, the, 284.
 Cave, contents of a, 439.
 — skeletons in the, 503.
 Cayman captured, a, 544.
 — ride on the back of a, 539.
 Cayman's sigh, 540.
 Cell, something like a, 50.
Centaur, narrative of the loss of the, 304.
 Ceylon buffaloes, 559.
 — crocodile-shooting in, 533.
 — elephant-hunting in, 548.
 Chamblee, the fortress of, 98.
 Channel, stormy passage across the, 192.
 Chiefs, Tofoan, 325.
 Child, saved by a, 508.
 Chippeway Indians, captivity among, 425.
 Christian, Fletcher, 319.
 Classic names, 117.
 Clergyman, a captive, 243.
 Clothes, new-fashioned, 293.
 Cobra and the rat, 529.
 — and the turkey's eggs, 528.
 — de capello, stories of the, 526.
 — fierce battle with a, 530.
 Cold, intense, 205.
 Colter's adventure, 504.
 Commercial enterprise in the 16th century, 201.
 Communistic prisoners, story of, 193.
 Compass, value of a, 385.
 Conciergerie, escape from the, 182.
 — imprisonment, 174.
 Conflict, a fierce, 397.
 Conversion by force, 2.
 Coote, Sir Eyre, position of, 149.
 Coulacalara, catching a, 522.
 Counterpane tossing, 18.
 Countess, a bold, 33.
 Courage, a fine specimen of, 572.
 Crawford's Indian expedition, 483.
 Crew, a miserable, 352.
 — a mutinous, 317.
 — a shipwrecked, 371.
 Crocodile hunt, a, 537.
 — shooting in Ceylon, 533.
 Crocodile's stomach, contents of a, 539.
 Cruelty, Indian, 466.
 — of Hyder Ali, 154.
 Curé, an idle, 13.
 Daddy Quashi's cowardice, 543.
 D'Alegre, 114.
 Danger, in imminent, 518.
 Death, escape from a terrible, 482.
 — of a buffalo, 566.
 — of a castaway, 294.
 Deer, expedition to hunt, 215.
 Deliverance, a welcome, 231.
 Dentist, an American, 190.
 Deserters, sufferings of six, 360.
 Desertion, a base, 384.
 Despair, 220.
 — a scene of, 384.
 Destitution, 109.
 Detection, how we escaped, 193.
Diamond man-of-war, the, 287.
 Diary, a strange, 234.
 — of Captain Bligh, 316.
 Disappointment, a cruel, 49.
 Discovery, a disagreeable, 290.
 Distress, extreme, 375.
 Dog, sacrificing a, 455.
 Dominique, 390.
 Dragoonading, 3.
 Dreams, horrible, 417.
 Dress, an Indian, 440.
 Dungeon, a horrible, 18.
 Dutch frigate, engagement with a, 254.
 Dutchman, a benevolent, 124.
 Duty or safety, 311.

- Earl of Eldon*, burning of the, 419.
 Earthquake, an, 80.
 Elephant and tiger, 568.
 — habits of the Ceylon, 548.
 — hunting, Abyssinia, 547.
 — — in Ceylon, 548.
 — sagacity of the, 549.
 Elephant's charge, an, 554-556.
 Elephants, 'Rogue,' 555.
 Empress Eugenie's escape from France, 188.
 Enemy, a kind, 163.
 English man-of-war, engagement with an, 256.
 Epigrams, danger of writing, 113.
 Error, a sportsman's, 560.
 Escape, a daring, 99-136.
 — a narrow, 7, 570.
 Essequibo, night on the, 540.
 Evans, Lieutenant, and the tiger, 573.
 Expedition, a fruitless, 201.
 Exploit, a daring, 107.

 Face to face, 563.
 Fall, an unexpected, 591.
 Farmer, a hospitable, 160.
 Fayal, landing at, 314.
 Ferocity, dreadful, 392.
 Fever ship, the, 413.
 Fight, a terrible, 389.
 Figure, a strange, 157.
 Fire, an attempt to procure, 280.
 — a ship on, 296, 420.
 — in peril of, 513.
 Flesh, crocodile, 539.
 Folly, 394.
 Food, hunting for, 342.
 Forest, a burning, 514.
 — alone in the, 106.
 — camping in the, 105.
 — lost in the, 406.
 Fort William Henry, massacre at, 464.
 Foxes, trapping, 205.
 France, an attempt to escape from, 160.
 — Empress Eugenie's escape from, 188.
 French vessel blown up, 252.
 Frenchman, a generous, 462.
 Frost, intense, 229.
 — killed by, 269.
 Frozen ship, the, 302.

 Gale, a fatal, 305.
 Galley-slaves, a chain of, 17.
 Gamekeeper, a treacherous, 8.
 Gauntlet, running the, 485.
 George I. and the Countess of Nithsdale, 25-34.
 Gerard's second lion, 581.
 Giraffe and the lion, the, 582.
 Glover's story, 482.
 God's man, 153.

 Governor, a cruel, 37.
 Green harbour, hunting at, 220.
 Greenland, description of, 214.
 — eight Englishmen left in, 212.
 — fowls, 230.
 Guest, an unwelcome, 527.
 Guilt, an evidence of, 370.

 Harrod's wolf-skin cap, 495.
 Henry, Alexander, captivity of, 425.
 Heroic conduct, 391.
 Highlander, a noble, 155.
 Hog, a wonderful, 492.
 Holland, a return to, 212.
 Home, a picture of, 513.
 Horse, an unruly, 159.
 Hottentot and the lion, the, 584.
 Hug, a bear's, 546.
 Huguenot, story of a, 1.
 Huguenots, two captured, 9.
 — female, 17.
 Hunger, sufferings from, 299-335.
 Hunt, a crocodile, 537.
 — proceeds of a winter's, 449.
 Hurricane, a terrific, 511.
 Hut, building a, 204.
 — in search of a, 289.

 Ice-fields, 203.
 — in danger of, 209-267.
 Indian assault, an, 501.
 — council, 436.
 — cruelty, 486.
 — dress, 440.
 — massacre, 428.
 — raid, an, 470.
 — speeches, 436.
 — warnings, 426.
 — wounded, 517.
 Indian's appeal to his adopted son, 481.
 — farewell, 451.
 Indians, adventures among the North American, 477.
 — an escape from sleeping, 475.
 — capture by and escape from, 469.
 — captured by, 456.
 — escape from, 489.
 Informer, an, 91.
 Inglefield, Captain, narrative of, 304.
 Inquisition, before the, 76.
 Intoxication, a scene of, 388.
 Iron bar, useful, 196.
 Island, a barren, 341.
 — description of an, 349.
 — Restoration, 343.
 Islanders, an attack from South Sea, 327.
 Islands, discovery of, 334.

 Jailor, a cruel, 20, 139.
 — a surly, 76.
 Jailor's despair, 187.
 Jewess, a brave, 48.

- Supercargo's narrative, a, 370.
 Surprise, a disagreeable, 216.
 — a midnight, 470.
 Swimming, extraordinary, 152.
- Tartar, catching a, 273.
 Thirst, sufferings from, 299.
 Tiger-hunting, dangers of, 572.
 Tiger-shooting at night, 573.
 Tiger's back, ride on a, 569.
 — jaws, between a, 568.
 Timor, description of, 353.
 — joy at reaching, 353.
 Tofoa, a sojourn at, 322.
 Tools, prison, 116.
 Tortoise, catching a, 249.
 Torture, Indian, 471.
 Tower, an escape from the, 23.
 Traitor, a, 44.
 Treachery well rewarded, 10.
 Tree, a camel thorn, 582.
 Trees, how insects destroy, 513.
- Trenck, Baron—
 Prison exploits of, 34.
 Early life, 34.
 Austrian cousin, 35.
 Imprisonment in Glatz fortress, 35.
 Escape, 36.
 Recapture, 37.
 Plotting to escape, 38.
 A boastful swordsman, 39.
 Schell, 39.
 Escape, 40.
 A night's wandering, 40.
 Terrible journey, 42.
 Narrow escape, 43.
 Simple peasant woman, 43.
 At Vienna, 44.
 Betrayed, 44.
 Magdeburg dungeon, 44.
 Sufferings, 45.
 Herculean labours, 47.
 Grenadier Gefhardt, 47-56.
 Brave Jewess, 48.
 Disappointment, 49.
 Star Fort cell and fetters, 50.
 Again attempts to escape, 52.
 Attempting suicide, 53.
 Desperate, 54.
 Removing fetters, 57.
 Burrowing, 58.
 Compassionate sentinel, 59.
 Over-cautious, 60.
 Tyrannical governor, 61.
 Illness, 62.
 Another attempt to escape, 63.
 Watchful sentinel, 64.
 Deprived of sleep, 66.
 Ingenious stratagem, 67.
- Trenck, Baron, *continued*—
 An accident, 69.
 Story of a mouse, 70.
 Folly, 71.
 Freedom, 72.
 Trick, a foolish, 110.
 Trifles, disputing for, 401.
 Trunk, power of an elephant's, 543.
 Tuileries, escape from the, 189.
 Tunnel, excavating a, 195.
 Turkish man-of-war, engagement with a, 239.
- Valet, a prison, 113.
 — in love, a, 80.
 Verdun, a prisoner's life at, 159.
 — journey to, 165.
 Vessel, a suspicious, 265.
 Vincennes, clever escape from, 112.
 Voyage, a memorable, 157.
 — a perilous, 248.
 — a stormy, 315.
 — commencement of a long, 323.
 — in a fever ship, 413.
 — remarkable boat, 315.
- War-dance before royalty, 482.
 Waterton's snake-catching, 520.
 Wawatam, 'brother,' 426.
 Weather, stormy, 329.
 Wenniway, 431.
 Whale fritters, 226.
 Whisky, the effects of, 494.
 Wife, a noble, 179.
 Williamson, Peter, story of, 469.
- Wilson, Captain—
 Story of, 148.
 Early life, 148.
 Carries stories to Sir Eyre Coote, 149.
 Taken prisoner, 150.
 Escapes from the fort, 151.
 Marvellous adventures, 152.
 Recapture, 153.
 Hyder Ali's cruelty, 153.
 Sufferings, 154.
 Noble fellow-prisoner, 155.
 Deliverance, 157.
 Wretched appearance, 157.
 Memorable voyage, 158.
- Wintering on the Isle of Maurice, 233.
 Wolf and the lamb, 112.
 Woman, a captive, 380.
 — a compassionate, 101.
 — a drowning, 391.
 — a frozen, 304.
 Wonderful preservation, 366.
 Wrecked on the ice, 266.
- Zebras and the lion, the, 583.

Nova Zembla, twelfth night in, 207.
 — wintering in, 201.

Officer and deserter, 41.
 Otaheitean delights, 320.
 Ottawa Indians, 434.
 Owl, an ancient, 408.
 Oysters, a supply of, 341.

Pacific, alone on an island in the, 405.
 Pambo, 527.
 Panther, killing a, 480.
 Paris, an escape from, 185.
 Parliament, petitioning, 26.
 Parole, a question of, 160.
 Passion, a king's, 31.
 Passport, obtaining a, 168.
 Patient, a mad, 191.
 Peasant, an honest, 6.
 Piety, a scene of filial, 387.
 Pirates, attacked by, 285.
 — captured by, 271.
 — cruelty of, 286.
 — escape from, 275.
 Plot, a secret, 274.
 Poison of the labarri snake, 520.
 Port Louis, escape from the fortress of,
 199.
 — fortress of, 193.
 Post, a dangerous, 491.
 Post-office, a novel, 209.
 Prayer, consolations of, 386.
 Preservation, wonderful, 366.
 Prince Thomas, the negro, 259.
 Prison, attempts to escape from, 46, 52,
 58, 63, 67, 82.
 — exploits of Baron Trenck, 34.
 — friends, 128-131.
 — how Huguenots fared in, 11.
 — meeting friends in, 14.
 — sufferings, 45, 61, 69.
 — valets de chambre, 22.
 Prisoner, cruelty to a, 106.
 Prisoners, story of Communistic, 193.
 Privations, cruel, 269.
 Providence, saved by, 272.
 Providential preservation, 479.
 Provisions, praying for, 460.
 — scanty, 312.
 — taking stock of, 321.
 Provost, prison, 22.
 Punishment, a severe, 19.

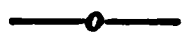
Quarrel, a senseless, 250.
 Quarters, comfortable, 358.

Racoon-hunting, 443.
 Raft, life on the *Medusa*, 382.
 Rain, a miraculous shower of, 488.
 Rat and the cobra, the, 529.
 Rattlesnake, bitten by a, 103.
 — propitiating a, 454.

Rescue, a timely, 519.
 Roatan Island, 276.
 — visitors at, 283.
 'Rogue' elephants, 555.
 — elephant's charge, 558.
 Rover, story of a, 253.
 Russel, Colonel, 263.
 Russian sailors, story of four, 288.
 — ship, loss of a, 370.

Sailors, ingenuity of Russian, 291.
 — story of seven poor, 233.
 Samaritan, a good, 20.
 Savages, an attack from, 327.
 — life among, 381.
 — treachery of, 374.
 Scene, an exciting, 543.
 Scenes, terrible, 466.
 Scurvy, ravages of the, 237.
 Sea-horses, catching, 225.
 Seal, fight with a, 410.
 Seamen, two hungry, 365.
 Security, false, 425.
 Sentinel, a watchful, 64.
 Servant, an adroit, 168.
 Sharks and the schooner's men, the, 363.
 Ship, a sinking, 310.
 — cast on shore, a, 371.
 — foundering of a, 266.
 — the fever, 413.
 — the frozen, 302.
 Shot, a desperate, 570.
 — a hazardous, 397.
 — a narrow escape from being, 282.
 — a powerful, 566.
 — an ineffectual, 563.
 Sick and wounded thrown overboard,
 399.
 Sight, a sad, 238.
 Silver, a charge of, 564.
 Situation, a dreadful, 395.
 Skeletons in the cave, 503.
 Slave, casting lots for a, 245.
 Slaves at Algiers, 240.
 Smith, Lieutenant, heroism of, 363.
 Snake, capturing a, 520.
 — overlaying a, 410.
 Snakes, battle between two, 531.
 Snow, lost in the, 444.
 Soldier and the Indian, the, 490.
 Speech, danger of unguarded, 19.
 Spitzbergen, four sailors left at, 288.
 Spy, an Algerine, 247.
 Stampede, a cattle, 583.
 Starvation, pangs of, 395.
 Stockwell's capture by Indians, 456.
 Stories, wonderful, 512.
 Stormy weather, 329.
 Story of my uncle's adventures, 477.
 Stratagem, a clever, 4.
 Sufferings, dreadful, 313.
 — of six deserters, 360.

NIMMO'S POPULAR EDITION OF THE
WORKS OF THE POETS,
CONTINUED.



6. COWPER'S POETICAL WORKS.
7. MILTON'S POETICAL WORKS.
8. THOMSON'S POETICAL WORKS.
9. GOLDSMITH'S CHOICE WORKS.
10. POPE'S POETICAL WORKS.
11. BURNS' POETICAL WORKS.
12. THE CASQUET OF GEMS. Choice Selections
from the Poets.
13. THE BOOK OF HUMOROUS POETRY.
14. BALLADS : Scottish and English.
15. BUNYAN'S PILGRIM'S PROGRESS AND
HOLY WAR.
16. LIVES OF THE BRITISH POETS.
17. THE PROSE WORKS OF ROBERT BURNS.
18. POEMS, SONGS, AND BALLADS OF THE
SEA.



* * This Series of Books, from the very superior manner in which it is produced, is at once the cheapest and handsomest edition of the Poets in the market. The volumes form elegant and appropriate Presents as School Prizes and Gift-Books, either in cloth or morocco.

'They are a marvel of cheapness, some of the volumes extending to as many as 700, and even 900, pages, printed on toned paper in a beautifully clear type. Add to this, that they are profusely illustrated with wood engravings, are elegantly and tastefully bound, and that they are published at 3s. 6d. each, and our recommendation of them is complete.'—*Scotsman*.

NIMMO'S SELECT LIBRARY.

New Series of Choice Books, beautifully printed on superfine paper, profusely Illustrated with original Engravings by the first Artists, and elegantly bound in cloth and gold, large crown 8vo, price 5s. each.

SECOND EDITION.

1. **Almost Faultless : A Story of the Present Day.** By the Author of 'A Book for Governesses.'
'The author has written a capital story in a high moral tone.'—*The Court Journal*.

SECOND EDITION.

2. **Lives of Old English Worthies before the Conquest.**
By W. H. DAVENPORT ADAMS.
'The author's aim is to illuminate, what may be regarded as obscure, certain periods of historic England, accompanied with biographical sketches.'—*Courant*.

SECOND EDITION.

3. **Every-Day Objects ; or, Picturesque Aspects of Natural History.** By W. H. DAVENPORT ADAMS.

THIRD EDITION.

4. **My Schoolboy Friends : A Story of Whitminster Grammar School.** By ASCOTT R. HOPE, Author of 'A Book about Dominies,' 'Stories of School Life,' etc.
'This is a most interesting book. Boys, for whom it is especially written, will thoroughly enjoy it.'—*Westminster Review*.

SECOND EDITION.

5. **Drifted and Sifted : A Domestic Chronicle of the Seventeenth Century.**
'The author of this interesting, and we may add pathetic, story appears to possess the art of reproducing bygone times with much ability.'—*The Record*.

6. **Warrior, Priest, and Statesman ; or, English Heroes in the Thirteenth Century.** By W. H. DAVENPORT ADAMS.

7. **Totty Testudo. The Life and Wonderful Adventures of Totty Testudo.** An Autobiography by FLORA F. WYLDE.
'The book is of engrossing interest, and the reader will be astonished, as he lays it down, to find that he has been able to get so much entertainment and instruction from the personal adventures of a tortoise.'—*Inverness Courier*.

8. **On Holy Ground ; or, Scenes and Incidents in the Land of Promise.** By EDWIN HODDER, Author of 'Memories of New Zealand Life,' 'The Junior Clerk,' etc.

NIMMO'S FIVE SHILLING ILLUSTRATED GIFT BOOKS.

Crown 8vo, beautifully printed on superfine paper, profusely illustrated by eminent Artists, and richly bound in cloth and gold, and gilt edges, price 5s. each.

SECOND EDITION.

1. **Sword and Pen; or, English Worthies in the Reign of Elizabeth.** By W. H. DAVENPORT ADAMS.

'A more wholesome book for young readers we have seldom seen.'—*The Athenæum*.

SECOND EDITION.

2. **Norrie Seton; or, Driven to Sea.** By Mrs. George Cupples, Author of 'Unexpected Pleasures,' etc.

'Mrs. Cupples has given to the boys in this volume just the sort of sea-story with which they will be delighted.'—*The Scotsman*.

SECOND EDITION.

3. **The Circle of the Year; or, Studies of Nature and Pictures of the Seasons.** By W. H. DAVENPORT ADAMS.

'Its purpose is to tell both young and old, but especially the former, how much of interest there is in everything connected with nature.'—*Bell's Messenger*.

SECOND EDITION.

4. **The Wealth of Nature: Our Food Supplies from the Vegetable Kingdom.** By the Rev. JOHN MONTGOMERY, A.M.

'It would be difficult to put into the hands of any boy or girl a volume which more equally combines the instructive and interesting in literature.'—*N. B. Mail*.

FOURTH EDITION.

5. **Stories of School Life.** By Ascott R. Hope.

6. **Stories of French School Life.** By Ascott R. Hope.

'We were among the many who greatly admired Mr. Hope's "Stories of School Life" and "Stories about Boys," and when we found that he had undertaken to illustrate French school life, we gladly opened the volume. The stories are interesting in the highest degree; they appeal to the best sympathies of the lads for whom they are written. They set forth the right and the true against the false, and they are full of good, hearty humour.'—*Public Opinion*.

NIMMO'S UNIVERSAL GIFT BOOKS.

A Series of excellent Works, profusely Illustrated with original Engravings by the first Artists, choicely printed on superfine paper, and elegantly bound in cloth and gold, and gilt edges, crown 8vo, price 3s. 6d. each.

1. **Tales of Old English Life ; or, Pictures of the Periods.**
By WILLIAM FRANCIS COLLIER, LL.D., Author of 'History of English Literature,' etc.
2. **Mungo Park's Life and Travels.** With a Supplementary Chapter, detailing the results of recent Discovery in Africa.
3. **Benjamin Franklin : A Biography.** From the celebrated 'Life' by JARED SPARKS, and the more recent and extensive 'Life and Times' by JAMES PARTON.
4. **Wallace, the Hero of Scotland : A Biography.** By JAMES PATERSON.
5. **Men of History.** By Eminent Writers.
6. **Women of History.** By Eminent Writers.
7. **Old-World Worthies ; or, Classical Biography.** Selected from PLUTARCH'S LIVES.
8. **Epoch Men, and the Results of their Lives.** By Samuel NEIL.
9. **The Mirror of Character.** Selected from the Writings of OVERBURY, EARLE, and BUTLER.
10. **Wisdom, Wit, and Allegory.** Selected from 'The Spectator.'
11. **The Spanish Inquisition : Its Heroes and Martyrs.** By JANET GORDON, Author of 'Champions of the Reformation,' etc.
12. **The Improvement of the Mind.** By ISAAC WATTS, D.D.
13. **The Man of Business considered in Six Aspects.** A Book for Young Men.

* * This elegant and useful Series of Books has been specially prepared for School and College Prizes : they are, however, equally suitable for General Presentation. In selecting the works for this Series, the aim of the Publisher has been to produce books of a permanent value, interesting in manner and instructive in matter—books that youth will read eagerly and with profit, and which will be found equally attractive in after-life.

NIMMO'S ALL THE YEAR ROUND GIFT BOOKS.

A series of entertaining and instructive volumes, profusely Illustrated with original Engravings by the first Artists, choicely printed on superfine paper, and elegantly bound in cloth and gold, and gilt edges, crown 8vo, price 3s. 6d. each.

1. **Christian Osborne's Friends.** By Mrs. Harriet Miller Davidson, Author of 'Isobel Jardine's History,' and Daughter of the late Hugh Miller.
2. **Round the Grange Farm; or, Good Old Times.** By JEAN L. WATSON, Author of 'Bygone Days in our Village,' etc.
3. **Stories about Boys.** By Ascott R. Hope, Author of 'Stories of School Life,' 'My Schoolboy Friends,' etc. etc.
4. **George's Enemies: A Sequel to 'My Schoolboy Friends.'** By ASCOTT R. HOPE, Author of 'Stories about Boys,' etc. etc.
5. **Violet Rivers; or, Loyal to Duty. A Tale for Girls.** By WINIFRED TAYLOR, Author of 'Story of Two Lives,' etc.
6. **Wild Animals and Birds: Curious and Instructive Stories about their Habits and Sagacity.** With numerous Illustrations.
7. **The Twins of Saint-Marcel: A Tale of Paris Incendie.** By Mrs. A. S. ORR, Author of 'The Roseville Family,' etc. etc.
8. **Rupert Rochester, the Banker's Son. A Tale.** By WINIFRED TAYLOR, Author of 'Story of Two Lives,' etc.
9. **The Story of Two Lives; or, The Trials of Wealth and Poverty.** By WINIFRED TAYLOR, Author of 'Rupert Rochester,' etc.
10. **The Lost Father; or, Cecilia's Triumph. A Story of our own Day.** By DARYL HOLME.
11. **Friendly Fairies; or, Once upon a Time.**
12. **The Young Mountaineer; or, Frank Miller's Lot in Life.** The Story of a Swiss Boy. By DARYL HOLME.
13. **Stories from over the Sea.** With Illustrations.
14. **The Story of a Noble Life; or, Zurich and its Reformer Ulric Zwingle.** By Mrs. HARDY (JANET GORDON), Author of 'The Spanish Inquisition,' 'Champions of the Reformation,' etc. etc.
15. **Stories of Whitminster.** By Ascott R. Hope, Author of 'My Schoolboy Friends,' 'Stories about Boys,' etc. etc.

*. The object steadily kept in view in preparing the above series has been to give a collection of works of a thoroughly healthy moral tone, agreeably blending entertainment and instruction. It is believed this end has been attained, and that the several volumes will be found eminently suitable as Gift Books and School Prizes, besides proving of permanent value in the Home Library.

NIMMO'S HALF-CROWN REWARD BOOKS.

Extra foolscap 8vo, cloth elegant, gilt edges, Illustrated,
price 2s. 6d. each.

1. **Memorable Wars of Scotland.** By Patrick Fraser Tytler, F.R.S.E., Author of 'The History of Scotland,' etc.
2. **Seeing the World: A Young Sailor's own Story.** By CHARLES NORDHOFF, Author of 'The Young Man-of-War's-Man.'
3. **The Martyr Missionary: Five Years in China.** By Rev. CHARLES P. BUSH, M.A.
4. **My New Home: A Woman's Diary.**
5. **Home Heroines: Tales for Girls.** By T. S. Arthur, Author of 'Life's Crosses,' etc.
6. **Lessons from Women's Lives.** By Sarah J. Hale.
7. **The Roseville Family. A Historical Tale of the Eighteenth Century.** By Mrs. A. S. ORR, Author of 'Mountain Patriots,' etc.
8. **Leah. A Tale of Ancient Palestine. Illustrative of the Story of Naaman the Syrian.** By Mrs. A. S. ORR.
9. **Champions of the Reformation: The Stories of their Lives.** By JANET GORDON.
10. **The History of Two Wanderers; or, Cast Adrift.**
11. **Beattie's Poetical Works.**
12. **The Vicar of Wakefield.** By Oliver Goldsmith.
13. **Edgar Allan Poe's Poetical Works.**
14. **The Miner's Son, and Margaret Vernon.** By M. M. POLLARD, Author of 'The Minister's Daughter,' etc. etc.
15. **How Frank began to Climb the Ladder, and the Friends who lent him a hand.** By CHARLES BRUCE, Author of 'Lame Felix,' etc.
16. **Conrad and Columbine. A Fairy Tale.** By James MASON.
17. **Aunt Ann's Stories.** Edited by Louisa Loughborough.
18. **The Snow-Sweepers' Party, and the Tale of Old Tubbins.** By R. ST. JOHN CORBET, Author of 'Mince Pie Island,' etc. etc.
19. **The Story of Elise Marcel. A Tale for Girls.**

NIMMO'S

Two Shilling Reward Books.

Foolscap 8vo, Illustrated, elegantly bound in cloth extra, bevelled boards, gilt back and side, gilt edges, price 2s. each.

1. **The Far North: Explorations in the Arctic Regions.** By ELISHA KENT KANE, M.D.
2. **Great Men of European History.** From the Beginning of the Christian Era till the Present Time. By DAVID PRYDE, M.A.
3. **The Young Men of the Bible.** A Series of Papers, Biographical and Suggestive. By Rev. JOSEPH A. COLLIER.
4. **The Blade and the Ear: A Book for Young Men.**
5. **Monarchs of Ocean: Columbus and Cook.**
6. **Life's Crosses, and How to Meet them.** By T. S. Arthur.
7. **A Father's Legacy to his Daughters, etc.** A Book for Young Women. By Dr. GREGORY.
8. **Mountain Patriots.** A Tale of the Reformation in Savoy. By Mrs. A. S. ORR.
9. **Labours of Love.** By Winifred Taylor.
10. **Mossdale.** By Anna M. De Longh.
11. **The Standard-Bearer.** A Tale of the Times of Constantine the Great. By ELLEN PALMER.
12. **Jacqueline.** A Story of the Reformation in Holland. By Mrs. HARDY (JANET GORDON).

NIMMO'S

Home and School Series of Reward Books.

Foolscap 8vo, Illustrated, elegantly bound in cloth extra, bevelled boards, gilt back and side, gilt edges, price 2s. each.

1. **Lame Felix.** A Book for Boys. By Charles Bruce.
2. **Picture Lessons by the Divine Teacher; or, Illustrations of the Parables of our Lord.** By PETER GRANT, D.D.
3. **Nonna: A Story of the Days of Julian the Apostate.** By Ellen PALMER.
4. **Philip Walton; or, Light at Last.** By the Author of 'Meta Frantz,' etc.
5. **The Minister's Daughter, and Old Anthony's Will.** Tales for the Young. By M. M. POLLARD, Author of 'The Miner's Son,' etc. etc.
6. **The Two Sisters.** By M. M. Pollard.
7. **A Needle and Thread: A Tale for Girls.** By Emma J. Barnes, Author of 'Faithful and True, or the Mother's Legacy.'
8. **Taken Up: A Tale for Boys and Girls.** By A. Whympers.
9. **An Earl's Daughter.** By M. M. Pollard.
10. **Life at Hartwell; or, Frank and his Friends.** By Katharine E. MAY, Author of 'Alfred and his Mother,' etc. etc.
11. **Stories Told in a Fisherman's Cottage.** By Ellen Palmer, Author of 'Nonna,' etc. etc.
12. **Max Wild, the Merchant's Son; and other Stories for the Young.**

NIMMO'S

Sunday-School Reward Books.

Foolscap 8vo, cloth extra, gilt edges, Illustrated, price 1s. 6d. each.

1. **Bible Blessings.** By Rev. Richard Newton.
2. **One Hour a Week: Fifty-two Bible Lessons for the Young.**
3. **The Best Things.** By Rev. Richard Newton.
4. **The Story of John Heywood: An Historical Tale of the Time of Harry VIII.** By CHARLES BRUCE, Author of 'How Frank began to Climb,' etc.
5. **Lessons from Rose Hill; and Little Nannette.**
6. **Great and Good Women: Biographies for Girls.** By LYDIA H. SIGOURNEY.
7. **At Home and Abroad; or, Uncle William's Adventures.**
8. **Alfred and his Mother; or, Seeking the Kingdom.** By KATHARINE E. MAY.
9. **Ariel; or, The Crystal Cup. A Tale for the Young.** By Mrs. HENDERSON.
10. **The Kind Governess; or, How to make Home Happy.**
11. **Percy and Ida.** By Katharine E. May.
12. **Three Wet Sundays with the Book of Joshua.** By ELLEN PALMER, Author of 'Christmas at the Beacon,' etc. etc.

NIMMO'S SUNDAY AND WEEK-DAY Series of Reward Books.

Foolscap 8vo, cloth extra, gilt edges, Illustrated, price 1s. 6d. each.

1. **The Sculptor of Bruges.** By Mrs. W. G. Hall.
2. **From Cottage to Castle; or, Faithful in Little. A Tale founded on Fact.** By M. H., Author of 'The Red Velvet Bible,' etc.
3. **Christmas at the Beacon: A Tale for the Young.** By ELLEN PALMER.
4. **The Sea and the Savages: A Story of Adventure.** By HAROLD LINCOLN.
5. **The Swedish Singer; or, The Story of Vanda Rosendahl.** By Mrs. W. G. HALL.
6. **My Beautiful Home; or, Lily's Search.** By Chas. Bruce.
7. **The Story of a Moss Rose; or, Ruth and the Orphan Family.** By CHARLES BRUCE.
8. **Summer Holidays at Silversea.** By E. Rosalie Salmon.
9. **Fred Graham's Resolve.** By the Author of 'Mat and Sofie,' etc. etc.
10. **Wilton School; or, Harry Campbell's Revenge. A Tale.** By F. E. WEATHERLY.
11. **Grace Harvey and her Cousins.**
12. **Blind Mercy; and other Tales for the Young.** By Gertrude CROCKFORD.
13. **Evan Lindsay.** By Margaret Fraser Tytler, Author of 'Tales of Good and Great Kings,' 'Tales of the Great and Brave,' etc.

Nimmo's Eighteenpenny Favourite Reward Books.

Demy 18mo, Illustrated, cloth extra, gilt edges, price 1s. 6d. each.

1. **The Vicar of Wakefield. Poems and Essays.** By Oliver GOLDSMITH.
2. **Aesop's Fables, with Instructive Applications.** By Dr. CROXALL.
3. **Bunyan's Pilgrim's Progress.**
4. **The Young Man-of-War's-Man: A Boy's Voyage round the World.** By CHARLES NORDHOFF, Author of 'Seeing the World.'
5. **The Treasury of Anecdote: Moral and Religious.**
6. **The Boy's Own Workshop; or, The Young Carpenters.** By JACOB ABBOTT.
7. **The Life and Adventures of Robinson Crusoe.**
8. **The History of Sandford and Merton. A Moral and Instructive Lesson for Young Persons.**
9. **Evenings at Home; or, The Juvenile Budget Opened.** Consisting of a variety of Miscellaneous Pieces for the Instruction and Amusement of Young Persons. By Dr. AIKIN and Mrs. BARBAULD.
10. **Unexpected Pleasures; or, Left alone in the Holidays.** By Mrs. GEORGE CUPPLES, Author of 'Norrie Seton,' etc.

. The above Series of elegant and useful books is specially prepared for the entertainment and instruction of young persons.

Nimmo's Popular Religious Gift Books.

18mo, finely printed on toned paper, handsomely bound in cloth extra, price 1s. each.

1. **Across the River: Twelve Views of Heaven.** By Norman MACLEOD, D.D.; R. W. HAMILTON, D.D.; ROBERT S. CANDLISH, D.D.; JAMES HAMILTON, D.D.; etc. etc.
2. **Emblems of Jesus; or, Illustrations of Emmanuel's Character and Work.**
3. **Life Thoughts of Eminent Christians.**
4. **Comfort for the Desponding; or, Words to Soothe and Cheer Troubled Hearts.**
5. **The Chastening of Love: Words of Consolation for the Christian Mourner.** By JOSEPH PARKER, D.D., Manchester.
6. **The Cedar Christian, and other Practical Papers.** By the Rev. THEODORE L. CUYLER.
7. **Consolation for Christian Mothers Bereaved of Little Children.** By A FRIEND OF MOURNERS.
8. **The Orphan; or, Words of Comfort for the Fatherless and Motherless.**
9. **Gladdening Streams; or, The Waters of the Sanctuary.** A Book for Fragments of Time on each Lord's Day of the Year.
10. **Spirit of the Old Divines.**
11. **Choice Gleanings from Sacred Writers.**
12. **Direction in Prayer; or, The Lord's Prayer Illustrated in a Series of Expositions.** By PETER GRANT, D.D., Author of 'Emblems of Jesus,' etc.
13. **Scripture Imagery.** By Peter Grant, D.D., Author of 'Emblems of Jesus,' etc.

NIMMO'S ONE SHILLING ILLUSTRATED JUVENILE BOOKS.

**Foolscap 8vo, Coloured Frontispieces, handsomely bound in cloth,
Illuminated, price 1s. each.**

• ~~~~~ •

- 1. Four Little People and their Friends.**
- 2. Elizabeth; or, The Exiles of Siberia. A Tale
from the French of Madame COTTIN.**
- 3. Paul and Virginia. From the French of
BERNARDIN SAINT-PIERRE.**
- 4. Little Threads: Tangle Thread, Golden
Thread, and Silver Thread.**
- 5. Benjamin Franklin, the Printer Boy.**
- 6. Barton Todd, and The Young Lawyer.**
- 7. The Perils of Greatness: The Story of Alex-
ander Menzikoff.**
- 8. Little Crowns, and How to Win them. By
Rev. JOSEPH A. COLLIER.**
- 9. Great Riches: Nelly Rivers' Story. By Aunt
FANNY.**
- 10. The Right Way, and The Contrast.**
- 11. The Daisy's First Winter. And other Stories.
By HARRIET BEECHER STOWE.**
- 12. The Man of the Mountain. And other
Stories.**
- 13. Better than Rubies. Stories for the Young,
Illustrative of Familiar Proverbs. With 62 Illustrations.**

[Continued on next page.]

NIMMO'S ONE SHILLING ILLUSTRATED JUVENILE BOOKS, *CONTINUED.*

-
- 14 **Experience Teaches.** And other Stories for the Young. Illustrative of Familiar Proverbs. With 39 Illustrations.
 - 15 **The Happy Recovery.** And other Stories for the Young. With 26 Illustrations.
 - 16 **Gratitude and Probity.** And other Stories for the Young. With 21 Illustrations.
 - 17 **The Two Brothers.** And other Stories for the Young. With 13 Illustrations.
 - 18 **The Young Orator.** And other Stories for the Young. With 9 Illustrations.
 - 19 **Simple Stories to Amuse and Instruct Young Readers.** With Illustrations.
 - 20 **The Three Friends.** And other Stories for the Young. With Illustrations.
 - 21 **Sybil's Sacrifice.** And other Stories for the Young. With 12 Illustrations.
 - 22 **The Old Shepherd.** And other Stories for the Young. With Illustrations.
 - 23 **The Young Officer.** And other Stories for the Young. With Illustrations.
 - 24 **The False Heir.** And other Stories for the Young. With Illustrations.
 - 25 **The Old Farmhouse; or, Alice Morton's Home.** And other Stories. By M. M. POLLARD.
 - 26 **Twyford Hall; or, Rosa's Christmas Dinner, and what she did with it.** By CHARLES BRUCE.
 - 27 **The Discontented Weathercock.** And other Stories for Children. By M. JONES.
 - 28 **Out at Sea, and other Stories.** By Two Authors.
 - 29 **The Story of Waterloo; or, The Fall of NAPOLEON.**
 - 30 **Sister Jane's Little Stories.** Edited by Louisa LOUGHBOROUGH.

NIMMO'S NINEPENNY SERIES FOR BOYS AND GIRLS.

In demy 18mo, with Illustrations, elegantly bound in cloth.

~~~~~

THIS Series of Books will be found unequalled for genuine interest and value, and it is believed they will be eagerly welcomed by thoughtful children of both sexes. Parents may rest assured that each Volume teaches some noble lesson, or enforces some valuable truth.

1. **In the Brave Days of Old ; or, The Story of the Spanish Armada.** For Boys and Girls.
2. **The Lost Ruby.** By the Author of 'The Basket of Flowers,' etc.
3. **Leslie Ross ; or, Fond of a Lark.** By Charles Bruce.
4. **My First and Last Voyage.** By Benjamin Clarke.
5. **Little Katie : A Fairy Story.** By Charles Bruce.
6. **Being Afraid. And other Stories for the Young.** By CHARLES STUART.
7. **The Toll-Keepers. And other Stories for the Young.** By BENJAMIN CLARKE.
8. **Dick Barford : A Boy who would go down Hill.** By CHARLES BRUCE.
9. **Joan of Arc ; or, The Story of a Noble Life.** Written for Girls.
10. **Helen Siddal : A Story for Children.** By Ellen Palmer.
11. **Mat and Sofie : A Story for Boys and Girls.**
12. **Peace and War.** By the Author of 'The Basket of Flowers,' etc.
13. **Perilous Adventures of a French Soldier in Algeria.**
14. **The Magic Glass ; or, The Secret of Happiness.**
15. **Hawks' Dene : A Tale for Children.** By Katharine E. MAY.
16. **Little Maggie. And other Stories.** By the Author of 'The Joy of Well-Doing,' etc. etc.
17. **The Brother's Legacy ; or, Better than Gold.** By M. M. POLLARD.
18. **The Little Sisters ; or, Jealousy. And other Stories for the Young.** By the Author of 'Little Tales for Tiny Tots,' etc.
19. **Kate's New Home.** By Cecil Scott, Author of 'Chrysaie Lyle,' etc.

**NIMMO'S SIXPENNY JUVENILE BOOKS.**

Demy 18mo, Illustrated, handsomely bound in cloth, price 6d. each.

1. Pearls for Little People.
2. Great Lessons for Little People.
3. Reason in Rhyme: A Poetry Book for the Young.
4. *Æsop's Little Fable Book.*
5. Grapes from the Great Vine.
6. The Pot of Gold.
7. Story Pictures from the Bible.
8. The Tables of Stone: Illustrations of the Commandments.
9. Ways of Doing Good.
10. Stories about our Dogs. By Harriet Beecher Stowe.
11. The Red-Winged Goose.
12. The Hermit of the Hills.
13. Effie's Christmas, and other Stories. By Adelaide AUSTEN.
14. A Visit to Grandmother, and other Stories for the Young.
15. Bible Stories for Young People. By Adelaide Austen.
16. The Little Woodman and his Dog Cæsar. By Mrs. SHERWOOD.
17. Among the Mountains: Tales for the Young. By ADELAIDE AUSTEN.
18. Little Gems for Little Readers.
19. Do your Duty, come what will, and other Stories for the Young.
20. Noble Joe: A Tale for Children. By Adelaide Austen.
21. Lucy Vernon, and other Stories for the Young.
22. Anecdotes of Favourite Animals told for Children. By ADELAIDE AUSTEN.
23. Little Henry and his Bearer. By Mrs. Sherwood.

[Continued on next page.]

## NIMMO'S SIXPENNY JUVENILE BOOKS, *CONTINUED.*

- 24. The Holidays at Wilton, and other Stories. By  
ADELAIDE AUSTEN.
- 25. Chryssie Lyle: A Tale for the Young. By Cecil Scott.
- 26. Little Elsie among the Quarrymen. By Ellen Palmer.

---

### *NEW VOLUMES JUST ADDED TO THIS SERIES.*

- 27. The Lesson of Obedience. By the Rev. Richard  
NEWTON, D.D.
- 28. The Lesson of Diligence. By the Rev. Richard  
NEWTON, D.D.
- 29. Fergus: A Tale by Jacob Abbott.
- 30. Gilbert and his Mother. By Jacob Abbott.
- 31. The Shepherd of Salisbury Plain. By Hannah More.
- 32. Emily Barton, and other Stories. By Charles and  
MARY LAMB.
- 33. Elizabeth Villiers, and other Stories. By Charles and  
MARY LAMB.
- 34. The Grateful Negro. By Maria Edgeworth.
- 35. Forgive and Forget. By Maria Edgeworth.
- 36. Waste Not, Want Not. By Maria Edgeworth.
- 37. The False Key. By Maria Edgeworth.
- 38. The Bracelets. By Maria Edgeworth.

---

## NIMMO'S FOURPENNY JUVENILE BOOKS.

The above Series of Books is also kept in embossed and illuminated  
Paper Cover, beautifully printed in gold from entirely  
new Designs, price 4d. each.

---

\*.\* The distinctive features of the Sixpenny, Ninepenny, and One Shilling  
Juvenile Books are: The Subjects of each Volume have been selected with a due  
regard to Instruction and Entertainment; they are well printed on fine paper;  
they are illustrated with Coloured Frontispieces and beautiful Engravings; and  
they are elegantly bound.

---

## NEW WORKS JUST READY.

---

### CHEAP EDITION OF THE EDINA BURNS.

In crown 4to, price 12s. 6d., elegantly bound in cloth, extra gilt and gilt edges, the popular Drawing-room Edition of the

**Poems and Songs by Robert Burns.** With Illustrations by HERDMAN, WALLER H. PATON, SAM. BOUGH, GOURLAY STEELL, D. O. HILL, J. M'WHIRTER, and other eminent Scottish Artists.

---

### NIMMO'S NATIONAL LIBRARY.

Just ready, in crown 8vo, with Steel Frontispiece and Vignette, handsomely bound, roxburgh style, price 5s.,

**The English Circumnavigators: The most remarkable Voyages round the World by English Sailors.** (Drake, Dampier, Anson, and Cook's Voyages.) With a Preliminary Sketch of their Lives and Discoveries. Edited, with Notes, Maps, etc., by DAVID LAING PURVES.

---

Uniform in size and price with the above, with Steel Frontispiece and Vignette, and Eight Illustrations,

**The Book of Adventure and Peril. A Record of Heroism and Endurance on Sea and Land.** Compiled and Edited by CHARLES BRUCE.

*Other Standard Works in preparation.*

This Series is also kept bound in cloth extra, full gilt side, back, and edges, price 6s. 6d. each.

---

#### *Third Edition.*

In demy 8vo, cloth elegant, richly gilt, price 7s. 6d.,

**Things a Lady would Like to Know, concerning Domestic Management and Expenditure, arranged for Daily Reference, with Hints regarding the Intellectual as well as the Physical Life.** By HENRY SOUTHGATE, Author of 'Many Thoughts of Many Minds,' 'Noble Thoughts in Noble Language,' 'Gone Before,' 'The Bridal Bouquet,' etc. etc.

---

In crown 8vo, beautifully bound in cloth extra, full of Engravings and Coloured Pictures, price 3s. 6d., or gilt edges price 4s.,

**Three Hundred Bible Stories and Three Hundred Bible Pictures.** A Pictorial Sunday Book for the Young.



